This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

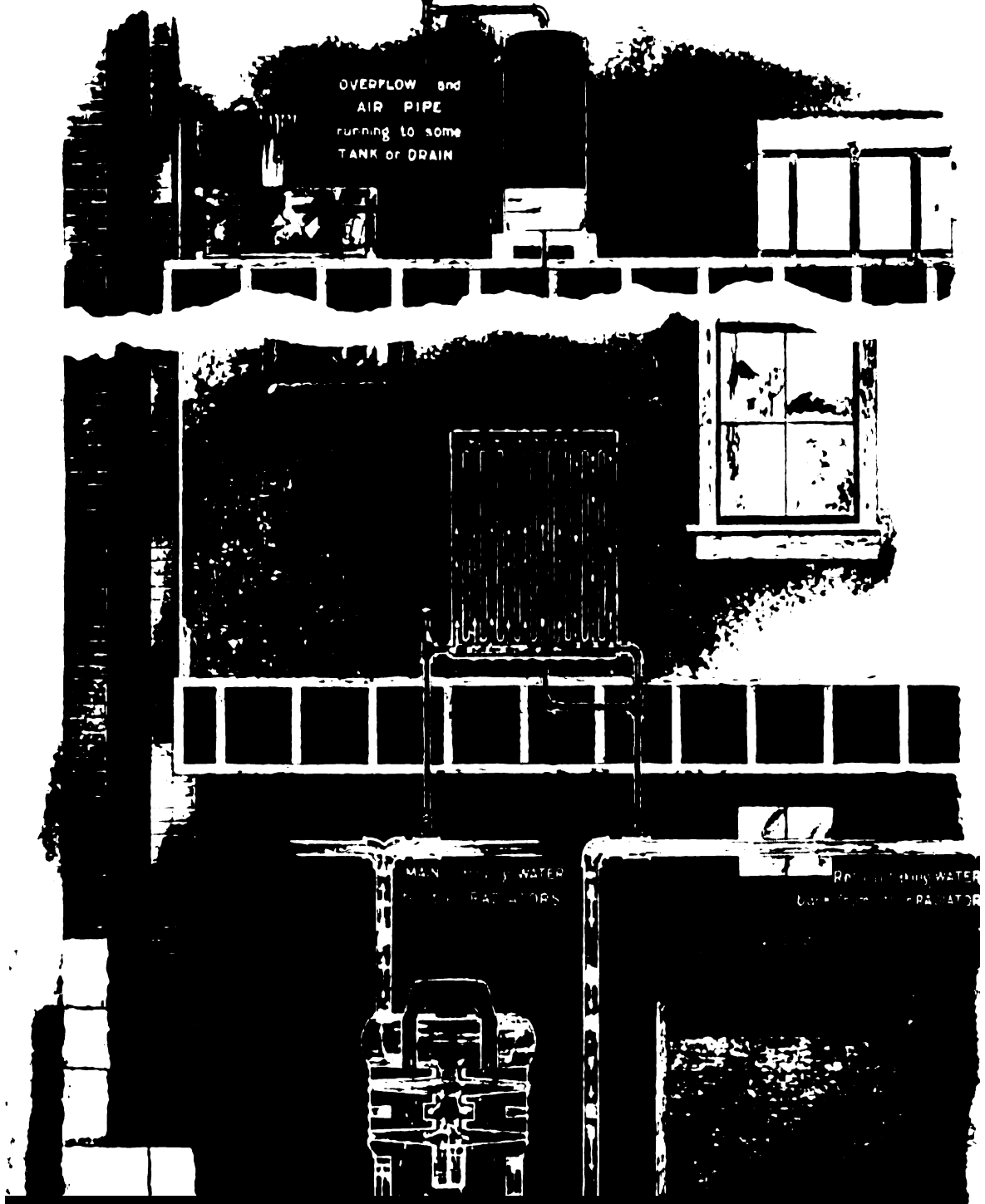
+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`



Modern engineering practice

American School (Chicago, Ill.), Frank Wakeley Gunsaulus

Eng 949.06.5 (12)

HARVARD
COLLEGE
LIBRARY

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

TYPE OF MODERN AMERICAN BATH ROOM WITH LATEST APPROVED FITTINGS.

Digitized by Google

Modern Engineering Practice

A REFERENCE LIBRARY

ON ELECTRICITY, STEAM, REFRIGERATION, GAS ENGINES, MARINE AND LOCOMOTIVE WORK, PATTERN MAKING, FOUNDING, MACHINE DESIGN, SHOP PRACTICE, TOOL MAKING, FORGING, MECHANICAL DRAWING, HEATING, VENTILATING, PLUMBING, CARPENTRY, AUTOMOBILES, ETC.

Editor-in-Chief

FRANK W. GUNSAULUS

PRESIDENT ARMOUR INSTITUTE OF TECHNOLOGY

Assisted by a Corps of

DISTINGUISHED ENGINEERS AND TECHNICAL EXPERTS

TWELVE VOLUMES

Six thousand pages, four thousand illustrations, full page plates, and engravings

CHICAGO
AMERICAN SCHOOL OF CORRESPONDENCE
MCMVI

Digitized by Google

Eng 349.06.5 (12)
HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY
GIFT OF
JAMES STURGIS PRAY
MAY 12 1925

COPYRIGHT 1902, 1903, 1905, 1906 BY
AMERICAN SCHOOL OF CORRESPONDENCE

Entered at Stationers' Hall, London
All Rights Reserved

ROBERT O. LAW COMPANY,
PRINTERS AND BINDERS, CHICAGO

Digitized by Google

Editor-in-Chief

FRANK W. GUNSAULUS

President Armour Institute of Technology.

Writers and Collaborators

F. B. CROCKER, E. M., Ph. D.

Head of Dept. of Electrical Engineering, Columbia University.
Past President American Institute of Electrical Engineers.

WILLIAM T. McCLEMENT, A. M.

Professor of Chemical Engineering, Armour Institute of Technology.

WILLIAM ESTY, S. B., M. A.

Head of Dept. of Electrical Engineering, Lehigh University.

VICTOR C. ALDERSON, D. Sc.

President, Colorado School of Mines.

DUGALD C. JACKSON, C. E.

Head of Dept. of Electrical Engineering, University of Wisconsin.

LOUIS DERR, S. B., A. M.

Associate Professor of Physics, Massachusetts Institute of Technology.

HOWARD M. RAYMOND, S. B.

Dean of Engineering Studies, Armour Institute of Technology.

Digitized by Google

KEMPSTER B. MILLER, M. E.

Telephone Expert and Consulting Engineer. Author of "American Telephone Practice."

WALTER S. LELAND, S. B.

Instructor in Naval Architecture, Massachusetts Institute of Technology.
American Society of Naval Architects and Marine Engineers.

GEORGE C. SHAAD, B. S., E. E.

Assistant Professor of Electrical Engineering, University of Wisconsin.

CHARLES DICKERMAN

Refrigerating Engineer, Pennsylvania Iron Works Co.

H. C. CUSHING, JR.

Consulting Electrical Engineer. Author of "Standard Wiring for Electric Light and Power."

ALBERT F. HALL, S. B.

American Society of Mechanical Engineers.
American Society of Naval Architects and Marine Engineers.
Institute of Mechanical Engineers of England.
German Society of Engineers in Germany.
Associate Member Institute of Civil Engineers of England.

ALFRED E. PHILLIPS, C. E., Ph. D.

Professor of Civil Engineering, Armour Institute of Technology.

CHARLES THOM

Chief Quadruplex Dept., Western Union Telegraph Co.

ARTHUR L. RICE, M. M. E.

Editor of "The Engineer," Chicago.

CHARLES E. DURYEA

First Vice-President, American Motor League.
Author of "Roadside Troubles."

Digitized by Google

Writers and Collaborators—Continued

FRANCIS H. BOYER

Constructing Engineer.
American Society of Mechanical Engineers.

LIONEL S. MARKS, S. B., M. M. E.

Assistant Professor of Mechanical Engineering, Harvard University.

CARL S. DOW, S. B.

American Society of Mechanical Engineers.

WALTER B. SNOW, S. B.

Mechanical Engineer, B. F. Sturtevant Co.
American Society of Mechanical Engineers.

SAMUEL G. McMEEN

Telephone Expert and Consulting Engineer.

GEORGE L. FOWLER, A. B., M. E.

Consulting Engineer.
American Society of Mechanical Engineers.
American Railway Master Mechanics Association.

LAWRENCE K. SAGER, S. B., M. P. L.

Patent Attorney and Electrical Expert,
Formerly Assistant Examiner U. S. Patent Office.

WILLIAM C. BOYRER, M. E., M. M. E.

Formerly Division Engineer, N. Y. and N. J. Telephone Co.

WILLIAM S. NEWELL, S. B.

With Bath Iron Works, Bath, Me.
Formerly Instructor Massachusetts Institute of Technology.

ROBERT V. PERRY, S. B., M. E.

Associate Professor of Machine Design, Armour Institute of Technology

Digitized by Google

Writers and Collaborators—Continued

NATHAN HASKELL DOLE

Editor, "American Dictionary and Cyclopedia," "The Library of the World's Best Literature," "The Literature of All Nations," "The International Library of Literature," etc.

ALFRED E. ZAPF, S. B.

Secretary, American School of Correspondence.
Editor, "The Technical World."

JOHN E. SNOW, M. S., E. E., A. M.

Associate Professor of Electrical Engineering, Armour Institute of Technology.
American Institute of Electrical Engineers.

MAURICE LEBOSQUET, S. B.

British Society of Chemical Industry.
American Chemical Society.

FREDERICK W. TURNER

Instructor in Machine Shop Work, Mechanics Arts High School, Boston.

JAMES RITCHEY

Instructor in Wood Working, Armour Institute of Technology.

JAMES R. CRAVATH

Western Editor, "Street Railway Journal," Chicago.

JOHN C. SHERMAN, S. B.

Formerly with the Westinghouse Companies.

MELVILLE B. WELLS, C. E.

Associate Professor of Bridge and Structural Engineering, Armour Institute of Technology,

CHARLES L. HUBBARD, S. B., M. E.

With S. Homer Woodbridge Company.
Heating, Ventilating and Sanitary Engineers.

Digitized by Google

Writers and Collaborators—Continued

R. F. SCHUCHARDT, B. S.

Testing Laboratory, Chicago Edison Company.

EDWARD R. MARKHAM

Instructor in Machine Shop Work, Rindge Manual Training School.
Formerly Superintendent Waltham Watch Tool Co.
American Society of Mechanical Engineers.

GEORGE F. GEBHARDT, M. E., M. A.

Professor of Mechanical Engineering, Armour Institute of Technology.

CHARLES E. LORD, S. B.

Manager of Patent Dept., Bullock Electric Mfg. Co

A. FREDERICK COLLINS

Author of "Wireless Telegraphy, Its History, Theory and Practice."

WILLIAM C. STIMPSON

Instructor in Foundry Work and Forging, Pratt Institute.

EVERETT E. KENT, S. B., LL. B.

Counselor at Law, Attorney and Expert in Patent Cases.

HENRI F. CHADWICK, S. B.

President Casino Technical Night School, Pittsburg

JOHN LORD BACON

Instructor in Forge Work, Lewis Institute.

ERVIN KENISON, S. B.

Instructor in Mechanical Drawing, Massachusetts Institute of Technology.

CHARLES L. GRIFFIN, S. B.

Mechanical Engineer, Semet-Solvay Co.
Formerly Professor of Machine Design, Pennsylvania State College.

Digitized by Google

Writers and Collaborators--Continued

PERCY H. THOMAS, S. B.

Chief Electrician, Cooper-Hewitt Electric Co.

RALPH H. SWEETSER, S. B.

Superintendent Algoma Steel Co., Ltd.
American Institute of Mining Engineers.
Formerly Instructor, Massachusetts Institute of Technology.

WILLIAM H. LAWRENCE, S. B.

Associate Professor of Architecture, Massachusetts Institute of Technology.

DAVID A. GREGG

Dept. of Architecture, Massachusetts Institute of Technology.

GILBERT TOWNSEND, S. B.

Architect with Post & McCord, New York City.

FRANK CHOUTEAU BROWN

Architect, Boston.

WALTER H. JAMES, S. B.

Dept. of Mechanical Drawing, Massachusetts Institute of Technology.

LAWRENCE S. SMITH, S. B.

Dept. of Mechanical Engineering, Massachusetts Institute of Technology.

NATHAN R. GEORGE, JR., A. M.

Dept. of Mathematics, Massachusetts Institute of Technology.

LOUIS A. OLNEY, A. C.

Head of Dept. of Textile Chemistry and Dyeing, Lowell Textile School.

HARRIS C. TROW, S. B., *Managing Editor*

Instructor in Electrical Engineering, American School of Correspondence.
American Institute of Electrical Engineers.

Digitized by Google

Authorities Consulted

THE editors have freely consulted the standard technical literature of Europe and America in the preparation of these volumes. They desire to express their indebtedness, particularly to the following eminent authorities, whose well known treatises should be in the library of every engineer.

Grateful acknowledgment is here made also for the invaluable co-operation of the foremost engineering firms, in making these volumes thoroughly representative of the best and latest practice in the design and construction of steam and electrical machines and machine tools; also for the valuable drawings and data, suggestions, criticisms, and other courtesies.

FRANCIS BACON CROCKER, M. E., Ph. D.

Head of Department of Electrical Engineering, Columbia University; Past President American Institute of Electrical Engineers.
Author of "Electric Lighting," "Practical Management of Dynamos and Motors."

SCHUYLER S. WHEELER, D. Sc.

Electrical Expert of the Board of Electrical Control, New York City; Member American Societies of Civil and Mechanical Engineers.
Author of "Practical Management of Dynamos and Motors."

WILLIAM M. BARR.

Member American Society of Mechanical Engineers.
Author of "Boilers and Furnaces," "Pumping Machinery," "Chimneys of Brick and Metal," etc.

SIMPSON BOLLAND.

Author of "The Iron Founder," "The Iron Founder's Supplement."

HORATIO A. FOSTER.

Member American Institute of Electrical Engineers; American Society of Mechanical Engineers; Consulting Engineer.
Author of "Electrical Engineer's Pocketbook."

J. FISHER-HINNEN.

Late Chief of the Drawing Department at the Oerlikon Works.
Author of "Continuous Current Dynamos"

WILLIAM F. DURAND, Ph. D.

Professor of Marine Engineering, Cornell University.
Author of "Resistance and Propulsion of Ships," "Practical Marine Engineering."

W. H. FORD, M. E.

Author of "Boiler Making for Boiler Makers."

Digitized by Google

ROBERT GRIMSHAW, M. E.

Author of "Steam Engine Catechism," "Boiler Catechism," "Locomotive Catechism," "Engine Runners' Catechism," "Shop Kinks," etc.

GARDNER D. HISCOX, M. E.

Author of "Gas, Gasoline and Oil Engines."

GEORGE C. V. HOLMES.

Whitworth Scholar; Secretary of the Institute of Naval Architects, etc.
Author of the "Steam Engine."

WILLIAM HOUGHTALING.

Author of the "Steam Engine and Its Appliance."

WILLIAM KENT, M. E.

Consulting Engineer; Member of American Society of Mechanical Engineers, etc.
Author of "Strength of Materials," "Mechanical Engineer's Pocketbook," "Steam Boiler Economy," etc.

DUGALD C. JACKSON, C. E.

Head of Department of Electrical Engineering, University of Wisconsin; Member of American Society of Mechanical Engineers; American Institute of Electrical Engineers.
Author of "A Textbook on Electro-Magnetism and the Construction of Dynamos," "Alternating Currents and Alternating Current Machinery."

JOHN PRICE JACKSON.

Professor of Electrical Engineering, Pennsylvania State College; Member of American Institute of Electrical Engineers.
Author of "Alternating Currents and Alternating Current Machinery."

GAETANO LANZA, S. B., C. E., M. E.

Professor of Theoretical and Applied Mechanics, Massachusetts Institute of Technology; Member of American Society of Mechanical Engineers, etc.
Author of "Applied Mechanics."

C. W. MacCORD, A. M.

Professor of Mechanical Drawing, Stephens Institute of Technology.
Author of "Movement of Slide Valves by Eccentrics."

MANSFIELD MERRIMAN, Ph. D.

Professor of Civil Engineering, Lehigh University; Member of American Society Civil Engineers, etc.
Author of "Mechanics of Materials," "Treatise on Hydraulics," "Elements of Sanitary Engineering," etc.

CECIL H. PEABODY, S. B.

Professor of Marine Engineering and Naval Architecture, Massachusetts Institute of Technology.
Author of "Thermodynamics of the Steam Engine," "Tables of the Properties of Saturated Steam," "Valve Gears to Steam Engines," "Manual of Steam Engine Indicators," "Steam Boilers."

Digitized by Google

Authorities Consulted—Continued

EDWARD F. MILLER.

Professor of Steam Engineering, Massachusetts Institute of Technology.
Author of "Steam Boilers."

WILLIAM JOHN MACQUORN RANKINE, LL. D., F. R. S. S.

Civil Engineer; Late Regius Professor of Civil Engineering and Mechanics in University of Glasgow, etc.
Author of "Applied Mechanics," "The Steam Engine," "Civil Engineering," "Useful Rules and Tables," "Machinery and Mill Work," "A Mechanical Textbook."

KEMPSTER B. MILLER, M. E.

Consulting Engineer, and Telephone Expert.
Author of "American Telephone Practice,"

MAURICE A. OUDIN, M. S.

Member of American Institute of Electrical Engineers.
Author of "Standard Polyphase Apparatus and Systems."

IRA REMSEN, M. D., Ph. D., LL. D.

President of Johns Hopkins University, and Professor of Chemistry, etc.
Author of the "Principles of Theoretical Chemistry," "Introduction to the Study of the Compounds of Carbon," "The Elements of Chemistry," "Inorganic Chemistry," etc.

WILLIAM RIPPER.

Professor of Mechanical Engineering in the Sheffield Technical School; Member of the Institute of Mechanical Engineers.
Author of "Machine Drawing and Design," "Practical Chemistry," "Steam," etc.

JOSHUA ROSE, M. E.

Author of "Mechanical Drawing Self Taught," "Modern Steam Engineering," "Steam Boilers," "The Slide Valve," "Pattern Makers Assistant," "Complete Machinist," etc.

LAMAR LYNDON, B. E., M. E.

Consulting Electrical Engineer; Associate Member of American Institute of Electrical Engineers; Member of American Electro-Chemical Society.
Author of "Storage Battery Engineering."

ROBERT H. THURSTON, C. E., Ph. B., A. M., LL. D.

Director of Sibley College, Cornell University.
Author of "Manual of The Steam Engine," "Manual of Steam Boilers," "History of the Steam Engine," etc.

SYLVANUS P. THOMPSON, D. Sc., B. A., F. R. S., F. R. A. S.

Principal and Professor of Physics in the City and Guilds of London Technical College.
Author of "Electricity and Magnetism," "Dynamo-Electric Machinery," "Polyphase Electric Currents," "Electromagnet," etc.

W. S. FRANKLIN and R. G. WILLIAMSON.

Joint Authors of "The Elements of Alternating Current."

Digitized by Google

Authorities Consulted—Continued

EDWARD R. MARKHAM.

Instructor in Machine Shop Work, Rindge Manual Training School; formerly Superintendent Waltham Watch Tool Co.
Author of "The American Steel Worker."

SAMUEL EDWARD WARREN.

Late Professor of Descriptive Geometry and Drawing, Massachusetts Institute of Technology.
Author of "General Problems in Shades and Shadows," "Shadows and Perspective," "Higher General Problems with Linear Perspective of Form," "Shadow and Reflection," etc.

THOMAS D. WEST.

Practical Moulder and Foundry Manager; Member American Society of Mechanical Engineers.
Author of "American Foundry Practice."

ROBERT WILSON.

Author of "Treatise on Steam Boilers," "Boiler and Factory Chimneys," etc.

WILLIAM C. UNWIN, F. R. S., M. Inst. C. E.

Professor of Civil and Mechanical Engineering, Central Technical College, City and Guilds of London Institute, etc.
Author of "Machine Design," "The Development and Transmission of Power from Central Stations," etc.

WILLIAM H. VAN DERVOORT, M. E.

Author of "Modern Machine Shop Tools."

J. A. EWING, M. A., B. Sc., F. R. S., M. Inst. C. E.

Professor of Mechanism and Applied Mechanics in the University of Cambridge.
Author of "The Steam Engine and Other Heat Engines."

ROLLA C. CARPENTER, M. S., C. E., M. M. E.

Professor of Experimental Engineering, Cornell University; Member of American Society Heating and Ventilating Engineers; Member American Society Mechanical Engineers.
Author of "Heating and Ventilating Buildings."

FRANK E. KIDDER, C. E.

Consulting Architect.
Author of "The Architect and Builder's Pocketbook."

A. E. SEATON.

Author of "A Manual of Marine Engineering."

JAMES J. LAWLER.

Author of "Modern Plumbing, Steam and Hot Water Heating."

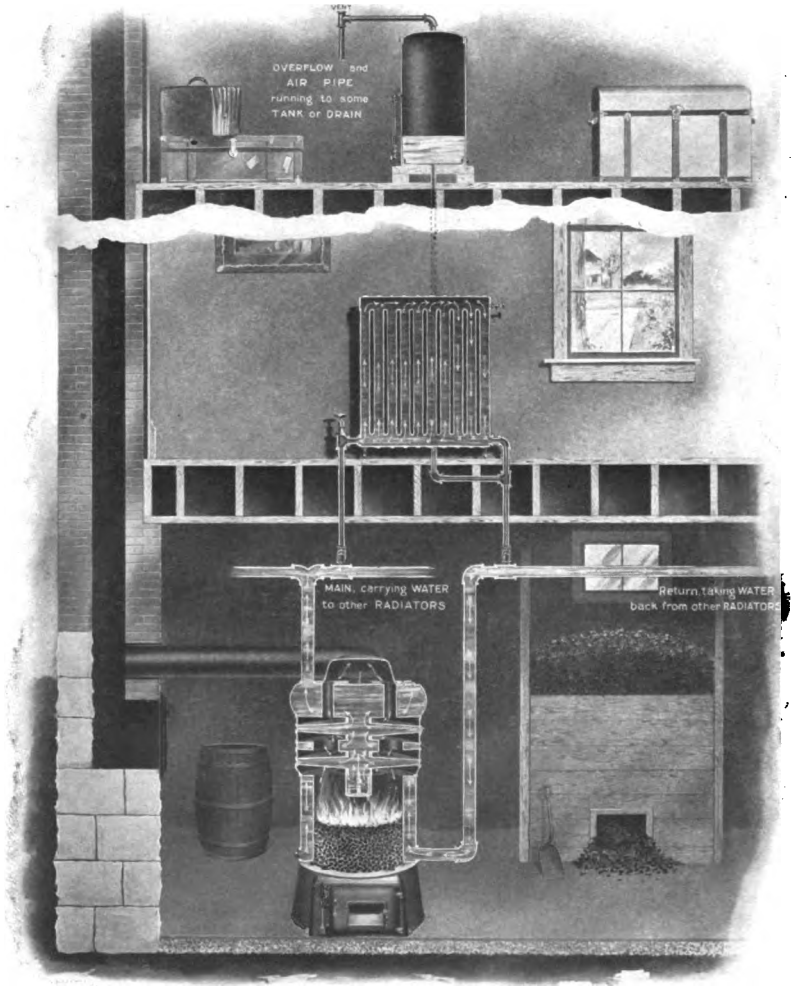
Digitized by Google

Contents

VOLUME XII.

Systems of Warming . . .	Page	11
Principles of Ventilation . .	"	25
Furnace Heating	"	38
Steam Heating	"	60
Hot Water Heating . . .	"	105
Plumbing Fixtures	"	201
Sewerage	"	244
Water Supply	"	259
Carpentry	"	317
Review Questions	"	457
Index	"	467

Digitized by Google



PRINCIPLE OF HOT WATER HEATING ILLUSTRATED BY TRANSVERSE SECTIONAL VIEW SHOWING BOILER, RADIATOR AND EXPANSION TANK.

American Radiator Company.

Digitized by Google

HEATING AND VENTILATION.

PART I.

SYSTEMS OF WARMING.

Any system of warming must include, *first*, the combustion of fuel which may take place in a fireplace, stove, steam or hot-water boiler; *second*, a system of transmission, by means of which the heat may be carried, with as little loss as possible, to the place where it is to be used for warming, and *third*, a system of diffusion, which will convey the heat to the air in a room and to its walls, floors, etc., in the most economical way.

Stoves. The simplest and cheapest form of heating is the stove. The heat is diffused by radiation and convection directly to the objects and air in the room, and no special system of transmission is required. The stove is used largely in the country and is especially adapted to the warming of small dwelling houses and isolated rooms.

Furnaces. Next in cost of installation and simplicity of operation is the hot-air furnace. In this method, the air is drawn over heated surfaces and then transmitted through pipes, while at a high temperature, to the rooms where heat is required. Furnaces are used largely for warming dwelling houses, also churches, halls and schoolhouses of small size. They are more costly than stoves, but have some advantages over that form of heating. They require less care, as several rooms may be warmed from a single furnace; and, being placed in the basement all dust from coal and ashes is kept from the rooms above.

In construction a furnace is a large stove with a combustion chamber of ample size over the fire; the whole being enclosed in a casing of sheet iron or brick. The bottom of the casing is provided with a cold-air inlet, and at the top are pipes which connect with registers placed in the various rooms to be heated. Cold fresh air is brought from out of doors through a pipe or duct called the "cold-air box;" this air enters the space between the casing and the furnace near the bottom and in passing over the

Digitized by Google

hot surfaces of the fire pot and combustion chamber, becomes heated. It then rises through the warm-air pipes at the top of the casing and is discharged through the registers into the rooms above.

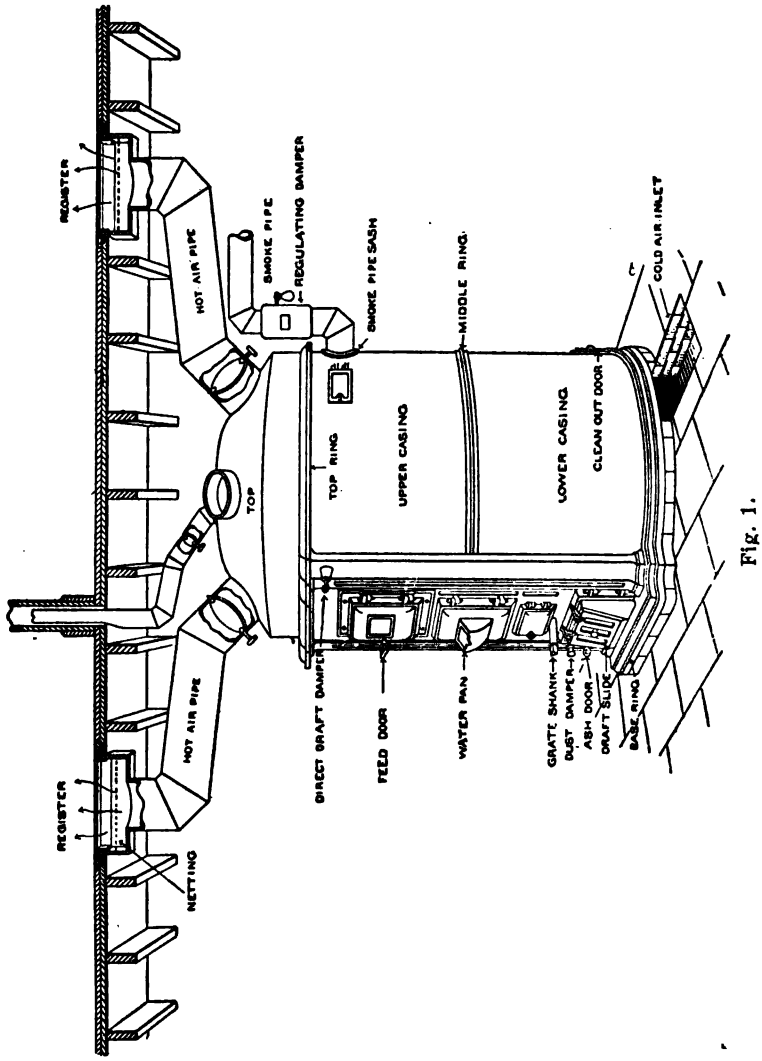


Fig. 1.

As the warm air is taken from the top of the furnace, cold air flows in through the cold-air box to take its place. The air for heating the rooms does not enter the combustion chamber.

Digitized by Google

Fig. 1 shows the general arrangement of a furnace with its connecting pipes. The cold-air inlet is seen at the bottom and the hot-air pipes at the top; these are all provided with dampers for shutting off or regulating the amount of air flowing through them. The feed or fire door is shown at the front and the ash door beneath it; a water pan is placed inside the casing and furnishes moisture to the warm air before passing into the rooms; water is either poured into the pan through an opening in the front, provided for this purpose, or is supplied automatically through a pipe.

The fire is regulated by means of a draft slide in the ash door and a cold-air or regulating damper placed in the smoke-pipe. Clean-out doors are placed at different points in the casing for the removal of ashes and soot. Furnaces are made either of cast iron, or of wrought iron plates riveted together and provided with brick-lined fire pots.

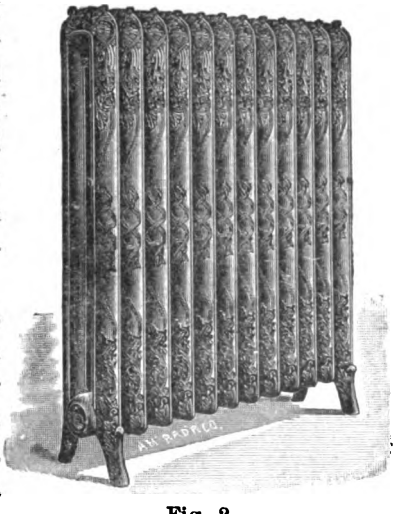


Fig. 2.

One great advantage in this method of warming comes from the constant supply of fresh air which is required to bring the heat into the rooms. While this is greatly to be desired from a sanitary standpoint it requires a larger amount of fuel than would otherwise be necessary, for heat is required to warm the fresh air from out of doors up to the temperature of the rooms, in addition to that lost by leakage through walls and windows.

A more even temperature may be maintained in this way than by the use of stoves, owing to the greater depth and size of the fire, which causes it to be more easily controlled. When a building is placed in an exposed location, difficulty may be experienced at times in warming certain rooms, depending upon the direction of the wind; this may be overcome to a large extent by a proper location of the furnace and the exercise of suitable care

Digitized by Google

in running the connecting pipes. This will be taken up later in the design of heating systems.

Direct Steam Heating. Direct steam heating is used in all classes of buildings, both by itself and in combination with other systems. The first cost of installation is greater than for furnace heating but the amount of fuel required is less, as no outside air-supply is necessary. If used for warming hospitals, schoolhouses or other buildings where ventilation is desired, it must be supplemented by some other means for providing warm fresh air. A system of direct steam heating consists of a furnace and boiler for the combustion of fuel and the generation of steam; a system of pipes for conveying the steam to the radiators and for returning the water of condensation to the boiler; and radiators or coils placed in the rooms for diffusing the heat.

Fig. 3.

Various types of boilers are used, depending upon the size and kind of building to be warmed. Some form of cast iron sectional boiler is commonly used for dwelling houses, while the tubular or water-tube boiler is more usually employed in larger buildings. Where the boiler is used for heating purposes only, a low steam pressure of from 2 to 10 pounds is carried and the condensation flows back by gravity to the boiler which is placed below the lowest radiator. When, for any reason, a higher pressure is required, the steam for the heating system is made to pass through a reducing valve and the condensation is returned to the boiler by means of a pump or return trap. The methods of

Digitized by Google

making the pipe connections between the boiler and radiators vary for different conditions and in different systems of heating. These will be taken up later under the head of design.

Direct radiating surface is made up in different ways: Fig 2 shows a common form of cast iron sectional radiator; these can be made up in any size depending upon the height and number of sections used. Fig. 3 is made up of vertical wrought iron pipes screwed into a cast iron base and is a very efficient form. Fig. 4 shows a type of cast iron wall radiator which is often used where it is desired to keep the floor free from obstruction. Fig. 5 is a special form of dining-room radiator provided with a warming closet. Wall and ceiling coils of wrought iron pipe are often used

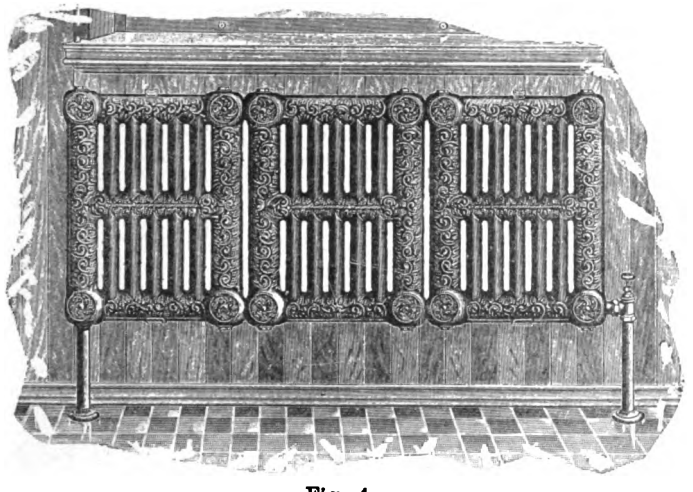


Fig. 4.

in school rooms, halls and shops or where the appearance is not objectionable.

Indirect Steam. This system of heating combines the advantages of both the furnace and direct steam but is more expensive to install. The amount of fuel required is about the same as in the case of furnace heating. Instead of placing the radiators in the rooms, a special form of heater is placed beneath the floor and encased in galvanized iron or brickwork. A cold-air box is connected with the space beneath the heater and warm-air pipes at the top are connected with registers in the floors or walls as

Digitized by Google

already described for furnaces. A separate heater may be provided for each register if the rooms are large, or two or more registers may be connected with the same heater if the horizontal runs of pipe are short. Fig. 6 shows a section through a heater arranged for introducing hot air into a room through a floor register and Fig. 7 shows the same type of heater connected with a wall register. The cold-air box is seen at the bottom of the casing, and the air in passing through the spaces between the sections of the heater, becomes warmed and rises to the rooms above.

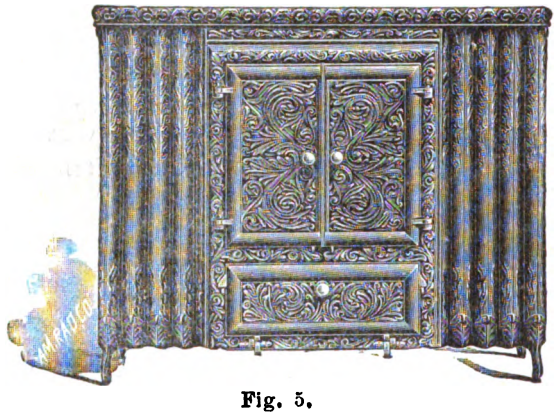


Fig. 5.

Different forms of indirect heaters are shown in Figs. 8 and 9. Several sections connected in a single group are called a "Stack." Sometimes the stacks are encased in brickwork built up from the basement floor instead of galvanized iron as shown in the cuts. This method of heating provides fresh air for ventilation, and for this reason is especially adapted for schoolhouses, hospitals, churches, etc. As compared with furnace heating it has the advantage of being less affected by outside wind pressure, as long runs of horizontal pipe are avoided and the heaters can be placed near the registers. In a large building where several furnaces would be required, a single boiler can be used and the number of stacks increased to suit the existing conditions, thus

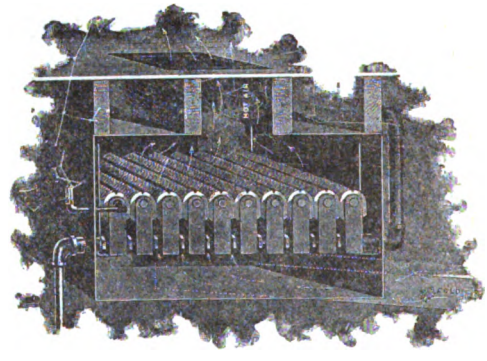


Fig. 6.

Digitized by Google

making it necessary to run but a single fire. Another advantage is the large ratio between the heating and grate surface as compared with a furnace, and as a result a large quantity of air is warmed to a moderate temperature in place of a smaller quantity heated to a much higher temperature. This gives a more agreeable quality to the air and renders it less dry. Direct and indirect systems are often combined, thus providing the living rooms with ventilation while the hallways, corridors, etc., have only direct radiators for warming.

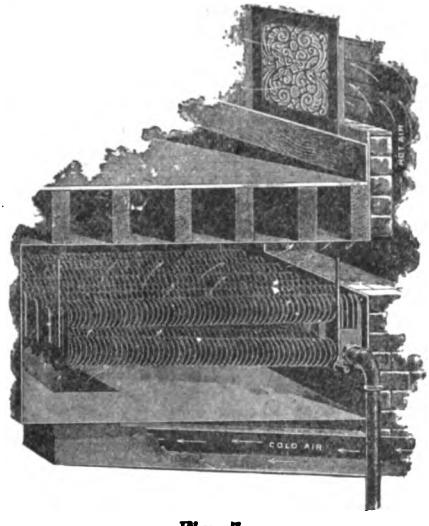


Fig. 7.

Direct-Indirect Radiators. A direct-indirect radiator is similar in form to a direct radiator and is placed in a room in the same manner. Fig. 10 shows the general form of this type of radiator and Fig. 11 shows a section through the same. The shape of the sections is such, that when in place, small flues are formed between them. Air is admitted through an opening in the outside wall and in passing upward

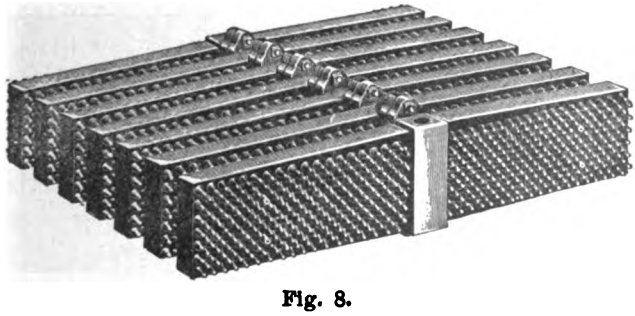


Fig. 8.

through these flues becomes heated before entering the room. A switch damper is placed in the duct at the base of the radiator so that the air may be taken from the room itself instead of from out of doors if so desired.

Digitized by Google

Direct Hot Water. This system is similar in construction to one for direct steam, except that hot water flows through the pipes and radiators instead of steam. It is largely used for the warming of dwelling houses to which it is especially adapted

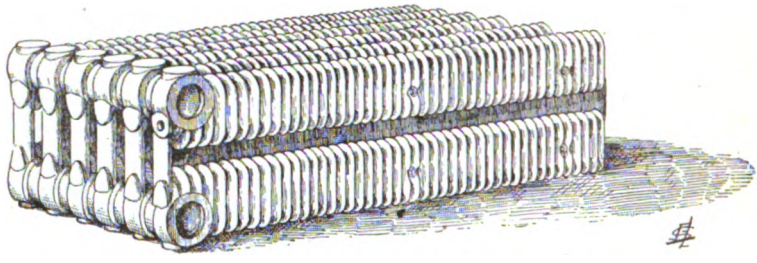


Fig. 9.

owing to the ease with which the temperature of the water can be regulated.

Where steam is used the radiators are always at practically the same temperature, and regulation must be secured by shutting off steam and turning it on at intervals depending on the outside temperature; while with hot water, the radiators can be kept turned on all the time, and regulation secured by varying the temperature of the water flowing through them.

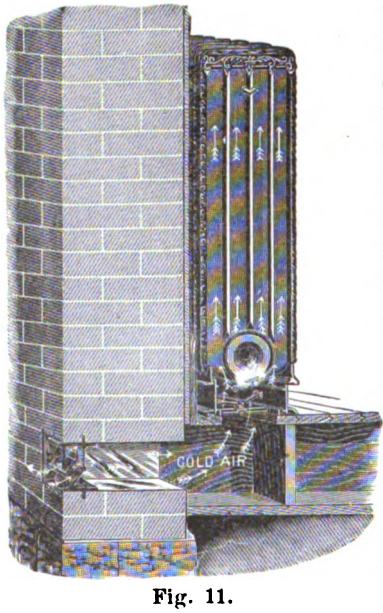


Fig. 11.

There are two distinct systems of circulation employed; one depending on the difference in temperature of the water in the supply and return pipes, called "gravity circulation;" and another where a pump is used to force the water through the mains, called "forced circulation." The former is used for dwellings and other buildings of ordinary size, and the latter for large

Digitized by Google

buildings, and especially where there are long horizontal runs of pipe.

For gravity circulation some form of sectional cast iron boiler is commonly used although wrought iron tubular boilers may be employed if desired. In the case of forced circulation a heater designed to warm the water by means of live or exhaust steam is often used. A centrifugal or rotary pump of the type shown in

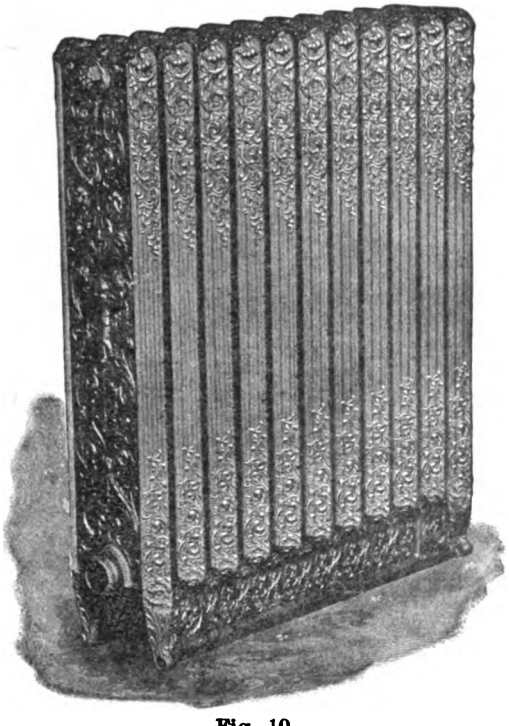


Fig. 10.

Fig. 12 is best adapted to this purpose; this pump may be driven by an electric motor, or a steam engine, as most convenient. Fig. 13 shows the general form of a hot-water radiator, which is similar to those used for steam, except the sections are connected at the top as well as at the bottom; this is shown by the cap over the opening at the top of the end section, which does not appear on the steam radiator shown in Fig. 2. A system for hot-water heating costs more to install than one for steam as the radiators

Digitized by Google

have to be larger and the piping of larger size and more carefully graded.

Indirect Hot Water. This is used under the same conditions as indirect steam, and the heaters used are similar to those already described. Special attention is given to the form of the sections in order that there may be an even distribution of water through all parts of them. Figs. 14 and 15 show typical hot-water radiators for indirect work. As the stacks are placed in the basement of a building, and only a short distance above the boiler, extra large pipes must be used to secure a proper circulation, for the "head" producing flow is small. The stack casings, cold and warm-air pipes and registers are the same as in steam heating.

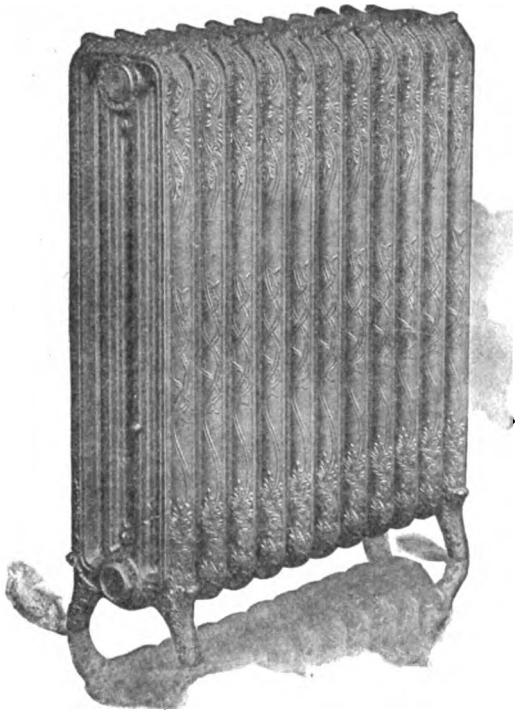


Fig. 13.

Exhaust Steam. Exhaust steam is used for heating in connection with power plants, as in factories and shops or in office buildings which have their own lighting plants. There are two methods of using exhaust steam for heating purposes. One is to carry a back pressure on the engines of from 5 to 10 pounds, depending on the length and size of the pipe mains, and the other is to use some form of "vacuum system" which consists of a pump or ejector attached to the returns from the radiators; this draws the steam through the radiators and tends to reduce the back pressure on the engines rather than to increase it.

Where the first method is used, and a back pressure carried,

Digitized by Google

either the boiler pressure or the cut-off of the engines must be increased to keep the "mean effective pressure" the same and not reduce the horse-power delivered. In general it is more economical to utilize the exhaust steam for heating. There are instances, however, where the relation between the quantities of steam required for heating and for power are such, especially if the engines are run condensing, that it is better to throw the exhaust away and heat with live steam. Where the vacuum method is used these difficulties are avoided, and for this reason it is coming into more common use. If the condensation from the exhaust steam is returned to the boilers the oil must first be removed; this is usually accomplished by passing the steam through some form of grease extractor as it leaves the engine. The water of condensation is

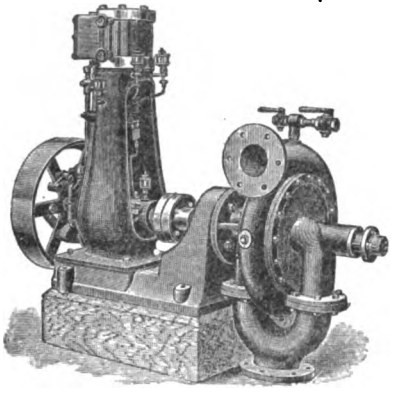


Fig. 12.

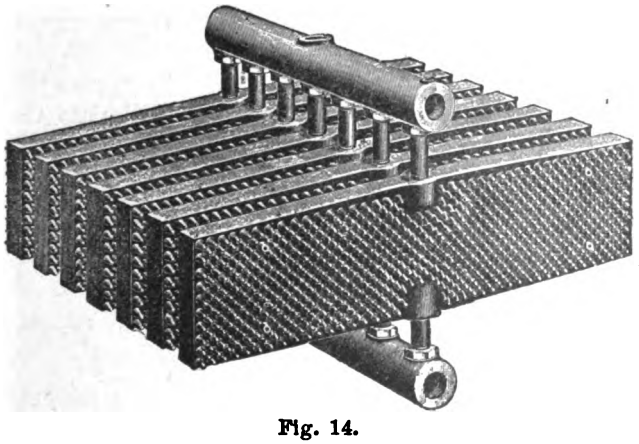


Fig. 14.

then passed through a separating tank before it is delivered to the return pumps. It is better to remove a portion of the oil before the steam enters the pipes and radiators, else a coating

Digitized by Google

will be formed on their inner surfaces which will reduce their heating efficiency.

Forced Blast. This method of heating, in different forms, is used for the warming of factories, schools, churches, theatres, halls or any large building where good ventilation is desired. The air for warming is drawn or forced through a heater of special design, and discharged by a fan or blower into ducts which lead to registers placed in the rooms to be warmed. The heater is usually made up in sections so that steam may be admitted to or shut off from any section independently of the others, and the temperature of the air regulated in this manner. Sometimes a by-pass

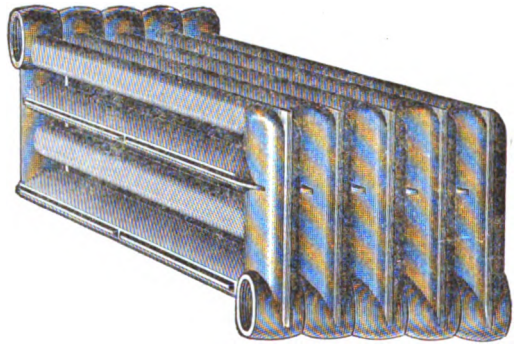


Fig. 15.

damper is attached, so that part of the air will pass through the heater and part around or over it; in this way the proportions of cold and heated air may be so adjusted as to give the desired temperature to the air entering the rooms. These forms of regulation are common where a blower is used for warming a single room as in the case of a church or hall; but where several rooms are warmed, as in a schoolhouse, it is customary to use the main or primary heater at the blower for warming the air to a given temperature, (somewhat below that which is actually required) and to supplement this by placing secondary coils or heaters at the bottoms of the flues leading to the different rooms. By means of this arrangement the temperature of each room can be regulated independently of the others. The so-called double duct system is sometimes employed. In this case two ducts are

Digitized by Google

carried to each register, one supplying hot air and the other cold or tempered air, and a damper for mixing these in the right propor-

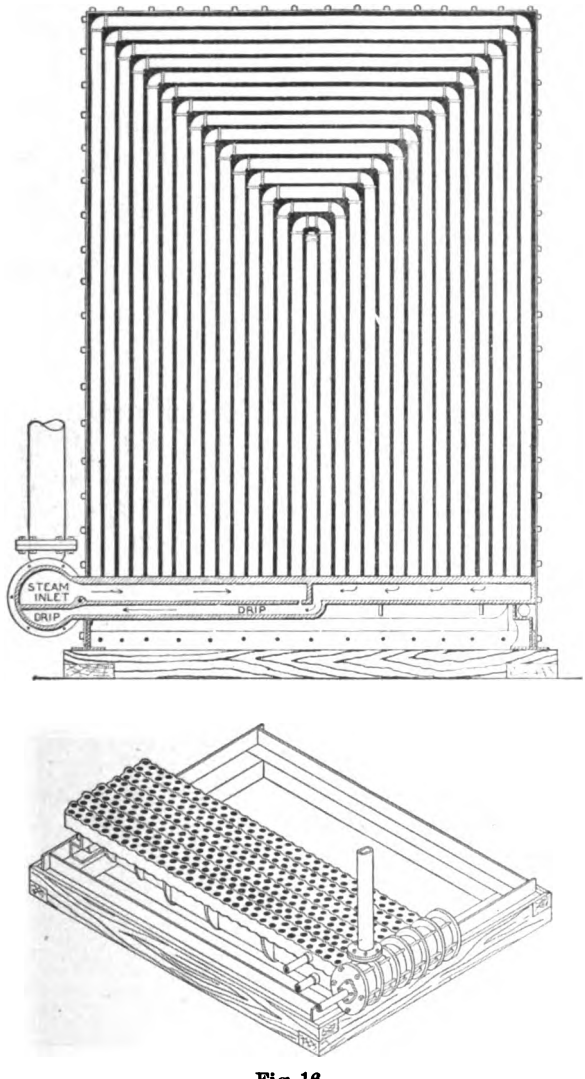


Fig 16.

tions is placed in the flue below the register. Fig. 16 shows a common form of the heater used in connection with a fan ; this is en-

Digitized by Google

cased in heavy sheet iron or brickwork, and is so connected with the fan that the air is drawn or forced through the spaces between the hot pipes and thus becomes heated. Fig. 17 represents the usual form of fan wheel used for heating and ventilating work; this is enclosed in a steel plate casing with inlet openings at the sides and a discharge outlet at the outer edge of the fan. A common arrangement of fan and heater is shown in Fig. 18. The arrows indicate the cold air entering the heater and the discharge from the fan is through the circular opening at the top of the casing. This fan is shown as being driven by a direct connected engine. Electric motors and steam engines are both used for this purpose and may be either belted or direct connected.

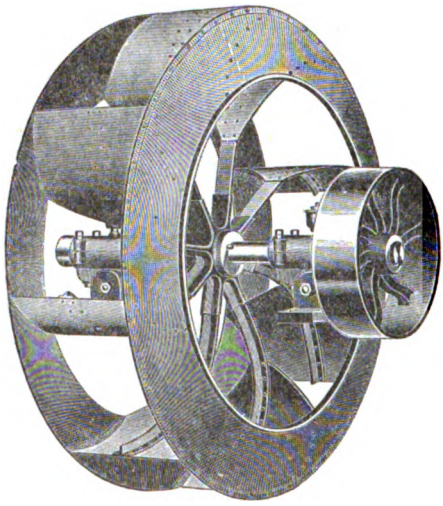


Fig. 17.

Fig. 19 shows a fan and heater arranged for a double duct system. A portion of the air passes through the heater, the top of which can be seen where the casing is broken away. the remainder of the air passes partly through, and partly over the heater, depending upon the position of the by-pass damper above. The temperature of the air in the upper duct is therefore less than that in the lower, and the two can be mixed at the registers as required. In Fig. 20 is shown a type of fan called the "cone fan." This is usually placed in an opening in a brick wall and discharges air from its entire perimeter into a room called a "plenum" chamber, with which the various distributing ducts connect.

Electricity. Unless electricity is produced at a very low cost, its use for heating residences or large buildings is not practicable. It has however quite a field of usefulness in the heating of small offices, bath rooms, cold corners of rooms, electric cars, etc., and is often used in rooms which cannot be reached by steam or warm-air pipes.

Digitized by Google

It has the special advantage of being instantly available, and the amount of heat may be regulated at will.

The heaters are perfectly clean, do not vitiate the air and are portable. They are usually arranged in sections so that the amount of heat can be regulated as desired. They are made up

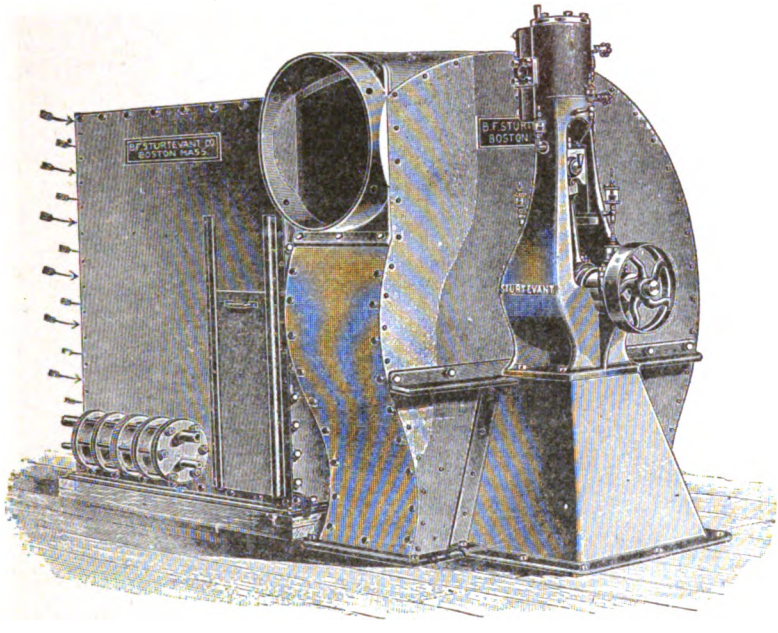


Fig. 18.

of resistance coils embedded in asbestos or some other form of non-conducting material.

Figs. 21, 22 and 23 show different forms of electric radiators; Fig. 22 is designed especially for car heating.

PRINCIPLES OF VENTILATION.

Closely connected with the subject of heating is the problem of maintaining air of a certain standard of purity in the various buildings occupied.

The introduction of pure air can only be done properly in connection with some system of heating, and no system of heating is complete without a supply of pure air, depending in amount upon the kind of building and the purpose for which it is used.

Composition of the Atmosphere. It has already been stated

Digitized by Google

elsewhere in this work that atmospheric air is not a simple substance but a mechanical mixture. Oxygen and nitrogen, the principal constituents, are present in very nearly the proportion of one part of oxygen to four parts of nitrogen by weight. Carbonic acid gas, the product of all combustion, exists in the proportion of 3 to 5 parts in 10,000 in the open country. Water in the form of vapor, varies greatly with the temperature, and the exposure of the air to open bodies of water. In addition to the above, there are generally present, in variable but exceedingly small quantities, ammonia, sulphuretted hydrogen, sulphuric, sulphurous, nitric and nitrous acids, floating organic and inorganic matter and local impurities. Air also contains ozone which is a peculiarly active form of oxygen, and lately new constituent gases have been found in small quantities.

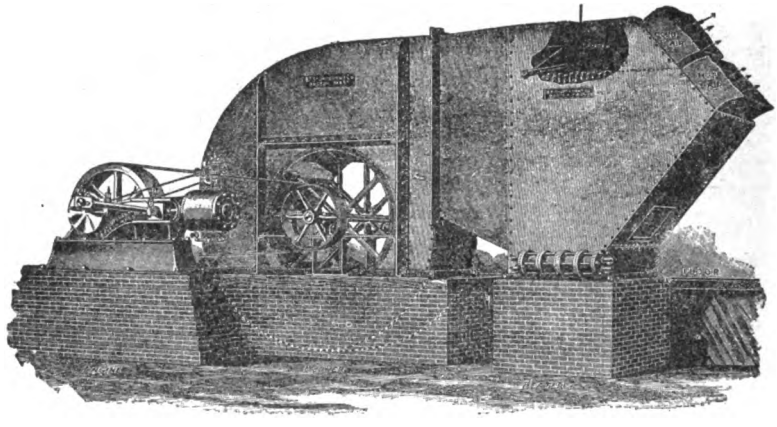
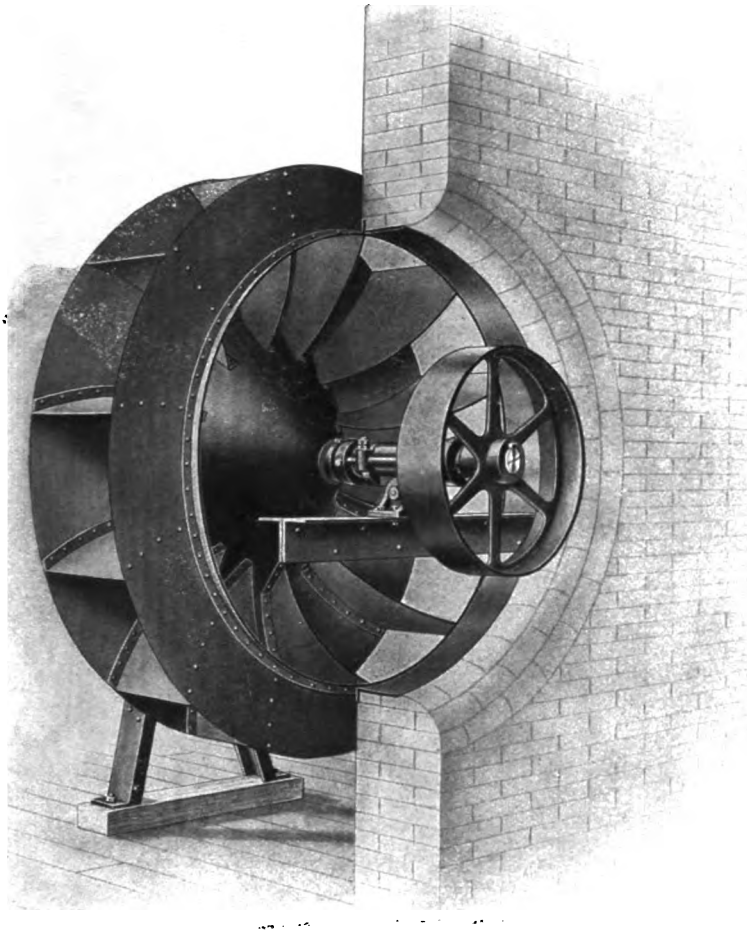


Fig. 19.

Oxygen is one of the most important elements of the air, so far as both heating and ventilation are concerned. It is the active element in the chemical process of combustion and also of a somewhat similar process which takes place in the respiration of human beings. Taken into the lungs it acts upon the excess of carbon in the blood, and possibly upon other ingredients, forming chemical compounds which are thrown off in the act of respiration or breathing.

Nitrogen. The principal bulk of the atmosphere is nitrogen, which exists uniformly diffused with oxygen and carbonic acid

Digitized by Google



CONE EXHAUST FAN, INLET SIDE.
American Blower Co.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

gas. This element is practically inert in all processes of combustion or respiration. It is not affected in composition, either by passing through a furnace during combustion or through the lungs in the process of respiration. Its action is to render the oxygen less active and to absorb some part of the heat produced by the process of oxidation.

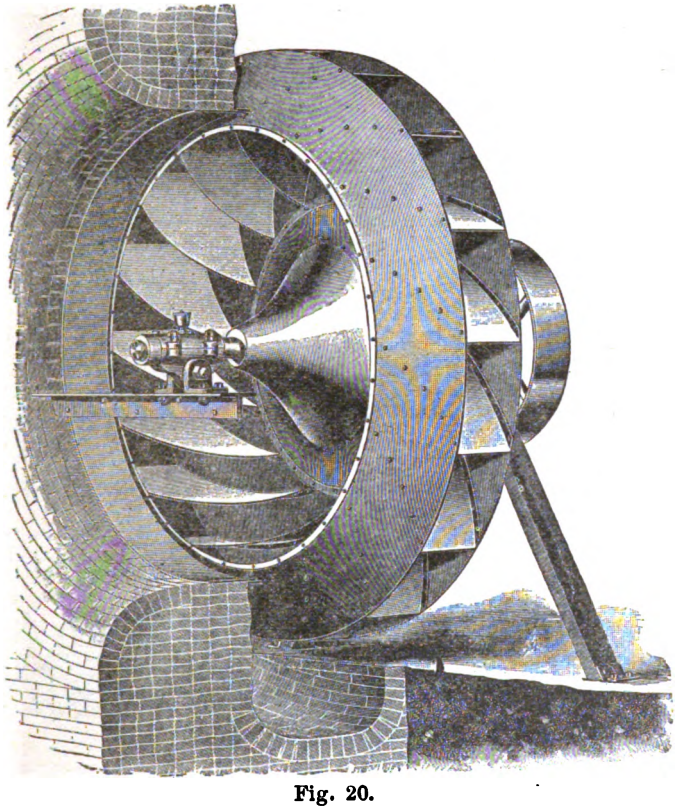


Fig. 20.

Carbonic Acid Gas is of itself only a neutral constituent of the atmosphere, like nitrogen, and contrary to the general impression its presence in moderately large quantities (if uncombined with other substances) is neither disagreeable nor especially harmful. Its presence in the air, however, provided for respiration, decreases the readiness with which the carbon of the blood unites with the oxygen of the air, and therefore, when present in sufficient quantity may cause indirectly, not only serious, but fatal results.

Digitized by Google

The real harm of a vitiated atmosphere is caused by its other constituent gases and by the minute organisms which are thrown off in the process of respiration. It is known, however, that these other impurities exist in fixed proportion to the amount of carbonic acid present in an atmosphere vitiated by respiration. Therefore, as the relative proportion of carbonic acid may be easily determined by experiment, the fixing of a standard limit of the amount

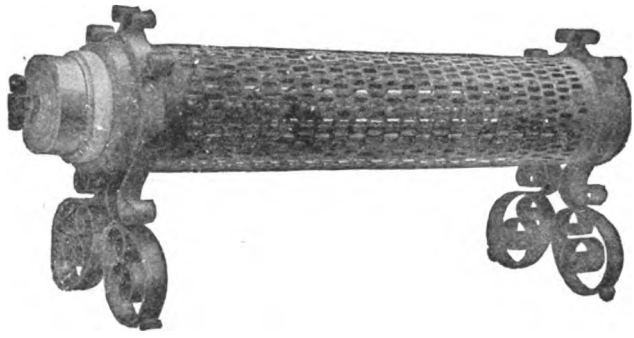


Fig. 21.

in which it may be allowed, also limits the amounts of other impurities which are found in combination with it.

When carbonic acid is present in excess of 10 parts in 10,000

Fig. 22.

parts of air, a feeling of weariness and stuffiness, generally accompanied by a headache, will be experienced; while with even 8 parts in 10,000 parts a room would be considered close. For general considerations of ventilation the limit should be placed at 6 to 7 parts in 10,000 thus allowing an increase of 2 to 3 parts over that present in outdoor air which may be considered to contain four parts in 10,000 under ordinary conditions.

Analysis of Air. The amount of carbonic acid present in

Digitized by Google

the air may be readily determined, with sufficient accuracy for practical purposes, in the following manner:

Six clean, dry and tightly corked bottles, containing respectively 100, 200, 250, 300, 350 and 400 cubic centimeters, a glass tube containing exactly 15 cubic centimeters to a given mark, and a bottle of perfectly clear, fresh lime-water make up the apparatus required. The bottles should be filled with the air to be examined by means of a hand-ball syringe. Add to the smallest bottle 15 cubic centimeters of the lime-water, put in the cork and shake well. If the lime-water has a milky appearance the amount of carbonic acid will be at least 16 parts in 10,000. If the contents of the bottle remains clear, treat the bottle of 200 cubic centimeters in the same manner; a milky appearance or turbidity in this would indicate 12 parts in 10,000. In a similar manner, turbidity in the 250 cubic centimeter bottle indicates 10 parts in 10,000; in the 300, 8 parts; in the 350, 7 parts and in the 400, less than 6 parts. The ability to conduct more accurate analyses can only be attained by special study and a knowledge of chemical properties and methods of investigation.

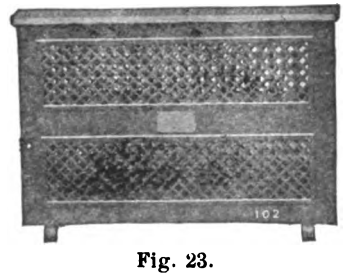


Fig. 23.

Air Required for Ventilation. The amount of air required to maintain the standard of purity can be very easily determined provided we know the amount of carbonic acid given off in the process of respiration. It has been found by experiment that the average production of carbonic acid by an adult at rest is about .6 cubic feet per hour. If we assume the proportion of this gas as 4 parts in 10,000 in the external air, and are to allow 6 parts in 10,000 in an occupied room, the gain will be 2 parts in 10,000, or in other words there will be $\frac{2}{10,000} = .0002$ cubic feet of carbonic acid mixed with each cubic foot of fresh air entering the room.

Therefore, if one person gives off .6 cubic feet of carbonic acid per hour it will require $.6 \div .0002 = 3000$ cubic feet of air per person to keep the air in the room at the standard of purity assumed, that is, 6 parts of carbonic acid in 10,000 of air.

Digitized by Google

The following table has been computed in this manner and shows the amount of air which must be introduced for each person in order to maintain various standards of purity:

TABLE I.

STANDARD PARTS OF CARBONIC ACID IN 10,000 OF AIR IN ROOM.	CUBIC FEET OF AIR REQUIRED PER PERSON.	
	PER MINUTE.	PER HOUR.
5	133	8,000
6	67	4,000
7	44	2,667
8	33	2,000
9	27	1,600
10	22	1,333
11	19	1,151
12	17	1,000

While this table gives the theoretical quantities of air required for different standards of purity, and may be used as a guide, it will be better in actual practice to use quantities which experience has shown to give good results in different types of buildings. Authorities differ somewhat in their recommendations on this point and the present tendency is toward an increase of air.

The following table represents good modern practice and may be used with satisfactory results:

TABLE II.

AIR SUPPLY PER OCCUPANT FOR	CUBIC FEET PER MINUTE.	CUBIC FEET PER HOUR.
Hospitals	50 to 80	3,000 to 4,800
High Schools	50	3,000
Grammar Schools	40	2,400
Theatres and Assembly Halls	25	1,500
Churches	20	1,200

Force for Moving Air. Air is moved for ventilating purposes in two ways; first, by expansion due to heating; and second

Digitized by Google

by mechanical means. The effect of heat on the air is to increase its volume and therefore lessen its density or weight, so that it tends to rise and is replaced by the colder air below. The available force for moving air obtained in this way is very small and is quite likely to be overcome by wind or external causes. It will be found in general that the heat used for producing velocity in this manner, when transformed into work in the steam engine, is greatly in excess of that required to produce the same effect by the use of a fan. Ventilation by mechanical means is performed either by pressure or suction. The former is used for delivering fresh air into a building and the latter for removing the foul air from it. By both processes the air is moved without change in temperature, and the force for moving must be sufficient to overcome the effects of wind or changes in outside temperature. Some form of fan is used for this purpose.

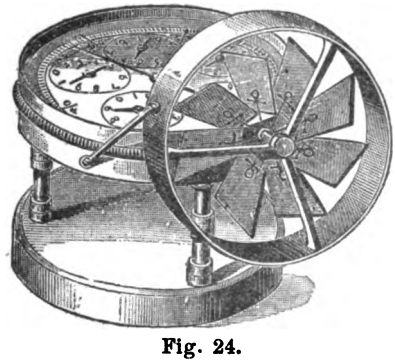


Fig. 24.

Measurements of Velocity. The velocity of air in ventilating ducts and flues is measured directly by an instrument called an anemometer. A common form of this instrument is shown in Fig. 24. It consists of a series of flat vanes attached to an axis, and a series of dials. The revolution of the axis causes motion of the hands in proportion to the velocity of the air, and the result can be read directly from the dials for any given period.

AIR DISTRIBUTION.

The location of the air inlet to a room depends upon the size of the room and the purpose for which it is used. In the case of living rooms in dwelling houses, the registers are placed either in the floor or in the wall near the floor; this brings the warm air in at the coldest part of the room and gives an opportunity for warming or drying the feet if desired. In the case of school rooms where large volumes of warm air at moderate temperatures are required, it is best to discharge it through openings in the wall at

Digitized by Google

a height of 7. or 8 feet from the floor; this gives a more even distribution as the warmer air tends to rise and hence spreads uniformly under the ceiling; it then gradually displaces other air and the room becomes filled with pure air without sensible currents or drafts. The cooler air sinks to the bottom of the room and can be taken off through ventilating registers placed near the floor. The relative positions of the inlet and outlet are often governed to some extent by the building construction, but if possible they should both be located in the same side of the room. Figs. 25, 26 and 27 show common arrangements.

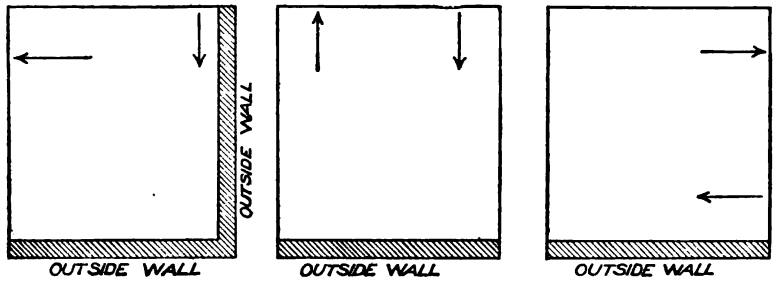


Fig. 25. Fig. 26. Fig. 27.

The vent outlet should always if possible be placed in an inside wall else it will become chilled and the air-flow through it will become sluggish. In theatres or halls which are closely packed, the air should enter at, or near, the floor in finely-divided streams, and the discharge ventilation should be through openings in the ceiling. The reason for this is the large amount of animal heat given off from the bodies of the audience, which causes the air to become still further heated after entering the room, and the tendency is to rise continuously from floor to ceiling thus carrying away all impurities from respiration as fast as they are given off.

The matter of air velocities, size of flues, etc., will be taken up under the head of design.

HEAT LOSS FROM BUILDINGS.

A British Thermal Unit, or B. T. U., has been defined as the amount of heat required to raise the temperature of one pound of water one degree F. This measure of heat enters into many of

Digitized by Google

the calculations involved in the solving of problems in heating and ventilation, and one should familiarize himself with the exact meaning of the term.

Causes of Heat Loss. The heat loss from a building is due to the following causes; *first*, radiation and conduction of heat through walls and windows; *second*, leakage of warm air around doors and windows and through the walls themselves; and *third*, heat required to warm the air for ventilation.

Loss Through Walls and Windows. The loss of heat through the walls of a building depends upon the material used, the thickness, the number of layers and the difference between the inside and outside temperatures. The exact amount of heat lost in this way is very difficult to determine theoretically, hence we depend principally on the results of experiments.

Loss by Air Leakage. The leakage of air from a room varies from one to two or more changes of the entire contents per hour, depending upon the construction, opening of doors, etc. It is common practice to allow for one change per hour in well-constructed buildings where two walls of the room have an outside exposure. As the amount of leakage depends upon the extent of exposed wall and window surface it seems best to allow for this loss by increasing that due to conduction and radiation. The following table gives the heat losses through different thickness of walls, doors, windows, etc., in B. T. U., per square foot of surface per hour for varying differences in inside and outside temperatures.

Authorities differ considerably in the factors given for heat losses, and there are various methods for computing the same. The following figures and methods have been used extensively in actual practice and have been found to give good results when used with judgment.

Digitized by Google

TABLE III.

Material.	Difference between inside and outside temperatures.									
	10°	20°	30°	40°	50°	60°	70°	80°	90°	100°
8″ Brick Wall	5	9	13	18	22	27	31	36	40	45
12″ Brick Wall	4	7	10	13	16	20	23	26	30	33
16″ Brick Wall	3	5	8	10	13	16	19	22	24	27
20″ Brick Wall	2.8	4.5	7	9	11	14	16	18	20	23
24″ Brick Wall	2.5	4	6	8	10	12	14	16	18	20
28″ Brick Wall	2	3.5	4.5	7	9	11	13	14	16	18
32″ Brick Wall	1.5	3	5	6	8	10	11	13	15	16
Single Window	12	24	36	49	60	73	85	93	105	
Double Window	8	16	24	32	40	48	56	62	70	
Single Skylight	11	21	31	42	52	63	73	84	94	
Double Skylight	7	14	20	28	35	42	48	56	62	
1″ Wooden Door	4	8	12	16	20	24	28	32	36	40
2″ Wooden Door	3	5	8	11	14	17	20	23	25	28
Concrete Floor on Brick Arch	2	4	6.5	9	11	13	15	18	20	22
Wood Floor on Brick Arch	1.5	3	4.5	6	7	9	10	12	13	15
Double Wood Floor	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
Walls of Ordinary Wooden Dwellings	3	5	8	10	13	16	19	22	24	27

For solid stone walls multiply the figures for brick of the same thickness by 1.7. Where rooms have a cold attic above or cellar beneath, multiply the heat loss through walls and windows by 1.1. The figures given in table III. are for a southern exposure; for other exposures multiply the heat loss given in table III. by the factors given in table IV.

TABLE IV.

Exposure.	Factor.
N.	1.32
E.	1.12
S.	1.0
W.	1.20
N. E.	1.22
N. W.	1.26
S. E.	1.06
S. W.	1.10
N. E. S. W. or total exposure.	1.16

In order to make the use of the table clear we will give a number of examples illustrating its use.

Assuming an inside temperature of 70°, what will be the heat loss from a room having an exposed wall surface of 200 square

Digitized by Google

feet and a glass surface of 50 square feet, when the outside temperature is zero. The wall is of brick, 16 inches in thickness and has a southern exposure; the windows are single.

We find from table III. that the factor for a 16″ brick wall with a difference in temperature of 70° is 19, and that for glass (single window) under the same condition is 85; therefore

Loss through walls $= 200 \times 19 = 3800$
Loss through windows $= 50 \times 85 = 4250$

Total loss per hour $= 8050$ B. T. U.

In computing the heat loss through walls, only those exposed to the outside air are considered.

A room 15 ft. square and 10 ft. high has two exposed walls; one toward the north and the other toward the east. There are 4 windows, each 3′ × 6′ in size The two in the north wall are double while the other two are single. The walls are of brick, 20 inches in thickness; with an inside temperature of 70° what will be the heat loss per hour when it is 10° below zero.

Total surface $= 15 \times 10 \times 2 = 300$
Glass surface $= 3 \times 6 \times 4 = 72$

Net wall surface $= 228$
Difference between inside and outside temperature 80°.
Factor for 20″ brick wall is 18.
Factor for single window is 93.
Factor for double window is 62.
The heat losses are as follows:

Wall, $228 \times 18 = 4104$
Single windows, $36 \times 93 = 3348$
Double windows, $36 \times 62 = 2232$

9684 B. T. U.

As one side is toward the north and the other toward the west the actual exposure is N. W. Looking in table IV. we find the correction factor for this exposure to be 1.26; therefore the total heat loss is

$$9684 \times 1.26 = 12{,}201.84 \text{ B. T. U.}$$

A dwelling house of wooden construction measures 160 ft.

Digitized by Google

around the outside; it has 2 stories, each 8 ft. in height; the windows are single and the glass surface amounts to $\frac{1}{5}$ the total exposure; the attic and cellar are unwarmed. If 8000 B. T. U. are utilized from each pound of coal burned in the furnace, how many pounds will be required per hour to maintain a temperature of 70° when it is 20° above zero outside.

Total exposure = $160 \times 16 = 2560$
Glass surface = $2560 \div 5 = 512$

Net wall = 2048
Temperature difference = $70 - 20 = 50°$
Wall $2048 \times 13 = 26624$
Glass $512 \times 60 = 30720$

57344 B. T. U.

As the building is exposed on all sides the factor for exposure will be the average of those for N. E. S. and W. or

$$(1.32 + 1.12 + 1.0 + 1.20) \div 4 = 1.16$$

The house has a cold cellar and attic so we must increase the heat loss 10% for each or 20% for both. Making these corrections we shall have

$$57344 \times 1.16 \times 1.20 = 79822 \text{ B. T. U.}$$

One pound of coal furnishes 8000 B. T. U. then $79822 \div 8000 = 9.97$; or about 10 pounds of coal per hour will be required to warm the building to 70° under the conditions stated.

Approximate Method. For dwelling houses of usual construction the following simple method may be used. Multiply the total exposed surface by 38, which will give the heat loss in B. T. U. per hour for an inside temperature of 70° in zero weather.

This factor is obtained in the following manner. Assume the glass surface to be $\frac{1}{6}$ the total exposure, which is an average proportion.

Then each square foot of exposed surface consists of $\frac{1}{6}$ glass and $\frac{5}{6}$ wall and the heat loss for 70° difference in temperature would be as follows:

Digitized by Google

$$\text{Wall } \frac{5}{6} \times 19 = 15.8$$

$$\text{Glass } \frac{1}{6} \times 85 = \frac{14.1}{29.9}$$

Increasing this by 16% for total exposure and 10% for loss through ceilings we have $29.9 \times 1.16 \times 1.10 = 38.1$. The loss through floors is considered as being offset by including the kitchen walls of a dwelling house, which are warmed by the range and would not otherwise be included if computing the size of a furnace or boiler for heating.

If the heat loss is required for outside temperatures other than zero, corrections must be made as follows: Multiply by 50 for 20° below zero, by 44 for 10° below, by 33 for 10° above.

This method is convenient for approximations in the case of dwelling houses but the more exact method should be used for other types of buildings, and in all cases for computing the heating surface for separate rooms. When calculating the heat loss from isolated rooms, the cold inside walls as well as the outside must be considered.

The loss through a wall next to a cold attic or other unwarmed space may in general be taken as about two-thirds that of an outside wall.

Heat Loss by Ventilation. One B. T. U. will raise the temperature of 1 cubic foot of air 55 degrees at average temperatures and pressures or will raise 55 cubic feet 1 degree, so that the heat required for the ventilation of any room may be found by the following formula:

$$\frac{\text{cu. ft. of air per hour} \times \text{number of degrees rise}}{55} = \text{B. T. U. required.}$$

To compute the heat loss for any given room which is to be ventilated, first find the loss through walls and windows, and correct for exposure, then compute the amount required for ventilation as above and take the sum of the two. An inside temperature of 70° is always assumed unless otherwise stated.

Example — What quantity of heat will be required to warm 100,000 cubic feet of air to 70° for ventilating purposes when the outside temperature is 10 below zero?

$$100{,}000 \times 80 \div 55 = 145{,}454 \text{ B. T. U.} \quad \text{Ans.}$$

Digitized by Google

How many B. T. U. will be required per hour for the ventilation of a church seating 500 people, in zero weather?

Referring to table II. we find that the total air required per hour is $1200 \times 500 = 600{,}000$ cu. ft.; therefore $600{,}000 \times 70 \div 55 = 763{,}636$ B. T. U.

Example.— A corner room in a grammar school $28' \times 32'$ and $12'$ high is to accommodate 50 pupils. The walls are of brick $16''$ in thickness and there are 6 single windows in the room, each $3' \times 6'$; there are warm rooms above and below; the exposure is S. E. How many B. T. U. will be required per hour for warming the room and how many for ventilation, in zero weather?

The total window surface is

$$6 \times 3 \times 6 = 108 \text{ square feet.}$$

The exposed surface of the room is

$$32 \times 12 + 28 \times 12 = 720 \text{ square feet.}$$

The exposed wall surface is

$$720 - 108 = 612 \text{ square feet.}$$

Heat loss through windows $= 108 \times 85 =$ 9180
Heat loss through walls $= 612 \times 19 =$ 11628

Total heat loss $= 20808$

Total corrected for S. E. exposure

$$= 20808 \times 1.06 = 22{,}056. \quad \text{Ans.}$$

Air supply required per hour

$$= 2400 \times 50 = 120{,}000 \text{ cubic feet.}$$

B. T. U. required for ventilation

$$= \frac{120{,}000 \times 70}{55} = 152{,}727. \quad \text{Ans.}$$

FURNACE HEATING.

Types of Furnaces. Furnaces may be divided into two general types known as direct and indirect draft. Fig. 28 shows a common form of **direct draft** furnace with a brick setting; the better class have a radiator, generally placed at the top, through which the gases pass before reaching the smoke pipe. They have but one damper usually combined with a cold-air check. Many of the cheaper direct draft furnaces have no radiator at all; the

Digitized by Google

gases passing directly into the smoke pipe and carrying away much heat that should be utilized.

The furnace shown in Fig. 28 is made of cast iron and has a large radiator at the top ; the smoke connection is shown at the rear.

Fig. 29 represents another form of direct draft furnace. In this case the radiator is made of sheet steel plates riveted together,

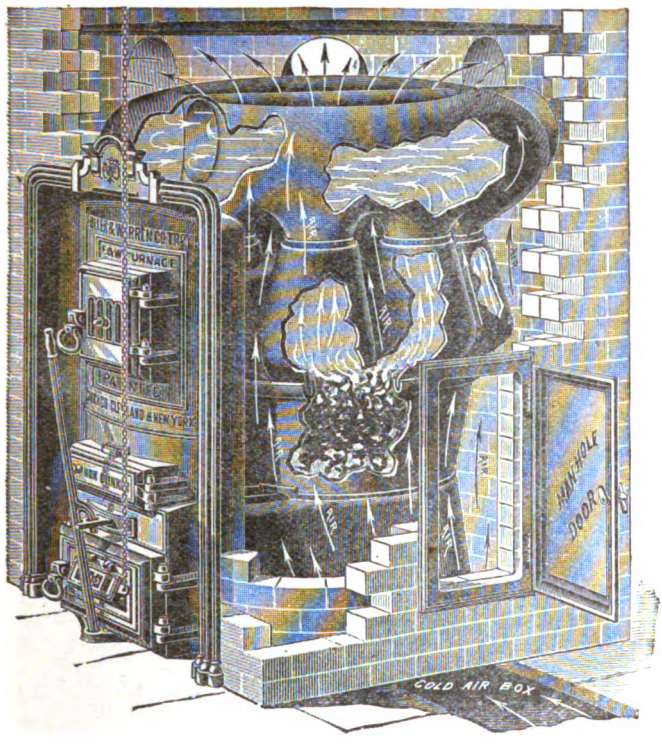


Fig. 28.

and the outer casing is of heavy galvanized iron instead of brick.

In the ordinary **indirect draft** type of furnace (see Fig. 30) the gases pass downward through flues to a radiator located near the base, thence upward, through another flue to the smoke pipe. In addition to the damper in the smoke pipe, a direct draft damper is required to give direct connection with the funnel when coal is first put on, to facilitate the escape of gas to the chimney. When

Digitized by Google

the chimney draft is weak, trouble from gas is more likely to be experienced with furnaces of this type than with those having a direct draft.

Grates. No part of a furnace is of more importance than the grates. The plain grate rotating about a center pin was for a long time the one most commonly used. These grates were usually

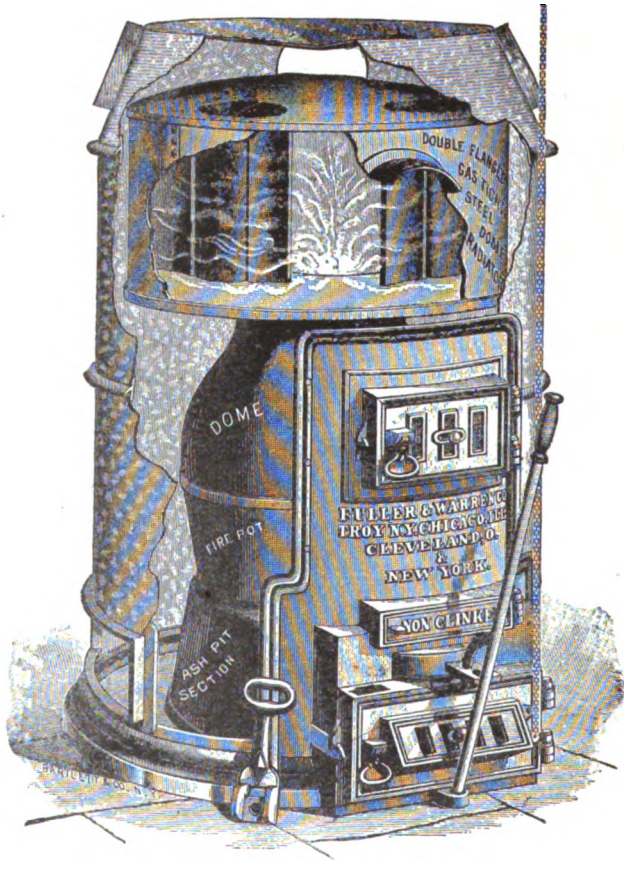


Fig. 29.

provided with a clinker door for removing any refuse too large to pass between the grate bars. The action of such grates tends to leave a cone of ashes in the center of the fire causing it to burn more freely around the edges. A better form of grate is the revolving triangular pattern which is now used in many of the lead-

Digitized by Google

ing furnaces. It consists of a series of triangular bars having teeth. The bars are connected by gears and are turned by means of a detachable lever. If properly used this grate will cut a slice of ashes and clinkers from under the entire fire with little, if any loss of unconsumed coal.

The Fire Pot. Fire pots are generally made of cast iron or of steel plate lined with fire brick. The depth ranges from about

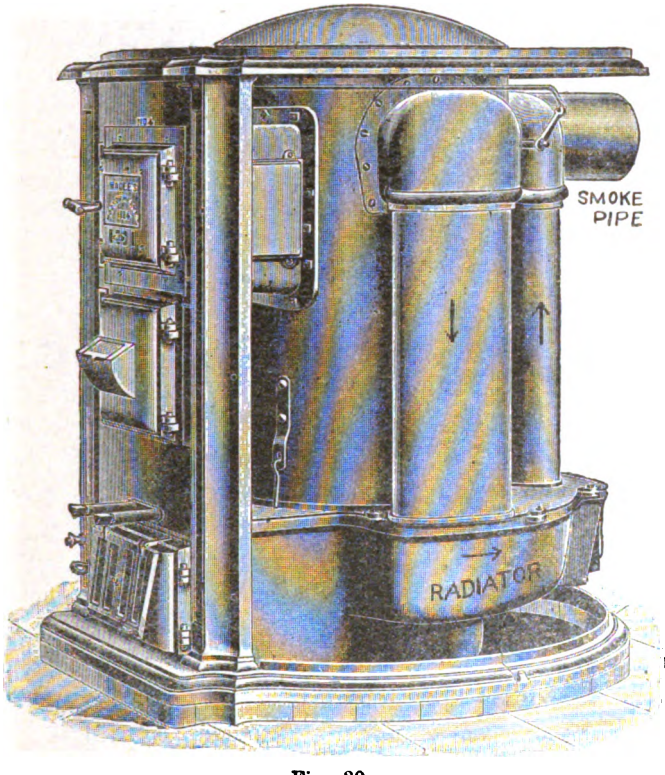


Fig. 30.

12 to 18 inches. In cast iron furnaces of the better class the fire pot is made very heavy to insure durability and to render it less likely to become red hot. The fire pot is sometimes made in two pieces to reduce the liability of cracking. The heating surface is sometimes increased by corrugations, pins or ribs.

A fire brick lining is necessary in a wrought iron or steel furnace to protect the thin shell from the intense heat of the fire.

Digitized by Google

Since brick lined fire pots are much less effective than cast iron in transmitting heat, such furnaces depend to a great extent for their efficiency on the heating surface in the dome and radiator, and this as a rule is much greater than in those of cast iron.

Cast iron furnaces have the advantage when coal is first put on, (and the drop flues and radiator are cut out by the direct damper) of still giving off heat from the fire pot, while in the case of brick linings very little heat is given off in this way and the rooms are likely to become somewhat cooled before the fresh coal becomes thoroughly ignited.

Combustion Chamber. The body of the furnace above the fire pot, commonly called the dome or feed section, provides a combustion chamber. This chamber should be of sufficient size to permit the gases to become thoroughly mixed with the air passing up through the fire or entering through openings provided for the purpose in the feed door. In a well-designed furnace this space should be somewhat larger than the fire pot.

Radiator. The radiator, so called, with which all furnaces of the better class are provided, acts as a sort of reservoir in which the gases are kept in contact with the air passing over the furnace until they have parted with a considerable portion of their heat. Radiators are built of cast iron, of steel plate or of a combination of the two. The former is more durable and can be made with fewer joints, but owing to the difficulty of casting radiators of large size, steel plate is commonly used for the sides.

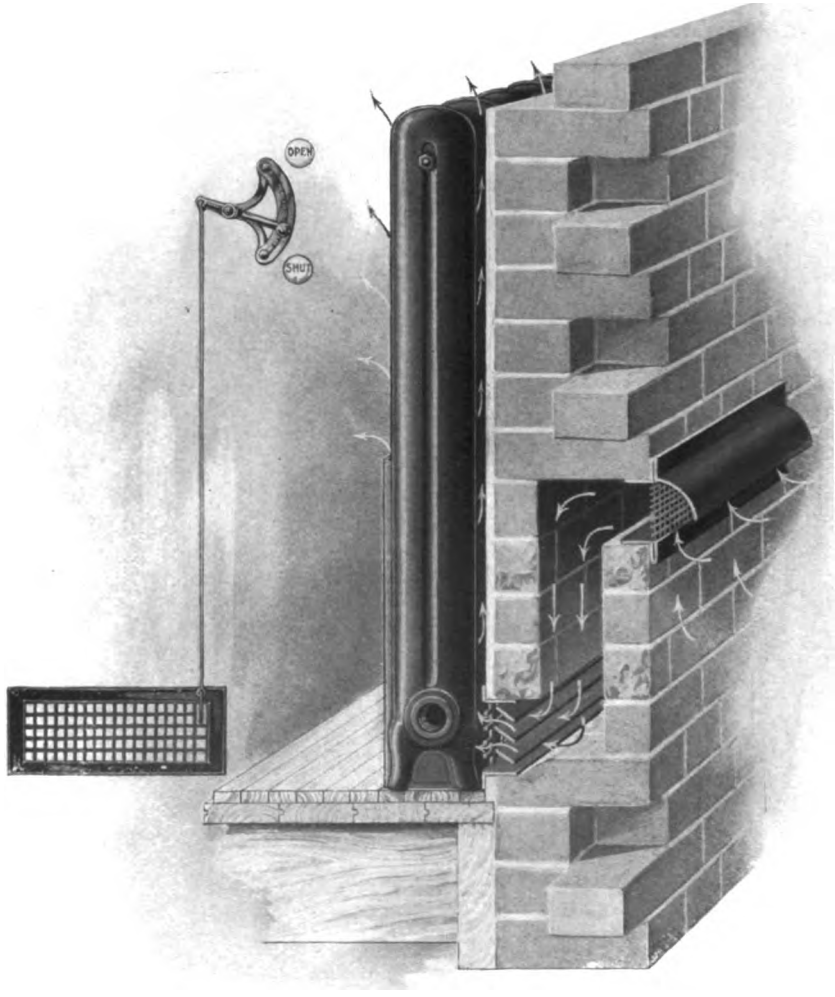
The effectiveness of a radiator depends on its form, its heating surface and the difference between the temperature of the gases and the surrounding air. Owing to the accumulation of soot, the bottom surface becomes practically worthless after the furnace has been in use a short time; surfaces to be effective must therefore be self-cleaning.

If the radiator is placed near the bottom of the furnace the gases are surrounded by air at the lowest temperature, which renders the radiator more effective for a given size than if placed near the top and surrounded by warm air. On the other hand, the cold air has a tendency to condense the gases, and the acids thus formed are likely to corrode the iron.

Heating Surface. The different heating surfaces may be

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google



DIRECT-INDIRECT SYSTEM OF WARMING, SHOWING ADJUSTABLE DAMPER.
American Radiator Company.

Digitized by Google

described as follows: Fire pot surface; surfaces acted upon by direct rays of heat from the fire, such as the dome or combustion chamber; gas or smoke heated surfaces, such as flues or radiators and extended surfaces, such as pins or ribs. Surfaces unlike in character and location, vary greatly in heating power, so that in making comparisons of different furnaces we must know the kind, form and location of the heating surfaces as well as the area.

In some furnaces having an unusually large amount of surface, it will be found on inspection that a large part would soon become practically useless from the accumulation of soot. In others a large portion of the surface is lined with fire brick, or is so situated that the air currents are not likely to strike it.

The ratio of grate to heating surface varies somewhat according to the size of furnace. It may be taken as varying from 1 to 25 in the smaller sizes and 1 to 15 in the larger.

Efficiency. One of the first items to be determined in estimating the heating capacity of a furnace is its efficiency, that is, the proportion of the heat in the coal that may be utilized for warming. The efficiency depends chiefly on the area of the heating surface as compared with the grate, on its character and arrangement, and on the rate of combustion. The usual proportions between grate and heating surface have been stated. The rate of combustion required to maintain a temperature of 70° in the house depends of course on the outside temperature. In very cold weather a rate of 4 to 5 pounds of coal per square foot of grate per hour must be maintained.

One pound of good anthracite coal will give off about 13000 B. T. U. and a good furnace should utilize 70 per cent. of this heat. The efficiency of an ordinary furnace is often much less, sometimes as low as 50 per cent.

In estimating the required size of a first-class furnace with good chimney draft we may safely count upon a maximum combustion of 5 pounds of coal per square foot of grate per hour, and may assume that 8000 B. T. U. will be utilized for warming purposes from each pound burned. This quantity corresponds to an efficiency of 60 per cent.

Heating Capacity. Having determined the heat loss from a building by the methods given, it is a simple matter to compute

Digitized by Google

the size of grate necessary to burn a sufficient quantity of coal to furnish the amount of heat required for warming.

As a matter of illustration we may consider the heat delivered to the rooms as made up of two parts; first, that required to warm the outside air up to 70° (the temperature of the rooms) and second, the quantity which must be added to this to offset the loss through walls and windows. Air is usually delivered at the registers at about 140 degrees under zero conditions outside; this air leaves the rooms by leakage at a temperature of 70 degrees, (the normal inside temperature) having lost one-half its heat by conduction, radiation, etc., so that the heat given to the entering air must be twice that which we have computed for loss through walls, etc.

Example. — The loss through the walls and windows of a building is found to be 80000 B. T. U. per hour in zero weather, what will be the size of furnace required to maintain an inside temperature of 70 degrees?

From the above we have the total heat required, equal to $80000 \times 2 = 160000$ B. T. U. per hour. If we assume that 8000 B. T. U. are utilized per pound of coal, then $160000 \div 8000 = 20$ pounds of coal required per hour, and if 5 pounds can be burned on each square foot of grate per hour, then $\frac{20}{5} = 4$ square feet required. A fire pot 28 inches in diameter has an area of 4.27 square feet and is the size we should use.

The following table will be found useful in determining the diameter of fire pot required:

TABLE V.

AVERAGE DIAMETER OF FIRE POT IN INCHES.	AREA IN SQUARE FEET.
18	1.77
20	2.18
22	2.64
24	3.14
26	3.69
28	4.27
30	4.91
32	5.58

Digitized by Google

If the outside temperature is below zero the method of computation becomes slightly different. We have seen that in zero weather a certain quantity of heat is required to raise the temperature of the entering air from zero to 70°, the temperature of the room, and that a second quantity must then be added to raise the temperature of the air to 140 °, which is the usual temperature of delivery at the registers. This last quantity is to offset that lost by radiation and conduction, and must equal the heat loss from the building as computed by the factors given in tables III. and IV. The air has been raised through 140 degrees and $\frac{70}{140}$ of the heat supplied has been used to raise it to the temperature of the room and has been lost by leakage; while the remaining $\frac{70}{140}$, an equal amount, has been given up by radiation and conduction. In this case we have only to compute the heat loss for radiation and conduction by the rules given and multiply this result by 2 to obtain the total amount of heat to be supplied by the furnace.

Now take a case where it is 10 degrees below zero. If the air is delivered to the rooms at 140 degrees as before, it must be warmed through 150 degrees. Of the heat supplied $\frac{80}{150}$ has been used to raise the temperature of the outside air to that of the room, and only $\frac{70}{150}$ for loss by radiation and conduction. As in the preceding example, this latter quantity must equal the computed heat loss through walls and windows; and as it is only $\frac{70}{150}$ or .466 of the total amount of heat required we must multiply it by $1 \div .466 = 2.14$ instead of by 2 as in the first case where the outside temperature is zero.

In the same manner multiply by 2.28 for 20 degrees below zero and by 2.42 for 30 degrees.

Example.— A brick house is 20 feet wide, and has 4 stories, each being 10 feet in height. The house is one of a block and is exposed only at the front and rear. The walls are 16 inches thick and the block is so sheltered that no correction need be made for exposure. Single windows make up $\frac{1}{8}$ the total exposed surface. Figure for cold attic but warm basement. What area of grate surface will be required for a furnace to keep

Digitized by Google

the house at 70° when it is 10° below zero outside?

Exposed surface $= 2 \times 20 \times 40 = 1600$ sq. ft.

Loss through windows $= 200 \times 93 = 18{,}600$ B. T. U.

Loss through walls $= 1400 \times 22 = 30{,}800$

Loss through walls and windows $= 49{,}400$

Entire heat loss, allowing for attic

$= 49{,}400 \times 1.1 = 54{,}340$ B. T. U.

B. T. U. required $= 54{,}340 \times 2.14 = 116{,}288$

$$\frac{116{,}288}{5 \times 8000} = 2.90 \text{ sq. ft. of grate.} \qquad \text{Ans.}$$

Location of Furnace. A furnace should be so placed that the warm-air pipes will be of nearly the same length. The air travels most readily through pipes leading toward the sheltered side of the house and to the upper rooms. Therefore pipes leading toward the north or west or to rooms on the first floor should be favored in regard to length and size. The furnace should be placed somewhat to the north or west of the center of the house or toward the points of compass from which the prevailing winds blow.

Smoke Pipes. Furnace smoke pipes range in size from about 6 inches in the smaller sizes to 8 or 9 inches in the larger ones. They are generally made of galvanized iron of No. 24 gauge or heavier. The pipe should be carried to the chimney as directly as possible, avoiding bends which increase the resistance and diminish the draft. Where a smoke pipe passes through a partition it should be protected by a soapstone or double perforated metal collar having a diameter at least 8 inches greater than that of the pipe. The top of the smoke pipe should not be placed within 8 inches of unprotected beams nor less than 6 inches under beams protected by asbestos or plaster with a metal shield beneath. A collar to make tight connection with the chimney should be riveted to the pipe about 5 inches from the end to prevent its being pushed too far into the flue. Where the pipe is of unusual length it is well to cover it to prevent loss of heat and the condensation of smoke.

Chimney Flues. Chimney flues if built of brick should have walls 8 inches in thickness, unless terra cotta linings are used, when only 4 inches of brick work is required. Except in small houses where an 8 × 8 flue may be used, the nominal size of the

Digitized by Google

smoke flue should be at least 8 × 12 to allow for contractions or offsets. A clean-out door should be placed at the bottom of the flue for removing ashes and soot. A square flue cannot be reckoned at its full area as the corners are of little value. To avoid down drafts the top of the chimney must be carried above the highest point of the roof unless provided with a suitable hood or top.

Cold-Air Box. The cold-air box should be large enough to supply a volume of air sufficient to fill all the hot-air pipes at the same time. If the supply is too small, the distribution is sure to be unequal and the cellar will become overheated from lack of air to carry away the heat generated.

If a box is made too small or is throttled down so that the volume of air entering the furnace is not large enough to fill all the pipes it will be found that those leading to the less exposed side of the house or to the upper rooms will take the entire supply, and that additional air to supply the deficiency will be drawn down through registers in rooms less favorably situated. It is common practice to make the area of the cold-air box three-fourths the combined area of the hot-air pipes. The inlet should be placed where the prevailing cold winds will blow into it; this is commonly on the north or west side of the house. If it is placed on the side away from the wind, warm air from the furnace is likely to be drawn out through the cold-air box.

Whatever may be the location of the entrance to the cold-air box, changes in the direction of the wind may take place which will bring the inlet on the wrong side of the house. To prevent the possibility of such changes affecting the action of the furnace the cold-air box is sometimes extended through the house and left open at both ends, with check-dampers arranged to prevent back drafts. These checks should be placed some distance from the entrance to prevent their becoming clogged with show or sleet. The cold-air box is generally made of matched boards, but galvanized iron is much better; it costs more than wood but is well worth the extra expense on account of tightness which keeps the dust and ashes from being drawn into the furnace casing to be discharged through the registers into the rooms above.

The cold-air inlet should be covered with galvanized wire

Digitized by Google

netting with a mesh of at least three-eighths of an inch. The frame to which it is attached should not be smaller than the inside dimensions of the cold-air box. A door to admit air from the cellar to the cold-air box is generally provided. As a rule air should be taken from this source only when the house is temporarily unoccupied or during high winds.

Return Duct. In some cases it is desirable to return air to the furnace from the rooms above, to be reheated. Ducts for this purpose are common in places where the winter temperature is frequently below zero. Return ducts when used, should be in addition to the regular cold-air box. Fig. 31 shows a common method of making the connection between the two. By proper adjustment of the swinging damper the air can be taken either from out of doors or through the register from the room above. The return register is often placed in the hallway of a house so that it will take the cold air which rushes in when the door is opened and also that which may leak in around it while closed. Check valves or flaps of light gossamer or woolen cloth should be placed between the cold-air box and the registers to prevent back drafts during winds.

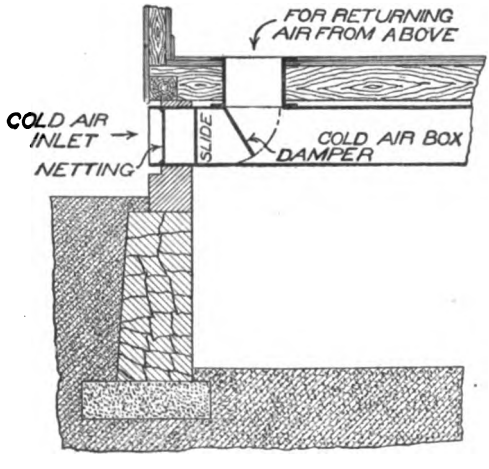


Fig. 31.

The return duct should not be used too freely at the expense of outdoor air, and its use is not recommended except during the night when air is admitted to the sleeping rooms through open windows.

Warm-Air Pipes. The required size of the warm-air pipe to any given room depends upon the heat loss from the room and the volume of warm air required to offset this loss. Each cubic foot of air warmed from zero to 140 degrees brings into a room 2.2 B. T. U. We have already seen that in zero weather with the air

Digitized by Google

entering the registers at 140 degrees, only one-half of the heat contained in the air is available for offsetting the losses by radiation and conduction, so that only 1.1 B. T. U. in each cubic foot of entering air, can be utilized for warming purposes. Therefore if we divide the computed heat loss in B. T. U. from a room, by 1.1 it will give the number of cubic feet of air at 140 degrees necessary to warm the room in zero weather.

As the outside temperature becomes colder the quantity of heat brought in per cubic foot of air increases, but the proportion available for warming purposes becomes less at nearly the same rate, so that for all practical purposes we may use the figure 1.1 for all usual conditions. In calculating the size of pipe required, we may assume maximum velocities of 280 and 400 feet per minute for rooms on the first and second floors respectively. Knowing the number of cubic feet of air per minute to be delivered, we can divide it by the velocity, which will give us the required area of the pipe in square feet.

Round pipes of tin or galvanized iron are used for this purpose. The following table will be found useful in determining the required diameters of pipe in inches.

TABLE VI.

DIA. OF PIPE IN INCHES.	AREA IN SQ. INCHES.	AREA IN SQUARE FEET.
6	28	.196
7	38	.267
8	50	.349
9	64	.442
10	79	.545
11	95	.660
12	113	.785
13	133	.922
14	154	1.07
15	177	1.23
16	201	1.40

Example. — The heat loss from a room on the second floor is 22,000 B. T. U., per hour. What diameter of warm air pipe will be required?

Digitized by Google

22,000 ÷ 1.1 = 20,000 = cubic feet of air required per hour. 20,000 ÷ 60 = 333 per minute. Assuming a velocity of 400 feet per minute we have 333 ÷ 400 = .832 square feet, which is the area of pipe required. Referring to table VI. we find this comes between a 12 and 13-inch pipe and the larger size would probably be chosen.

Example.— A first floor room has a computed loss of 33,000 B. T. U. per hour when it is 10° below zero. The air for warming is to enter through two pipes of equal size, and at a temperature of 140 degrees. What will be the required diameter of the pipes?

There will be needed 33,000 ÷ 1.1 = 30,000 cubic feet of air per hour, or 500 cubic feet per minute. At a velocity of 280 feet per minute, the pipe area must be 500 ÷ 280 = 1.786. This is conveniently obtained by two 13-inch pipes.

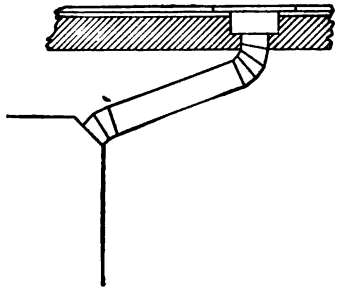


Fig. 32

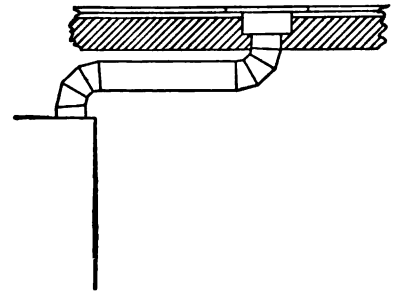


Fig. 33.

Since long horizontal runs of pipe increase the resistance and loss of heat, they should not in general be over 15 feet in length. This applies especially to pipes leading to rooms on the first floor or to those on the cold side of the house. Pipes of excessive length should be increased in size because of the added resistance.

Figs. 32 and 33 show common methods of running the pipes in the basement. The first gives the best results and should be used where the basement is of sufficient height to allow it. A damper should be placed in each pipe near the furnace for regulating the flow of air to the different rooms or for shutting them off entirely when desired.

Digitized by Google

While round pipe risers give the best results, it is not always possible to provide a sufficient space for them, and flat or oval pipes are substituted. When vertical pipes must be placed in single partitions, much better results will be obtained if the studding can be made 5 or 6 inches deep instead of 4 as is usually done. Flues should never in any case be made less than $3\frac{1}{2}$ inches in depth. Each room should be heated by a separate pipe. In some cases however, it is allowable to run a single riser to heat two unimportant rooms on an upper floor. A clear space of at least $\frac{1}{2}$ inch should be left between the risers and studs and the latter should be carefully tinned, and the space between them on both sides covered with tin, asbestos or wire lath.

The following table gives the capacity of oval pipes. A 6-inch pipe ovaled to 5 means that a 6-inch pipe has been flattened out to a thickness of 5 inches and column 2 gives the resulting area.

TABLE VII.

DIMENSION OF PIPE.	AREA IN SQUARE INCHES.
6 ovaled to 5	27
7 " " 4	31
7 " " $3\frac{1}{2}$	29
7 " " 6	38
8 " " 5	43
9 " " 4	45
10 " " $3\frac{1}{2}$	46
9 " " 6	57
9 " " 5	51
11 " " 4	58
12 " " $3\frac{1}{2}$	55
10 " " 6	67
11 " " 5	67
14 " " 4	76
15 " " $3\frac{1}{2}$	73
12 " " 6	85
12 " " 5	75
19 " " 4	96
20 " " $3\frac{1}{2}$	100

Having determined the size of round pipe required, an equiva-

Digitized by Google

lent oval pipe can be selected from the table to suit the space available.

Registers. The registers which control the supply of warm air to the rooms, generally have a net area equal to two-thirds of their gross area. The net area should be from 10 to 20 per cent greater than the area of the pipe connected with it. It is common practice to use registers having the short dimension equal to, and the long dimension about one-half greater than the diameter of the pipe. This would give the following standard sizes for different diameters of pipe.

TABLE VIII.

DIAMETER OF PIPE.	SIZE OF REGISTER.
6	6 × 10
7	7 × 10
8	8 × 12
9	9 × 14
10	10 × 15
11	11 × 16
12	12 × 17
13	14 × 20
14	14 × 22
15	15 × 22
16	16 × 24

Combination Systems. A combination system for heating by hot air and hot water consists of an ordinary furnace with some form of surface for heating water, placed either in contact with the fire or suspended above it. Fig. 34 shows a common arrangement where part of the heating surface forms a portion of the lining to the fire pot and the remainder is above the fire.

Care must be taken to properly proportion the work to be done by the air and the water, else one will operate at the expense of the other. One square foot of heating surface in contact with the fire is capable of supplying from 40 to 50 square feet of radiating surface, and one square foot suspended over the fire will supply from 15 to 25 square feet of radiation.

Care and Management. The following general rules apply to the management of all hard coal furnaces.

Digitized by Google

The fire should be thoroughly shaken once or twice daily in cold weather. It is well to keep the fire pot heaping full at all times. In this way a more even temperature may be maintained, less attention required and no more coal burned than when the

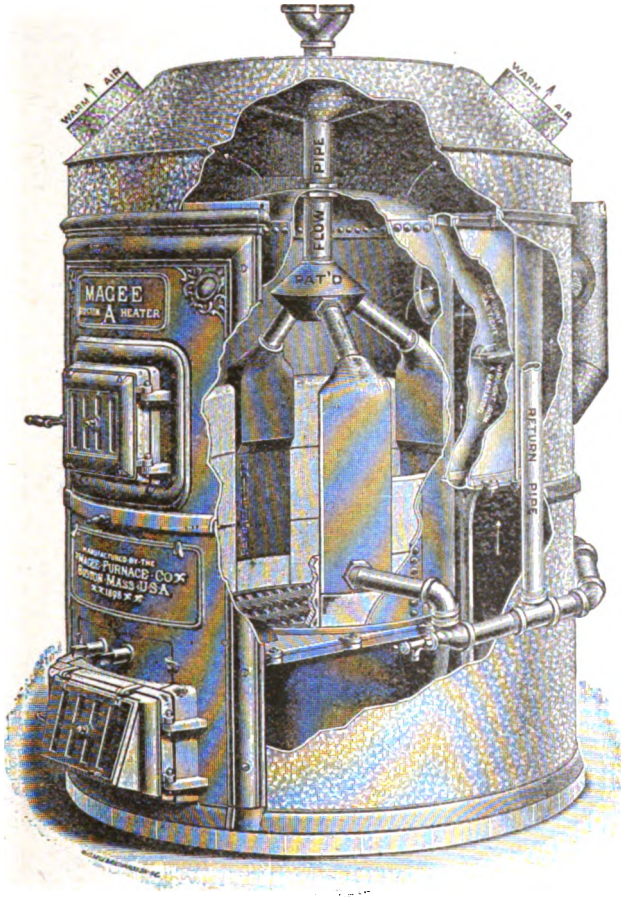


Fig. 34.

pot is only partly filled. In mild weather the mistake is frequently made of carrying a thin fire, which requires frequent attention and is likely to die out. Instead, to diminish the temperature in the house, keep the fire pot full and allow ashes to accumulate on the grate (not under it) by shaking less frequently

Digitized by Google

or less vigorously. The ashes will hold the heat and render it an easy matter to maintain and control the fire. When feeding coal on a low fire, open the drafts and neither rake nor shake the fire till the fresh coal becomes ignited. The air supply to the fire is of the greatest importance. An insufficient amount results in incomplete combustion and a great loss of heat. To secure proper combustion the fire should be controlled principally by means of the ash pit, through the ash pit door or slide.

The smoke pipe damper should be opened only enough to carry off the gas or smoke and to give the necessary draft. The openings in the feed door act as a check on the fire and should be kept closed during cold weather, except just after firing, when with a good draft they may be partly opened to increase the air supply and promote the proper combustion of the gases.

Keep the ash pit clear to avoid warping or melting the grate. The cold-air box should be kept wide open except during winds or when the fire is low. At such times it may be partly, but never completely closed. Too much stress cannot be laid on the importance of a sufficient air supply to the furnace. It costs little if any more to maintain a comfortable temperature in the house night and day than to allow the rooms to become so cold during the night that the fire must be forced in the morning to warm them up to a comfortable temperature.

In case the warm air fails at times to reach certain rooms it may be forced into them by temporarily closing the registers in other rooms. The current once established will generally continue after the other registers have been opened.

It is best to burn as hard coal as the draft will warrant. Egg size is better than larger coal, since for a given weight small lumps expose more surface and ignite more quickly than larger ones. The furnace and smoke pipe should be thoroughly cleaned once a year. This should be done just after the fire has been allowed to go out in the spring.

STEAM BOILERS.

Types. The boilers used for heating are the same as have already been described for power work. In addition there is the

Digitized by Google

cast-iron sectional boiler, which is almost exclusively used for dwelling houses.

Sectional Boilers. Fig. 35 shows a common form of cast-iron boiler. It is made up of slabs or sections, each one of which is connected by nipples with headers at the sides and top. The top header acts as a steam drum and the lower ones act as mud drums; they also receive the water of condensation from the radiators. The gases from the fire pass backward and forward

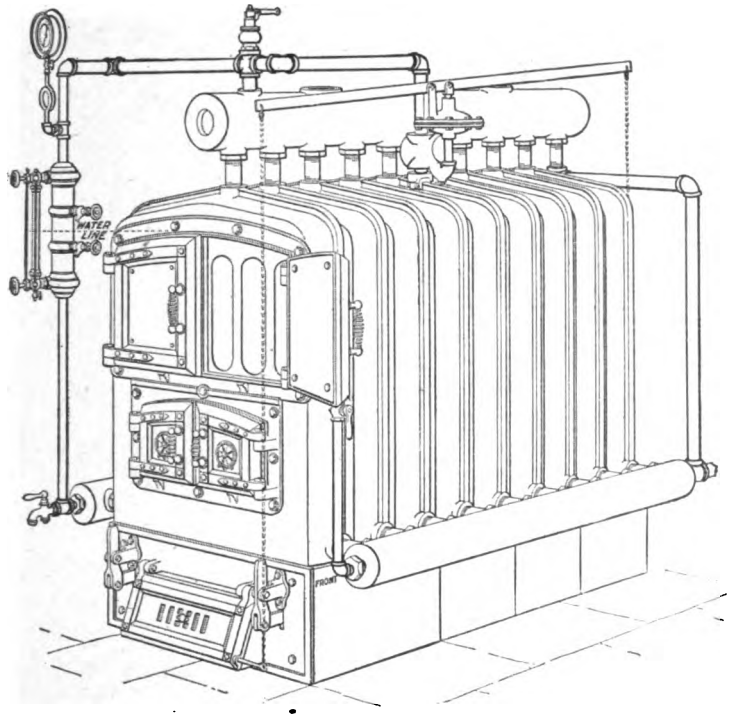


Fig. 35.

through flues and are finally taken off at the rear of the boiler. The ratio of heating to grate surface in this type of boiler ranges from 15 to 25 in the best makes. They are provided with the usual attachments, such as pressure gage, water glass, gage cocks and safety valve; a low-pressure damper regulator is furnished for operating the draft doors, thus keeping the steam pressure practically constant. A pressure of from 1 to 5 pounds is usually

Digitized by Google

carried on these boilers depending upon the outside temperature. The usual setting is simply a covering of some kind of non-conducting material like plastic magnesia or asbestos, although some forms are enclosed in light brickwork. Fig. 36 shows one of this kind with part of the setting removed. In computing the required size we may proceed in the same manner as in the case

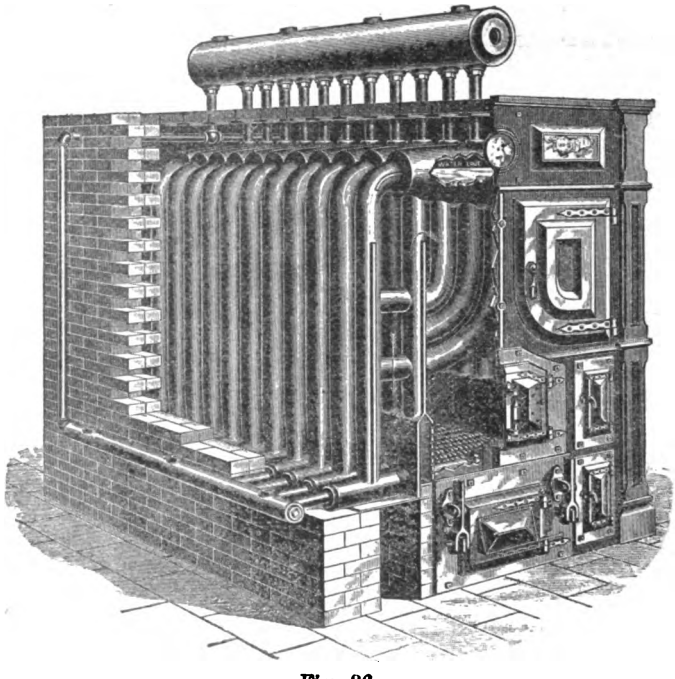


Fig. 36.

of a furnace. For the best types we may assume a combustion of 5 pounds of coal per square foot of grate per hour, and an average efficiency of 60 per cent, which corresponds to 8,000 B. T. U. per pound of coal, available for useful work.

In the case of direct steam heating we have only to supply heat to offset that lost by radiation and conduction, so the grate area may be found by dividing the computed heat loss per hour by 8,000 which gives the number of pounds of coal, and this in turn divided by 5 will give the area of grate required. The most efficient rate of combustion will depend somewhat upon the ratio between the grate and heating surface. It has been found by

Digitized by Google

experiment that about $\frac{1}{4}$ of a pound of coal per hour for each square foot of heating surface gives the best results, so that by knowing the ratio of heating surface to grate area for any make of heater we may easily compute the most efficient rate of combustion and from it determine the necessary grate area.

For example — The heat loss from a building is 480,000 B. T. U. per hour; we wish to use a heater in which the ratio of heating surface to grate area is 24, what will be the most efficient rate of combustion and the required grate area? $480{,}000 \div 8{,}000 = 60$ pounds of coal per hour, and $24 \div 4 = 6$. which is the best rate of combustion to employ, therefore $60 \div 6 = 10$, the grate area required.

Example.— The heat loss from a building is 168,000 B. T. U. per hour and the chimney draft is such that not over 3 pounds of coal per hour can be burned per square foot of grate. What ratio of heating to grate area will be necessary and what will be the required grate area?

The coal necessary is $168{,}000 \div 8000 = 21$ pounds per hour, requiring 7 square feet of grate surface at the given rate of combustion. Allowing $\frac{1}{4}$ pound per square foot, we need $21 \div \frac{1}{4} = 84$ square feet of heating surface, and this gives a ratio of $84 \div 7 = 12$. Ans.

Cast iron sectional boilers are used for dwelling houses, small schoolhouses, churches, etc., where low pressures are carried. They are increased in size by adding more slabs or sections. After a certain length is reached the rear sections become less and less efficient, thus limiting the size and power.

Tubular Boilers. Tubular boilers are largely used for heating purposes, and are adapted to all classes of buildings except dwelling houses and the special cases mentioned for which sectional boilers are preferable. The capacity of this type of boiler is usually stated as so many horse-power, and the method of determining the size is different from that just described. A boiler horse-power has been defined as the evaporation of $34\frac{1}{2}$ pounds of water from and at a temperature of 212 degrees, and in doing this 33,317 B. T. U. are absorbed, which are again given out when the steam is condensed in the radiators. Hence to find the boiler H. P. required for warming any given building we have only to

Digitized by Google

compute the heat loss per hour by the methods already given and divide the result by 33,330. It is more common to divide by the number 33,000, which gives a slightly larger boiler and is on the side of safety. The ratio of heating to grate surface in this type of boiler ranges from 30 to 40 and therefore allows a combustion of from 8 to 10 pounds of coal per square foot of grate. This is easily obtained with a good chimney draft and careful firing. The larger the boiler, the more important the plant usually, and the greater the care bestowed upon it so that we may generally count on a higher rate of combustion and a greater efficiency as the size of the boiler increases. The following table will be found useful in determining the size of boiler required under different conditions. The grate area is computed for an evaporation of 8 pounds of water per pound of coal, which corresponds to an efficiency of about 60 per cent and is about the average obtained in practice for heating boilers.

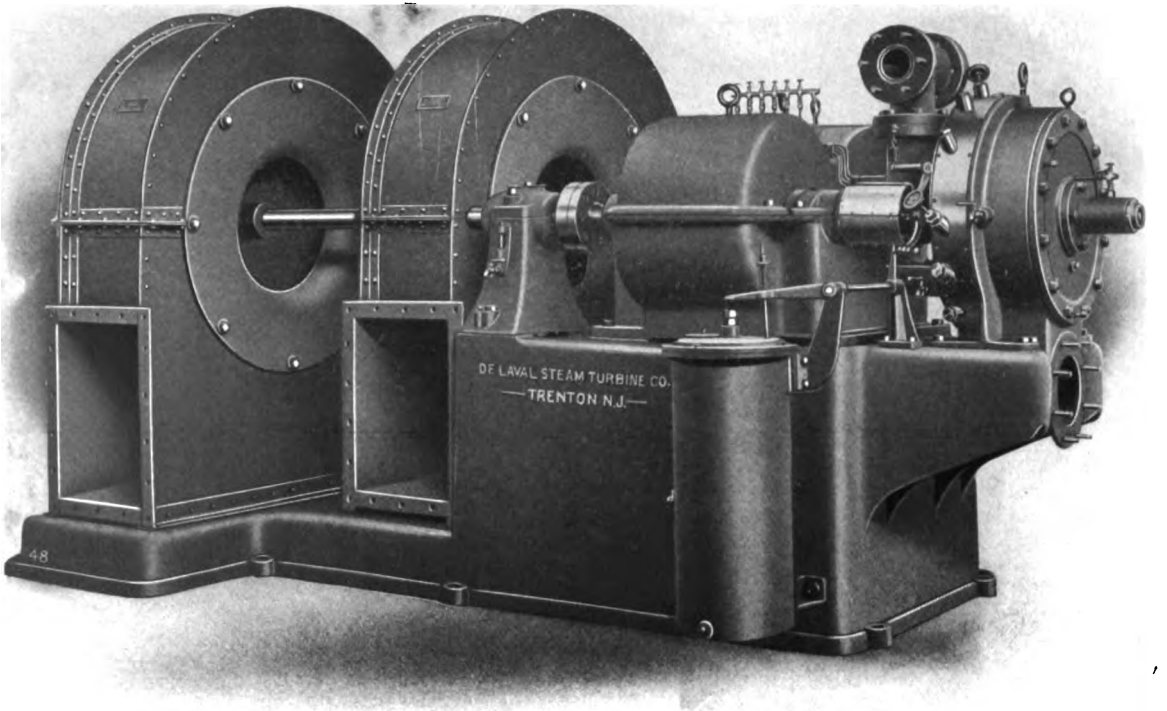
The areas of uptake and smoke pipe are figured on a basis of 1 square foot to 7 square feet of grate surface and the results given in round numbers. In the smaller sizes the relative size of smoke pipe is greater. The rate of combustion runs from 6 pounds in the smaller sizes to $11\frac{1}{2}$ in the larger. Boilers of the proportions given in the table, correspond well with those used in actual practice and may be relied upon to give good results under all ordinary conditions.

Water-tube boilers are often used for heating purposes but more especially in connection with power plants. The method of computing the required H. P. is the same as for tubular boilers.

Horse Power for Ventilation. We already know that one B. T. U. will raise the temperature of 1 cubic foot of air 55 degrees, or it will raise 100 cubic feet $\frac{1}{100}$ of 55 or $\frac{55}{100}$ of 1 degree, therefore to raise 100 cubic feet 1 degree it will take $1 \div \frac{55}{100}$ or $\frac{100}{55}$ B. T. U., and to raise 100 cubic feet through 100 degrees it would take $\frac{100}{55} \times 100$ B. T. U. In other words, the B. T. U. required to raise any given volume of air through any number of degrees in temperature is equal to

$$\frac{\text{Volume of air in cubic ft.} \times \text{Degrees raised}}{55}$$

Digitized by Google



150 H.P. DE LAVAL TURBINE BLOWER.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

TABLE IX.

Diameter of Shell in Inches.	Number of Tubes.	Diameter of Tubes in Inches.	Length of Tubes in Feet.	Horse Power.	Size of Grate in Inches.	Size of Uptake in Inches.	Size of smokepipe in sq. in.
30	28	2½	6	8.5	24 x 36	10 x 14	140
			7	9.9	24 x 36	10 x 14	140
			8	11.2	24 x 36	10 x 14	140
			9	12.6	24 x 42	10 x 14	140
			10	14.0	24 x 42	10 x 14	140
36	34	2½	8	13.6	30 x 36	10 x 16	160
			9	15.3	30 x 42	10 x 18	180
			10	16.9	30 x 42	10 x 18	180
			11	18.6	30 x 48	10 x 20	200
			12	20.9	30 x 48	10 x 20	200
42	34	3	9	18.5	36 x 42	10 x 20	200
			10	20.5	36 x 42	10 x 20	200
			11	22.5	36 x 48	10 x 25	250
			12	24.5	36 x 48	10 x 25	250
			13	26.5	36 x 48	10 x 28	280
			14	28.5	36 x 54	10 x 28	280
48	44	3	10	30.4	42 x 48	10 x 28	280
			11	33.2	42 x 48	10 x 28	280
			12	35.7	42 x 54	10 x 32	320
			13	38.3	42 x 54	10 x 32	320
			14	40.8	42 x 60	10 x 36	360
			15	43.4	42 x 60	10 x 36	360
			16	45.9	42 x 60	10 x 36	360
54	54	3	11	34.6	48 x 54	10 x 38	380
			12	37.7	48 x 54	10 x 38	380
			13	40.8	48 x 54	10 x 38	380
			14	43.6	48 x 54	10 x 38	380
			15	47.0	48 x 60	10 x 40	400
			16	50.1	48 x 60	10 x 40	400
	46	3½	17	53.0	48 x 60	10 x 40	400
60	72	3	12	48.4	54 x 60	12 x 40	460
			13	52.4	54 x 60	12 x 40	460
			14	56.4	54 x 60	12 x 40	460
			15	60.4	54 x 66	12 x 42	500
			16	64.4	54 x 66	12 x 42	500
	64	3½	17	71.4	54 x 72	12 x 48	550
			18	75.6	54 x 72	12 x 48	550
66	90	3	14	70.1	60 x 66	12 x 48	500
			15	75.0	60 x 72	12 x 52	620
			16	80.0	60 x 72	12 x 52	620
	78	3½	17	86.0	60 x 78	12 x 56	670
			18	91.1	60 x 78	12 x 56	670
			19	96.2	60 x 78	12 x 56	670
	62	4	20	93.1	60 x 78	12 x 56	670
72	114	3	14	87.4	66 x 72	12 x 56	670
			15	93.6	66 x 72	12 x 56	670
			16	99.7	66 x 78	12 x 62	740
	98	3½	17	106.4	66 x 78	12 x 62	740
			18	112.6	66 x 84	12 x 66	790
			19	118.8	66 x 84	12 x 66	790
	72	4	20	107.3	66 x 84	12 x 66	790

Digitized by Google

Example — How many B. T. U. are required to raise 100,000 cubic feet of air 70 degrees?

$$\frac{100{,}000 \times 70}{55} = 127{,}272 +$$

To compute the H. P. required for the ventilation of a building we multiply the total air supply in cubic feet per hour by the number of degrees through which it is to be raised, and divide the result by 55. This gives the B. T. U. per hour, which divided by 33,000 will give the H. P. required. In using this rule always take the air supply in cubic feet per *hour*.

Example.— A high school has 10 class rooms, each occupied by 50 pupils. Air is to be delivered to the rooms at a temperature of 70 degrees. What will be the total H. P. required to heat and ventilate the building when it is 10 degrees below zero if the heat loss through walls and windows is 1,320,000 B. T. U. per hour?

Cubic feet of air $= 3000 \times 10 \times 50 = 1{,}500{,}000$

To heat this quantity we need

$$\frac{1{,}500{,}000 \times 80}{5.5} = 2{,}181{,}800 \quad \text{B. T. U.}$$

Total B. T. U. $= 1{,}500{,}000 + 2{,}181{,}800 = 3{,}501{,}800$

Boiler H. P. $= 3{,}501{,}800 \div 33{,}000 = 106.$ Ans.

DIRECT STEAM HEATING.

Types of Radiating Surface. The radiation used in direct steam heating is made up of cast iron radiators of various forms, pipe radiators and circulation coils.

Cast Iron Radiators. The general form of cast iron sectional radiators has been shown in Fig. 2. They are made up of sections, the number depending upon the amount of heating surface required. Fig. 37 shows an intermediate section of a radiator of this type. It is simply a loop with inlet and outlet at the bottom. The end sections are the same, except they have legs as shown in Fig. 38. These sections are connected at the bottom by special nipples so that steam entering at the end fills the bottom of the radiator, and being lighter than the air rises through the loops and forces the air downward and toward the farther end, where it is discharged through an air-valve placed about midway

Digitized by Google

of the last section. There are many different designs varying in height and width, to suit all conditions. The wall pattern shown in Fig. 4 is very convenient when it is desired to place the radiator above the floor, as in bath rooms, etc.; it is also a convenient form to place under the windows of halls and churches to counteract the effect of cold down drafts. It is adapted to nearly every place where the ordinary direct radiator can be used and may be connected up in different ways to meet the various requirements.

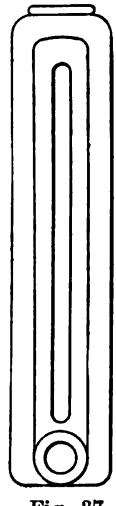


Fig. 37.

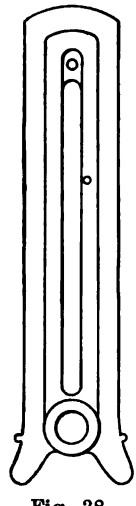


Fig. 38.

Pipe Radiators. This type of radiator (see Fig. 3) is made up of wrought iron pipes screwed into a cast iron base. The pipes are either connected in pairs at the top by return bends or each separate tube has a thin metal diaphragm passing up the center nearly to the top. It is necessary that a loop be formed else a "dead end" would occur. This would become filled with air and prevent steam from entering, thus causing portions of the radiator to remain cold. For a given surface the average pipe radiator is more efficient than the cast iron sectional radiator.

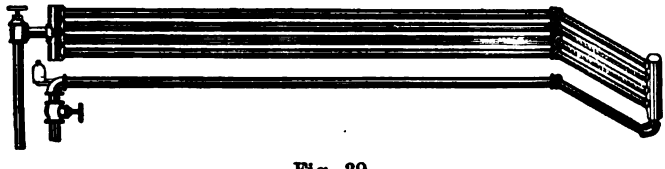


Fig. 39.

Circulation Coils. These are usually made up of 1 or $1\frac{1}{4}$-inch wrought iron pipe, and may be hung on the walls of a room by means of hook plates or suspended overhead on hangers and rolls.

Fig. 39 shows a common form for schoolhouse and similar

Digitized by Google

work; this coil is usually made of $1\frac{1}{4}$-inch pipe screwed into "headers" or "branch tees" at the ends, and is hung on the wall just below the windows. This is known as a "branch coil." Fig. 40 shows a "trombone coil," which is commonly used when the pipes cannot turn a corner, and where the entire coil must be placed upon one side of the room. Fig. 41 is called a "miter coil," and is used under the same conditions as a trombone coil if

Fig. 40.

there is room for the vertical portion. This form is not as pleasing in appearance as either of the other two and is only found in factories or shops where looks are of minor importance.

Overhead coils are usually of the "miter" form laid on the side and suspended about a foot from the ceiling; they are less efficient than when placed nearer the floor, as the warm air stays at the ceiling and the lower part of the room is likely to remain cold. They are only used when wall coils or radiators would be in the way of fixtures or when they would come below the water

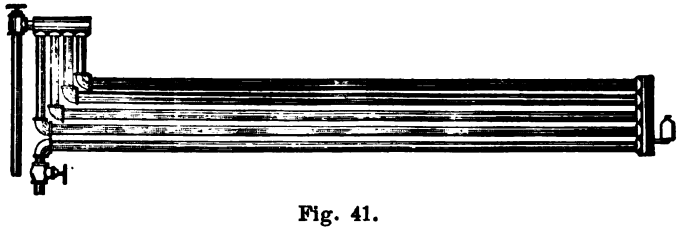


Fig. 41.

line of the boiler if placed near the floor. A coil should never be made up as shown in Fig. 42, as unequal expansion of the pipes would cause strains which would soon result in leaky joints. When steam is first turned on a coil it usually passes through a portion of the pipes first and heats them while the others remain cold and full of air. Therefore the coil must always be made up in such a way that each pipe shall have a certain amount of spring and may expand independently without bringing undue strains upon

Digitized by Google

the others. Circulation coils should incline about 1 inch in 20 feet toward the return end in order to secure proper drainage and quietness of operation.

Efficiency of Radiators. The efficiency of a radiator, that is, the B. T. U. which it gives off per square foot of surface per hour, depends upon the difference in temperature between the steam in the radiator and the surrounding air, the velocity of the air over the radiator, and the quality of the surface, whether smooth or rough. In ordinary low-pressure heating the first condition is practically constant, but the second varies somewhat with the pattern of the radiator. An open design which allows the air to circulate freely over the radiating surfaces is more efficient than a close pattern and for this reason a pipe coil is more efficient than a radiator.

In a large number of tests of cast iron radiators, working

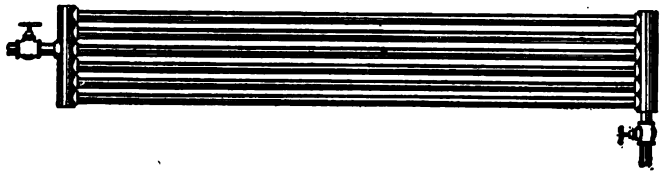


Fig. 42.

under usual conditions, the heat given off per square foot of surface per hour, for each degree difference in temperature between the steam and surrounding air, was found to vary from about 1.3 to 1.7 B. T. U. The temperature of steam at 3 pounds pressure is 220 degrees, and $220 - 70 = 150$, which may be taken as the average difference between the temperature of the steam and the air of the room, in ordinary low-pressure work. If we take the mean of the above results, that is, 1.5 we shall have $150 \times 1.5 = 225$ B. T. U. as the efficiency of an average cast iron radiator. A circulation coil made up of pipes from 1 to 2 inches in diameter will easily give off 300 B. T. U. under the same conditions, and a shallow pipe radiator of standard height may be safely counted upon to give 260. These efficiencies are lower than are given by some engineers, but if the sizes are taken from trade catalogues it is not safe to go much above these figures. If the radiator is to be used for warming rooms which are to be kept at a temperature

Digitized by Google

above or below 70 degrees, the radiating surface may be changed in the same proportion as the difference in temperature between the steam and the air.

For example — if a room is to be kept at a temperature of 60° the efficiency of the radiator becomes $\frac{160}{150} \times 225 = 240$; that is the efficiency varies directly as the difference in temperature between the steam and the air of the room. It is not customary to consider this unless the steam pressure should be raised to 10 or 15 pounds or the temperature of the rooms changed 15 or 20 degrees from the normal.

From the above it is easy to compute the size of radiator for any given room. First compute the heat loss per hour by radiation and conduction, in the coldest weather, then divide the result by 225 for cast iron radiators, 260 for pipe radiators and 300 for pipe coils. It is customary to make the radiators of such size, that they will warm the rooms to 70 degrees in the coldest weather. This varies a good deal in different localities, even in the same state, and the lowest temperature for which we wish to provide must be settled upon before any calculations are made. In New England and through the Middle and Western States it is usual to figure on warming a building to 70 degrees when the outside temperature is from zero to 10 degrees below.

The makers of radiators publish in their catalogues, tables giving the square feet of heating surface for different styles and heights, and these can be used in determining the number of sections required for all special cases.

If pipe coils are to be used, it becomes necessary to reduce square feet of heating surface to linear feet of pipe; this can be done by means of the factors given below.

$$\text{Square feet of heating surface} \times \begin{cases} 3 = \text{linear ft. of } 1'' \text{ pipe} \\ 2.3 = \text{“ “ } 1\frac{1}{4}'' \text{ “} \\ 2 = \text{“ “ } 1\frac{1}{2}'' \text{ “} \\ 1.6 = \text{“ “ } 2'' \text{ “} \end{cases}$$

The size of radiator is only made sufficient to keep the room warm after it is once heated, and no allowance is made for “warming up,” that is, the heat given off by the radiator is just equal to that lost through walls and windows. This condition is offset in two ways — first, when the room is cold, the difference

Digitized by Google

in temperature between the steam and air of the room is greater and the radiator is more efficient, and second the radiator is proportioned for the coldest weather so that for a greater part of the time it is larger than necessary. This last condition is one of the disadvantages of direct steam heating; if steam is on the radiator

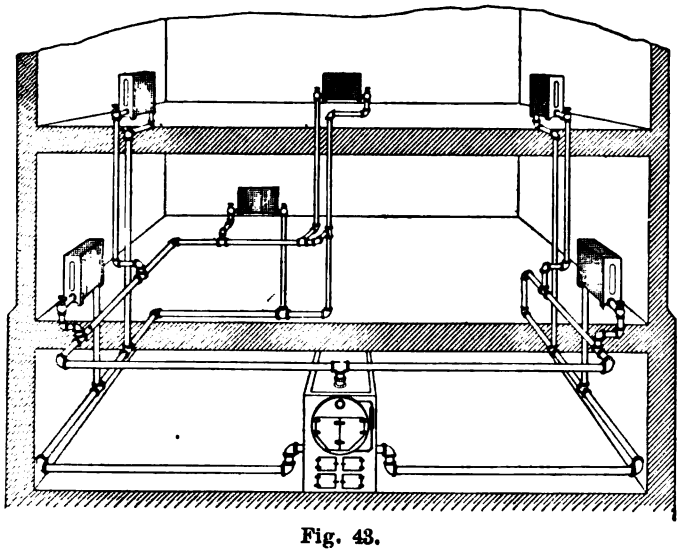


Fig. 43.

at all it will give off the same amount of heat regardless of the outside temperature.

Example.— A schoolroom is to be warmed with circulation coils of $1\frac{1}{4}$-inch pipe. The heat loss is 30,000 B. T. U. per hour; what length of pipe will be required?

The heating surface of a pipe coil will be

$$\frac{30{,}000}{300} = 100 \text{ square feet.}$$

Therefore we need

$$2.3 \times 100 = 230 \text{ linear feet of } 1\tfrac{1}{4}\text{-inch pipe.}$$

Location. Radiators should be placed in the coldest part of the room if possible, as under windows or near outside doors. In living rooms it is often desirable to keep the windows free, in which case the radiators may be placed at one side. Circulation coils are run along the outside walls of a room under the

Digitized by Google

windows. Sometimes the position of the radiators is decided by the necessary location of the pipe risers, so that a certain amount of judgment must be used in each special case as to the best arrangement to suit all requirements.

Systems of Piping. There are three distinct systems of piping, known as the "two-pipe system," the "one-pipe relief system," and the "one-pipe circuit system," with various modifications of each.

Fig. 43 shows the arrangement of piping and radiators in the two-pipe system. The steam main leads from the top of the boiler and the branches are carried along near the basement ceiling; risers are taken off from the supply branches and carried up to the radiators on the different floors, and return pipes are brought down to the return mains, which should be placed near the basement floor below the water line of the boiler. Where the building is more than two stories high, radiators in similar positions on different floors are connected with the same riser, which may run to the highest floor, and a corresponding return drop connecting with each radiator is carried down beside the riser to the basement. A system in which the main horizontal returns are below the water line of the boiler is said to have a "wet" or "sealed" return. If the returns are overhead and above the water line, it is called a "dry" return. Where the steam is exposed to extended surfaces of water, as in overhead returns, where the condensation partially fills the pipes, there is likely to be cracking or "water hammer" due to the sudden condensation of the steam as it comes in contact with the cooler water. This is especially noticeable when steam is first turned into cold pipes and radiators, and the condensation is excessive. When dry returns are used the pipes should be large, and have a good pitch toward the boiler.

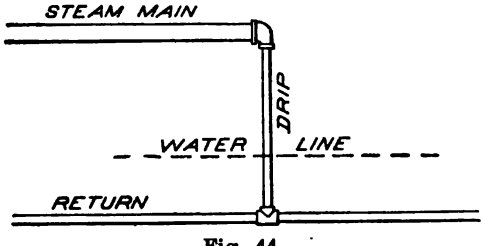


Fig. 44.

In the case of sealed returns the only contact between the steam and standing water is in the vertical returns where the

Digitized by Google

exposed surfaces are very small (being equal to the sectional area of the pipes) and trouble from water hammer is practically done away with. Dry returns should be given an incline of at least 1 inch in 10 feet, while for wet returns 1 inch in 20 or even 40 feet is ample. The ends of all steam mains and branches should be dripped into the returns. If the return is sealed, the drip may be directly connected as shown in Fig. 44, but if it is dry, the connection should be provided with a siphon loop as indicated in Fig. 45. The loop becomes filled with water and prevents steam from

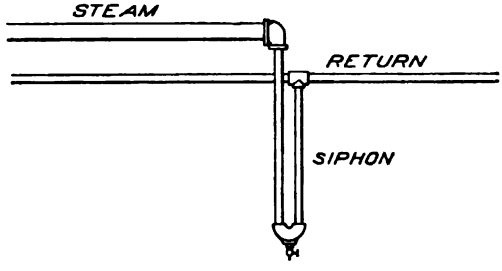


Fig. 45.

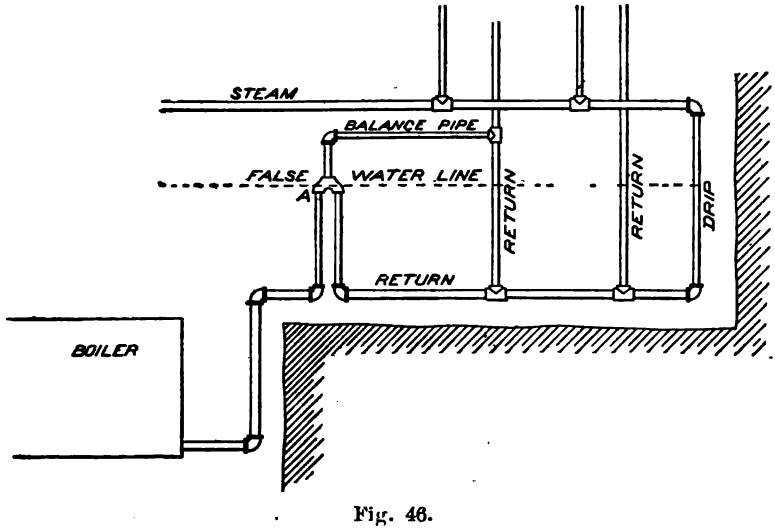


Fig. 46.

flowing directly into the return. As the condensation collects in the loop it overflows into the return pipe and is carried away. The return pipes in this case are of course filled with steam above the water, but it is steam which has passed through the radiators and their return connections, and is therefore at a slightly lower pressure, so that if steam were admitted directly from the

Digitized by Google

main it would tend to hold back the water in more distant returns and cause surging and cracking in the pipes. Sometimes the boiler is at a lower level than the basement in which the returns are run and it then becomes necessary to establish a "false" water line. This is done by making connections as shown in Fig. 46.

It is readily seen that the return water in order to reach the boiler must flow over the loop "A" which raises the water line, or seal, to the level shown by the dotted line. The balance pipe is to break the seal as the water flows over the loop, and prevent

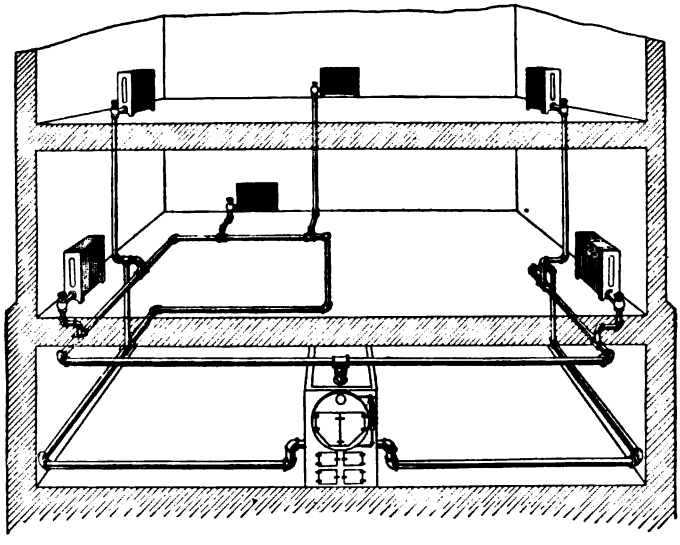


Fig. 47.

any siphon action which would tend to drain the water out of the return mains after a flow was once started.

One-Pipe Relief System. In this system of piping the radiators have but a single connection, the steam flowing in and the condensation draining out through the same pipe. Fig. 47 shows the method of running the pipes for this system. The steam main, as before, leads from the top of the boiler and is carried to as high a point as the basement ceiling will allow; it then slopes downward with a grade of about 1 inch in 10 feet and makes a circuit of the building or a portion of it.

Risers are taken off from the top and carried to the radiators above as in the two-pipe system, but in this case, the condensation

Digitized by Google

flows back through the same pipe and drains into the return main near the floor through drip connections which are made at frequent intervals. In a two-story building the bottom of each riser to the second floor is dripped, and in larger buildings it is customary to drip each riser that has more than one radiator connected with it. If the radiators are large and at a considerable distance from the next riser, it is better to make a drip connection for each radiator. When the return main is overhead, the risers should be dripped through siphon loops, but the ends of the branches should make direct connection with the returns. This is the reverse of the two-pipe system. In this case the lowest

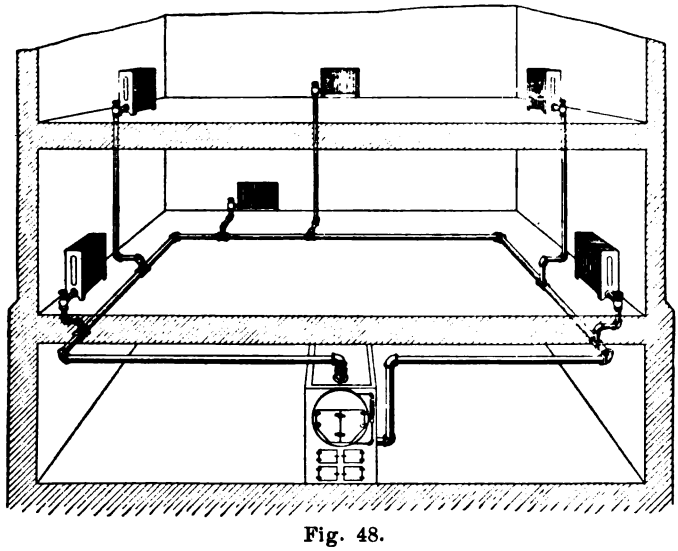


Fig. 48.

pressure is at the ends of the mains so that steam introduced into the returns at these points will cause no trouble in the pipes connecting between these and the boiler.

If no steam is allowed to enter the returns, a vacuum will be formed, and there will be no pressure to force the water back to the boiler. A check valve should always be placed in the main return near the boiler to prevent the water from flowing out in case of a vacuum being formed suddenly in the pipes.

One-Pipe Circuit System. (See Fig. 48.) In this case the steam main rises to the highest point of the basement as before,

Digitized by Google

and then with a considerable pitch makes an entire circuit of the building and again connects with the boiler below the water line Single risers are taken from the top and the condensation drains back through the same pipes and is carried along with the flow of steam to the extreme end of the main, where it is returned to

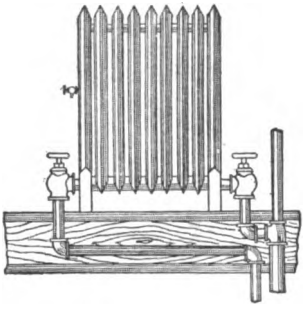


Fig. 49.

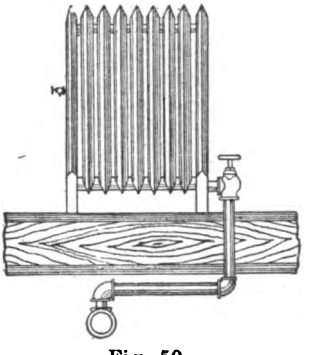


Fig. 50.

the boiler. The main is made large and of the same size throughout its entire length; it must be given a good pitch to insure satisfactory results.

One objection to a single-pipe system is that the steam and return water are flowing in opposite directions, and the risers must be made of extra large size to prevent any interference. This is overcome in large buildings by carrying a single riser to the attic, large enough to supply the entire building; then branching and running "drops" to the basement. In this system the flow of steam is downward as well as that of water. This method of piping may be used with good results in two-pipe systems as well. Care must always be taken that no pockets or low points occur in any of the lines of pipe, but if for any reason they cannot be avoided they should be carefully drained.

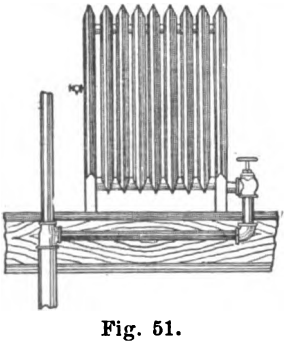


Fig. 51.

Pipe Connections. Figs. 49, 50 and 51 show the common methods of making the connections between the supply pipes and

Digitized by Google

the radiators. Fig. 49 shows a two-pipe connection with a riser; the return is carried down to the main below. Fig. 50 shows a single pipe connection with a basement main and Fig. 51 a single connection with a riser.

Care must always be taken to make the horizontal part of the piping between the radiator and riser as short as possible and to give it a good pitch toward the riser. There are various ways of making these connections especially suited to different conditions,

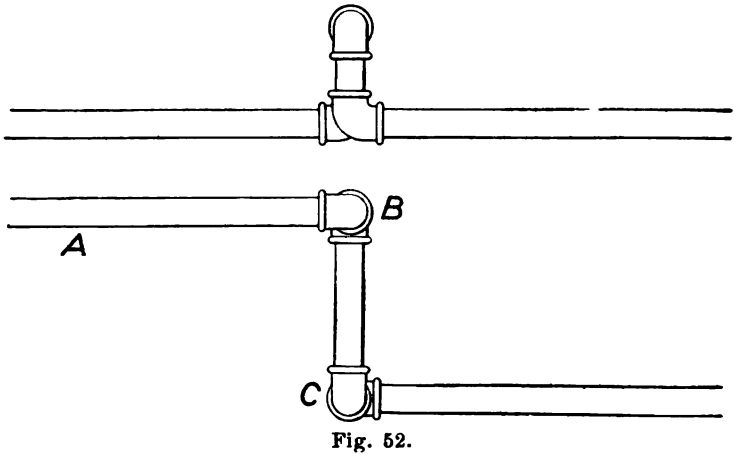


Fig. 52.

but the examples given serve to show the general principle to be followed.

Figs. 39, 40 and 41 show the common methods of making steam and return connections with circulation coils. The position of the air valve is shown in each case.

Expansion of Pipes. Cold steam pipes expand approximately 1 inch in each 100 feet in length when low pressure steam is turned into them, so that in laying out a system of piping we must arrange it in such a manner that there will be sufficient "spring" or "give" to the pipes to prevent injurious strains. This is done by means of offsets and bends. In the case of larger pipes this simple method will not be sufficient, and swivel or slip joints must be used, to take up the expansion. The method of making up a swivel joint is shown in Fig. 52.

Any lengthening of the pipe A will be taken up by slight turning or swivel movements at the points B and C. A slip joint

Digitized by Google

is shown in Fig. 53. The part *c* slides inside the shell *d* and is made steam tight by a stuffing box as shown. The pipes are connected at the flanges A and B.

When pipes pass through floors or partitions, the woodwork should be protected by galvanized iron sleeves having a diameter from $\frac{3}{4}$ to 1 inch greater than the pipe. Fig. 54 shows a form of

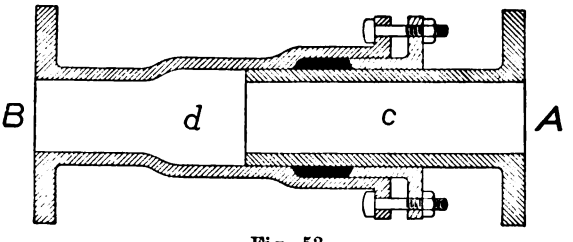


Fig. 53.

adjustable floor sleeve which may be lengthened or shortened to conform to the thickness of floor or partition. If plain sleeves are used, a plate should be placed around the pipe where it passes through the floor or partition. These are made in two parts so that they may be put in place after the pipe is hung. A plate of this kind is shown in Fig. 55.

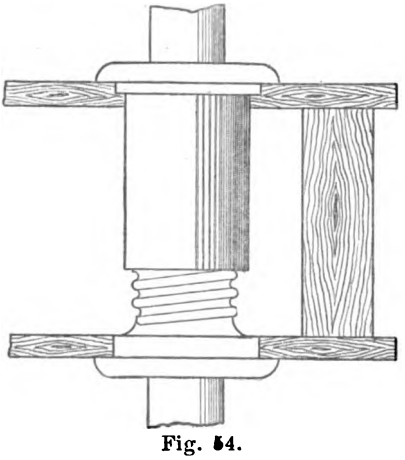


Fig. 54.

Valves. The different styles commonly used for radiator connections are shown in Figs. 56, 57 and 58, and are known as "angle," "offset" and "corner" valves respectively. The first is used when the radiator is at the top of a riser or when the connections are like those shown in Figs. 49, 50 and 51; the second is used when the connection between the riser and radiator is above the floor, and the third when the radiator has to be set close in the corner of a room and there is not space for the usual connection. A *globe* valve should never be used in a horizontal steam supply or dry return; the reason for this is plainly shown in

Digitized by Google

Fig. 59. In order for water to flow through the valve it must rise to a height shown by the dotted line, which would half fill the pipes, and cause serious trouble from water hammer. The gate valve shown in Fig. 60 does not have this undesirable feature, as the opening is on a level with the bottom of the pipe.

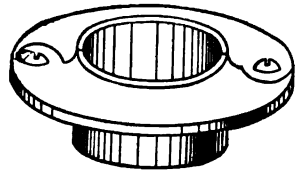


Fig. 55.

Air Valves. Valves of various kinds are used for freeing the radiators from air when steam is turned on. Fig. 61 shows simplest form, which is operated by hand. Fig. 62 is a type of automatic valve; it consists of a shell, which is attached to the radiator. B is a small opening which may be closed by the spindle C which is provided with a conical end. D is a strip composed of a layer of iron or steel

Fig. 56.

Fig. 57.

Fig. 58.

and one of brass soldered or brazed together. The action of the valve is as follows; when the radiator is cold and filled with air the valve stands as shown in the cut. When steam is turned on, the air is driven out through the opening B. As soon as this is expelled and steam strikes the strip D, the two prongs spring

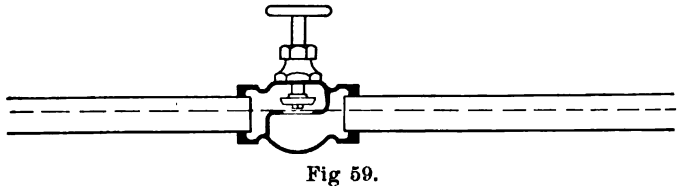


Fig 59.

apart owing to the unequal expansion of the two metals due to the heat of the steam. This raises the spindle C and closes the opening so that no steam can escape. If air should collect in the valve and the metal strip become cool it would contract and the spindle would drop and allow the air to escape through B as be-

Digitized by Google

fore. E is an adjusting nut and F is a float attached to the spindle, and is supposed in case of a sudden rush of water with the air to rise and close the opening; this action is somewhat uncertain, especially if the pressure of water continues for some time.

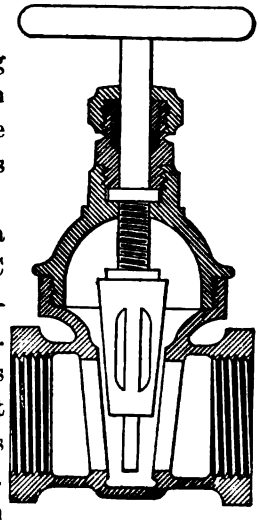


Fig. 60.

There are other types of valves acting on the same principle. The valve shown in Fig. 63 is closed by the expansion of a piece of vulcanite instead of a metal strip, and has no water float.

The valve shown in Fig. 64 acts on a somewhat different principle. The float C is made of thin brass, closed at top and bottom, and is partially filled with wood alcohol. When steam strikes the float the alcohol is vaporized, and creates a pressure sufficient to bulge out the ends slightly which raises the spindle and closes the opening B. Fig. 65 shows a form of so-called "vacuum valve." It acts in a similar manner to those already described, but has in addition a ball check which prevents the air from being drawn into the radiator, should the steam go down and a vacuum be formed. If a partial vacuum exists in the

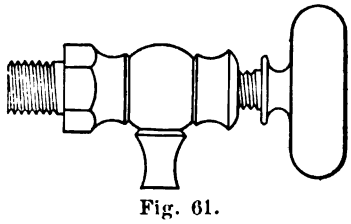


Fig. 61.

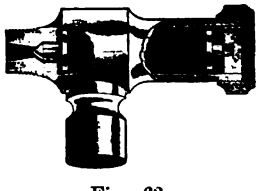


Fig. 63.

boiler and radiators, the boiling point, and consequently the temperature of the steam are lowered, and less heat is given off by the radiators. This method of operating a heating plant is sometimes advocated for spring and fall when less heat is required, and steam under pressure would overheat the rooms.

Pipe Sizes. The proportioning of the steam pipes in a heating plant is of the greatest importance, and should be carefully worked out by methods which experience has proved to be correct.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

ROCOCO ORNAMENTAL THREE COLUMN PATTERN RADIATOR FOR WARMING BY HOT WATER.

American Radiator Company.

Digitized by Google

There are several ways of doing this, but for ordinary conditions the following tables have given excellent results in actual practice. They have been computed from what is known as

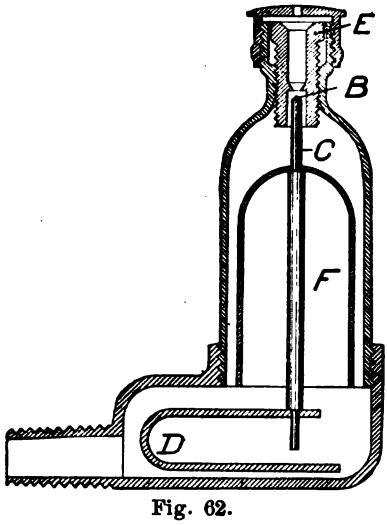


Fig. 62.

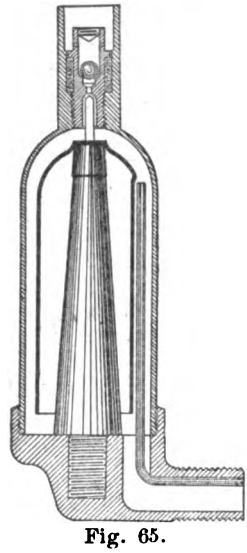


Fig. 65.

D'Arcy's formula, with suitable corrections made for actual working conditions. As the computations are somewhat complicated, only the results will be given here, with full directions for their proper use. The following table gives the flow of steam in pounds per minute for pipes of different diameters, and with varying drops in pressure between the supply and discharge ends of the pipe. These quantities are for pipes 100 feet in length; for other lengths the results must be corrected by the factors given in table XII. As the length of the pipe increases, the friction becomes greater, and the quantity of steam discharged in a given time is diminished.

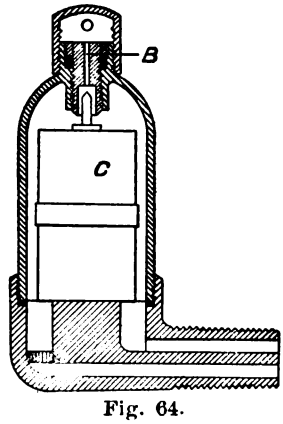


Fig. 64.

Table X is computed on the assumption that the drop in pressure between the two ends of the pipe equals the initial pressure. If the drop in pressure is less than the initial pressure the

Digitized by Google

actual discharge will be slightly greater than the quantities given in the table, but this difference will be small for pressures up to 5 pounds, and can be neglected as it is on the side of safety. For higher initial pressures, table XI has been prepared. This is to

TABLE X.

Diam. of Pipe.	Drop in Pressure (Pounds.)								
	¼	½	¾	1	1½	2	3	4	5
1	.44	.63	.78	.91	1.13	1.31	1.66	1.97	2.26
1¼	.81	1.16	1.43	1.66	2.05	2.39	3.02	3.59	4.12
1½	1.06	1.89	2.34	2.71	3.36	3.92	4.94	5.88	6.75
2	2.93	4.17	5.16	5.99	7.43	8.65	10.9	13.0	14.9
2½	5.29	7.52	9.32	10.8	13.4	15.6	19.7	23.4	26.9
3	8.61	12.3	15.2	17.6	21.8	25.4	32	31.8	43.7
3½	12.9	18.3	22.6	26.3	32.5	37.9	47.8	56.9	65.3
4	18.1	25.7	31.8	36.9	45.8	53.3	67.2	80.1	91.9
5	32.2	45.7	56.6	65.7	81.3	94.7	120	142	163
6	51.7	73.3	90.9	106	131	152	192	229	262
7	76.7	109	135	157	194	226	285	339	390
8	108	154	190	222	274	319	402	478	549
9	147	209	258	299	371	432	545	649	745
10	192	273	339	393	487	567	715	852	977
12	305	434	537	623	771	899	1130	1350	1550
15	535	761	942	1090	1350	1580	1990	2370	2720

be used in connection with table X as follows. First find from table X the quantity of steam which will be discharged through the given diameter of pipe with the assumed drop in pressure;

TABLE XI.

Drop in Pressure in Pounds.	Initial Pressure.					
	10	20	30	40	60	80
¼	1.27	1.49	1.68	1.84	2.13	2.38
½	1.26	1.48	1.66	1.83	2.11	2.36
1	1.24	1.46	1.64	1.80	2.08	2.32
2	1.21	1.41	1.59	1.75	2.02	2.26
3	1.17	1.37	1.55	1.70	1.97	2.20
4	1.14	1.34	1.51	1.66	1.92	2.14
5	1.12	1.31	1.47	1.62	1.87	2.09

then look in table XI for the factor corresponding with the assumed drop and the higher initial pressure to be used. The quantity given in table X multiplied by this factor will give the actual capacity of the pipe under the given conditions.

Digitized by Google

Example—What weight of steam will be discharged through a 3″ pipe, 100 feet long, with an initial pressure of 60 pounds and a drop of 2 pounds?

Looking in table X we find that a 3″ pipe will discharge 25.4 pounds of steam per minute with a 2-pound drop. Then looking in table XI we find the factor corresponding to 60 pounds initial pressure and a drop of 2 pounds to be 2.02. Then according to the rule given, $25.4 \times 2.02 = 51.3$ pounds which is the capacity of a 3″ pipe under the assumed conditions.

Sometimes the problem will be presented in the following way: What size of pipe will be required to deliver 80 pounds of steam a distance of 100 feet with an initial pressure of 40 pounds and a drop of 3 pounds?

TABLE XII.

Feet.	Factor.	Feet.	Factor.	Feet.	Factor.	Feet	Factor.
10	3.16	120	.91	275	.60	600	.40
20	2.24	130	.87	300	.57	650	.39
30	1.82	140	.84	325	.55	700	.37
40	1.58	150	.81	350	.53	750	.36
50	1.41	160	.79	375	.51	800	.35
60	1.29	170	.76	400	.50	850	.34
70	1.20	180	.74	425	.48	900	.33
80	1.12	190	.72	450	.47	950	.32
90	1.05	200	.70	475	.46	1,000	.31
100	1.00	225	.66	500	.45		
110	.95	250	.63	550	.42		

We have seen that the higher the initial pressure with a given drop, the greater will be the quantity of steam discharged; therefore a smaller pipe will be required to deliver 80 pounds of steam at 40 pounds than at 3 pounds initial pressure. From table XI we find that a given pipe will discharge 1.7 times as much steam per minute with a pressure of 40 pounds, and a drop of 3 pounds, as it would with a pressure of 3 pounds, dropping to zero. From this it is evident that if we divide 80 by 1.7 and look in table X under "3 pounds drop" for the result thus obtained, the size of pipe corresponding will be that required.

$$80 \div 1.7 = 47.$$

Digitized by Google

The nearest number in the table marked "3 pounds drop" is 47.8 which corresponds to a $3\frac{1}{2}''$ pipe and is the size required.

These conditions will seldom be met with in low-pressure heating, but apply more particularly to combination power and heating plants, and will be taken up more fully under that head. For lengths of pipe other than 100 feet, multiply the quantities given in table X by the factors found in table XII.

Example — What weight of steam will be discharged per minute through a $3\frac{1}{2}''$ pipe, 450 feet long with a pressure of 5 pounds and a drop of $\frac{1}{2}$ pound?

Table X, which may be used for all pressures below 10 pounds, gives for a $3\frac{1}{2}''$ pipe, 100 feet long, a capacity of 18.3 pounds for the above conditions. Looking in table XII, we find the correction factor for 450 feet to be .47. Then $18.3 \times .47 = 8.6$ pounds, the quantity of steam which will be discharged if the pipe is 450 feet long.

Examples involving the use of tables X, XI and XII in combination are quite common in practice. The following shows the method of calculation:

What size of pipe will be required to deliver 90 pounds of steam per minute a distance of 800 feet, with an initial pressure of 80 pounds and a drop of 5 pounds? Table XII gives the factor for 800 feet as .35 and table XI that for 80 pounds pressure and 5 pounds drop as 2.09. Then $\frac{90}{.35 \times 2.09} = 123$; which is the equivalent quantity, we must look for in table X. We find that a 4″ pipe will discharge 91.9 pounds, and a 5″ pipe 163 pounds. A $4\frac{1}{2}''$ pipe is not commonly carried in stock and we should probably use a 5″ in this case, unless it was decided to use a 4″ and allow a slightly greater drop in pressure. In ordinary heating work with pressures varying from 2 to 5 pounds, a drop of $\frac{1}{4}$ pound in 100 feet has been found to give satisfactory results.

In computing the pipe sizes for a heating system by the above methods it would be a long process to work out the size of each branch separately so the following table has been prepared for ready use in low-pressure work.

As most direct heating systems, and especially those in schoolhouses, are made up of both radiators and circulation coils,

Digitized by Google

an efficiency of 300 B. T. U. has been taken for direct radiation of whatever variety, no distinction being made between the different kinds. This gives a slightly larger pipe than is necessary for cast iron radiators, but it is probably offset by bends in the pipes, and in any case gives a slight factor of safety. We find from a steam table that the "latent heat" of steam at 20 pounds above a vacuum, (which corresponds to 5 pounds gage-pressure) is 954 + B. T. U., which means that for every pound of steam condensed in a radiator 954 B. T. U. are given off for warming the air of the room. If a radiator has an efficiency of 300 B. T. U., then each square foot of surface will condense $300 \div 954 = .314$ pounds of steam per hour, so that we may assume in round numbers a condensation of $\frac{1}{3}$ of a pound of steam per hour for each square foot of direct radiation, when computing the sizes of steam pipes in low-pressure heating. Table XIII has been calculated on this assumption, and gives the square feet of heating surface

TABLE XIII.

LENGTH OF PIPE 100 FEET.

Size of Pipe.	Square Feet of Heating Surface.	
	¼ Pound Drop.	½ Pound Drop.
1	80	114
$1\frac{1}{4}$	145	210
$1\frac{1}{2}$	190	340
2	525	750
$2\frac{1}{2}$	950	1350
3	1550	2210
$3\frac{1}{2}$	2320	3290
4	3250	4620
5	5800	8220
6	9320	13200
7	13800	19620
8	19440	27720

which different sizes of pipe will supply, with drops in pressure of $\frac{1}{4}$ and $\frac{1}{2}$ pounds, in each 100 feet of pipe. The former should be used for pressures from 1 to 5 pounds, and the latter may be used for pressures over 5 pounds, under ordinary conditions. The

Digitized by Google

sizes of long mains and special pipes of large size should be proportioned directly from tables X, XI and XII.

Where the two-pipe system is used and the radiators have separate supply and return pipes, the risers or vertical pipes may be taken from table XIII, but if the single pipe system is used, the risers must be increased in size as the steam and water are flowing in opposite directions and must have plenty of room to pass each other. It is customary in this case to base the computation on the velocity of the steam in the pipes rather than on the drop in pressure. Assuming as before, a condensation of one-third of a pound of steam per hour per square foot of radiation, the following tables have been prepared for velocities of 10 and 15 feet per second. The sizes given in table XV have been found sufficient in most cases, but the larger sizes, based on a flow of 10 feet per second, give greater safety and should be more generally used. The size of the largest riser should usually be limited to $2\frac{1}{2}''$ in school and dwelling house work unless it is a special pipe carried up in a concealed position. If the length of riser is short between the lowest radiator and the main, a higher velocity of 20 feet or more may be allowed through this portion rather than make the pipe excessively large.

TABLE XIV.

10 Feet Per Second Velocity.	
Size of Pipe.	Sq. Feet of Radiation.
1	30
$1\frac{1}{4}$	60
$1\frac{1}{2}$	80
2	130
$2\frac{1}{2}$	190
3	290
$3\frac{1}{2}$	390

TABLE XV.

15 Feet Per Second Velocity.	
Size of Pipe.	Sq. Feet of Radiation.
1	50
$1\frac{1}{4}$	90
$1\frac{1}{2}$	120
2	200
$2\frac{1}{2}$	290
3	340
$3\frac{1}{2}$	590

Example.— Compute the size of pipe required to supply 10,000 square feet of direct radiation, where the distance to the boiler house is 300 feet and the pressure carried is 10 pounds; allowing a drop in pressure of 4 pounds.

Digitized by Google

Steam required $= \frac{1}{3} \times 10{,}000 = 3333$ pounds per hour
$= 55.6$ pounds per minute.

From Table XII we see that this corresponds to $55.6 \div .57 = 97.5$ pounds for a pipe 100 feet long. From Table XI the discharge factor is 1.14. Hence in Table X we look for $\frac{97.5}{1.14} = 85.5$ under 4 pounds drop, and we find that a 5-inch pipe must be used.

Dia. of Steam Pipe.	Dia. of Dry Return.	Dia. of Sealed Return.
1	1	$\frac{3}{4}$
$1\frac{1}{4}$	1	1
$1\frac{1}{2}$	$1\frac{1}{4}$	1
2	$1\frac{1}{2}$	$1\frac{1}{4}$
$2\frac{1}{2}$	2	$1\frac{1}{2}$
3	$2\frac{1}{2}$	2
$3\frac{1}{2}$	$2\frac{1}{2}$	2
4	3	$2\frac{1}{2}$
5	3	$2\frac{1}{2}$
6	$3\frac{1}{2}$	3
7	$3\frac{1}{2}$	3
8	4	$3\frac{1}{2}$
9	5	$3\frac{1}{2}$
10	5	4
12	6	5

Returns. The size of return pipes is usually a matter of custom and judgment rather than computation. It is a common rule among steam fitters to make the returns one size smaller than the corresponding steam pipes. This is a good rule for the smaller sizes, but gives a larger return than is necessary for the larger sizes of pipe. Table XVI gives different sizes of steam pipes with the corresponding diameters for dry and sealed returns.

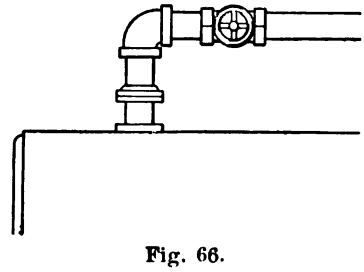


Fig. 66.

Digitized by Google

The length of run and number of turns in a return pipe should be noted and any unusual conditions provided for. Where the condensation is discharged through a trap into a lower pressure the sizes given may be slightly reduced, especially among the larger sizes, depending upon the difference in pressures.

Radiators are usually tapped for pipe connections as follows, and these sizes may be used for the connections with the mains or risers.

TWO-PIPE CONNECTION.

Square Feet of Radiation.	Steam.	Return.
10 to 30	$\frac{3}{4}$″	$\frac{3}{4}$″
30 to 48	1 ″	$\frac{3}{4}$″
48 to 96	$1\frac{1}{4}$″	1 ″
96 to 150	$1\frac{1}{2}$″	$1\frac{1}{4}$″

SINGLE PIPE CONNECTION.

10 to 24	1 ″
24 to 60	$1\frac{1}{4}$″
60 to 80	$1\frac{1}{2}$″
80 to 130	2 ″

Boiler Connections. The steam main should be connected to the rear nozzle, if a tubular boiler is used, as the boiling of the water is less violent at this point and dryer steam will be obtained. The shut-off valve should be placed in such a position that pockets for the accumulation of condensation will be avoided. Fig. 66 shows a good position for the valve.

The return connection is made through the blow-off pipe and should be arranged so that the boiler can be blown off without draining the returns. A check valve should be placed in the main return and a plug cock in the blow-off pipe. Fig. 67 shows in plan a good arrangement for these connections.

Blow-Off Tank. Where the blow-off pipe connects with a sewer some means must be provided for cooling the water or the expansion and contraction caused by the hot water flowing through the drain pipes will start the joints and cause leaks. For this reason it is customary to pass the water through a blow-off tank. A form of wrought iron tank is shown in Fig. 68. It

Digitized by Google

consists of a receiver supported on cast-iron cradles. The tank ordinarily stands nearly full of cold water.

The pipe from the boiler enters above the water line, and the sewer connection leads from near the bottom as shown. A vapor pipe is carried from the top of the tank above the roof of the building. When water from the boiler is blown into the tank

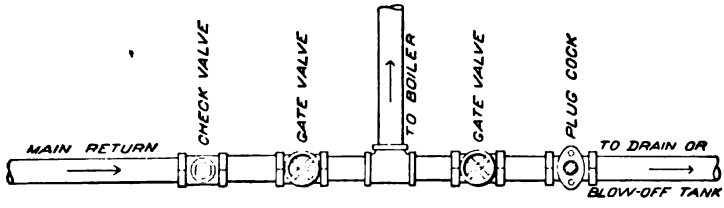


Fig. 67.

cold water from the bottom flows into the sewer and the steam is carried off through the vapor pipe. The equalizing pipe is to prevent any siphon action which might draw the water out of the tank after a flow was once started. As only a part of the water is blown out of a boiler at one time the blow-off tank can be of a comparatively small size. A tank 24″ × 48″ should be large

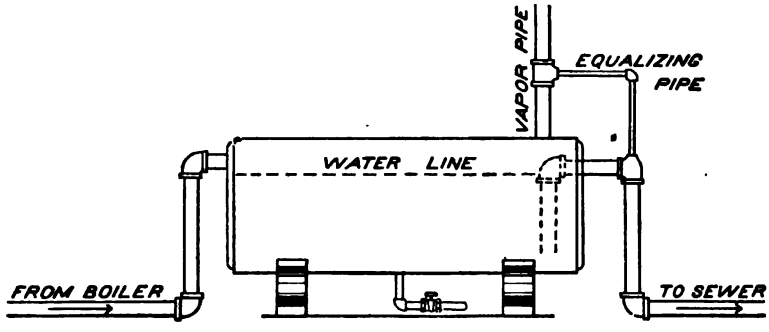
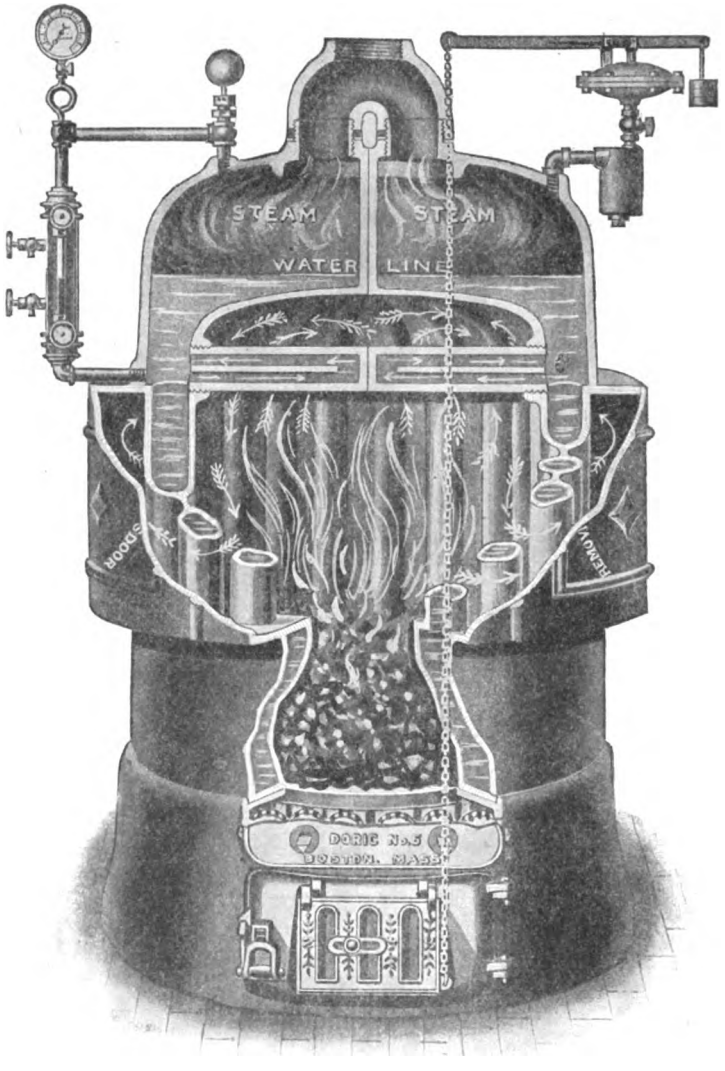


Fig. 68.

enough for boilers up to 48 inches in diameter and one 36″ × 72″ should care for a boiler 72 inches in diameter. If smaller quantities of water are blown off at a time smaller tanks can be used. The sizes given above are sufficient for batteries of 2 or more boilers, as one boiler can be blown off and the water allowed to cool before a second one is blown off. Cast iron tanks are often used in place of wrought iron and these may be sunken in the ground if desired.

Digitized by Google



Cast Iron Seamless Tubular Steam Heater.

Digitized by Google

HEATING AND VENTILATION.

PART II.

INDIRECT STEAM HEATING.

Types of Heaters. Various forms of indirect radiators have been shown in Figs. 8, 9, 14 and 15 of Part I. A hot-water radiator may be used for steam but a steam radiator cannot always be used for hot water as it must be especially designed to produce a continuous flow of water through it from top to bottom. Figs. 1 and

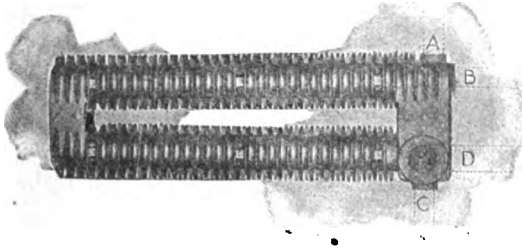


Fig. 1.

2 show the outside and the interior construction of a common pattern of indirect radiator designed especially for steam. The arrows in Fig. 2 indicate the path of the steam through the

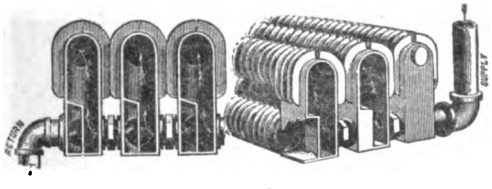


Fig. 2.

radiator which is supplied at the right while the return connection is at the left. The air valve in this case should be connected in the end of the last section near the return.

A very efficient form of radiator and one that is especially adapted to the warming of large volumes of air as in schoolhouse

Digitized by Google

work, is shown in Fig. 3, and is known as the "School pin" radiator. This can be used for either steam or hot water as there is a continuous passage downward from the supply connection at the top to the return at the bottom. These sections or slabs are made up in stacks after the manner shown in Fig. 4 which repre-

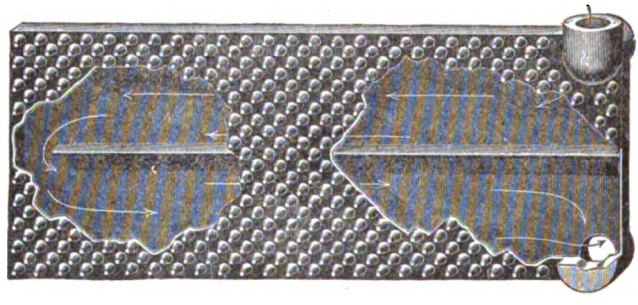


Fig. 3.

sents an end view of several sections connected together with special nipples.

A very efficient form of indirect heater may be made up of wrought iron pipe joined together with branch tees and return bends. A heater like that shown in Fig. 5 is known as a "box coil." Its efficiency is increased if the pipes are "staggered," that is, if the pipes in alternate rows are placed over the spaces between those in the row below.

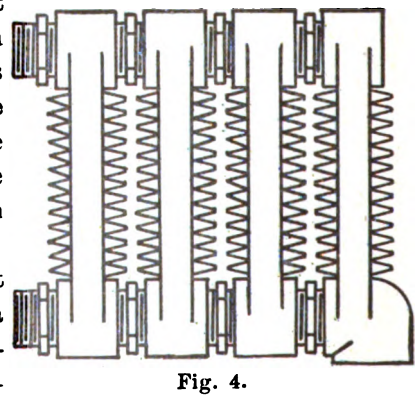


Fig. 4.

Stacks and Casings. It has already been stated that a group of sections connected together is called a stack, and examples of these with their casings are shown in Figs. 6 and 7 of Part I. The casings are usually made of galvanized iron and are made up in sections by means of small bolts so that they may be taken apart in case it is necessary to make repairs. Large stacks are often enclosed in brick work; the sides consisting of 8-inch walls and the top being covered over with a layer of brick and mortar

Digitized by Google

supported on light wrought iron tee bars. Where a single stack supplies several flues or registers the connections between these and the warm-air chamber are made in the same manner as already described for furnace heating. When galvanized iron casings are used the heater is supported by hangers from the floor above. Fig. 6 shows the method of hanging a heater from a wooden

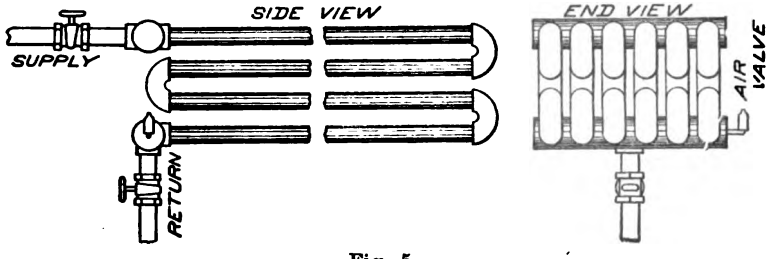


Fig. 5.

floor. If the floor is of fireproof construction the hangers may pass up through the brickwork and the ends be provided with nuts and large washers or plates; or they can be clamped to the iron beams which carry the floor. Where brick casings are used, the heaters are supported upon pieces of pipe or light I-beams built into the walls.

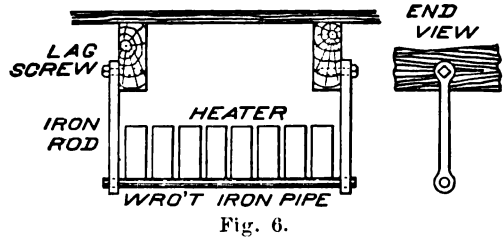


Fig. 6.

Dampers. The general arrangement of a galvanized iron casing and mixing damper is shown in Fig. 7. The cold-air duct is brought along the basement ceiling from the inlet window and connects with the cold-air chamber beneath the heater. The entering air passes up between the sections and rises through the register above, as shown by the arrows. When the mixing damper is in its lowest position all air reaching the register must pass through the heater, but if the damper is raised to the position shown, part of the air will pass by without going through the heater and the mixture entering through the register will be at a lower temperature than before. By changing the position of the damper the proportions of warm and cold air delivered to the

Digitized by Google

room can be varied, thus regulating the temperature without diminishing, to any great extent, the quantity of air delivered. The objection to this form of damper is that there is a tendency

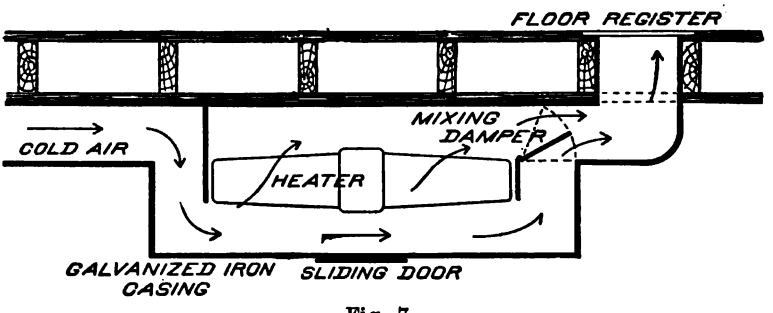


Fig. 7.

for the air to enter the room before it is thoroughly mixed, that is, a stream of warm air will rise through one half of the register while cold air enters through the other. This is especially true if

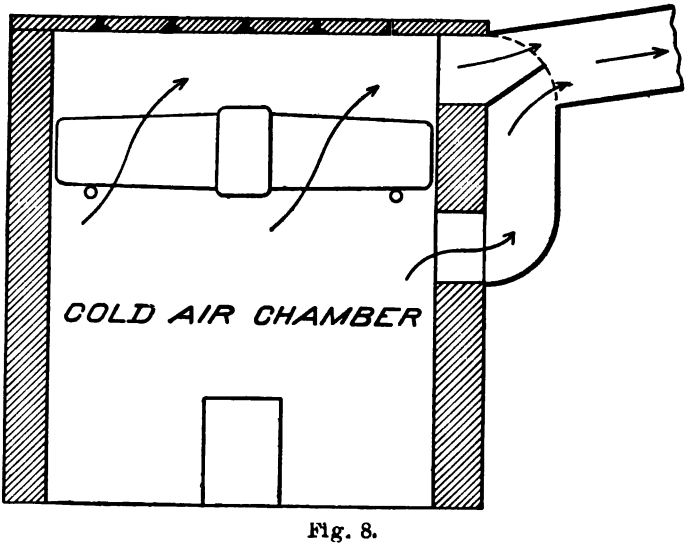


Fig. 8.

the connection between the damper and register is short. Fig. 8 shows a similar heater and mixing damper, with brick casing. Cold air is admitted to the large chamber below the heater and

Digitized by Google

rises through the sections to the register as before. The action of the mixing damper is the same as already described. Several flues or registers may be connected with a stack of this form, each connection having its own mixing damper.

The arrangement shown in Fig. 9 is somewhat different and overcomes the objection noted in connection with Fig. 7 by sub-

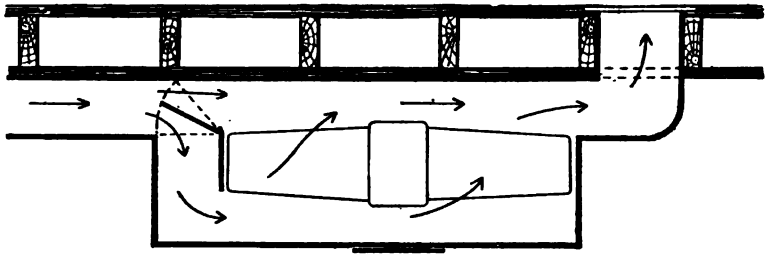


Fig. 9.

stituting another. The mixing damper in this case is placed at the other end of the heater. When it is in its highest position all of the air must pass through the heater before reaching the register, but when partially lowered a part of the air passes over the heater and the result is a mixture of cold and warm air, in proportions depending upon the position of the damper. As the layer of warm air in this case is below the cold air, it tends to rise through it, and a more thorough mixture is obtained than is possible with the damper shown in Fig. 8. One quite serious objection however to this form of damper is illustrated in Fig. 10. When the damper is nearly closed so that the greater part of the air enters above the heater, it has a tendency to fall between the sections, as shown by the arrows, and becoming heated rises again, so that it is impossible to deliver air to a room below a certain temperature. This peculiar action increases as the quantity of air admitted below the heater is diminished. When the inlet register is placed in the wall at some distance above the floor, as in schoolhouse work, a thorough mixture of air can be obtained by placing the heater so that the current of warm air will pass up the front of the flue and be discharged into the room through the

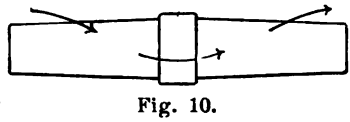


Fig. 10.

Digitized by Google

lower part of the register. This is shown quite clearly in Fig. 11 where the current of warm air is represented by crooked arrows and the cold air by straight arrows. The two currents pass up the flue separately, but as soon as they are discharged through the register the warm air tends to rise, and the cold air to fall, with the result of a more or less complete mixture as shown.

It is often desirable to warm a room at times when ventilation

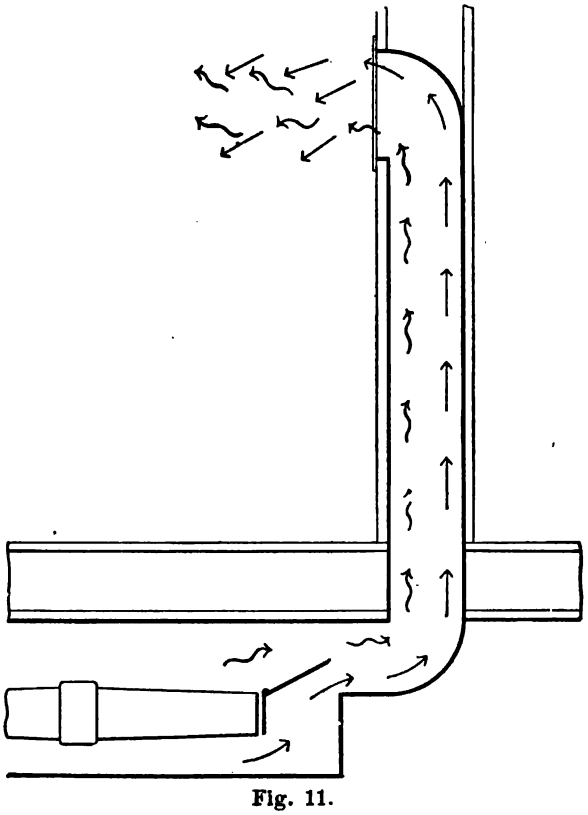
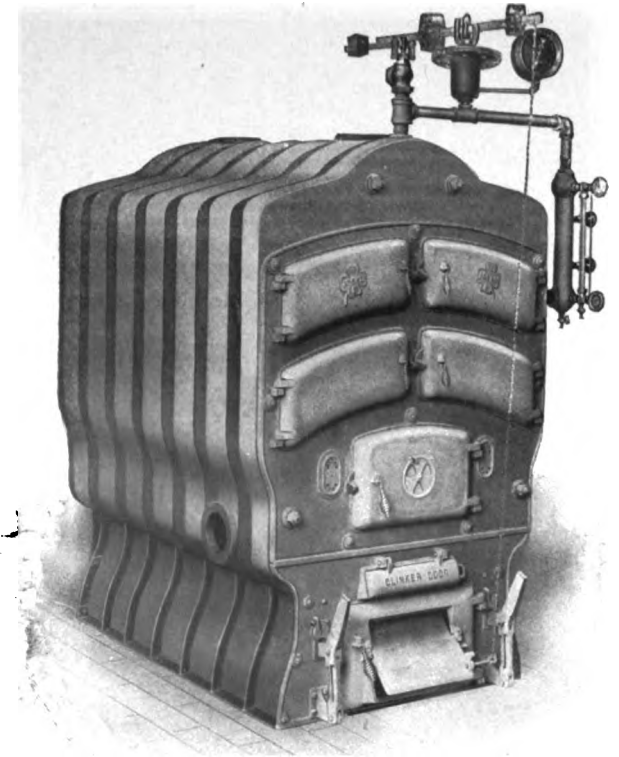


Fig. 11.

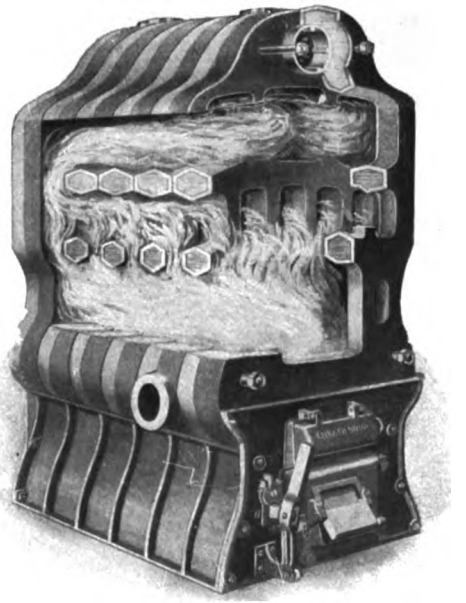
is not necessary, as in the case of living rooms during the night, or for quick warming in the morning. A register and damper for air rotation should be provided in this case. Fig. 12 shows an arrangement for this purpose. When the damper is in the position shown, air will be taken from the room above and be warmed over and over, but by raising the damper, the supply will be taken

Digitized by Google



SECTIONAL STEAM BOILER.

Made by American Radiator Company.



SECTIONAL WATER BOILER.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

from outside. Special care should be taken to make all mixing dampers tight against air leakage, else their advantages will be lost. They should work easily and close tightly against flanges covered with felt. They may be operated from the rooms above by means of chains passing over guide pulleys; special attachments should be provided for holding in any desired position.

Size of Heaters. The efficiency of an indirect heater depends upon its form, the difference in temperature between the steam and the surrounding air, and the velocity with which the air passes over the heater. Under ordinary conditions in dwelling-house work, a good form of indirect radiator will give off about 2 B. T. U. per square foot per hour for each degree difference in temperature. Assuming a steam pressure of 2 pounds and an outside temperature of zero we should have a difference in tem-

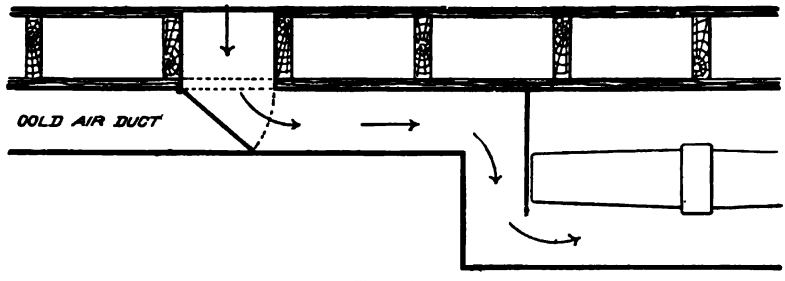


Fig. 12.

perature of about 220 degrees, which under the conditions stated would give an efficiency of $220 \times 2 = 440$ B. T. U. per hour for each square foot of radiation. By making a similar computation for 10 degrees below zero we find the efficiency to be 460. In the same manner we may calculate the efficiency for varying conditions of steam pressure and outside temperature. In the case of schoolhouses and similar buildings where large volumes of air are warmed to a moderate temperature, a somewhat higher efficiency is obtained due to the increased velocity of the air over the heaters. Where efficiencies of 440 and 460 are used for dwellings, we may substitute 600 and 620 for school-houses. This corresponds approximately to 2.7 B. T. U. per square foot per hour for a difference of 1 degree between the air and steam.

The principles involved in indirect steam heating are similar

Digitized by Google

to those already described in furnace heating. Part of the heat given off by the radiator must be used in warming up the air supply to the temperature of the room, and part for offsetting the loss by conduction through walls and windows. The method of computing the heating surface required, depends upon the volume of air to be supplied to the room. In the case of a schoolroom or hall, where the air quantity is large as compared with the exposed wall and window surface we should proceed as follows:

First compute the B. T. U. required for loss by conduction through walls and windows, and to this add the B. T. U. required for the necessary ventilation, and divide the sum by the efficiency of the radiators. An example will make this clear.

How many square feet of indirect radiation will be required to warm and ventilate a schoolroom in zero weather, where the heat loss by conduction through walls and windows is 36000 B. T. U. and the air supply is 100,000 cubic feet per hour? By the methods given under "Heat for Ventilation" we have

$$\frac{100{,}000 \times 70}{55} = 127{,}272 =$$

B. T. U. required for ventilation.

36,000 + 127,272 = 163,272 B. T. U. = the total heat required, and this in turn divided by 600 (the efficiency of indirect radiators under these conditions) gives 272 square feet of surface required.

In the case of a dwelling-house the conditions are somewhat changed, for a room having a comparatively large exposure will perhaps have only 2 or 3 occupants, so that if the small air quantity necessary in this case was used to convey the required amount of heat to the room, it would have to be raised to an excessively high temperature. It has been found by experience that the radiating surface necessary for indirect heating is about 50 per cent greater than that required for direct heating. So for this work we may compute the surface required for direct radiation and multiply the result by 1.5.

Buildings like hospitals are in a class between dwellings and school houses. The air supply is based on the number of occupants, as in schools, but other conditions conform more nearly to dwelling houses.

Digitized by Google

To obtain the radiating surface for buildings of this class, we compute the total heat required for warming and ventilation as in the case of schoolhouses, and divide this sum by the efficiencies given for dwellings, that is 440 for zero weather and 460 for 10 degrees below.

Example. A hospital ward requires 50,000 cubic feet of air per hour for ventilation, and the heat loss by conduction through walls, etc. is 100,000 B. T. U. per hour. How many square feet of indirect radiation will be required to warm the ward in zero weather.

$(50{,}000 \times 70) \div 55 = 63{,}636$ B. T. U. for ventilation: then,

$$\frac{63{,}636 + 100{,}000}{440} = 372 + \text{square feet.}$$

Example.— A school room having 40 pupils is to be warmed and ventilated when it is 10 degrees below zero. If the heat loss by conduction is 30,000 B. T. U. per hour and the air supply is to be 40 cubic feet per minute per pupil, how many square feet of indirect radiation will be required?

B. T. U. required for ventilation per hour

$= (40 \times 40 \times 60 \times 80) \div 55 = 139{,}636.$

Total B. T. U. required $= 139{,}636 + 30{,}000 = 169{,}636.$

Surface required $= 169{,}636 \div 620 = 273$ square feet.

Example.— The heat loss from a sitting room is 11,250 B. T. U. per hour in zero weather. How many square feet of indirect radiation will be required to warm it?

From Part I, page 56, we have $11250 \div 225 = 50$ square feet; here, then, we need $50 \times 1.5 = 75$ square feet.

Warm-Air Flues. The required size of the warm-air flue between the heater and the register, depends first upon the difference in temperature between the air in the flue and that of the room, and second, upon the height of the flue. In dwellings, hospitals, etc., where the conditions are practically constant, it is customary to allow 2 square inches area for each square foot of radiation when the room is on the first floor, and $1\frac{1}{2}$ square inches when it is on the second floor.

In schoolhouse work it is more usual to calculate the size of flue from an assumed velocity of air flow through it. This will vary greatly according to the outside temperature and the prevailing

Digitized by Google

wind conditions. The following figures may be taken as average velocities obtained in practice, and may be used as a basis for calculating the required flue areas for the different stories of a school building.

1st floor 280 feet per minute.
2nd " 340 " " "
3rd " 400 " " "

These velocities will be increased somewhat in windy weather and will be reduced when the atmosphere is damp.

Having assumed these velocities, and knowing the number of cubic feet of air to be delivered to the room per minute, we have only to divide this quantity by the assumed velocity, to obtain the required flue area in square feet.

Example — A schoolroom on the second floor is to have an air supply of 2,000 cubic feet per minute; what will be the required flue area?

$$2000 \div 340 = 5.8 + \text{sq. feet Ans.}$$

The velocities would be higher in the coldest weather and dampers should be placed in the flues for throttling the air supply when necessary.

Cold-Air Ducts. The cold-air ducts supplying heaters should be planned in a similar manner to that described for furnace heating. The air inlet should be on the north or west side of the building, but this of course is not always possible. The method of having a large trunk line or duct with inlets on two or more sides of the building should be carried out when possible. A cold-air room with large inlet windows, and ducts connecting with the heaters make a good arrangement for schoolhouse work. The inlet windows in this case should be provided with check valves to prevent any outward flow of air. A detail of this arrangement is shown in Fig. 13.

This consists of a boxing around the window, extending from the floor to the ceiling. The front is sloped as shown and is closed from the ceiling to a point below the bottom of the window. The remainder is open and covered with a wire netting of about ½ inch mesh; to this are fastened flaps or checks of gossamer cloth about 6 inches in width. These are hemmed on both edges and a stout wire is run through the upper hem which is fastened

Digitized by Google

to the netting by means of small copper or soft iron wire. The checks allow the air to flow inward but close when there is any tendency for the current to reverse.

The area of the cold-air duct for any heater should be about three-fourths the total area of the warm air ducts leading from it.

A common rule for dwelling houses and similar work is to allow $1\frac{1}{2}$ square inches of area for each square foot of radiating surface. The inlet windows should be provided with some form of damper or slide, outside of which should be placed a wire grating, backed by a netting of about $\frac{3}{8}$ inch mesh.

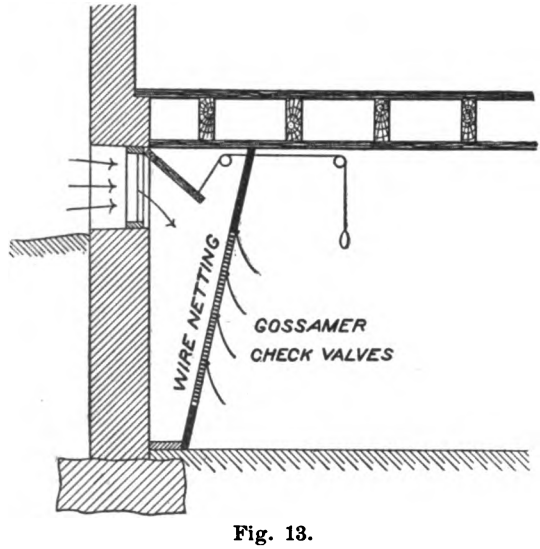


Fig. 13.

Vent Flues. In dwelling houses vent flues are often omitted and the frequent opening of doors and leakage are depended upon to carry away the impure air. A well designed system of warming should provide some means for discharge ventilation, especially for bath and toilet rooms, and also for living rooms where lights are burned in the evening. The sizes of flues may be made the reverse of the warm-air flues, that is, $1\frac{1}{2}$ square inches area per square foot of indirect radiation for rooms on the first floor and 2 square inches for those on the second. This is because the velocity of flow will depend upon the height of flue and will therefore be greater from the first floor. The flues should be joined together in the attic and then carried through the roof where a ventilating hood should be provided, especially designed to keep out the rain and snow. A good form is shown in Fig. 14.

Very good results may be obtained by simply letting the flues open into an unfinished attic and depending upon leakage throug

Digitized by Google

the roof to carry away the foul air. The flow of air through the vents will be slow at best unless some means is provided for warming the air in the flue to a temperature above that of the room with which it connects. This may be done by carrying up a loop of steam pipe inside of the flue. It should be connected for drainage and air venting as shown in Fig. 15.

For schoolhouse work we may assume average velocities through the vent flues as follows :

1st floor 340 feet per min.
2nd " 280 " " "
3rd " 220 " " "

Where flue sizes are based on these velocities it is well to guard against down drafts by placing an aspirating coil in the flue. A single row of pipes across the flue as shown in Fig. 16 is usually sufficient for this purpose. The slant height of the heater should be about twice the depth of the flue so that the area between the pipes shall equal the free area of the flue.

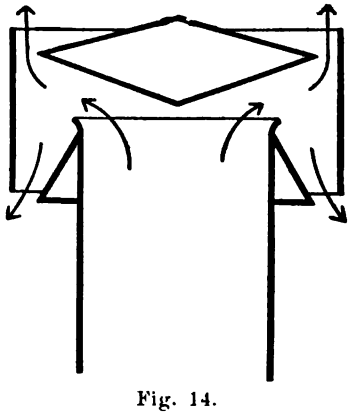


Fig. 14.

Large vent flues of this kind should always be provided with dampers for closing at night and for regulation during strong winds. Sometimes it is desired to move a given quantity of air through a flue which is already in place.

Table I shows what velocities may be obtained through flues of different heights for varying differences in temperature between the outside air and that in the flue.

Example. — It is desired to discharge 1300 cubic feet of air per minute through a flue having an area of 4 square feet and a height of 30 feet. If the efficiency of an aspirating coil is 400 B. T. U. how many square feet of surface will be required to move this amount of air when the temperature of the room is 70° and the outside temperature is 60° ?

1300 ÷ 4 = 325 feet per minute = velocity through the flue. Looking in table I and following along the line oppo-

Digitized by Google

site a 30-foot flue we find that to obtain this velocity there must be a difference of 30 degrees between the air in the flue and the external air. If the outside temperature is 60 degrees then the air in the flue must be raised to 60 + 30 = 90 degrees. The air

TABLE I.

Height of Flue in Feet.	Excess of Temperature of Air in Flue above that of External Air.					
	5°	10°	15°	20°	30°	50°
5	55	76	94	109	134	167
10	77	108	133	153	188	242
15	94	133	162	188	230	297
20	108	153	188	217	265	342
25	121	171	210	242	297	383
30	133	188	230	265	325	419
35	143	203	248	286	351	453
40	153	217	265	306	375	484
45	162	230	282	325	398	514
50	171	242	297	342	419	541
60	188	264	325	373	461	594

of the room being at 70 degrees, a rise of 20 degrees is necessary, so the problem resolves itself into the following — What amount of heating surface, having an efficiency of 400 B. T. U. is neces-

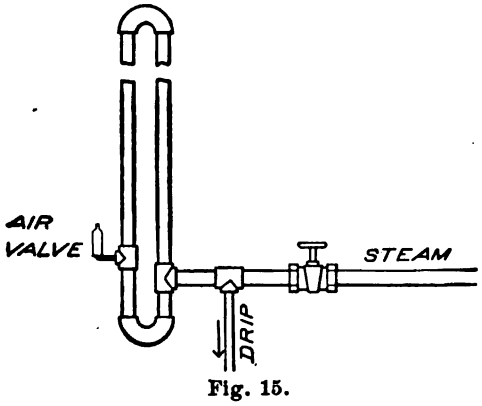


Fig. 15.

sary to raise 1300 cubic feet of air per minute through 20 degrees?

1300 cubic feet per minute = 1300 × 60 = 78,000 per hour,

Digitized by Google

and making use of our formula for "heat for ventilation," we have

$$\frac{78{,}000 \times 20}{55} = 28{,}363 \text{ B. T. U.},$$

and this divided by 400 = 71 square feet of heating surface required.

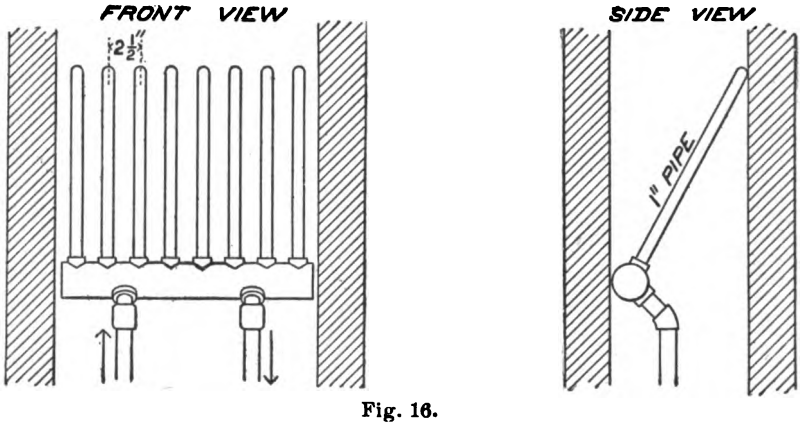


Fig. 16.

Example.— What size of heater will be required in a vent flue 40 feet high and with an area of 5 square feet, to enable it to discharge 1530 cubic feet per minute, when the outside temperature is 60°? (Assume a heater efficiency of 400 B. T. U.)

Velocity in flue = 1530 ÷ 5 = 306 feet per minute.

Temperature excess, from Table I, = 20 degrees.

B. T. U. required per hour = 1530 × 60 × 10 ÷ 55 = 16690 requiring 16690 ÷ 400 = 41.7 square feet of heater.

Registers. Registers are made of cast iron and bronze, in a great variety of sizes and patterns. The universal finish for cast iron is black "Japan"; they are also finished in colors and electroplated with copper and nickel. Fig. 17 shows a section through a floor register in which "A" represents the valves, which may be turned in a vertical or horizontal position, thus opening or closing the register; "B" is the iron border, "C" the register box of tin or galvanized iron and "D" the warm-air pipe. Floor registers

Digitized by Google

are usually set in cast iron borders, one of which is shown in Fig. 18, while wall registers may be screwed directly to wooden borders or frames to correspond with the finish of the room. Wall registers should be provided with pull cords for opening and closing from the floor; these are shown in Fig. 19. The plain lattice pattern shown in Fig. 20 is the best for schoolhouse work as it has a comparatively free opening for air flow and is pleasing and simple in design. More elaborate patterns are used for fine dwelling-house work. Registers with shut-off valves are used for air inlets while the plain register faces without the valves are placed in the vent openings. The vent flues are usually

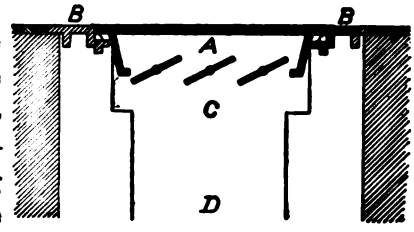


Fig. 17.

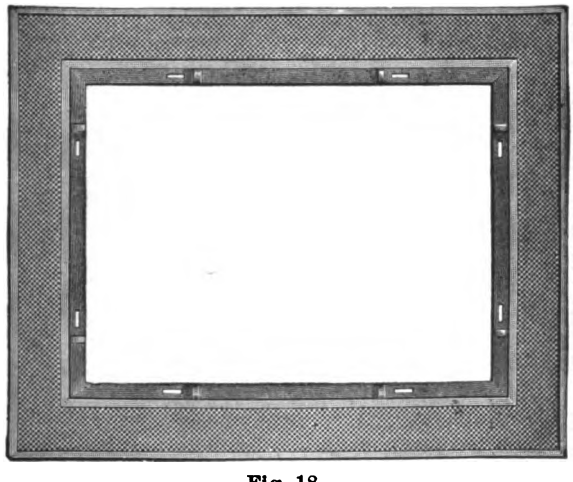


Fig. 18.

gathered together in the attic and a single damper may be used to shut off the whole number at once. Flat or round wire gratings of open pattern are often used in place of register faces. The grill or solid part of a register face usually takes up about $\frac{1}{3}$ of the area, hence in computing the size we must allow for this by multiplying the required "net area" by 1.5 to obtain the "total" or "over all" area.

For example, suppose we have a flue 10 inches in width and

Digitized by Google

wish to use a register having a free area of 200 square inches, what will be the required height of the register? $200 \times 1.5 = 300$ square inches which is the total area required, then $300 \div 10 = 30$, which is the required height and we should use a $10'' \times 30''$ register. When a register is spoken of as a $10'' \times 30''$ or $10'' \times 20''$, etc. the dimensions of the latticed opening is meant, and not the outside dimensions of the whole register. The free opening should have the same area as the flue with which it

Fig. 19.

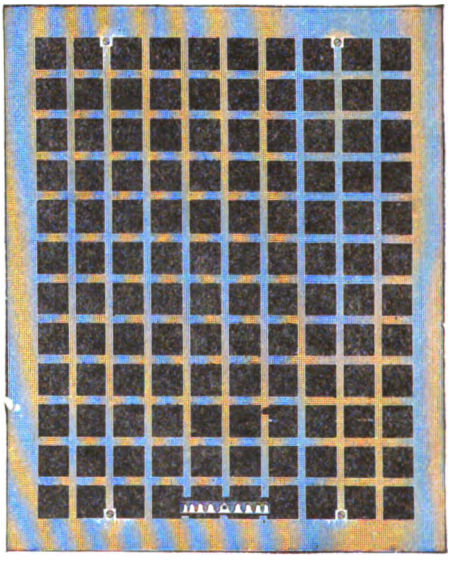


Fig. 20.

connects. In designing new work one should provide himself with a trade catalogue, and use only standard sizes as special patterns and sizes are costly. Fig. 21 shows the method of placing gossamer check valves back of the vent register faces to prevent down drafts, the same as described for fresh-air inlets.

Pipe Connections. The two-pipe system with dry or sealed returns is used in indirect heating. The conditions to be met are practically the same as in direct heating, the only difference being that the radiators are at the basement ceiling instead of on the floors above. The exact method of making the pipe connections will depend somewhat upon existing conditions, but the

Digitized by Google

general method shown in Fig. 22 may be used as a guide with modifications to suit any special case. The ends of all supply mains should be dripped, and the horizontal returns should be sealed if possible.

Pipe Sizes. The tables already given for the proportioning of pipe sizes can be used for indirect systems. The following table has been computed for an efficiency of 640 B. T. U. per square foot of surface per hour, which corresponds to a condensa-

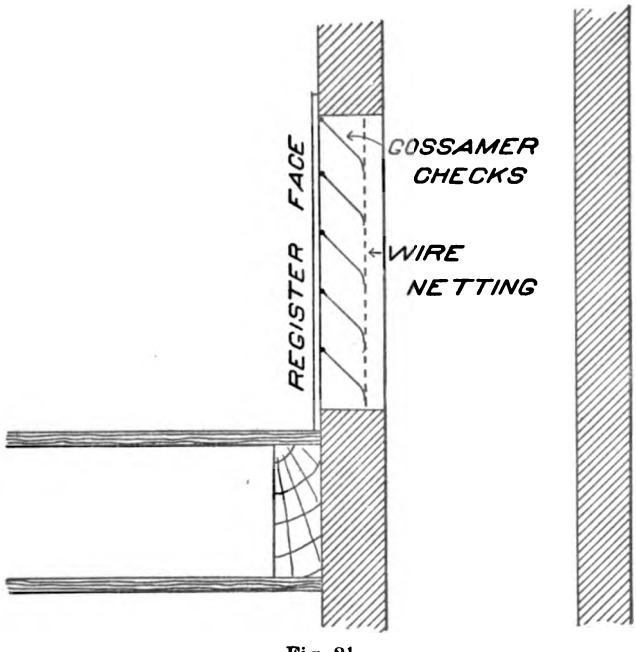


Fig. 21.

tion of $\frac{2}{3}$ of a pound of steam. This is twice that allowed for direct radiation in table XIII. of Part I., so that we can consider 1 square foot of indirect surface as equal to 2 of direct in computing pipe sizes.

As the indirect heaters are placed in the basement, care must be taken that the bottom of the radiator does not come too near the water line of the boiler, or the condensation will not flow back properly; this distance should not be less than 2 feet under ordinary conditions. If much less than this, the pipes should be made extra large so there may be little or no drop in pressure

Digitized by Google

between the boiler and the heater. A drop in pressure of 1 pound would raise the water line at the heater 2.4 feet.

Direct-Indirect Heating. The general form of a direct-indirect radiator has been shown in Figs. 10 and 11 of Part I. Another form where the air is admitted to the radiator through the wall instead of the floor is shown in Fig. 23. Fig. 24 shows the wall

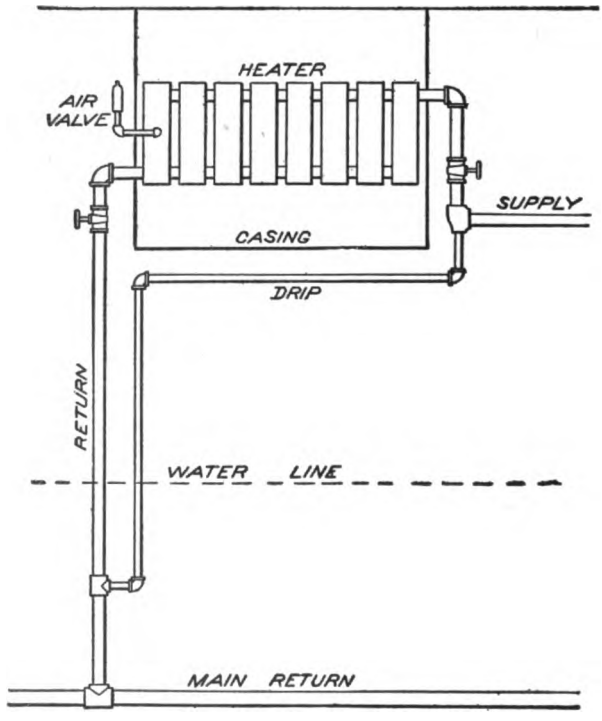


Fig. 22.

box with louvre slats, and netting, through which the air is drawn. A damper door is placed at either end of the radiator base, and if desired, when the cold air supply is shut off by means of the register in the air duct, the radiator can be converted into the ordinary type by opening both damper doors, thus taking the air from the room instead of from the outside. It is customary to increase the size of a direct-indirect radiator 30 per cent. above that called for in the case of direct heating.

Digitized by Google

TABLE II.

Size of Pipe.	Square Feet of Indirect Radiation which will be Supplied with		
	¼ Pound Drop in 200 Feet.	¼ Pound Drop in 100 Feet.	¼ Pound Drop in 100 Feet.
1	28	40	57
1¼	51	72	105
1½	67	95	170
2	185	262	375
2½	335	475	675
3	540	775	1105
3½	812	1160	1645
4	1140	1625	2310
5	2030	2900	4110
6	3260	4660	6600
7	4830	6900	9810
8	6800	9720	13860

CARE AND MANAGEMENT OF STEAM HEATING BOILERS.

Special directions are usually supplied by the maker for each kind of boiler, or for those which are to be managed in any peculiar way. The following general directions apply to all makes, and may be used regardless of the type of boiler employed.

Before starting the fire see that the boiler contains sufficient water. The water line should be at about the center of the gage glass.

The smoke pipe and chimney flue should be clean and the draft good.

Build the fire in the usual way, using a quality of coal which is best adapted to the heater. In operating the fire keep the fire-pot full of coal and shake down and remove all ashes and cinders as often as the state of the fire requires it.

Hot ashes or cinders must not be allowed to remain in the ash pit under the grate bars but must be removed at regular intervals to prevent burning out the grate.

To control the fire see that the damper regulator is properly attached to the draft doors, and the damper; then regulate the draft by weighting the automatic lever as may be required to

Digitized by Google

obtain the necessary steam pressure for warming. Should the water in the boiler escape by means of a broken gage glass, or from any other cause, the fire should be dumped, and the boiler allowed to cool before adding cold water.

An empty boiler should never be filled when hot. If the water gets low at any time, but still shows in the gage glass, more water should be added by the means provided for this purpose.

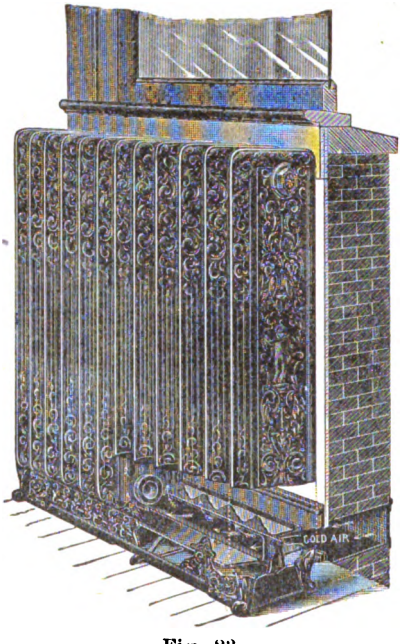


Fig. 23.

The safety valve should be lifted occasionally to see that it is in working order.

If the boiler is used in connection with a gravity system it should be cleaned each year by filling with pure water and emptying through the blow-off. If it should become foul or dirty it can be thoroughly cleansed by adding a few pounds of caustic soda and allowing it to stand for a day and then emptying and thoroughly rinsing.

During the summer months it is recommended that the water be drawn off from the system, and that air valves and safety valves be opened to permit the heater to dry out and to remain so.

Good results are however obtained by filling the heater full of water, driving off the air by boiling slowly, and allowing it to remain in this condition until needed in the fall. The water should then be drawn off and fresh water added.

The heating surface of the boiler should be kept clean and free from ashes and soot by means of a brush made especially for this purpose.

Should any of the rooms fail to heat, examine the steam valves at the radiators. If a two-pipe system both valves at

Digitized by Google

each radiator must be opened or closed at the same time as required. See that the air valves are in working condition.

If the building is to be unoccupied in cold weather draw all the water out of the system by opening the blow-off pipe at the boiler and all steam and air valves at the radiators.

HOT WATER HEATERS.

Types. Hot water heaters differ from steam boilers principally in the omission of the reservoir or space for steam above the heating surface. The steam boiler might answer as a heater for hot water, but the large capacity left for the steam would tend to make its operation slow and rather unsatisfactory, although the

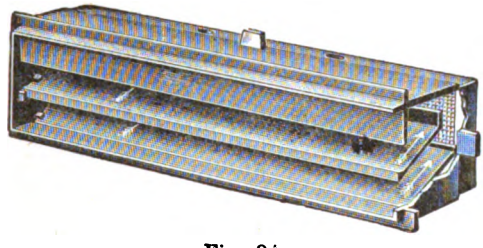


Fig. 24.

same type of boiler is sometimes used for both steam and hot water. The passages in a hot water heater need not extend so directly from bottom to top as in a steam boiler, since the problem of providing for the free liberation of the steam bubbles does not have to be considered. In general, the heat from the furnace should strike the surfaces in such a manner as to increase the natural circulation; this may be accomplished to a certain extent by arranging the heating surface so that a large proportion of the direct heat will be absorbed near the top of the heater. Practically the boilers for low-pressure steam and for hot water differ from each other very little as to the character of the heating-surface, so that the methods already given for computing the size of grate surface, horsepower, etc., under the head of steam boilers can be used with satisfactory results in the case of hot water heaters. It is sometimes stated that owing to the greater difference in temperature between the furnace gases and the water in a hot water heater, as compared with steam, that the heating surface will be more efficient and that a smaller heater can be used;

Digitized by Google

while this is true to a certain extent different authorities agree that this advantage is so small that no account should be taken of it, and the general proportions of the heater should be calculated in the same manner as for steam. Fig. 25 shows a form of hot-water heater made up of slabs or sections similar to the sectional steam boiler shown in Part I; the size can be increased in the same way by adding more slabs. A different form is shown in Fig. 26. This is made of cast iron but is not a sectional boiler.

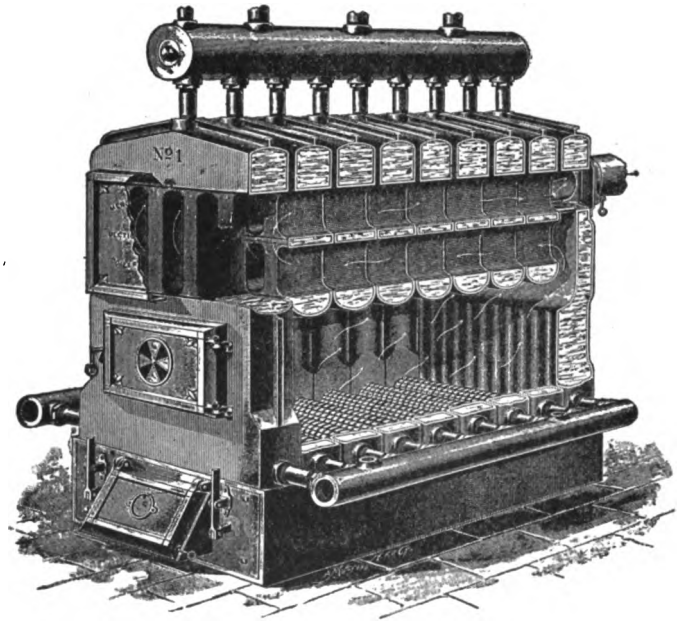


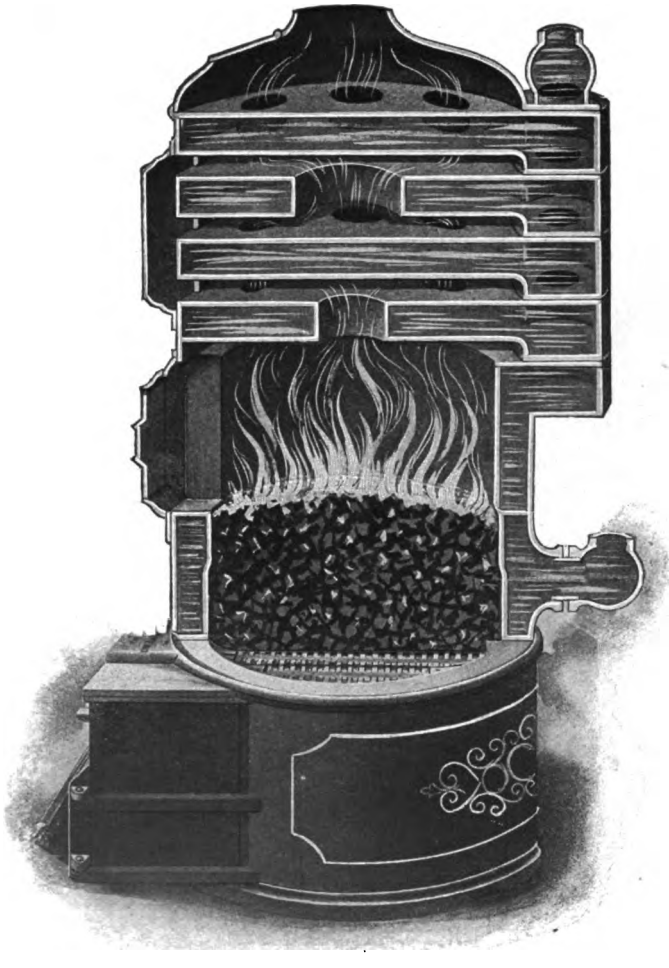
Fig. 25.

It has no horizontal flues for the ashes and soot to collect in and a greater part of the heating surface is directly exposed to the hottest part of the fire. Fig. 27 shows another form of heater similar in principle to the one just described. The space between the outer and inner shells surrounding the furnace is filled with water and also the cross pipes directly over the fire and the drum at the top. The supply to the radiators is taken off from the top of the heater and the return connects at the lowest point.

The ordinary horizontal and vertical tubular boilers with various modifications are used to quite an extent for hot water

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google



SECTIONAL VIEW OF CAST IRON HOT WATER HEATER.

Digitized by Google

heating and are well adapted to this class of work, especially in the case of large buildings.

Automatic regulators are often used for the purpose of main-

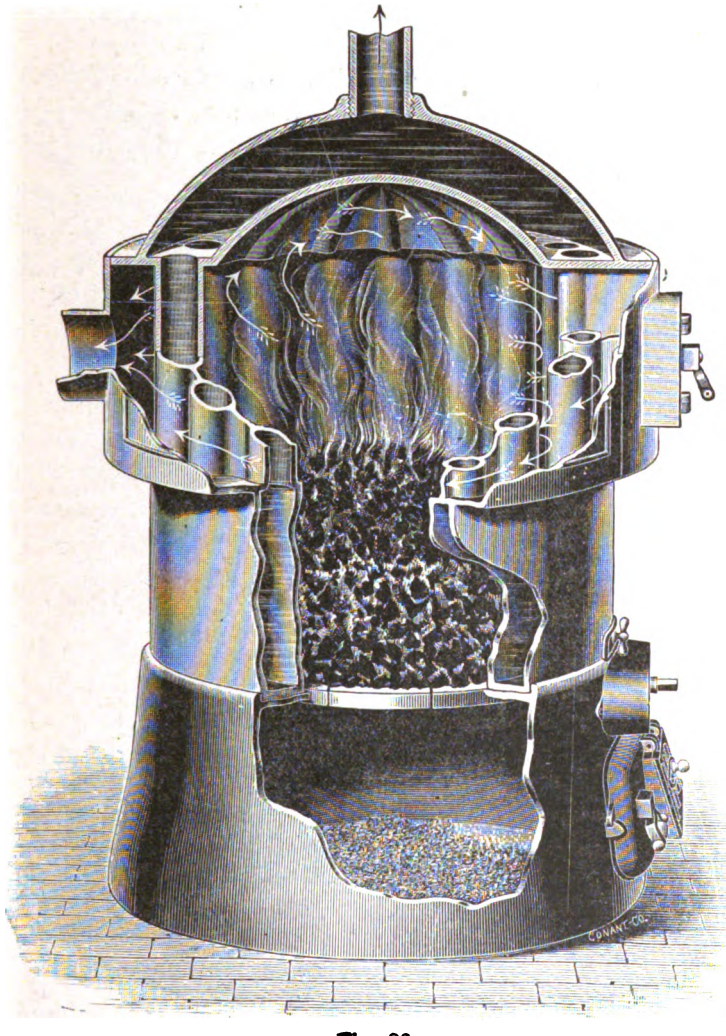


Fig. 26.

taining a constant temperature of the water. They are constructed in different ways — some depend upon the expansion of a metal pipe or rod at different temperatures, and others upon the vapor

Digitized by Google

ization and consequent pressure of certain volatile liquids. These means are usually employed to open small valves which admit water pressure under rubber diaphragms, and these in turn are connected by means of chains with the draft doors of the furnace, and so regulate the draft as required to maintain an even temperature of the water in the heater. Fig. 28 shows one of the first kind. "A" is a metal rod placed in the flow pipe from the heater, and is so connected with the valve "B" that when the water

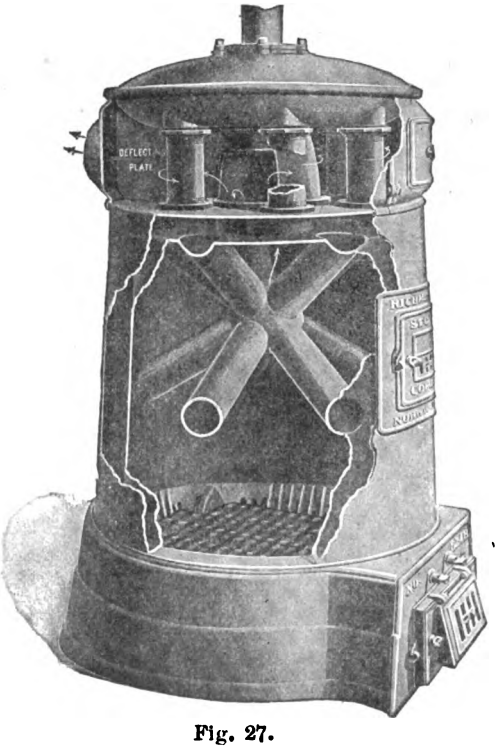


Fig. 27.

reaches a certain temperature the expansion of the rod opens the valve and admits water from the street pressure through the pipes "C" and "D" into the chamber "E." The bottom of "E" consists of a rubber diaphragm which is forced down by the water pressure and carries with it the lever which operates the dampers as shown, and checks the fire. When the temperature of the water drops, the rod contracts and valve "B" closes, shutting off the

Digitized by Google

pressure from the chamber "E." A spring is provided to throw the lever back to its original position and the water above the diaphragm is forced out through the pet cock "G" which is kept slightly open all of the time.

DIRECT HOT WATER HEATING.

A hot water system is similar in construction and operation to one designed for steam, except the *hot water* flows through the pipes, giving up its heat by conduction to the coils and radiators, which in turn transfer it to the air of the room by conduction and radiation.

The flow through the system is produced solely by the difference in weight of the water in the supply and return pipes, due to the difference in temperature. When water is heated it expands, and thus a given volume becomes lighter and tends to rise, and the cooler water flows in to take its place; if the application of heat is kept up the circulation thus produced is continuous. The velocity of flow depends upon the difference in temperature between the supply and return, and the height of radiator above the boiler. The horizontal distance of the radiator from the boiler is also an important factor.

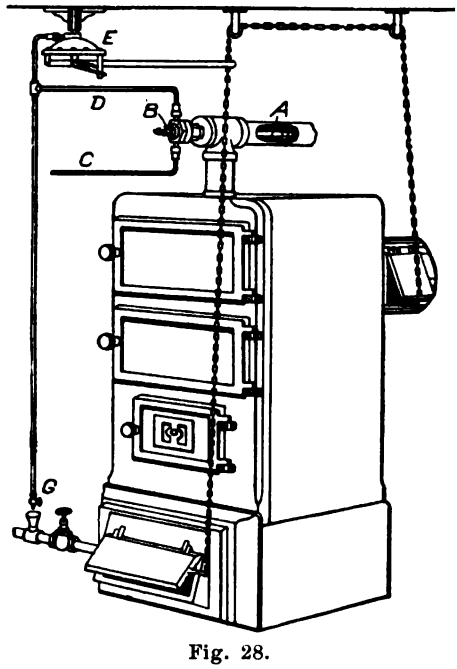


Fig. 28.

Types of Radiating Surface. Cast iron radiators and circulation coils are used for hot water as well as for steam. Hot water radiators differ from steam radiators principally in having a horizontal passage at the top as well as at the bottom. This construction is necessary in order to draw off the air which

Digitized by Google

gathers at the top of each loop or section. Otherwise they are the same as steam radiators, and are well adapted for the circulation of steam, and in some respects are superior to the ordinary pattern.

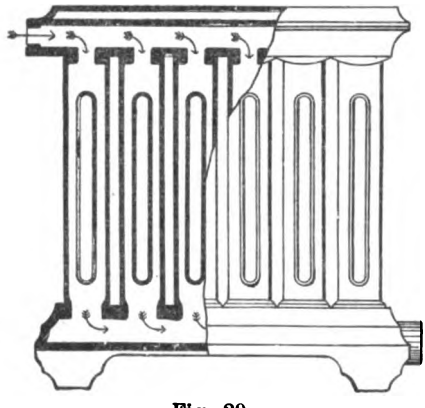


Fig. 29.

The form shown in Fig. 29 is made with an opening at the top for the entrance of water and at the bottom for its discharge, thus insuring a supply of hot water at the top and of colder water at the bottom.

Some hot water radiators are made with a cross-partition so arranged that all water entering passes at once to the top, from which it may take any passage toward the outlet. Fig. 30 is the more common form of radiator, and is made with continuous

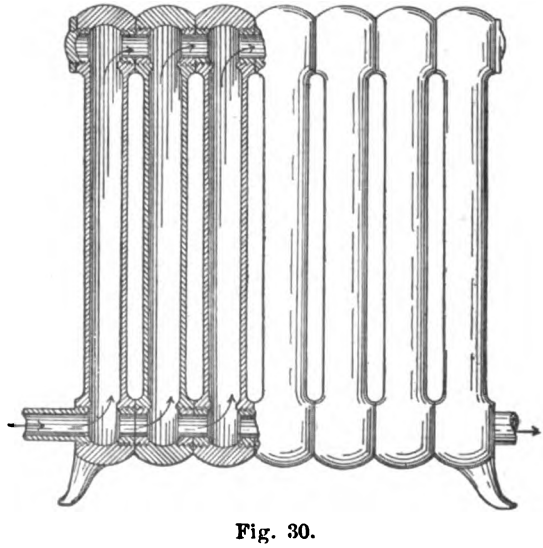


Fig. 30.

passages at top and bottom; the hot water is supplied at one side and drawn off at the other. The action of gravity is depended upon for making the hot and lighter water pass to the

Digitized by Google

top, and the colder water sink to the bottom and flow off through the return. Hot water radiators are usually tapped and plugged so that the pipe connections can be made either at the top or at the bottom. This is shown in Fig. 31.

Efficiency of Radiators. The efficiency of a hot water radiator depends entirely upon the temperature at which the water is circulated. The best practical results are obtained with the water leaving the boiler at a maximum temperature of about 180 degrees in zero weather and returning at about 160 degrees; this gives an average temperature of 170 in the radiators. Variations may be made however to suit the existing conditions of outside temperature. We have seen that an average cast iron radiator gives off about 1.5 B. T. U. per hour per square foot of surface per degree difference in temperature between the surrounding air and the radiator, when working under ordinary conditions, and this holds true whether filled with steam or water.

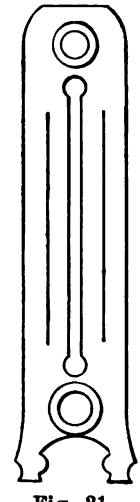


Fig. 31.

If we assume an average temperature of 170 degrees for the radiators then the difference will be $170 - 70 = 100$ degrees, and this multiplied by $1.5 = 150$ which may be taken as the efficiency of a hot water radiator under the above conditions, which represent good average practice.

This calls for a water radiator about 1.5 times as large as a steam radiator to heat a given room under the same conditions. This is common practice although some engineers multiply by the factor 1.6 which allows for a lower temperature of the water. Water leaving the boiler at 170 degrees should return at about 150; the drop in temperature should not ordinarily exceed 20 degrees.

System of Piping. A system of hot water heating should produce a perfect circulation of water from the heater to the radiating surface, and thence back to the heater through the returns. The system of piping usually employed for hot water heating is shown in Fig. 32. In this arrangement the main and branches have an inclination upward from the heater; the returns are

Digitized by Google

parallel to the mains and have an inclination downward toward the heater, and connect with it at the lowest point. The flow pipes or risers are taken from the tops of the mains and may supply one or more radiators as required. The return risers or drops are connected with the return mains in a similar manner. In this system great care must be taken to produce a nearly equal resistance to flow in all of the branches so that each radiator may receive its full supply of water. It will always be found that the principal current of heated water will take the path of least resistance, and that a small obstruction or irregularity in the piping is

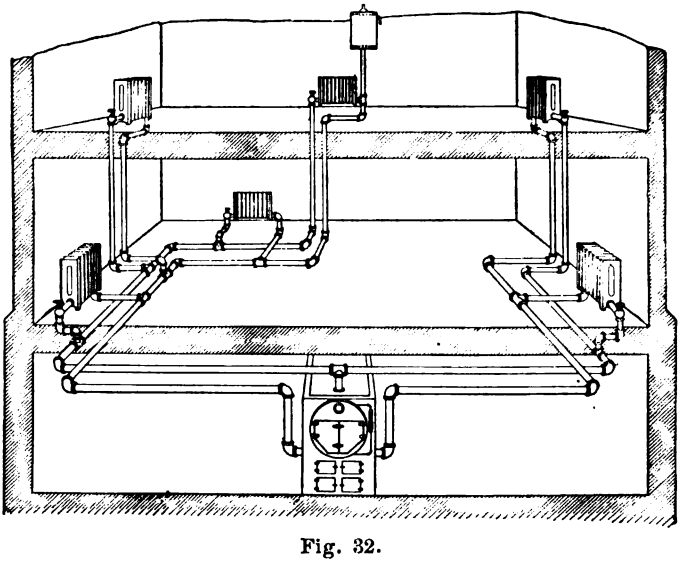


Fig. 32.

sufficient to interfere greatly with the amount of heat received in the different parts of the same system.

Expansion Tank. Every system for hot water heating should be connected with an expansion tank placed at a point somewhat above the highest radiator. The tank must in every case be connected to a line of piping which cannot by any possible means be shut off from the boiler. When water is heated, it expands a certain amount, depending upon the temperature to which it is raised and a tank or reservoir should always be provided to care for this increase in volume.

Expansion tanks are usually made of heavy galvanized iron

Digitized by Google

of one of the forms shown in Figs. 33 and 34, the latter being used where the head room is limited. The connection from the heating system enters the bottom of the tank and an open vent pipe is taken from the top. An overflow connected with a sink or drain pipe should be provided. Connections should be made with the water supply both at the boiler and at the expansion tank, the former to be used when first filling the system, as by this means all air is driven from the bottom upward and is discharged through the vent at the expansion tank. Water that is added afterward may be supplied directly to the expansion tank where the water line can be noted in the gage glass. A ball cock is often arranged to keep the water line in the tank at a constant level.

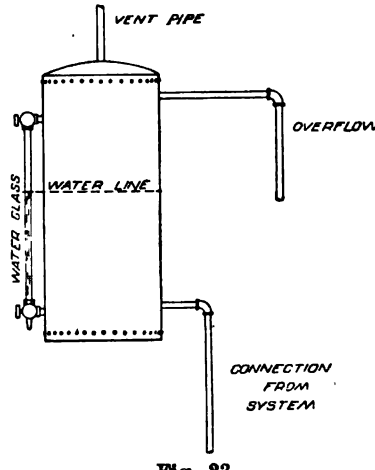


Fig. 33.

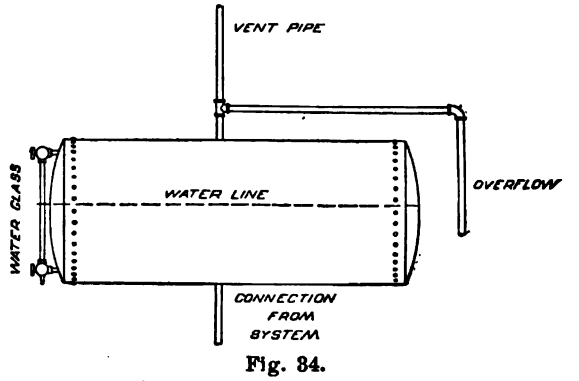


Fig. 34.

The size of the expansion tank depends upon the volume of water contained in the system, and the temperature to which it is heated. The following rule for computing the capacity of the tank may be used with satisfactory results.

The square feet of radiation divided by 40 equals the required capacity of the tank in gallons.

Digitized by Google

Overhead Distribution. This system of piping is shown in Fig. 35. A single riser is carried directly to the expansion tank, from which branches are taken to supply the various drops to which the radiators are connected. An important advantage in connection with this system is that the air rises at once to the expansion tank and escapes through the vent, so that air valves are not required on the radiators.

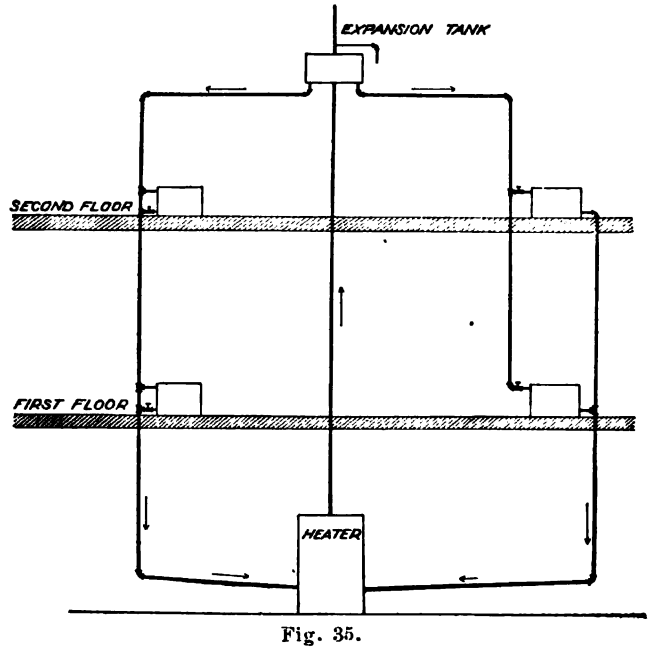


Fig. 35.

Pipe Connections. There are various methods of connecting the radiators with the mains and risers. Fig. 36 shows a radiator connected with the horizontal flow and return mains which are located below the floor. The manner of connecting with a vertical riser and return drop is shown in Fig. 37. As the water tends to flow to the highest point, the radiators on the lower floors should be favored by making the connection at the top of the riser and taking the pipe for the upper floors from the side as shown. Fig. 38 illustrates the manner of connecting with a radiator on an upper floor where the supply is connected at the top of the radiator.

Digitized by Google

The connections shown in Figs. 39 and 40 are used with the overhead system shown in Fig. 35.

Where the connection is of the form shown at the left in Fig. 35, the cooler water from the radiators is discharged into the supply pipe again so that the water furnished to the radiators on

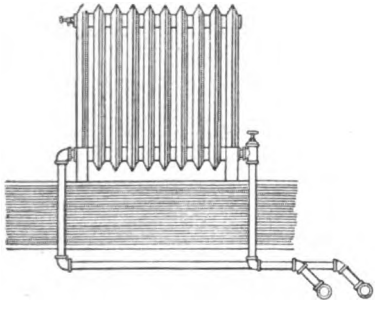


Fig. 36.

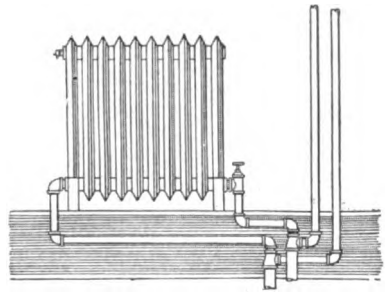


Fig. 37.

the lower floors is at a lower temperature, and the amount of heating surface must be correspondingly increased to make up for this loss.

For example.—If in the case of Fig. 35 we assume the water to leave the heater at 180 degrees and return at 160 we

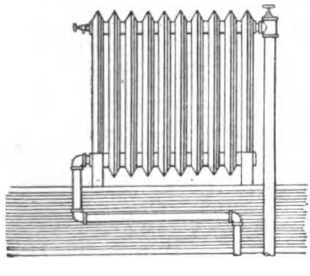


Fig. 38.

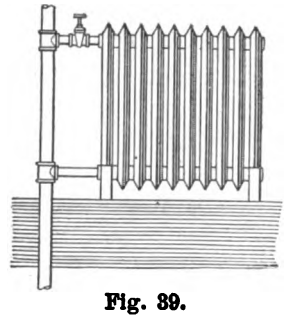


Fig. 39.

shall have a drop in temperature of 10 degrees on each floor, that is, the water will enter the radiator on the second floor at 180 degrees and leave it at 170 and will enter the radiator on the first floor at 170 and leave it at 160. The average temperatures will be 175 and 165 respectively. The efficiency in the first

Digitized by Google

case will be $175 - 70 = 105$ and $105 \times 1.5 = 157$. In the second case $165 - 70 = 95$ and $95 \times 1.5 = 142$, so that the radiator on the first floor will have to be larger than that on the second floor in the ratio of 157 to 142, in order to do the same work.

Where the radiators discharge into a separate return as in the case of Fig. 32 or those at the right in Fig. 35, we may assume the temperature of the water to be the same on all floors and give the radiators an equal efficiency.

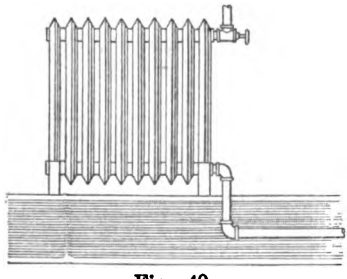


Fig. 40.

In a dwelling house of two stories no difference would be made in the sizes of radiators on the two floors, but in the case of a tall office building corrections would necessarily be made as described.

Where circulation coils are used they should be of a form which will tend to produce a flow of water through them. Figs. 41, 42 and 43 show different ways of making up and connecting these coils. In Figs. 41 and 43 the supply pipes may be either drops or risers, and in the latter

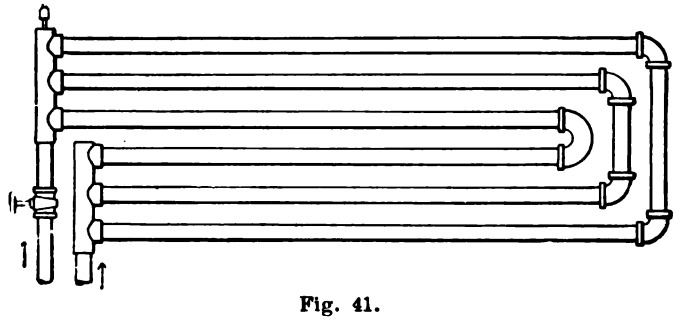


Fig. 41.

case the return in Fig. 43 may be carried back if desired into the supply drop as shown by the dotted lines.

Combination Systems. Sometimes the boiler and piping are arranged for either steam or hot water, since the demand for a higher or lower temperature of the radiators might change.

The object of this arrangement is to secure the advantages

Digitized by Google

of a hot water system for moderate temperatures, and of steam heating for extremely cold weather.

As less radiating surface is required for steam heating, there is an advantage due to the reduction in first cost. This is of con-

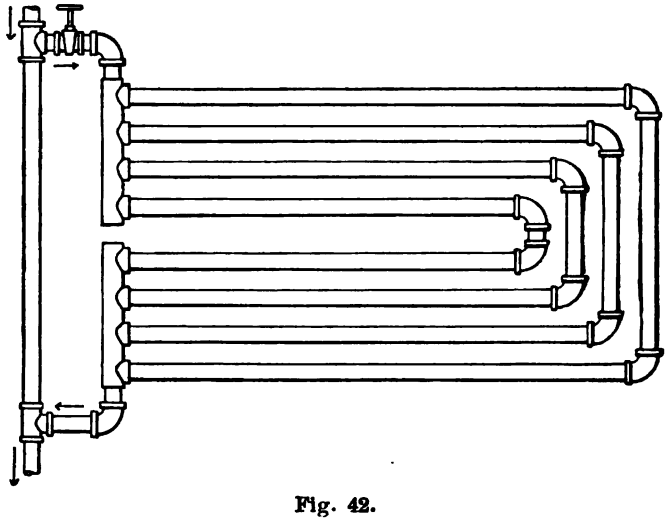


Fig. 42.

siderable importance, as a heating system must be designed of such dimensions as to be capable of warming a building in the

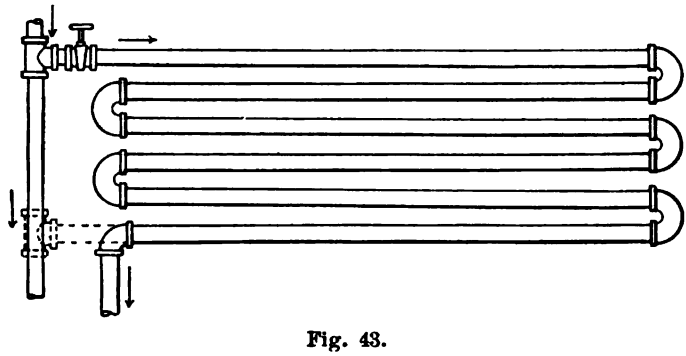


Fig. 43.

coldest weather, and this involves the expenditure of a considerable amount for radiating surfaces, which are needed only at rare intervals. A combination system of hot water and steam heating requires, first, a heater or boiler which will answer for either pur

Digitized by Google

pose; second, a system of piping which will permit the circulation of either steam or hot water; and third, the use of radiators which are adapted to both kinds of heating. These requirements will be met by using a steam boiler provided with all the fittings required for steam heating, but so arranged that the damper regulator may

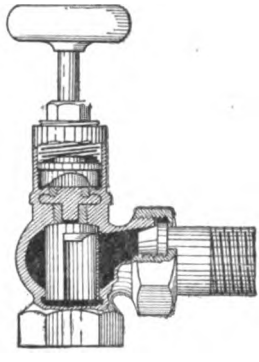


Fig. 44.

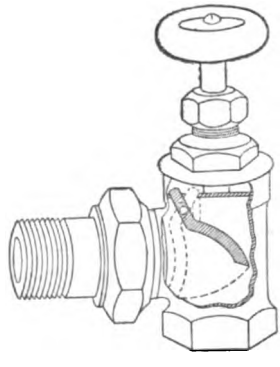


Fig. 45.

be closed by means of valves when the system is to be used for hot water heating. The addition of an expansion tank is required, which must be so arranged that it can be shut off when the system is used for steam heating. The system of piping shown in Fig. 32 is best adapted for a combination system, although an overhead distribution as shown in Fig. 35 may be used, by shutting off the vent and overflow pipes, and placing air valves on the radiators.

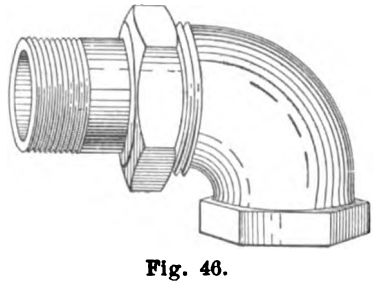


Fig. 46.

While this system has many advantages in the way of cost over the complete hot water system, yet the labor of changing from steam to hot water will in some cases be troublesome, and should the connections to the expansion tank not be opened, serious results would follow.

Valves and Fittings. Gate valves should always be used in connection with hot water piping, although angle valves may

Digitized by Google

be used at the radiators. There are several patterns of radiator valves made especially for hot water work; their chief advantage lies in a device for quick closing, usually a quarter or half turn being sufficient to open or close the valve. Two different designs are shown in Figs. 44 and 45.

It is customary to place a valve in only one connection as that is sufficient to stop the flow of water through the radiator; a fitting known as a "union elbow" is often employed in place of the second valve. (See Fig. 46.)

Air Valves. The ordinary pet-cock air valve is the most reliable for hot-water radiators, although there are several forms of automatic valves which are claimed to give satisfaction. One of these is shown in Fig. 47. This is similar in construction to a steam trap. As air collects in the chamber, and the water line is lowered, the float drops, and in so doing opens a small valve at the top of the chamber which allows the air to escape. As the water flows in to take its place the float is forced upward and the valve is closed.

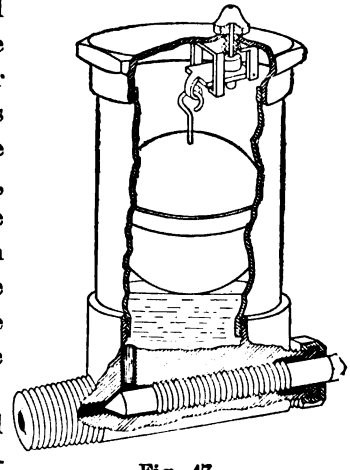


Fig. 47.

All radiators which are supplied by risers from below should be provided with air valves placed in the top of the last section at the return end. If they are supplied by drops from an overhead system the air will be discharged at the expansion tank and air valves will not be necessary at the radiators.

Fittings. All fittings, such as elbows, tees, etc., should be of the "long turn" pattern. If the common form is used, they should be a size larger than the pipe, bushed down to the proper size. The long turn fittings, however, are preferable.

Pipe Sizes. The size of pipe required to supply any given radiator depends upon four conditions; *first* the size of the radiator, *second* its elevation above the boiler, *third* the length of pipe required to connect it with the boiler, and *fourth* the difference in

Digitized by Google

temperature between the supply and return. The following illustration will serve to make these points clear.

If we should take a glass tube of the form shown in Fig. 48, fill it with water and hold it in a vertical position, we would notice that the water remained perfectly quiet; now if the flame of a lamp were held near the tube A and a few drops of coloring matter were poured into the tube, we would find that the water was in motion, and the current would be in the direction shown by the arrows. While the water in both tubes was at the same temperature, the two columns were of the same weight and remained in equilibrium. If, however, the water in column A is heater, it expands and becomes

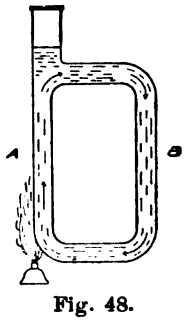


Fig. 48.

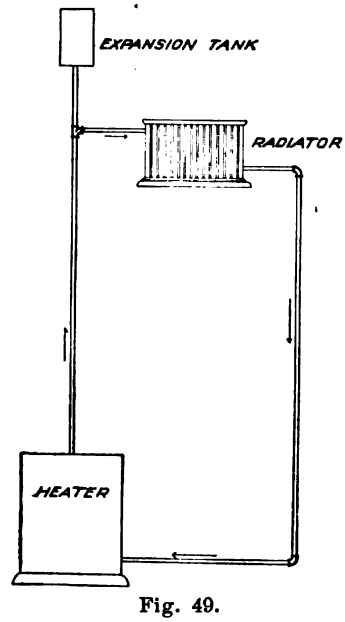


Fig. 49.

lighter than column B, and is forced upward by the heavier water falling toward the bottom of the tube. The heated water flows across the top and into B where it takes the place of the cooler water which is settling to the bottom. As long as there is a difference in the temperature of the two columns this action will continue. If now we replace the lamp by a furnace, and connect the two columns A and B at the top by inserting a radiator, we

Digitized by Google

shall have the same illustration in practical form as utilized in hot water heating. (See Fig. 49).

The heat given off by the radiator always insures a difference in temperature between the columns of water in the supply and return pipes, so that as long as heat is supplied by the furnace the flow of water will continue. The greater the difference in temperature of the water in the two pipes, the greater the difference in weight, and consequently the faster the flow. The greater the height of the radiator above the heater the more rapid the flow, for the difference in weight between two columns 1 foot high and two columns 10 feet high is ten times as great and if there were no friction in the pipes the flow would be directly proportional to the elevation of the radiator above the heater. The quantity of water discharged by a given pipe under constant pressure varies inversely as the length of pipe; that is, if a pipe 100 feet long will discharge 10 gallons per minute under a given pressure, it will discharge only half as many gallons if the length is increased to 200 feet, the pressure remaining the same.

As it would be a long process to work out the required size of each pipe for a heating system, the following tables have been prepared, covering the usual conditions to be met with in practice.

Table III gives the number of square feet of direct radiation which different sizes of mains will supply for varying lengths of run.

TABLE III.

Size of Pipe.	Square Feet of Radiating Surface.								
	100 ft. Run.	200 ft. Run	300 ft. Run.	400 ft. Run.	500 ft. Run.	600 ft. Run.	700 ft. Run.	890 ft. Run.	1000 ft. Run.
1	30								
1¼	60	50							
1½	100	75	50						
2	200	150	125	100	75				
2½	350	250	200	175	150	125			
3	550	400	300	275	250	225	200	175	150
3½	850	600	450	400	350	325	300	250	225
4	1200	850	700	600	525	475	450	400	350
5		1400	1150	1000	700	850	775	725	650
6				1600	1400	1300	1200	1150	1000
7							1706	1600	1500

Digitized by Google

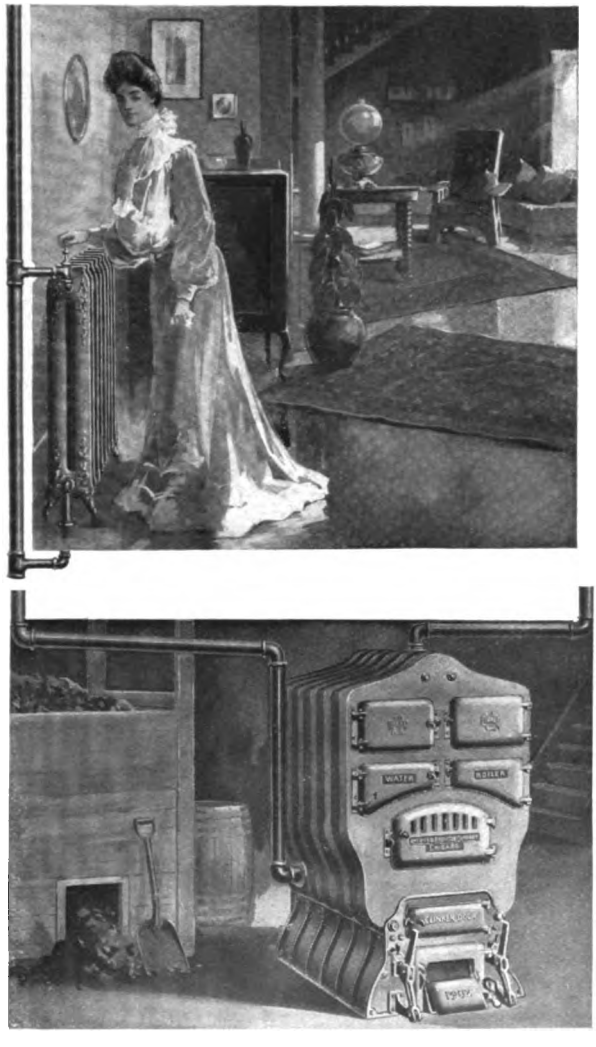
These quantities have been calculated on a basis of 10 feet difference in elevation between the center of the heater and the radiators, and a difference in temperature of 17 degrees between the supply and return.

This table may be used for all horizontal mains. For the vertical risers or drops, table IV may be used. This has been computed for the same difference in temperature, and gives the square feet of surface which different sizes of pipe will supply on the different floors of a building, assuming the height of the stories to be 10 feet. Where a single riser is carried to the top of a building to supply the radiators on the floors below, by drop pipes, we must first get what is called the "average elevation of the system" before taking its size from the table. This may be illustrated by the following diagram, (see Fig. 50).

In A we have a riser carried to the third story and from there a drop brought down to supply a radiator on the first floor. The elevation available for producing a flow in the riser is only 10 feet, the same as though it extended only to the radiator. The water in the two pipes above the radiator is practically at the same temperature and therefore in equilibrium, and has no effect on the flow of the water in the riser. (Actually there would be some radiation from the pipes, and the return, above the radiator, would be slightly cooler, but for purposes of illustration this may be neglected). If the radiator was on the second floor the elevation of the system would be 20 feet (see B), and on the third floor 30 feet, and so on. The distance which the pipe is carried above the first radiator which it supplies has but little effect in producing a flow, especially if covered, as it should be in practice. Having seen that the flow in the main riser depends upon the elevation of the radiators, it is easy to see that the way in which it is distributed on the different floors must be considered. For example, in B, Fig. 50, there will be a more rapid flow through the riser with the radiators as shown than there would be if they were reversed and the larger one were placed upon the first floor.

We get the average elevation of the system by multiplying the square feet of radiation on each floor by the elevation above the heater, than adding these products together and dividing the same

Digitized by Google



TYPICAL HEATING INSTALLATION SHOWING SECTIONAL BOILER AND RADIATOR.

American Radiator Company.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

by the total radiation in the whole system. In the case shown in B the average elevation of the system would be

$$\frac{(100 \times 30) + (50 \times 20) + (10 \times 25)}{100 + 50 + 25} = 24.3 + \text{feet},$$

and we must proportion the main riser the same as though the

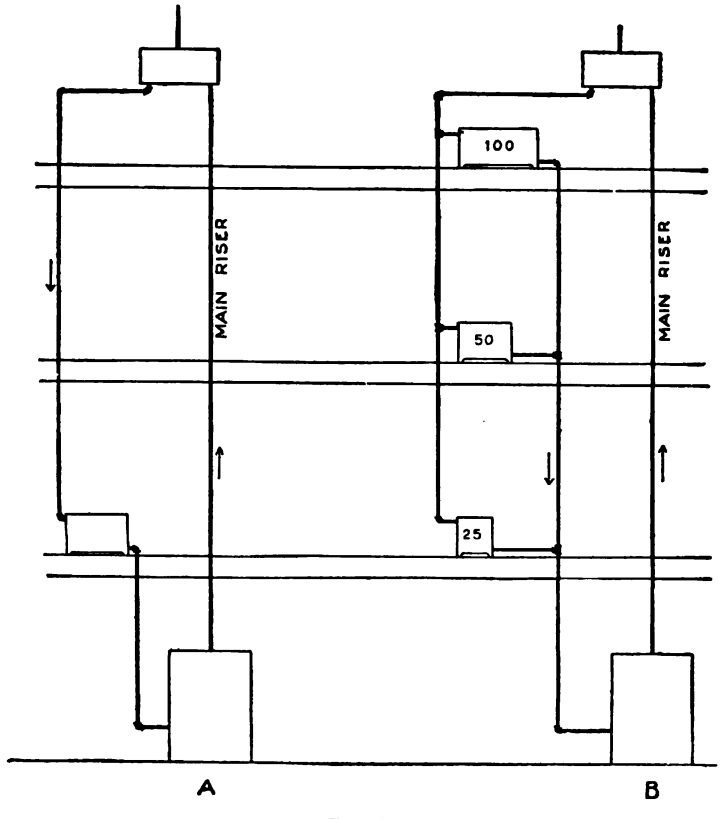


Fig. 50.

whole radiation were on the second floor. Looking in table IV we find for the second story that a $1\frac{1}{2}$ inch pipe will supply 140 square feet and a 2 inch pipe 275. Probably a $1\frac{1}{2}$ inch pipe would be sufficient

Although the height of the stories varies in different buildings,

Digitized by Google

10 feet will be found sufficiently accurate for ordinary practice.

TABLE IV.

Size of Riser.	Square Feet of Radiating Surface.					
	1st Story	2d Story	3d Story	4th Story	5th Story	6th Story
1	30	55	65	75	85	95
1¼	60	90	110	125	140	160
1½	100	140	165	185	210	240
2	200	275	375	425	500	
2¼	350	475				
3	550					
3½	850					

INDIRECT HOT WATER HEATING.

Types of Heaters. The heaters for indirect hot water heating are of the same general form as those used for steam. The heaters shown in Figs. 9, 14 and 15 of Part I, are common patterns. The "drum pin," Fig. 14, is an excellent form, as the method of making the connections insures a uniform distribution of water through the stack.

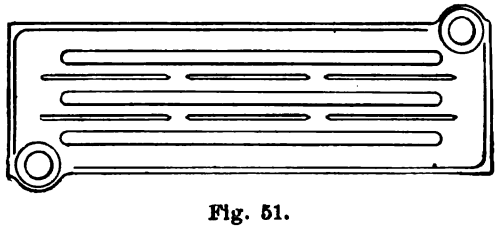


Fig. 51.

Fig. 51 shows a section of good form for water circulation, and also of good depth, which is a necessary point in the design of hot water heaters. They should not be less than 10 or 12 inches for good results. Box coils of the form given for steam may also be used, provided the connections for supply and return are made of good size.

Size of Heaters. As indirect hot water heaters are used principally in the warming of dwelling houses, and in combination with direct radiation, the easiest method is to compute the surfaces required for direct radiation and multiply these results by 1.5 for pin radiators of good depth. For other forms the factor should

Digitized by Google

vary from 1.5 to 2, depending upon the depth and proportion of free area for air flow between the sections.

If it is desired to calculate the required surface directly by the thermal unit method, we may allow an efficiency of from 360 to 380 for good types in zero weather.

Flues and Casings. For cleanliness, as well as for obtaining the best results, indirect stacks should be hung at one side of the register or flue receiving the warm air, and the cold-air duct should enter beneath the heater at the other side. A space of 10 inches, and preferably 12, should be allowed for the warm air above the stack. The top of the casing should pitch upward toward the warm-air outlet at least an inch in its length. A space of from 6 to 8 inches should be allowed for cold air below the stack.

As the amount of air warmed per square foot of heating surface is less than in the case of steam, we may make the flues somewhat smaller as compared with the size of heater. The following proportions may be used under usual conditions: $1\frac{1}{2}$ square inches per square foot of radiation for the first floor, and $1\frac{1}{4}$ square inches for the second floor, and $1\frac{1}{4}$ square inches for the cold-air duct.

Pipe Connections. In hot water indirect work it is not desirable to supply more than 80 to 100 square feet of radiation from a single connection. When the requirements call for larger stacks they should be divided into two or more groups according to the size.

The branches supplying the stacks should pitch upward from the boiler to a point directly over the stack, then drop and make connection with the heater at such a point as the special form in use requires. An air valve should be placed in the highest point of the pipe just before it drops to the heater. The return should be taken from the bottom of the stack and carried at a lower level back to the boiler or heater.

Conditions may make it necessary to bring back several separate returns to the heater, but it is better practice to use one large flow main and a single return of the same size, branching to the different stacks as necessary.

Pipe Sizes. As the difference in elevation between the

Digitized by Google

stacks and the heater is necessarily small, the pipes should be of ample size to offset the slow velocity of flow through them. The following sizes for runs up to 100 feet will be found ample for ordinary conditions. Some engineers make a practice of using somewhat smaller pipes, but the larger sizes will in general be found more satisfactory.

TABLE V.

Size of Pipe.	Square feet of Indirect Radiation.
1	15
1¼	30
1½	50
2	100
2½	200
3	300
3½	400
4	600
5	1000

CARE AND MANAGEMENT OF HOT WATER HEATERS.

The directions given for the care of steam heating boilers apply in a general way to hot water heaters as to the methods of caring for the fires and for cleaning and filling the heater. Only the special points of difference need be considered. Before building the fire all the pipes and radiators must be full of water and the expansion tank should be partially filled as indicated by the gage glass. Should the water in any of the radiators fail to circulate, see that the valves are wide open and that the radiator is free from air. Water must always be added at the expansion tank when for any reason it is drawn from the system.

The required temperature of the water will depend upon the outside conditions and only enough fire should be carried to keep the rooms comfortably warm. Thermometers should be placed in the flow and return pipes near the heater as a guide. Special forms are made for this purpose in which the bulb is immersed in a bath of oil or mercury. See Fig. 52.

EXHAUST STEAM HEATING.

Steam after being used in an engine contains the greater part of its heat, and if not condensed or used for other purposes it can

Digitized by Google

usually be employed for heating without affecting to any great extent the power of the engine.

The systems of steam heating which have been described are those in which the water of condensation flows back into the boiler by gravity; where exhaust steam is used the pressure is much below that of the boiler and it must be returned either by a pump or return trap. The exhaust steam is often insufficient to supply the entire heating system and must be supplemented by live steam taken directly from the boiler. This must first pass through a reducing valve in order to reduce the pressure to correspond with that carried in the heating system.

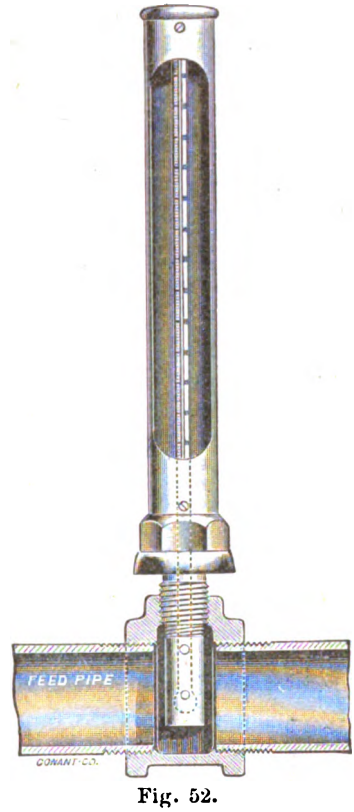


Fig. 52.

The exhaust steam discharged from non-condensing engines contains from 20 to 30 per cent of water, and considerable oil or greasy matter which has been employed for lubrication. When the engine is exhausting into the air, the pressure in the exhaust pipe is but slightly above that due to the atmosphere. The effect of passing exhaust steam through the pipes and radiators of a heating system is likely to increase the back pressure on the engine and reduce its effective work; this must be offset by raising the boiler pressure or increasing the cut-off of the engine.

An engine does not deliver steam continuously but at regular intervals at the end of each stroke and the amount is likely to vary with the work done since the governor is adjusted to admit steam in such a quantity as is required to maintain a uniform speed. If the work is light, very little steam will be admitted to the engine and for this reason the supply available for heating may

Digitized by Google

vary somewhat depending upon the use made of the power delivered by the engine. In mills the amount of exhaust steam is practically constant; in office buildings where power is used for lighting, the variation is greater, especially if power is also required for the running of elevators.

The general requirements for a successful system of exhaust steam heating include a system of piping of such proportions that only a slight increase in back pressure will be thrown upon the engine; a connection which shall automatically supply live steam at a reduced pressure as needed; provision for removing the oil from the exhaust steam; a relief or back pressure valve

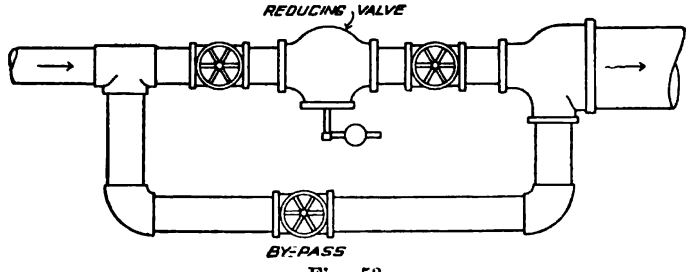


Fig. 53.

arranged to prevent any sudden increase in back pressure on the engine, and a return system of some kind for returning the water of condensation back to the boiler against a higher pressure. These requirements may be met in various ways depending upon actual conditions found in different cases.

To prevent sudden changes in the back pressure due to irregular supply of steam, the exhaust pipe from the engine is often carried to a closed tank having a capacity from 30 to 40 times that of the engine cylinder. This tank may be provided with baffle plates or other arrangements and serve as a separator for removing the oil from the steam as it passes through.

Any system of piping may be used but great care should be taken that as little resistance as possible is introduced at bends and fittings; and the mains and branches should be of ample size. Usually the best results are obtained from the system in which the main steam pipe is carried directly to the top of the building, the distributing pipes run from that point, and the radiating surfaces supplied by a down-flowing current of steam.

Digitized by Google

Before taking up the matter of piping in detail a few of the more important pieces of apparatus will be described in a brief way.

Reducing Valves. The action of pressure reducing valves has been taken up quite fully in "Boiler Accessories," and need not be repeated here. When the reduction in pressure is large, as in the case of a combined power and heating plant, the valve may be one or two sizes smaller than the low pressure main into which it discharges. For example —a 5-inch valve will supply an 8-inch main, a 4-inch a 6-inch main, a 3-inch a 5-inch main, a $2\frac{1}{2}$-inch a 4-inch main, etc.

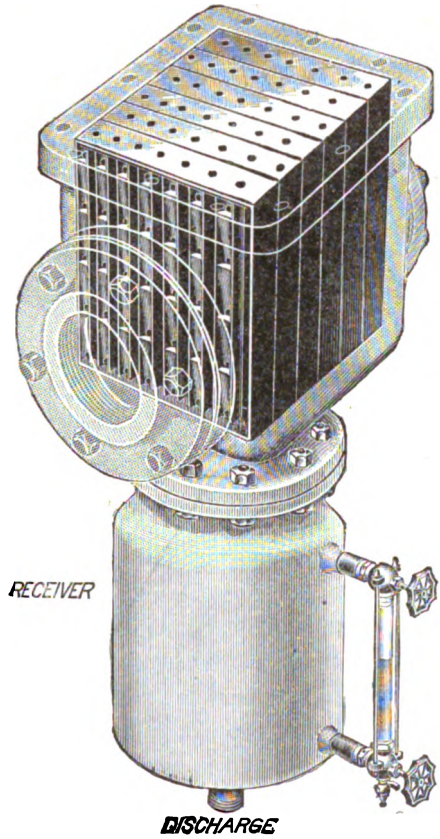


Fig. 54.

For the smaller sizes the difference should not be more than one size. All reducing valves should be provided with a valved by-pass for cutting out the valve in case of repairs. The connection is usually made as shown in plan by Fig. 53.

Grease Extractor. As already stated, when exhaust steam is used for heating purposes, it must first be passed through some form of separator for removing the oil. This is usually effected by introducing a series of baffling plates in the path of the steam; the particles of oil striking these are stopped and thus separated from the steam. The oil drops into a receiver provided for this purpose and is discharged through a trap to the sewer.

In the separator, or extractor, shown in Fig. 54, the separa-

Digitized by Google

tion is accomplished by a series of plates placed in a vertical position in the body of the separator through which the steam must pass. These plates consist of upright hollow columns, with openings at regular intervals for the admission of water and oil, which drains downward to the receiver below. The steam takes a zig-zag course and all of it comes in contact with the intercepting plates, which insures a thorough separation of the oil and other solid matter from the steam. Another form, shown in Fig. 55, gives excellent results and has the advantage of providing an equalizing chamber for overcoming, to some extent, the unequal pressure due to the varying load on the engine. It consists of a

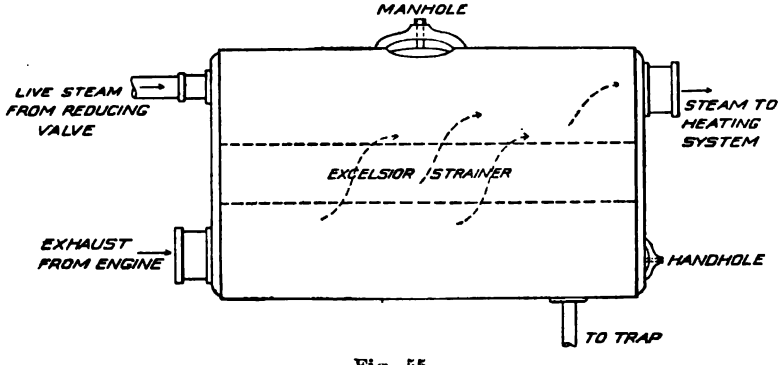


Fig. 55.

tank or receiver about 4 feet in diameter, with heavy boiler iron heads slightly crowned to give stiffness. Through the center is a layer of excelsior (wooden shavings of long fibre) about 12 inches in thickness, supported on an iron grating, with a similar grating laid over the top to hold it in place. The steam enters the space below the excelsior and passes upward, as shown by the arrows. The oil is caught by the excelsior which can be renewed from time to time as it becomes saturated. The oil and water which fall to the bottom of the receiver are carried off through a trap. Live steam may be admitted through a reducing valve for supplementing the exhaust when necessary.

Back Pressure Valve. This is a form of relief valve which is placed in the outboard exhaust pipe to prevent the pressure in the heating system from rising above a given point. Its office is the reverse of the reducing valve which supplies more steam when

Digitized by Google

the pressure becomes too low. The form shown in Fig. 56 is designed for a vertical pipe. The valve proper consists of two discs of unequal area, the combined area of which equals that of the pipe. The force tending to open the valve is that due to the steam pressure acting on an area equal to the difference in area between the two discs; it is clear from the cut that the pressure acting on the larger disc tends to open the valve while the pressure on the smaller acts in the opposite direction. The valve stem is connected by a link and crank arm with a spindle upon which is a lever and weight outside. As the valve opens the weight is raised so that by placing it in different positions on the lever arm the valve will open at any desired pressure.

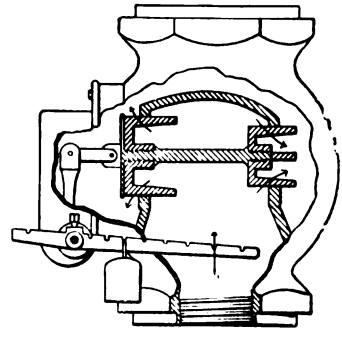


Fig. 56.

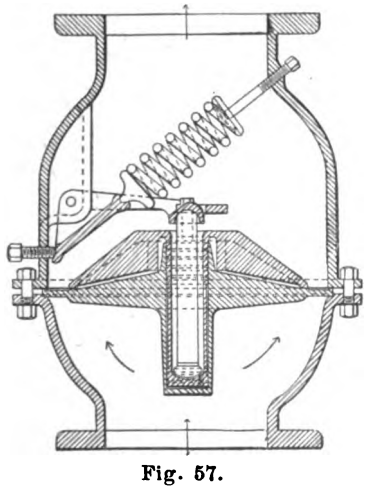


Fig. 57.

Fig. 57 shows a different type in which a spring is used instead of a weight. This valve has a single disc moving in a vertical direction. The valve stem is in the form of a piston or dash-pot which prevents a too sudden movement and makes it more quiet in its action. The disc is held on its seat against the steam pressure by a lever attached to the spring as shown. When the pressure of the steam on the underside becomes greater than the tension of the spring, the valve lifts and allows the steam to escape. The tension of the spring can be varied by means of the adjusting screw at its upper end.

A back pressure valve is simply a low pressure safety valve designed with a specially large opening for the passage of steam through it. They are also made for horizontal pipes as well as vertical.

Digitized by Google

Exhaust Head. This is a form of separator placed at the top of an outboard exhaust pipe to prevent the water carried up in the steam from falling upon the roofs of buildings or in the street below. Fig. 58 is known as a centrifugal exhaust head. The steam on entering at the bottom is given a whirling or rotary motion by the spiral deflectors and the water is thrown outward by centrifugal force against the sides of the chamber from which it flows into the shallow trough at the base and is carried away through the drip pipe which is brought down and connected with a drain pipe inside the building. The passage of the steam outboard is shown by the arrows. Other forms are used in which the water is separated from the steam by deflectors which change the direction of the currents.

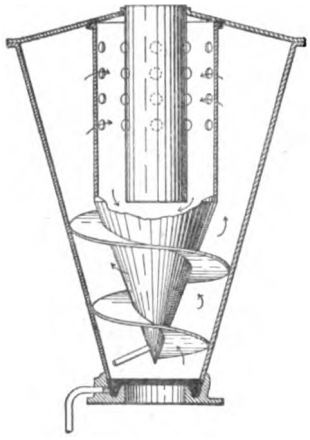


Fig. 58.

Automatic Return Pumps. In exhaust heating plants the condensation is returned to the boilers by means of some form of return pump. A combined pump and receiver of the form illustrated in Fig. 59 is generally used. This consists of a cast or wrought iron tank mounted on a base in connection with a boiler feed pump. Inside of the tank is a ball float connected by means of levers with a valve in the steam pipe which is connected with the pump. When the water line in the tank rises above a certain level, the float is raised and opens the steam valve which starts the pump. When the water is lowered to its normal level the valve closes and the pump stops. By this arrangement a constant water line is maintained in the receiver and the pump runs only as needed to care for the condensation as it returns from the heating system. If dry returns are used they may be brought together and connected with the top of the receiver. If it is desired to seal the horizontal runs, as is usually the case, the receiver may be raised to a height sufficient to give the required elevation and the returns connected near the bottom below the water line.

A "balance pipe," so called should connect the heating main

Digitized by Google

with the top of the tank for equalizing the pressure, otherwise the steam above the water would condense and the vacuum thus formed would draw all the water into the tank leaving the returns practically empty and thus destroying the condition sought. Sometimes an independent regulator or pump governor is used in place of a receiver. One type is shown in Fig. 60. The return

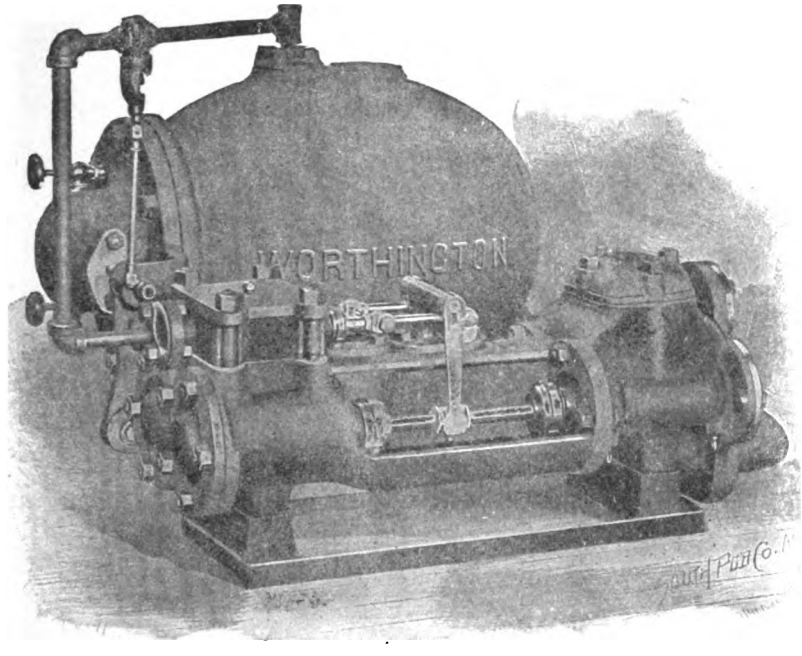


Fig. 59.

main is connected at the upper opening and the pump suction with the lower. A float inside the chamber operates the steam valve shown at the top and the pump works automatically as in the case just described.

If it is desired to raise the water line the regulator may be elevated to the desired height and connections made as shown in Fig. 61.

Return Traps. The principle of the return trap has been described in "Boiler Accessories" but its practical form and application will be taken up here. The type shown in Fig. 62 has all

Digitized by Google

of its working parts outside of the trap. It consists of a cast iron bowl pivoted at G and H. There is an opening through G connecting with the inside of the bowl. The pipe K connects through C with an interior pipe opening near the top (see Fig. 63.) The pipe D connects with a receiver into which all of the returns are brought. A is a check valve allowing water to pass through in the direction shown by the arrow. E is a pipe connecting with the boiler below the water line. B is a check opening toward the boiler and K a pipe connected with the steam main or drum.

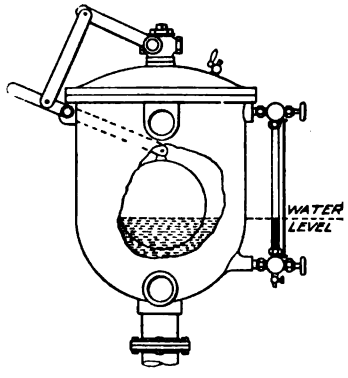


Fig. 60.

The action of the trap is as follows. As the bowl fills with water from the receiver it overbalances the weighted lever and

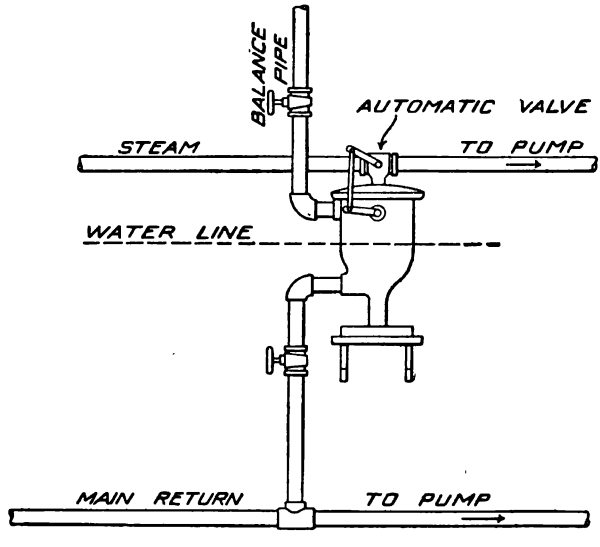


Fig. 61.

drops to the bottom of the ring. This opens the valve C and admits steam at boiler pressure to the top of the trap. Being at a higher level the water flows by gravity into the boiler, through

Digitized by Google

the pipe E. Water and steam are kept from passing out through D by the check A.

When the trap has emptied itself the weight of the ball raises it to the original position, which movement closes the valve C and opens the small vent F. The pressure in the bowl being relieved, water flows in from the receiver through D until the trap is filled, when the process is repeated. In order to work satisfactorily the trap should be placed at least 3 feet above the water level in the boiler and the pressure in the returns must always be sufficient to raise the water from the receiver to the trap against atmospheric pressure which is theoretically about 1 pound for every 2 feet in height. In practice there will be more or less friction to overcome, and suitable adjustments must be made for each particular case. Fig. 64 shows another form acting upon the same

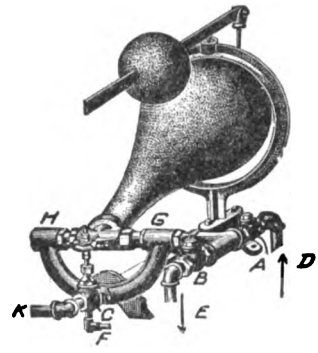


Fig. 62.

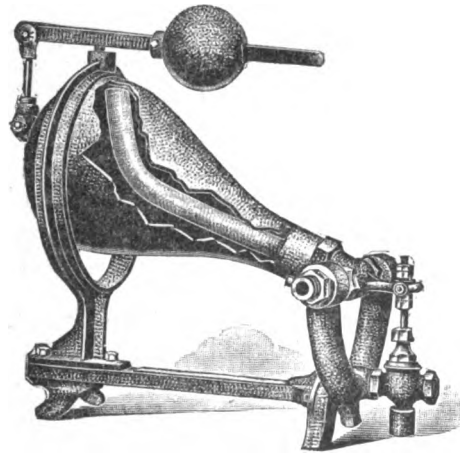


Fig. 63.

principle except in this case the steam valve is operated by a bucket or float inside of the trap. The pipe connections are practically the same as with the trap just described.

Digitized by Google

Return traps are more commonly used in smaller plants where it is desired to avoid the expense and care of a pump.

Damper Regulators. Every heating and every power plant should be provided with automatic means for closing the dampers when the steam pressure reaches a certain point, and for opening them again when the pressure drops. There are various regulators

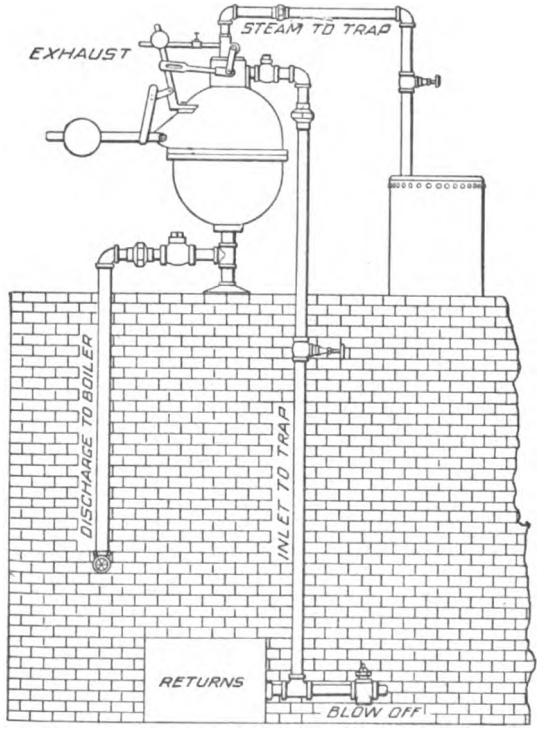


Fig. 64.

designed for this purpose, a simple form of which is shown in Fig. 65.

Steam at boiler pressure is admitted beneath a diaphragm which is balanced by a weighted lever. When the pressure rises to a certain point it raises the lever slightly and opens a valve which admits water under pressure above a diaphragm located near the smokepipe. This action forces down a lever connected by chains with the damper and closes it. When the steam pressure drops, the water valve is closed, and the different parts of the

Digitized by Google

apparatus take their original positions. Another form similar in principle is shown in Fig. 66. In this case a piston is operated by the water pressure instead of a diaphragm. In both types the pressures at which the damper shall open and close are regulated by suitable adjustments of the weights upon the levers.

Pipe Connections. The method of making the pipe connections in any particular case will depend upon the general arrange-

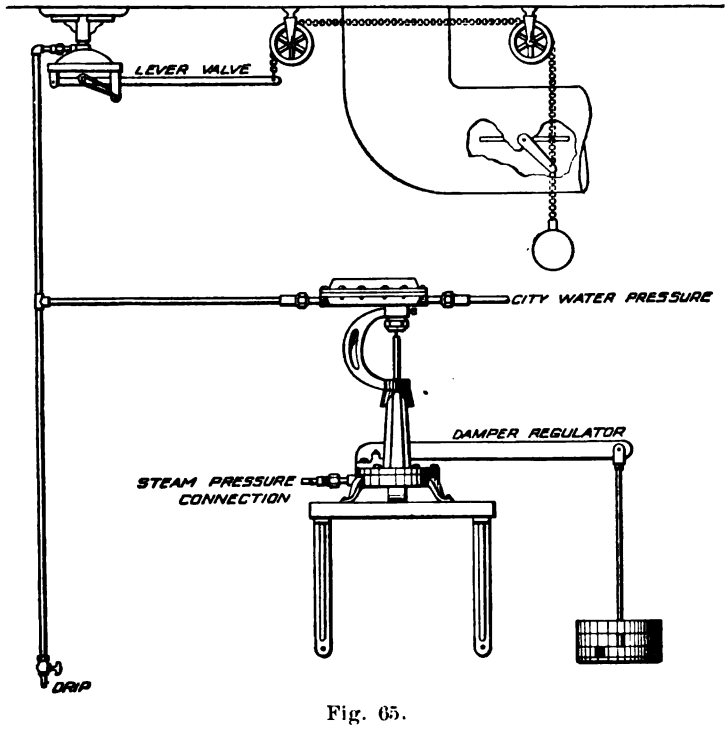


Fig. 65.

ment of the apparatus and the various conditions. Fig. 67 illustrates the general principles to be followed, and by suitable changes may be used as a guide in the design of new systems.

Steam first passes from the boilers into a large drum or header; from this a main, provided with a shut-off valve, is taken as shown; one branch is carried to the engines while another is connected with the heating system through a reducing valve having a by-pass and cut-out valves. The exhaust from the engines connects with the large main over the boilers at a point just above

Digitized by Google

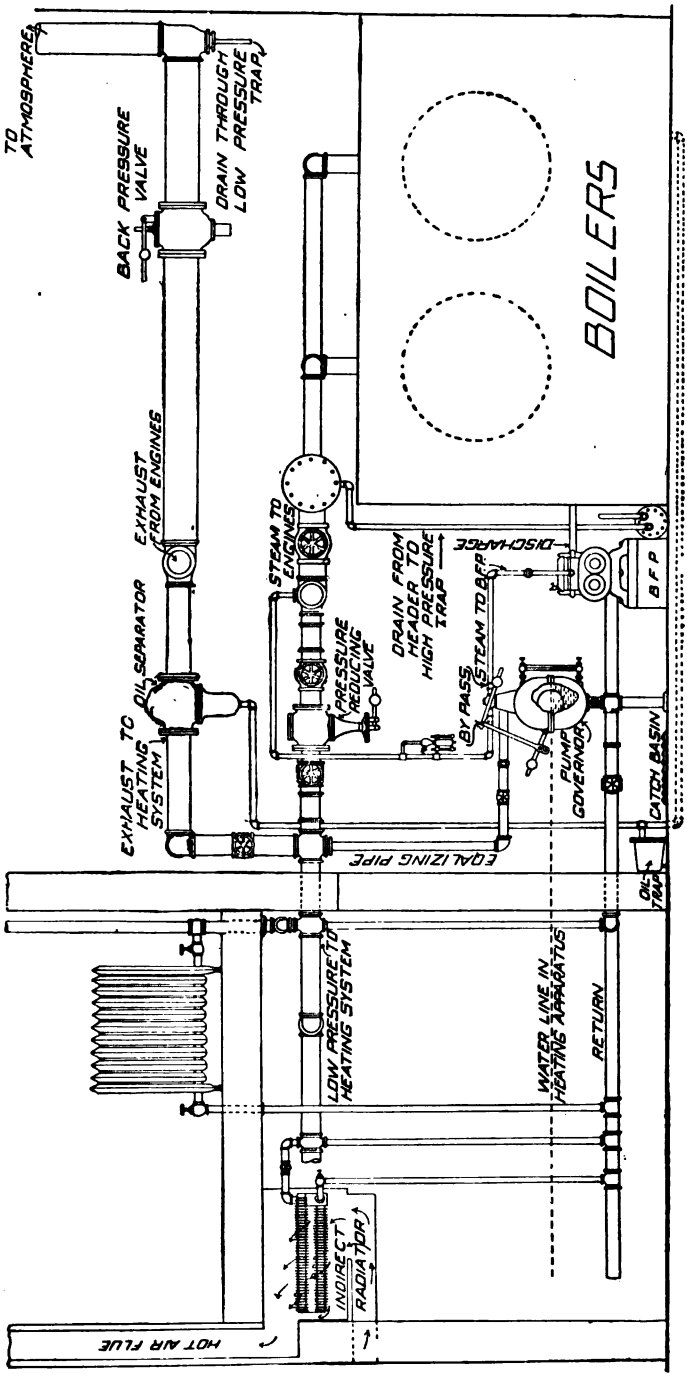
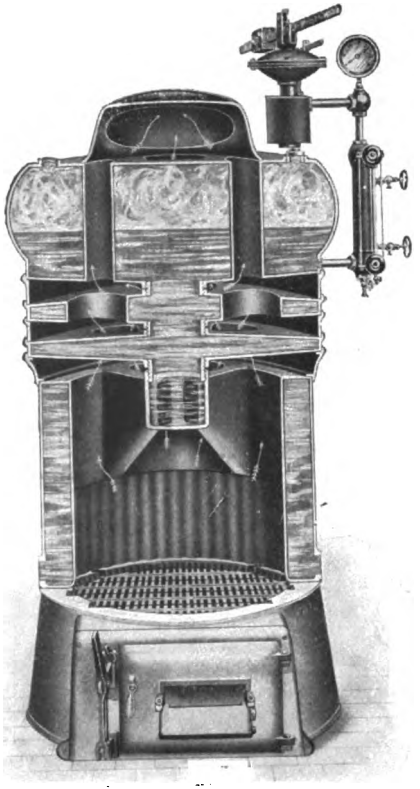
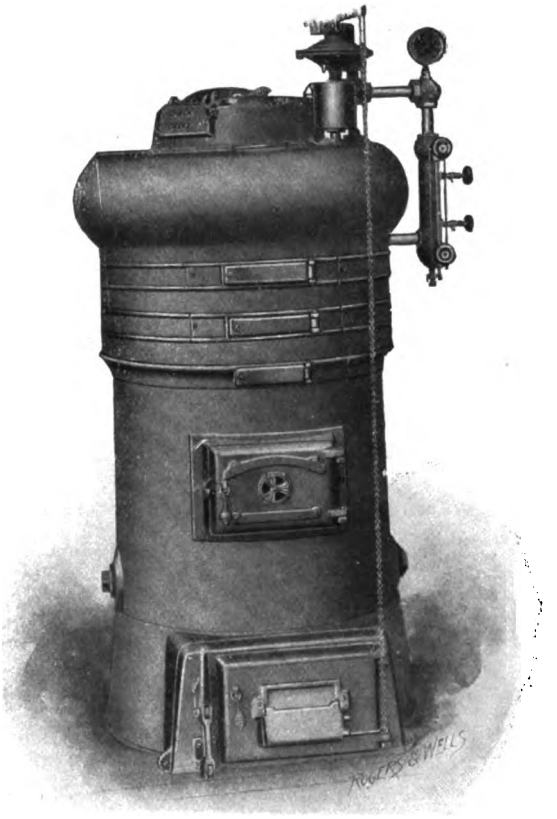


Fig. 67.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google





VIEWS OF THE AMERICAN RADIATOR COMPANY'S STEAM BOILER FOR HARD COAL.

Digitized by Google

the steam drum. The branch at the right is carried outboard through a back pressure valve which may be set to carry any desired pressure on the system. The other branch at the left passes through an oil separator into the heating system. The connections between the mains and radiators are made in the usual way and the main return is carried back to the return pump near the floor. A false water line or seal is obtained by elevating

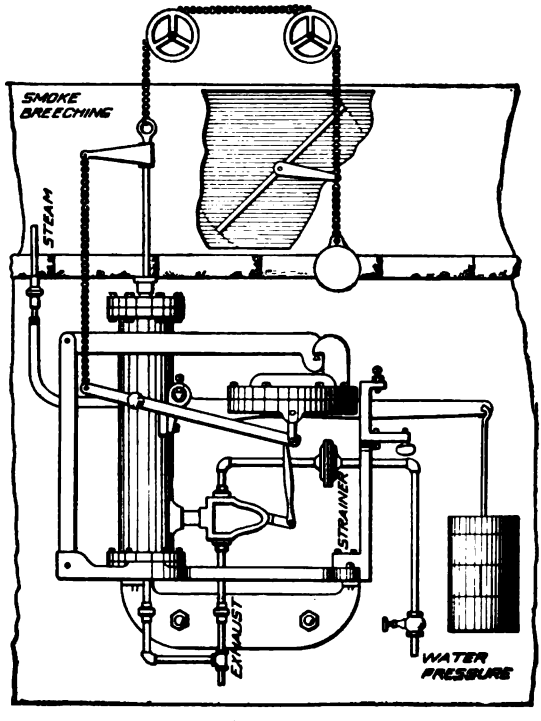


Fig. 66.

the pump regulator as already described. An equalizing or balance pipe connects the top of the regulator with the low pressure heating main and high pressure is supplied to the pump as shown.

A sight feed lubricator should be placed in this pipe above the automatic valve, and a valved by-pass should be placed around the regulator for running the pump in case of accident or repairs. The oil separator should be drained through a special oil trap to a

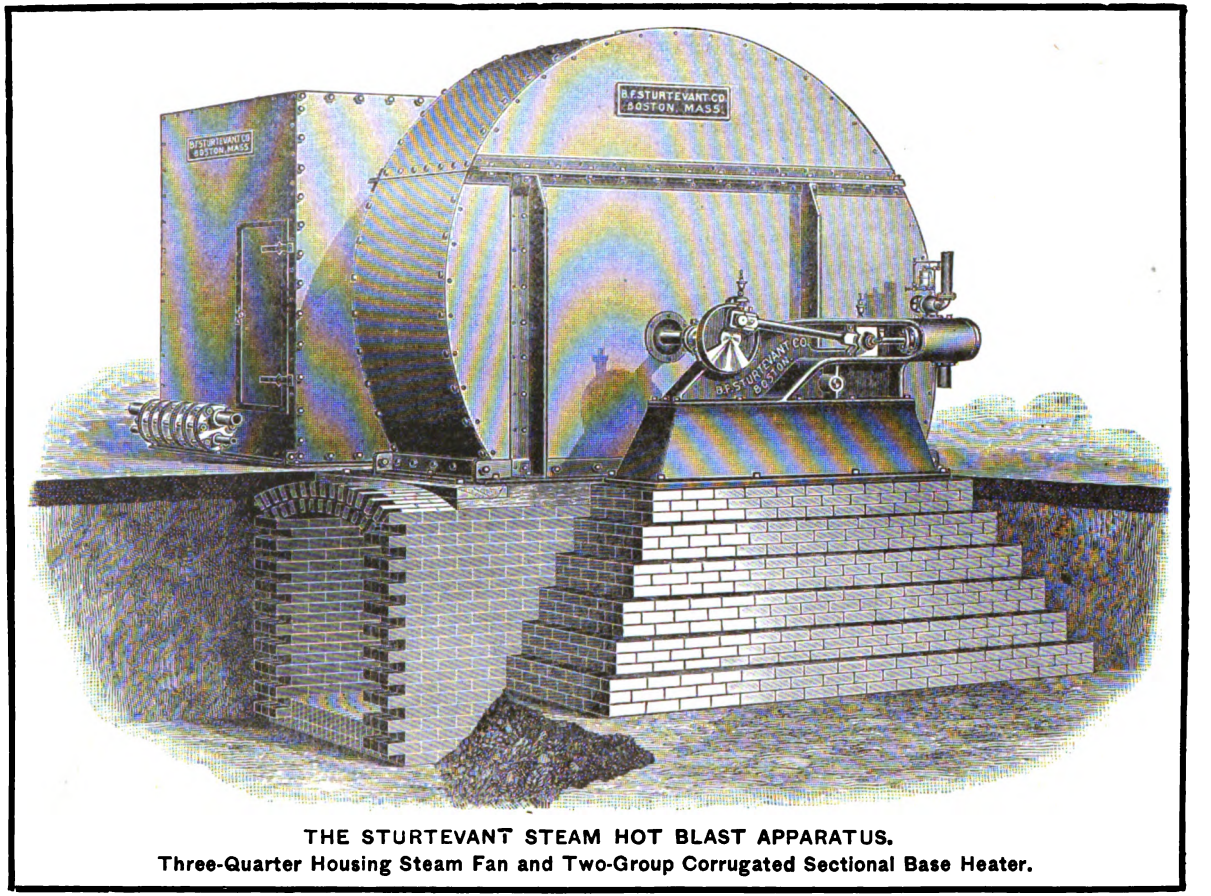
Digitized by Google

catch basin or to the sewer, and the steam drum or any other low points or pockets in the high pressure piping dripped to the main return through suitable traps.

Means should be provided for draining all parts of the system to the sewer and all traps and special apparatus should be by-passed. The return pump should always be duplicated in a plant of any size as a safeguard against accident and the two pumps run alternately to make sure that one is always in working order. One piece of apparatus not shown in Fig. 67 is the feed water heater. If all of the exhaust steam can be utilized for heating purposes, this is not necessary as the cold water for feeding the boilers may be discharged into the return pipe and be pumped in with the condensation. In summer time, however, when the heating plant is not in use, a feedwater heater is necessary, as a large amount of heat which would otherwise be wasted may be saved in this way. The connections will depend somewhat upon the form of heater used, but in general a single connection with the heating main inside the back pressure valve is all that is necessary. The condensation from the heater should be trapped to the sewer.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google



THE STURTEVANT STEAM HOT BLAST APPARATUS.
Three-Quarter Housing Steam Fan and Two-Group Corrugated Sectional Base Heater.

Digitized by Google

HEATING AND VENTILATION.

PART III.

VACUUM SYSTEMS.

Low Pressure or Vacuum Systems. In the systems of steam heating which have been described up to this point the pressure carried has always been above that of the atmosphere, and the action of gravity has been depended upon to carry the water of condensation back to the boiler or receiver; the air in the radiators has been forced out through air valves by the pressure of steam back of it. Methods will now be taken up in which the pressure in the heating system is less than the atmosphere and where the circulation through the radiators is produced by suction rather than by pressure. Systems of this kind have several advantages over the ordinary methods of circulation under pressure. First — no back pressure is produced at the engines when used in connection with exhaust steam, but rather there will be a reduction of pressure due to the partial vacuum existing in the radiators; second — a complete removal of air from the coils and radiators so that all portions are steam filled and available for heating purposes; third — complete drainage through the returns, especially those having long horizontal runs, and the absence of water hammer; and fourth the smaller size of return pipes necessary. The two systems of this kind in most common use are known as the Webster and Paul systems.

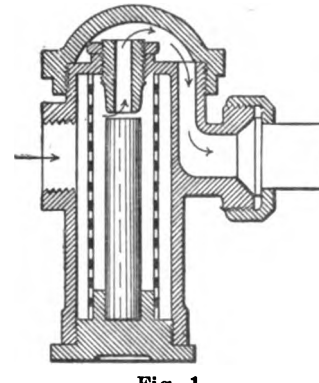


Fig. 1.

Webster System. This consists primarily of an automatic outlet valve on each coil and radiator connected with some form of suction apparatus such as a pump or ejector. The valve used is shown in section in Fig. 1 and replaces the usual hand valve at

Digitized by Google

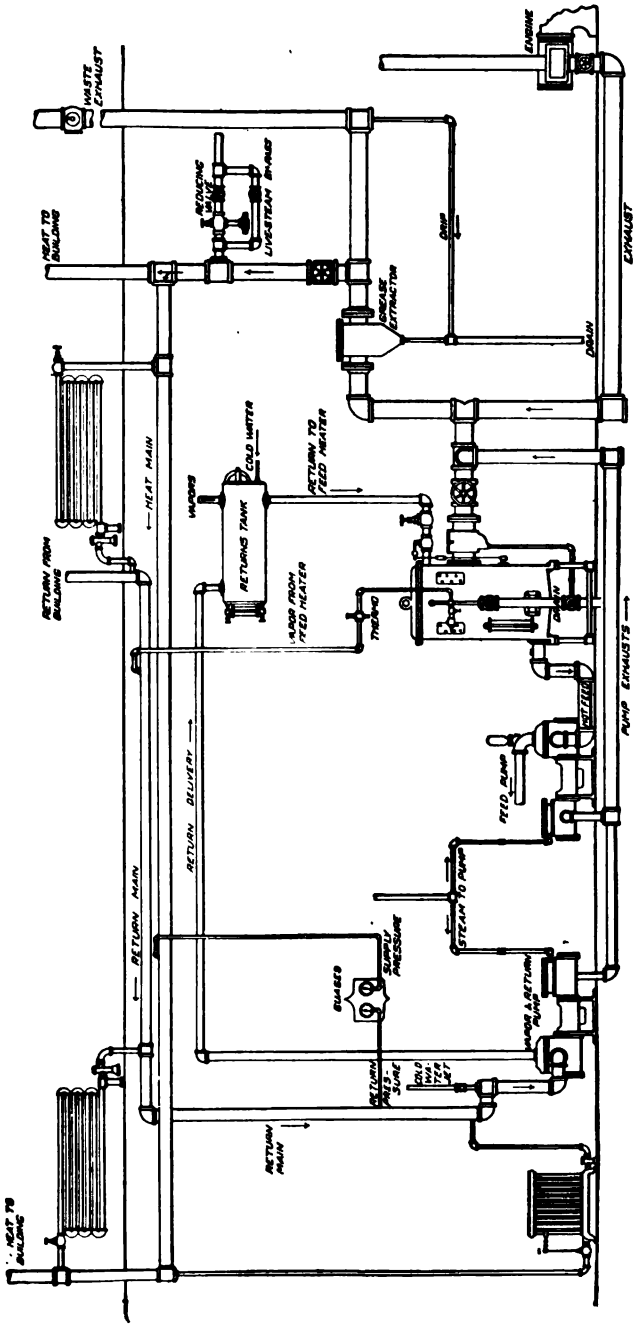


Fig. 4.

Digitized by Google

the return end of the radiator. It is similar in construction to some of the air valves already described, consisting of a rubber or vulcanite stem closing against a valve opening when made to expand by the presence of steam. When water or air fills the valve the stem contracts and allows them to be sucked out as shown by the arrows. A perforated metal strainer surrounds the stem or expansion piece to prevent dirt and sediment from clogging the valve.

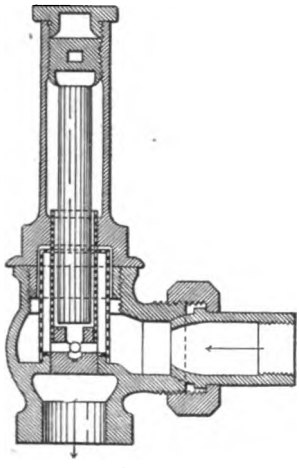


Fig. 2.

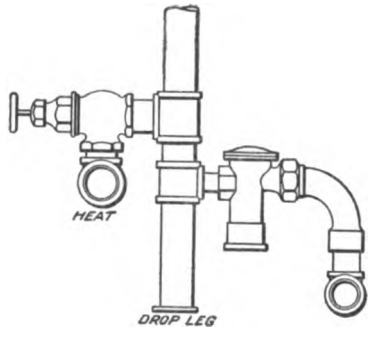


Fig. 3.

Fig. 2 shows the valve, or thermostat as it is called, attached to an ordinary angle valve with the top removed, and Fig. 3 indicates the method of draining the bottoms of risers or the ends of mains.

One special advantage claimed for this system is that the amount of steam admitted to the radiators may be regulated to suit the requirements of outside temperature, and this may be done without water logging or hammering, a result impossible to obtain with any other combination of steam heating apparatus. This may be done at will by closing down on the inlet supply to the desired degree. The result is the admission of a smaller amount of steam to the radiator than it is calculated to condense normally. The condensation is removed as fast as formed by the opening of the thermostatic valve.

Digitized by Google

The general application of this system to exhaust heating is shown in Fig. 4. Exhaust steam is brought from the engine as shown; one branch is connected with a feed water heater while the other is carried upward and through a grease extractor where it branches again, one line leading outbound through a back-pressure valve and the other connecting with the heating main. A live steam connection is made through a reducing valve as in the ordinary system. Valved connections are made with the coils and radiators in the usual manner but the return valves are replaced by the special thermostatic valves described above.

The main return is brought down to a vacuum pump which discharges into a "returns tank" where the air is separated from the water and passes off through the vapor pipe at the top. The condensation then flows into the feed water heater from which it is automatically pumped back into the boilers. The cold-water feed supply is connected with the returns tank and a small cold-water jet is connected into the suction at the vacuum pump for increasing the vacuum in the heating system by the condensation of steam at this point.

Paul System. In this system the suction is connected with the air valves instead of the returns and the vacuum is produced by means of a steam ejector instead of a pump. The returns are carried back to a receiving tank and pumped back to the boiler in the usual manner. The ejector in this case is called the "exhauster."

Fig. 5 shows the general method of making the pipe connections with radiators in this system and Fig. 6 the details of connection at the exhauster.

A A are the returns from the air valves and connect with the exhausters as shown. Live steam is admitted in small quantities through the valves B B and the mixture of air and steam is discharged outboard through the pipe C. D D are gages showing the pressure in the system and E E are check valves. The advantage of this system depends principally upon the quick removal of air from the various radiators and pipes which constitutes the principal obstruction to circulation; the inductive action in many cases is sufficient to cause the system to operate somewhat below atmospheric pressure.

Digitized by Google

Where exhaust steam is used for heating, the radiators should be somewhat increased in size owing to the lower temperature of

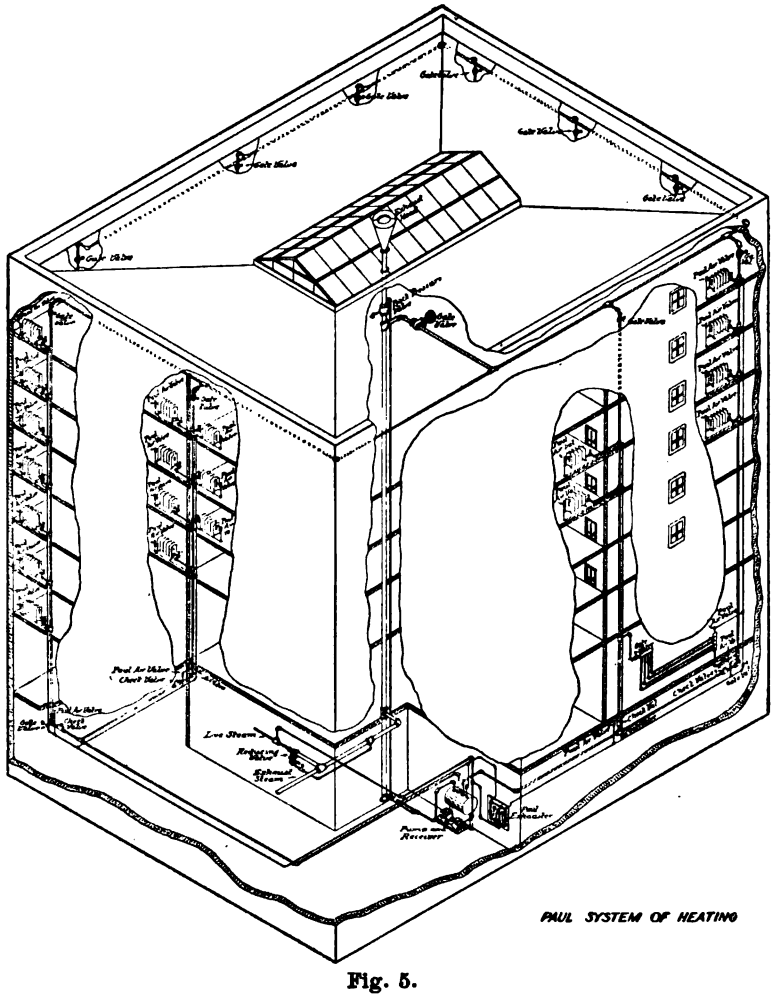


Fig. 5.

the steam. It is common practice to add from 20 to 30 per cent to the sizes required for low pressure live steam.

Digitized by Google

FORCED BLAST.

In a system of forced circulation by means of a fan or blower the action is positive and practically constant under all usual conditions of outside temperature and wind action. This gives it a decided advantage over natural or gravity methods which are affected to a greater or less degree by changes in wind pressure,

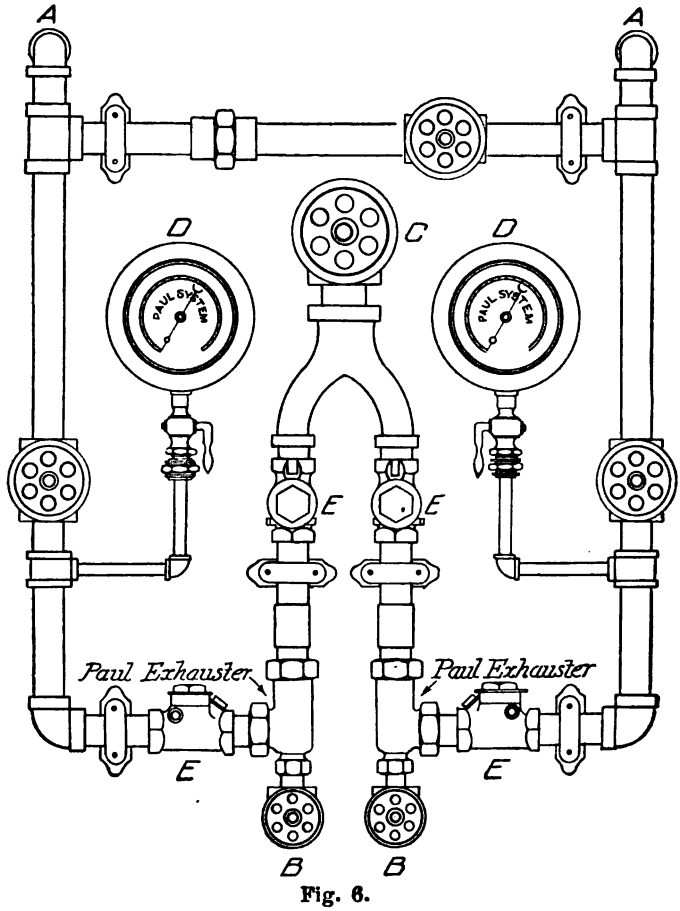


Fig. 6.

and makes it especially adapted to the ventilation and warming of large buildings such as shops, factories, schools, churches, halls, theatres, etc., where large and definite air quantities are required.

Digitized by Google

Exhaust Method. This consists in drawing the air out of a building and providing for the heat thus carried away by placing steam coils under windows or in other positions where the inward leakage is supposed to be the greatest. When this method is used a partial vacuum is created within the building or room and

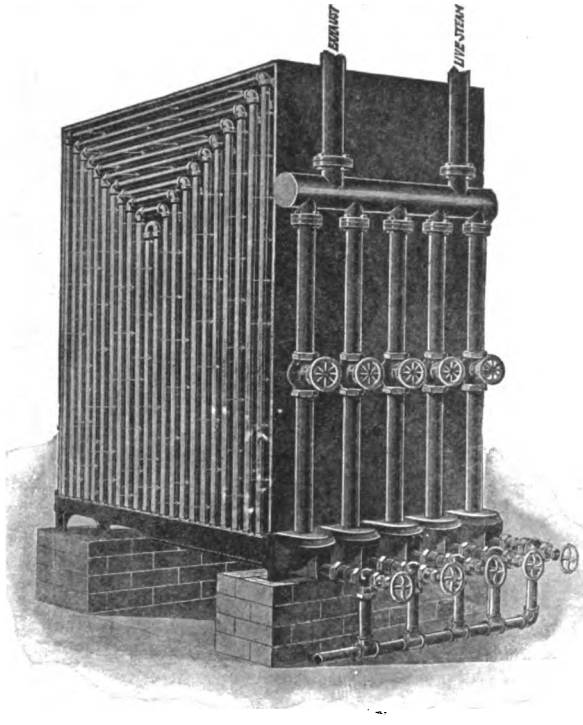


Fig. 7.

all currents and leaks are inward; there is nothing to govern definitely the quality and place of introduction of the air, and it is difficult to provide suitable means for warming it.

Plenum Method. In this case the air is forced into the building, and its quality, temperature and point of admission are completely under control. All spaces are filled with air under a slight pressure and the leakage is outward, thus preventing the drawing of foul air into the room from any outside source. But above all, ample opportunity is given for properly warming the

Digitized by Google

air by means of heaters, either in direct connection with the fan or in separate passages leading to the various rooms.

Form of Heating Surface. A common form of heater for

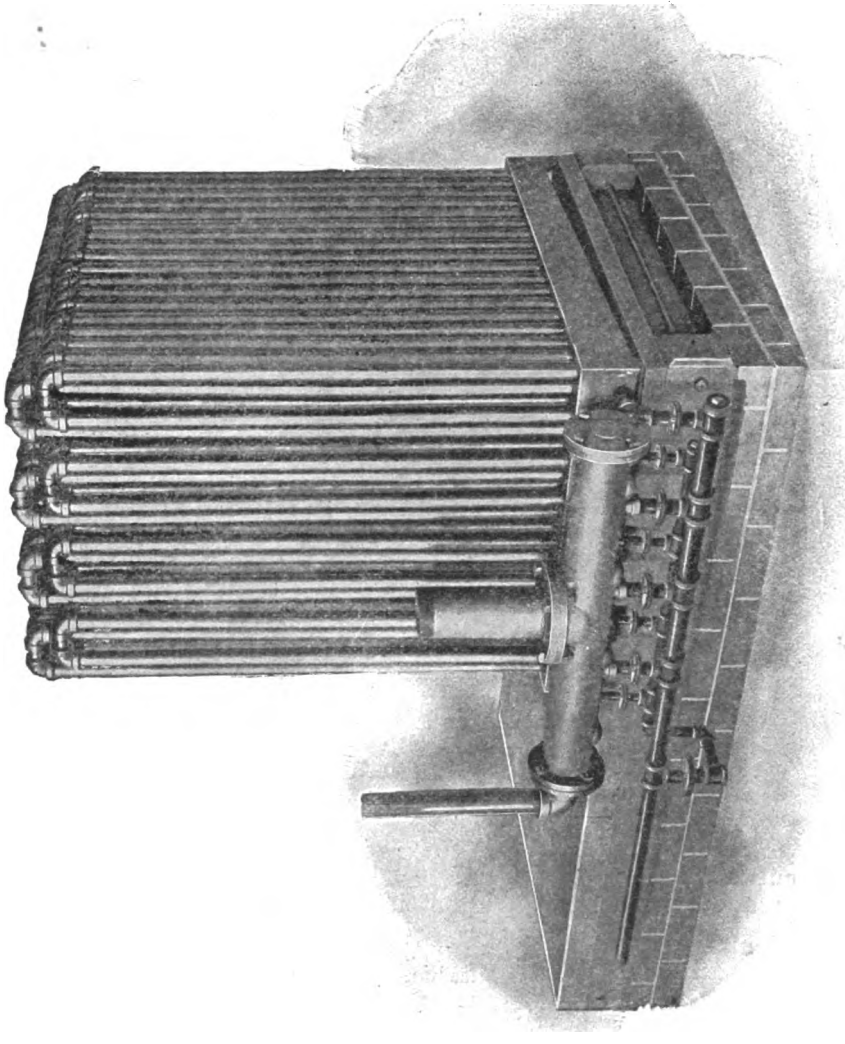


Fig. 8.

forced blast heating is shown in Fig. 16, Part I. This consists of sectional cast-iron bases with loops of wrought-iron pipe connected as shown. The steam enters the upper part of the bases or

Digitized by Google

headers and passes up one side of the loops, then across the top and down on the other side where the condensation is taken off through the return drip, which is separated from the inlet by a partition. These heaters are made up in sections of 2 and 4 rows of pipes each. The height varies from $3\frac{1}{2}$ to 9 feet and the width from 3 feet to 7 feet in the standard sizes. They are usually made up of 1-inch pipe although $1\frac{1}{4}$ inch is commonly used in the larger sizes. In Fig. 7 is shown a similar heater. This is arranged for supplying exhaust to a portion of the sections and live steam to the remainder. The division between the two sections is shown where the metal is broken away. Fig. 8 shows still

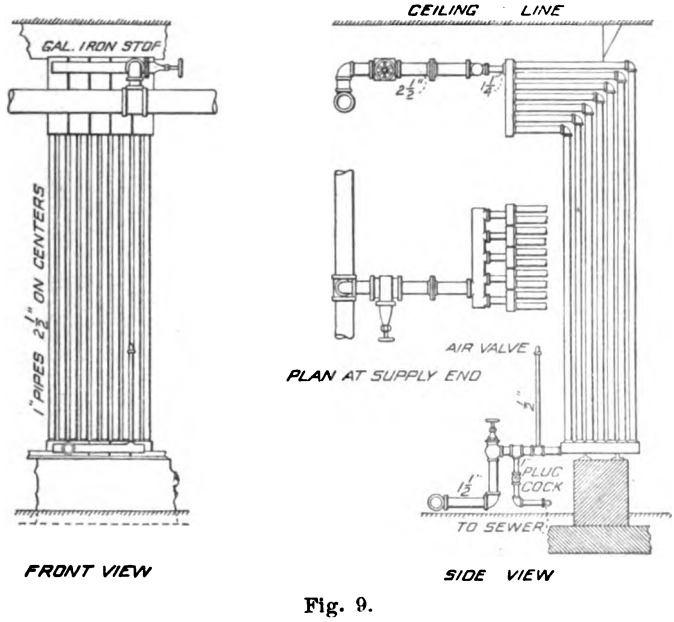


Fig. 9.

another form; in this case all of the loops are made of practically the same length by the special form of construction shown. This is claimed to prevent the short circuiting of steam through the shorter loops which causes the outer pipes to remain cold.

This form of heater is usually encased in a sheet steel housing as shown, but may be supported on a foundation between brick walls if desired.

Fig. 9 shows a special form of heater particularly adapted to ventilating work where the air does not have to be raised above

Digitized by Google

70 or 80 degrees. It is made up of 1-inch wrought-iron pipe connected with supply and return headers: each section contains 14 pipes and they are usually made up in groups of 5 sections each. These coils are supported upon tee irons resting upon a brick foundation. Heaters of this form are usually made to extend across the side of a room with brick walls at the sides instead of being encased in steel housings. Heaters made up of banks of the school-pin cast-iron radiators give excellent results for schoolhouse work. The sections should be so arranged that the free area for air flow shall not be too much restricted.

Efficiency of Heaters. The efficiency of the heaters used in connection with forced blast varies greatly, depending upon the temperature of the entering air, its velocity between the pipes, the temperature to which it is raised and the steam pressure carried in the heater. The general method in which the heater is made up is also an important factor.

In designing a heater of this kind, care must be taken that the free area between the pipes is not contracted to such an extent that an excessive velocity will be required to pass the given quantity of air through it. In ordinary work it is customary to assume a velocity of 800 to 1000 feet per minute; higher velocities call for a greater pressure on the fan which is not desirable in ventilating work.

In the heaters shown, about .4 of the total area is free for the passage of air; that is, a heater 5 feet wide and 6 feet high would have a total area of $5 \times 6 = 30$ square feet, and a free area between the pipes of $30 \times .4 = 12$ square feet. The depth or number of rows of pipe does not effect the free area although the friction is increased and additional work is thrown upon the fan. The efficiency in any given heater will be increased by increasing the velocity of the air through it, but the final temperature will be diminished, that is, a larger quantity of air will be heated to a lower temperature in the second case and while the total heat given off is greater, the air quantity increases more rapidly than the heat quantity which causes a drop in temperature.

Increasing the number of rows of pipe in a heater with a constant air quantity increases the final temperature of the air but diminishes the efficiency of the heater, because the average differ

Digitized by Google

ence in temperature between the air and steam is less. Increasing the steam pressure in the heater (and consequently its temperature) increases both the final temperature of the air and the efficiency of the heater. Table I has been prepared from different tests and may be used as a guide in computing probable results under ordinary working conditions. In this table it is assumed that the air enters the heater at a temperature of 10 degrees below zero and passes between the pipes with a velocity of 800 feet per minute. Column 1 gives the number of rows of pipe in the heater and columns 2, 3 and 4 the final temperature of the air for different steam pressures. Columns 5, 6 and 7 give the corresponding efficiency of the heater.

For example. Air passing through a heater 10 pipes deep and carrying 20 pounds pressure will be raised to a temperature of 90 degrees and the heater will have an efficiency of 1650 B.T.U. per square foot of surface per hour. When the air is taken in at zero we may add 10 to the final temperatures given in the table, although theoretically it would be slightly less; in this case we must take the efficiency corresponding to the final temperature after the 10 degress have been added.

TABLE I.

Temp. of entering air 10° below zero.

Velocity of air between the pipes 800 feet per minute.

Rows of pipe deep.	Temp. to which the air will be raised from 10° below 0.			Efficiency of the heating surface in B. T. U., per square foot per hour.		
	Steam Pressure in Heater.			Steam Pressure in Heater.		
	5 lbs.	20 lbs.	60 lbs.	5 lbs.	20 lbs.	60 lbs.
4	30	35	45	1600	1800	2000
6	50	55	65	1600	1800	2000
8	65	70	85	1500	1650	1850
10	80	90	105	1500	1650	1850
12	95	105	125	1500	1650	1850
14	105	120	140	1400	1500	1700
16	120	130	150	1400	1500	1700
18	130	140	160	1300	1400	1600
20	140	150	170	1300	1400	1600

Digitized by Google

For a velocity of 1000 feet, multiply the *temperatures* given in the table by .95 and the *efficiencies* by 1.13.

Example. How many square feet of radiation will be required to raise 600,000 cubic feet of air per hour from 10 below zero to 80 degrees, with a velocity through the heater of 800 feet per minute and a steam pressure of 5 pounds? What must be the total area of the heater front and how many rows of pipes must it have?

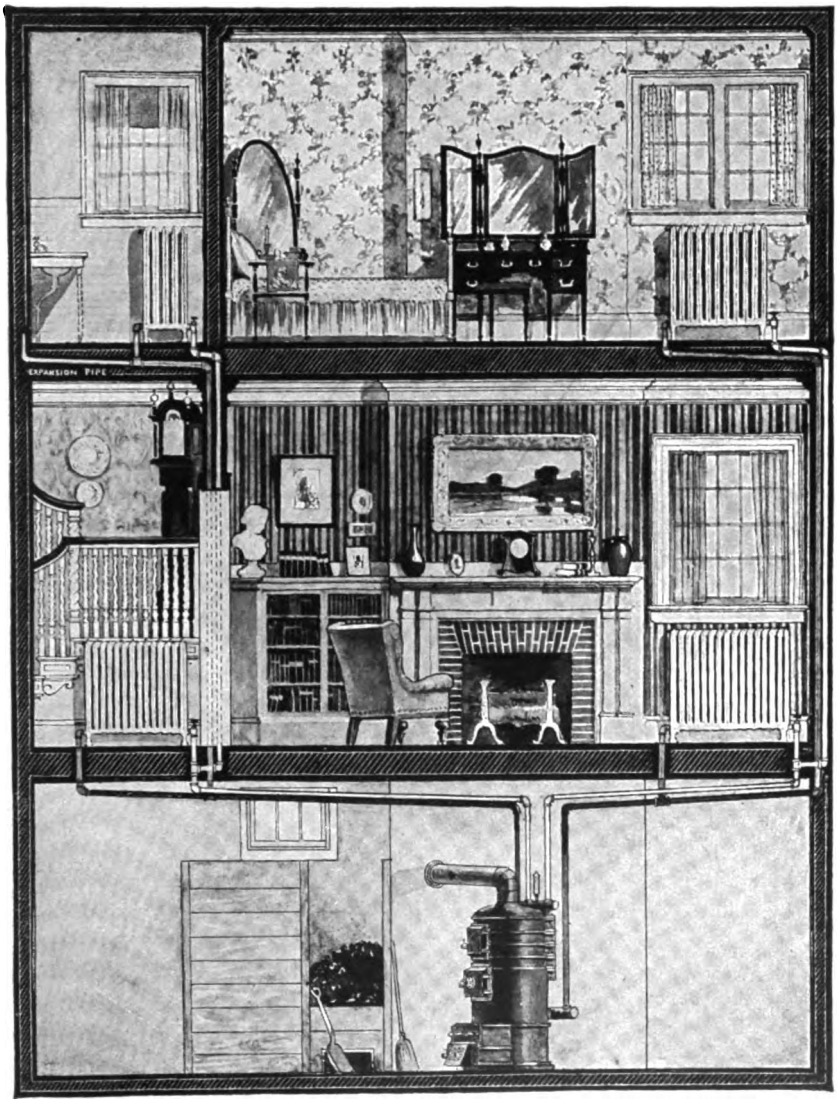
Referring back to our formula for heat required for ventilation, we have

$$\frac{600{,}000}{55} \times 90 = 981{,}818 \text{ B. T. U. required.}$$

Referring to table I we find that for the above conditions a heater 10 pipes deep is required, and that an efficiency of 1500 B. T. U. will be obtained. Then $\frac{981{,}818}{1500} = 654$ square feet of surface required, $\frac{600{,}000}{60} = 10{,}000$ cubic of air per minute, and $\frac{10{,}000}{800} = 12.5$ square feet of free area required through the heater. If we assume .4 of the total heater front to be free for the passage of air, then $\frac{12.5}{.4} = 31$ the required total area.

For convenience in estimating the approximate dimensions of a heater, the following table is given. The standard heaters made by different manufacturers vary somewhat, but the dimensions given below represent average practice. Column 3 gives the square feet of heating surface in a single row of pipes of the dimensions given in columns 1 and 2, and column 4 gives the free area between the pipes.

Digitized by Google



HOT WATER HEATER AND CONNECTIONS.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

TABLE II.

Width of Section.	Height of Pipes.	Square Feet of Surface.	Free Area through Heater in Sq. Ft.
3 feet	3 ft. 6 inches	20	4.2
3 feet	4 ft. 0 inches	22	4.8
3 feet	4 ft. 6 inches	25	5.4
3 feet	5 ft. 0 inches	28	6.0
4 feet	4 ft. 6 inches	34	7.2
4 feet	5 ft. 0 inches	38	8.0
4 feet	5 ft. 6 inches	42	8.8
4 feet	6 ft. 0 inches	45	9.6
5 feet	5 ft. 6 inches	52	11.0
5 feet	6 ft. 0 inches	57	12.0
5 feet	6 ft. 6 inches	62	13.0
5 feet	7 ft. 0 inches	67	14.0
6 feet	6 ft. 6 inches	75	15.6
6 feet	7 ft. 0 inches	81	16.8
6 feet	7 ft. 6 inches	87	18.0
6 feet	8 ft. 0 inches	92	19.2
7 feet	7 ft. 6 inches	98	21.0
7 feet	8 ft. 0 inches	108	22.4
7 feet	8 ft. 6 inches	109	23.8
7 feet	9 ft. 0 inches	116	25.2

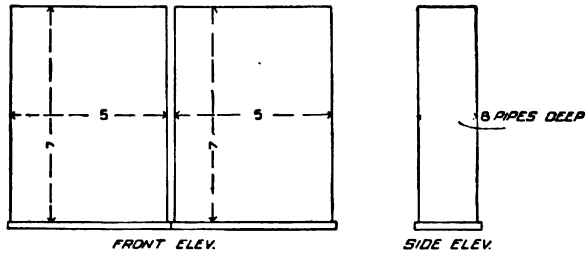
In calculating the total height of the heater add 1 foot for the base.

These sections are made up of 1-inch pipe except the last, or 7-foot sections, which are made of $1\frac{1}{4}$-inch pipe.

Using this table in connection with the example just given we should look in the last column for a section having a free area of 12.5 square feet; here we find that a 5 feet $\times$ 6 feet — 6 inches section has a free opening of 13 square feet and a radiating surface of 62 square feet. The conditions call for 10 rows of pipes and $10 \times 62 = 620$ square feet of radiating surface which is slightly less than called for, but which would be near enough for all practical purposes.

Digitized by Google

As a further example, if we compute the dimensions of a heater to warm 20,000 cubic feet of air per minute from 10 degrees below zero to 70 degrees above, with 20 pounds steam, we find that 1057 square feet of surface will be required. The heater must be 8 pipes deep and requires 25 square feet of free area. These may be obtained by 16 5′ × 7′ sections side by side, as in the sketch. These will give 28 square feet of free area and 1072 square feet of surface.



The general method of computing the size of heater for any given building is the same as in the case of indirect heating: First obtain the B.T.U. required for ventilation and to that add the heat loss through walls, etc., and divide the result by the efficiency of the heater under the given conditions.

Example.— An audience hall is to be provided with 400,000 cubic feet of air per hour. The heat loss through walls, etc., is 250,000 B.T.U. per hour in zero weather. What will be the size of heater, and how many rows of pipe deep must it be, with 20 pounds steam pressure.

$$\frac{400{,}000 \times 70}{55} = 509{,}090 \text{ B.T.U. for ventilation.}$$

Therefore 250,000 + 509,090 = 759,090 B.T.U., total to be supplied.

We must next find to what temperature the entering air must be raised in order to bring in the required amount of heat, so that the number of rows of pipe in the heater may be obtained and its corresponding efficiency determined. We have entering the room for purposes of ventilation, 400,000 cubic feet of air every hour at a temperature of 70 degrees, and the problem now

Digitized by Google

becomes, to what temperature must this air be raised to carry in 250,000 B.T.U. additional for warming?

We have learned that 1 B.T.U. will raise 55 cubic feet of air 1 degree. Then 250,000 B.T.U. would raise 250,000 × 55 cubic feet of air 1 degree.

$$\frac{250{,}000 \times 55}{400{,}000} = 34 +$$

The air in this case must be raised to 70 + 34 = 104 degrees to provide for both ventilation and warming. Referring to table I we find that a heater 12 pipes deep will be required and that the corresponding efficiency of the heater will be 1650 B.T.U.

Then $\frac{759090}{1650} = 460$ square feet of surface required.

Pipe Connections. In the heater shown in Fig. 16, Part I, all of the sections take their supply from a common header; the supply pipe connecting with the top, and the return being taken from the lower division at the end, as shown.

In Fig. 7 the base is divided into two parts, one for live steam and the other for exhaust. The supply pipes connect with the upper compartments and the drips are taken off as shown. Separate traps should be provided for the two pressures.

The connections in Fig. 8 are similar to those just described except the supply and return headers, or bases, are drained through separate pipes and traps; there being a slight difference in pressure between the two which is likely to interfere with the proper drainage if brought into the same one. This heater is arranged to take exhaust steam but has a connection for feeding in live steam through a reducing valve if desired; the whole heater being under one pressure.

It is often desirable to have a heater connected up in sections so that one or more can be shut off in mild weather when the whole capacity of the heater is not required. In this case each section has separate connections with valves in supply and return. Fig. 10 shows an excellent method of making the connections for a heater using both live and exhaust steam as in this way any number of sections may be used for exhaust from one to the entire heater by a proper adjustment of the valves.

Digitized by Google

The usual connections in Fig. 9 are plainly shown. A supply header runs across the front of the heater from which valved branches are taken off to the several groups. The return pipes have cross connections with the sewer or drain for blowing out the air when steam is first turned on. Two or more groups should be connected for the use of either exhaust or live steam as shown in Fig. 10, and separate traps should be provided for the two pressures. Large and freely working automatic air valves

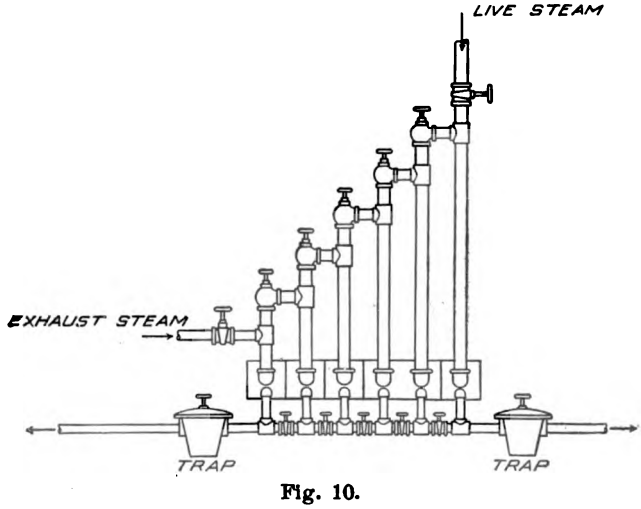


Fig. 10.

should be provided in the return header of each section or group, whatever the type of heater, and it is well also to provide hand pet cocks for opening when steam is first turned on. The form of heater shown in Fig. 9 is especially efficient and may be relied upon to give an efficiency of about 1800 B.T.U. and to raise the air from zero to 80° with a velocity of 800 feet between the pipes and a steam pressure of 20 pounds. A cast-iron sectional heater will give about 1500 B.T.U under the same conditions.

Pipe Sizes. The pipe sizes required in this system of heating may be computed from the tables already given. The length of run from the boiler or main, the pressure carried and the allowable drop are the factors governing the size of the main supply and branches. Heaters of the pattern shown in Figs. 7 and 10

Digitized by Google

are usually tapped at the factory for high or low pressure as desired and these sizes may be followed in making the pipe connections.

The sizes marked on Fig. 9 may be used for all ordinary work where the pressure runs from 5 to 20 pounds; for pressures above that the supply connections may be reduced one size.

Fans and Blowers. The term fan is commonly applied to any form of apparatus for moving air in which revolving blades or propellers are used, while the word blower is used only in those cases where the wheel or propeller is enclosed in a casing.

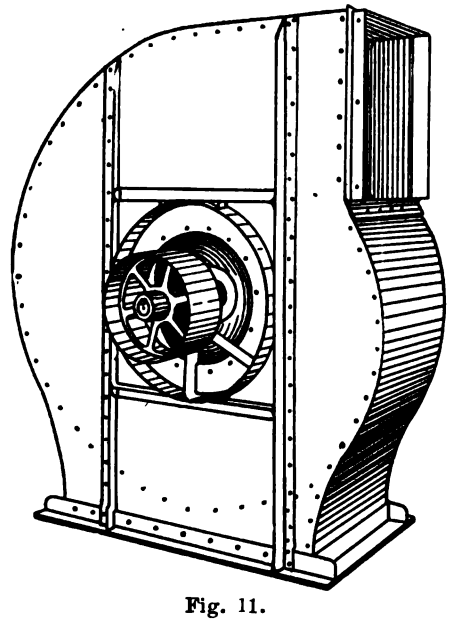


Fig. 11.

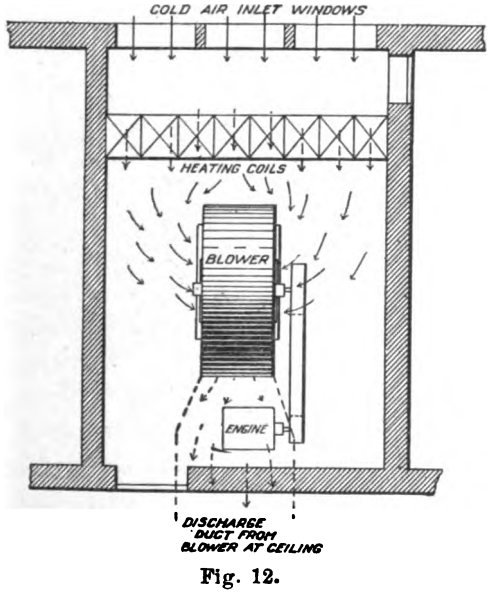


Fig. 12.

Referring to Part I, Fig. 17 shows the usual form of fan or wheel used in the common type of blower and Fig. 11 represents the usual form of a regular steel plate blower with full housing. Where a blower is connected with a heater having a steel plate casing it has an inlet only on one side,

Digitized by Google

but when used in connection with a heater of the type shown in Fig. 9 it should have inlet openings upon both sides as shown in Fig. 12.

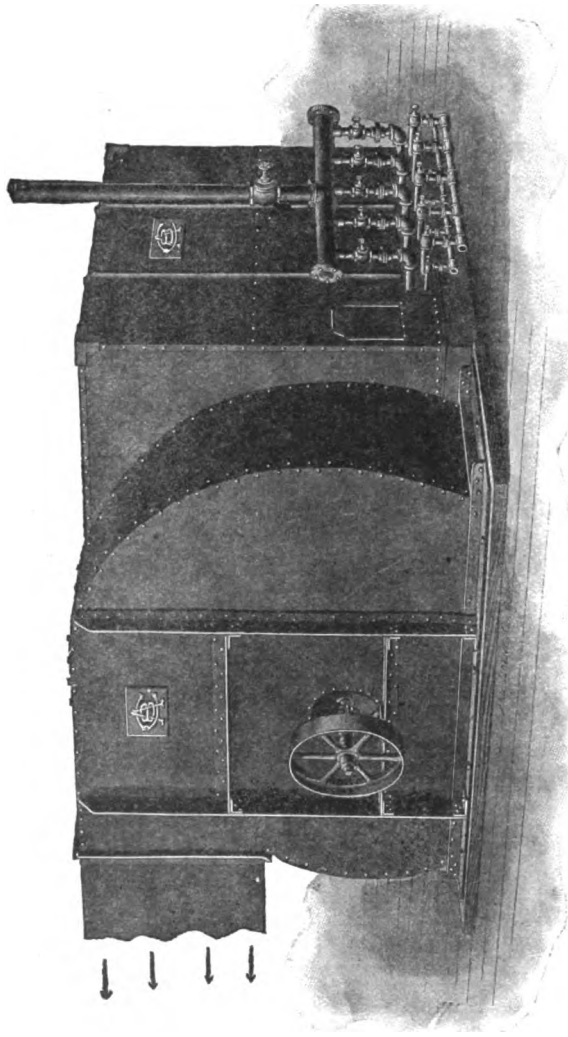


Fig. 13.

The discharge opening can be made in any position desired, either up, down, top horizontal, bottom horizontal or at any angle. Fig. 13 shows a top horizontal discharge blower connected with a heater.

Digitized by Google

Where the height of the fan room is limited, a form called the three-quarter housing may be used in which the lower part of the casing is replaced by a brick pit below the floor level. Such a construction is shown in Fig. 14 with a direct-connected engine. Another type of fan known as a disc wheel may be used where the air passages are large and the resistance to air flow is small, but for ordinary ventilating work the encased blower is to be preferred. The cone fan shown in Fig. 20, Part I, is a very efficient

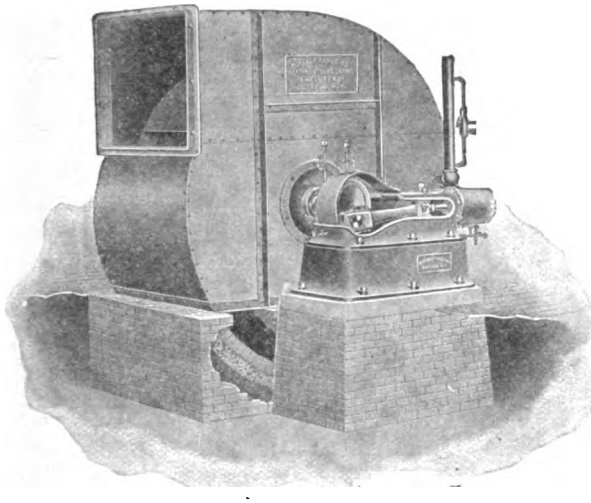


Fig. 14.

form and may be used in a wall opening as there shown or made double and enclosed in a steel plate housing.

Fan Capacity. The volume of air which a given fan will deliver depends upon the speed at which it is run and the friction or resistance through the heater and air ways. The pressure referred to in connection with a fan is that in the discharge outlet and represents the force which drives the air through the ducts and flues. The greater the pressure with a given resistance in the pipes the greater will be the volume of air delivered, and the greater the resistance, the greater the pressure required to deliver a given quantity.

Fan wheels of the same manufacture are usually made with a constant ratio between the diameter and width, although special

Digitized by Google

forms are made where this does not hold true. All practical data on the action of fans is based on the results of tests, and from these the following relations have been found to be approx imately correct:

(1) The volume of air delivered varies *directly* as the speed of the fan, that is, doubling the number of revolutions doubles the volume of air delivered.

(2) The pressure varies as the *square* of the speed, for example, if the speed is doubled the pressure is increased $2 \times 2 = 4$ times, etc.

(3) The power required to run the fan varies as the *cube* of the speed; again, if the speed is doubled the power required is increased $2 \times 2 \times 2 = 8$ times.

The value of a knowledge of these relations may be illustrated by the following example.

Suppose for any reason it was desired to double the volume of air delivered by a certain fan. At first thought we might decide to use the same fan and run it twice as fast; but when we come to consider the power required we should find that this would have to be increased 8 times, and it would probably be much cheaper in the long run to put in a larger fan and run it at lower speed. In speaking of a fan as a 4 or 5-foot fan, the diameter of the propeller wheel is meant, but if we say an 80 or 100-inch fan we mean the height of casing in inches.

It has been found in practice that fans of the blower type having curved floats operate quietly and give good results when run at a speed corresponding to $\frac{1}{2}$ ounce pressure at the discharge outlet; this gives a speed of about 3600 feet per minute at the circumference of the wheel. Higher speeds are accompanied with a greater expenditure of power and are likely to produce a roaring noise or cause vibration. A much lower speed does not provide sufficient pressure to give proper control of the air distribution during strong winds. The following table gives average capacities for various sizes of fans and the corresponding horse-power of engine required. If an electric motor is used multiply the horse-power given in the table by 1.3.

This is done because we can never tell *exactly* what the power required will be and it is well to have an excess to meet any

Digitized by Google

emergency or unlooked-for conditions which may arise. In the case of a steam engine the steam pressure may be raised to meet any special requirements but a motor can only give out the original power for which it was designed.

TABLE III.

Nominal Size of Fan. Height of Housing in Inches.	Diameter of Fan Wheel in Inches.	Width of Housing in Inches.	Ordinary Speed Giving ½ Ounce Pressure.	Cubic Feet of Air Delivered per Minute.	Horse-Power of Engine to Drive the Fan.
30	18	9	870	1000	½
40	24	12	580	1600	1
50	30	15	465	2600	1
60	36	18	390	4500	2
70	42	21	333	6000	2½
80	48	24	293	8000	2½
90	54	28	260	11000	4
100	60	32	233	12500	4
120	72	43	195	21500	7
140	84	48	167	28300	9
160	96	48	147	31800	10
	108	54	130	40400	13
	120	60	117	51000	16

Fan Engines. A simple, quiet running engine is desirable for use in connection with a fan or blower. They may be either horizontal or vertical and for schoolhouse and similar work should be provided with large cylinders so that the required power may be developed without carrying a boiler pressure much above 30 pounds. In some cases cylinders of such size are used that a boiler pressure of 12 or 15 pounds is sufficient. The quantity of steam which an engine consumes is of minor importance as the exhaust can be turned into the coils and used for heating purposes. If space allows, the engine should always be belted to the fan. Where it is direct-connected, as in Fig. 14, there is likely to be trouble from noise, as any slight looseness or pounding in the engine will be communicated to the air ducts and the sound will be carried to the rooms above. Figs. 15 and 16 show common forms of fan engines. The latter is especially adapted to this pur-

Digitized by Google

pose as all bearings are enclosed and protected from dust and grit. A horizontal engine for fan use is shown in Fig. 17.

Motors. Electric motors are especially adapted for use in

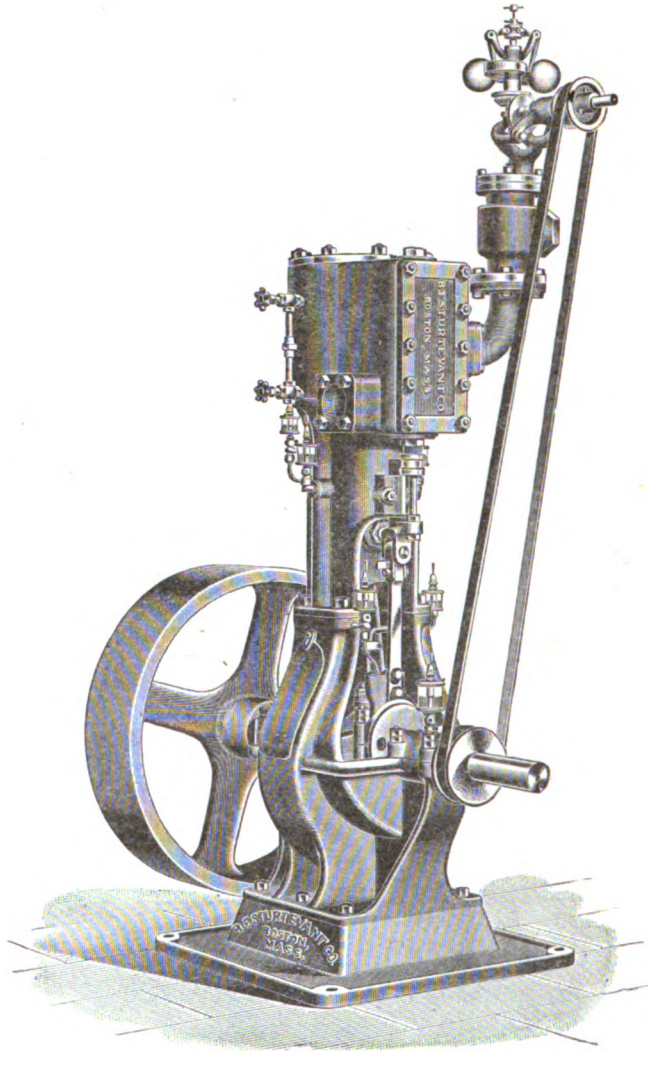


Fig. 15.

connection with fans. They are easily controlled by a switch and starting box or regulator. The motor may be directly connected

Digitized by Google

to the fan shaft or it may be belted. Fig. 18 shows a fan with direct-connected motor.

Area of Ducts and Flues. With the blower type of fan the size of the main ducts may be based on a velociy of 1200 to 1500 feet per minute, the branches on a velocity of 1000 to 1200 feet per minute, and as low as 600 to 800 feet when the pipes are small. Flue

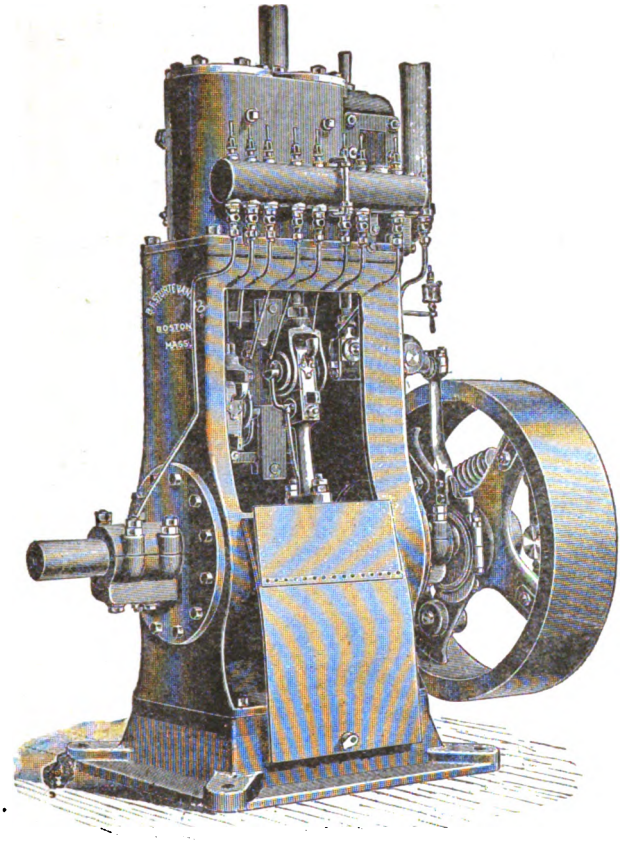


Fig. 16.

velocities of 500 to 700 feet per minute may be used although the lower velocity is preferable. The size of the inlet register should be such that the velocity of the entering air will not exceed about 300 feet per minute. The velocity between the inlet windows and the fan or heater should not exceed about 800 feet.

Digitized by Google

The air ducts and flues are usually made of galvanized iron, the ducts being run at the basement ceiling. No. 20 and 22 iron is used for the larger sizes and 24 to 28 for the smaller.

Regulating dampers should be placed in the branches leading to each flue for increasing or reducing the air supply to the different rooms. Adjustable deflectors are often placed at the fork of a pipe for the same purpose. One of these is shown in Fig. 19.

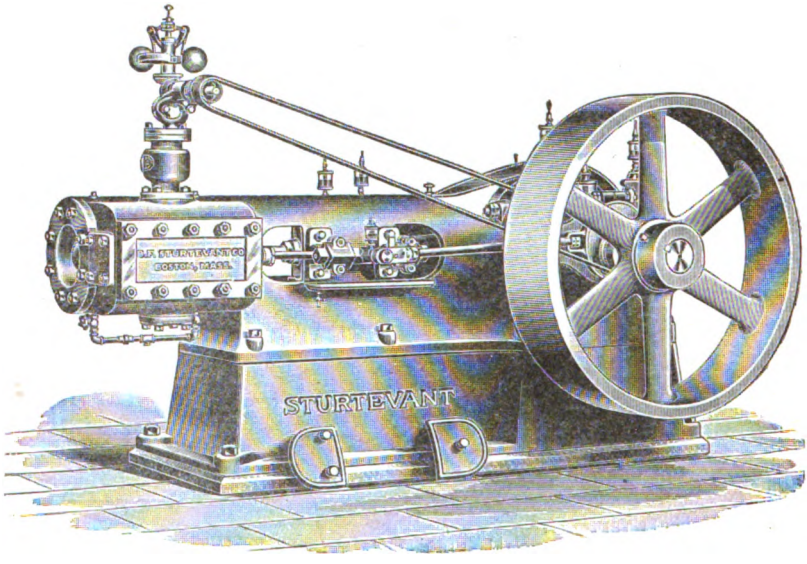


Fig. 17.

Factory Heating. The application of forced blast for the warming of factories and shops is shown in Figs. 20 and 21. The proportional heating surface in this case is generally expressed in the number of cubic feet in the building for each linear foot of 1-inch steam pipe in the heater. On this basis, in factory practice with all of the air taken from out of doors, there are generally allowed from 100 to 150 cubic feet of space per foot of pipe according as exhaust or live steam is used; live steam in this case indicating steam of about 80 pounds pressure. If practically all of the air is returned from the buildings to the heater, these figures may be raised to about 140, as a minimum and possibly 200 as a maximum, per foot of pipe. The heaters in table II may be

Digitized by Google

changed to linear feet of 1 inch pipe by multiplying the numbers in column three (square feet of surface) by three.

Example.— A machine shop 100 feet long by 50 feet wide and 3 stories, each 10 feet high, is to be warmed by forced blast using

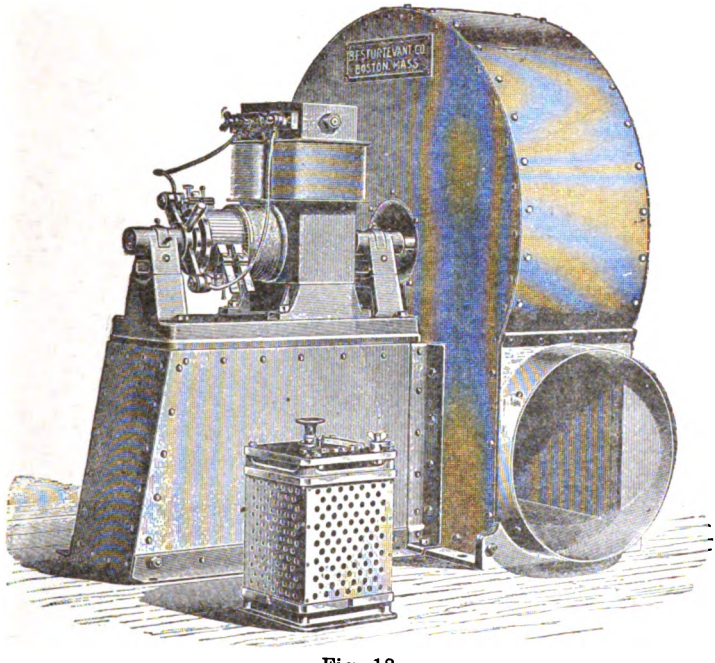


Fig. 18.

exhaust steam in the heater. The air is to be returned to the heater from the building and the whole amount contained in the building is to pass through the heater every 15 minutes. What size of blower will be required and what will be the H.P. of the engine required to run it? How many linear feet of 1 inch pipe should the heater contain?

The total volume of air is

$$100 \times 50 \times 3 \times 10 = 150{,}000 \text{ cubic feet.}$$

This will require

$$\frac{150{,}000}{140} = 1071 \text{ feet of pipe.}$$

There are 10,000 cubic feet of air required per minute; hence

Digitized by Google

from Table III we must use a 4 H.P. engine and a 90-inch blower.

If live steam were used, and the air changed every 20 minutes, we should need 150,000 ÷ 200 = 750 feet of pipe, and 7500 cubic feet of air per minute, requiring a $2\frac{1}{2}$ H.P. engine and an 80-inch blower.

In using this method of computation judgment must be used which can only come from experience. The figures given are for average conditions of construction and exposure.

Double Duct System. The varying exposures of the rooms of a school or other building similarly occupied require that more heat shall be supplied to some than to others. Rooms that are on the south side of the building and exposed to the sun may perhaps be kept perfectly comfortable with a supply of heat that will maintain a temperature of only 50 or 60 degrees in rooms on the opposite side of the building which are exposed to high winds and shut off from the warmth of the sun.

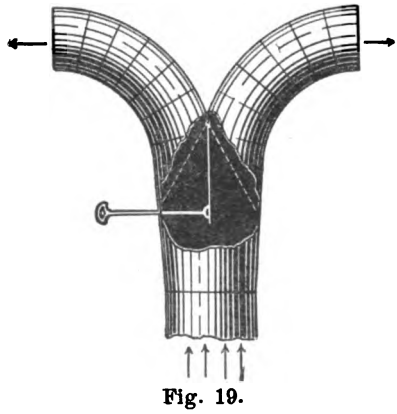


Fig. 19.

With a constant and equal air supply to each room it is evident that the temperature must be directly proportional to the cooling surfaces and exposure, and that no building of this character can be properly heated and ventilated if the temperature cannot be varied without affecting the air supply.

There are two methods of overcoming this difficulty:

The older arrangement consists in heating the air by means of a primary coil at or near the fan to about 60 degrees, or to the minimum temperature required within the building. From the coil it passes to the bases of the various flues and is there still further heated as required, by secondary or supplementary heaters placed at the base of each flue.

With the second and more recent method a single heater is employed and all of the air is heated to the maximum required to maintain the desired temperature in the most exposed rooms, while the temperature of the other rooms is regulated by mixing

Digitized by Google

with the hot air a sufficient volume of cold air at the bases of the different flues. This result is best accomplished by designing a hot blast apparatus so that the air shall be forced, rather than

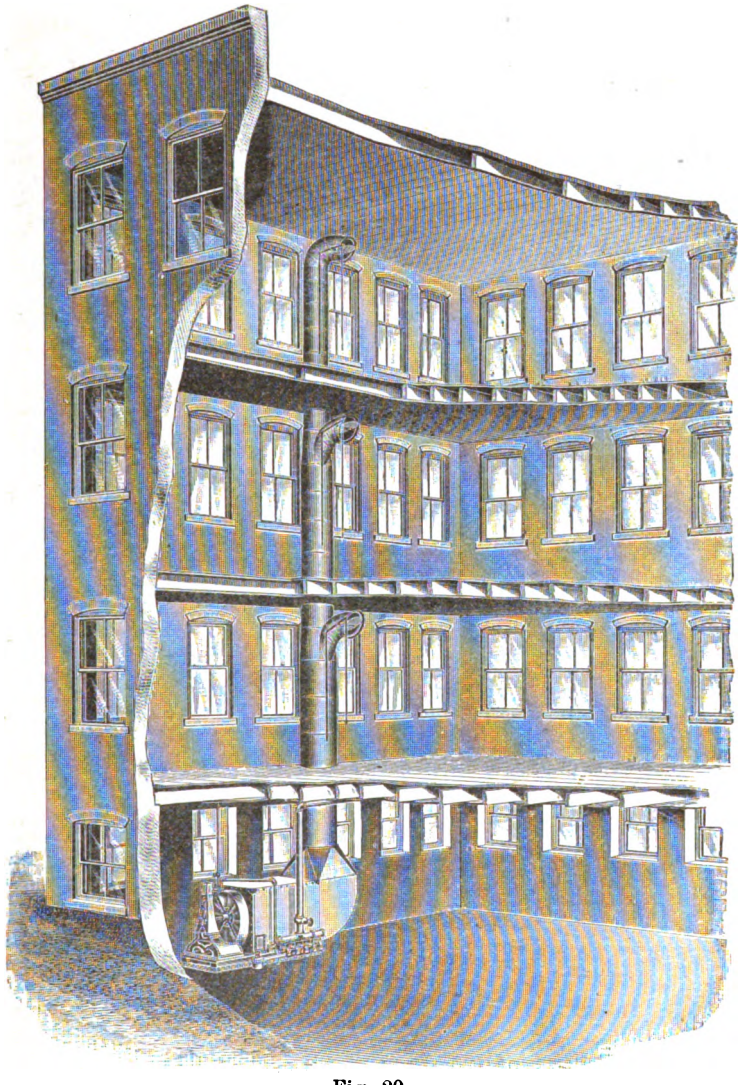


Fig. 20.

drawn through the heater, and by providing a by-pass through which it may be discharged without passing across the heated pipes. The passage for the cold air is usually made above and

Digitized by Google

separate from the heater pipes (see Fig. 19, Part I.). Extending from the apparatus is a double system of ducts, usually of galvanized iron, and suspended from the ceiling. At the base of each flue is placed a mixing damper which is controlled by a chain from the room above and so designed as to admit either a full volume of hot air, a full volume of cold air or to mix them in any

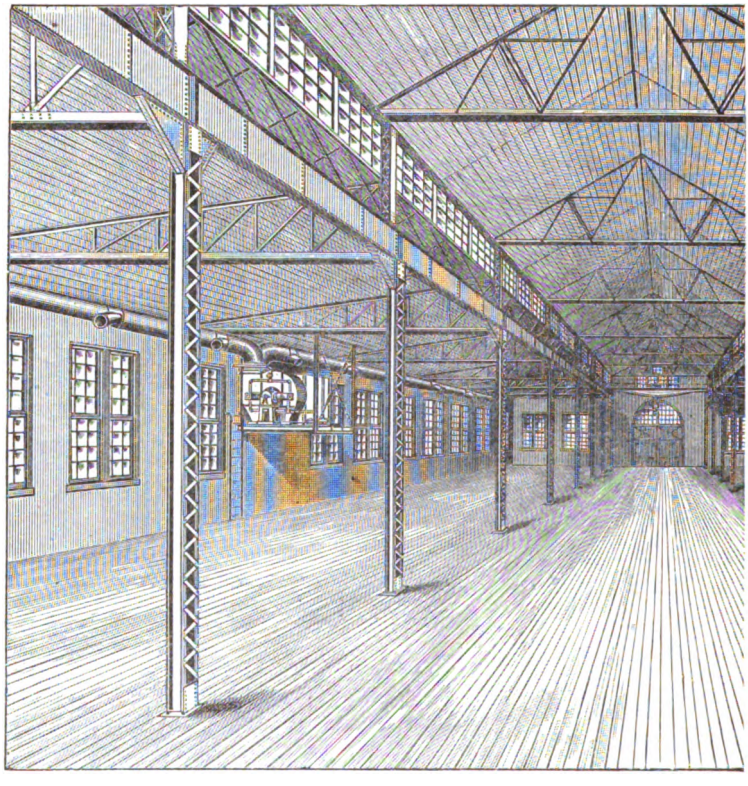


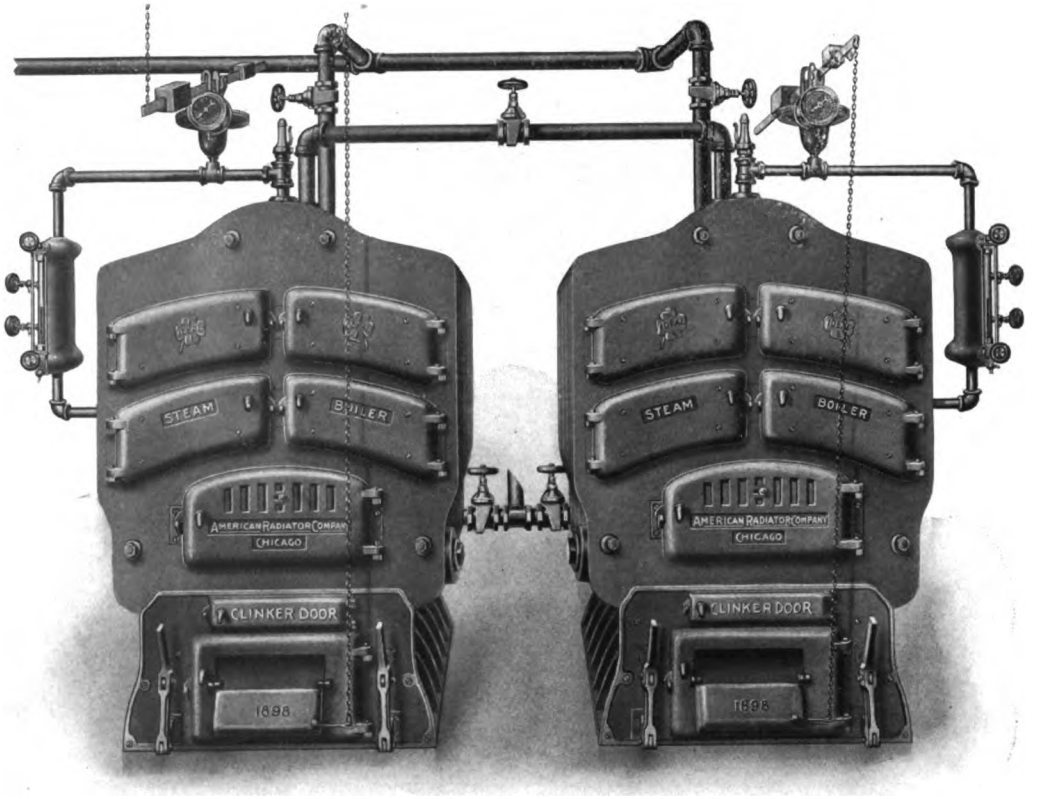
Fig. 21.

desired proportion without affecting the resulting total volume delivered to the room. A damper of this form is shown in Fig. 22.

Fig. 23 shows an arrangement of disc fan and heater where the air is first drawn through a tempering coil, then a portion of it forced through a second heater and into the warm-air pipes while the remainder is by-passed under the heater into the cold-air

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google



A BATTERY OF IDEAL STEAM BOILERS SHOWING METHOD OF YOKING THE MAIN SUPPLY AND RETURN PIPE.

American Radiator Company.

Digitized by Google

pipes. Mixing dampers are placed at the bases of the flues as already described.

EXHAUST VENTILATION.

When air is to be moved against a very slight resistance, as in the case of exhaust ventilation, the disc or propeller type of wheel may be used. This is shown in different forms in Figs. 24, 25 and 26. This type of fan is light in construction, requires but little power at low speeds, and is easily erected. It may be conveniently placed in the attic or upper story of a building, where it may be driven either by a direct or belt-connected electric motor. Fig. 24 shows a fan equipped with a direct-connected motor, and Fig. 27 the general arrangement when a belted motor is used. These fans are largely used for the ventilation of toilet and smoking rooms, restaurants, etc. and are usually mounted in a wall opening, as shown in Fig. 27. A damper should always be provided for shutting off the opening when the fan is not in use. The fans shown in Figs. 25 and 26 are provided with pulleys for belt connection.

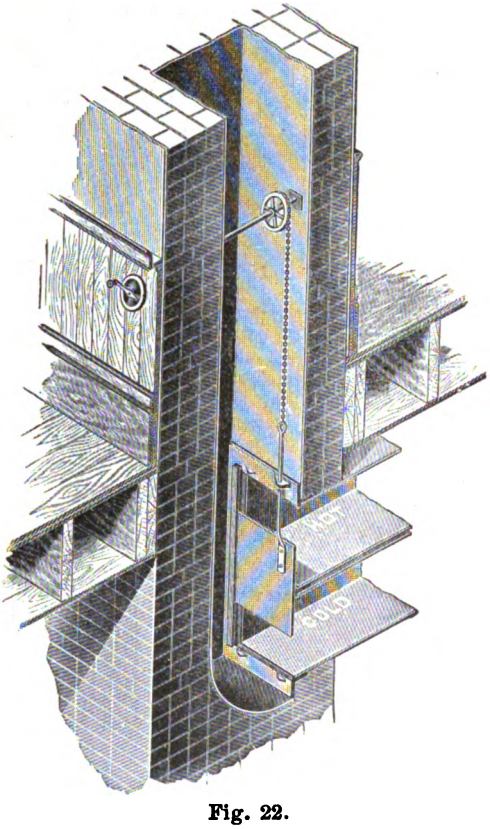


Fig. 22.

Fans of this kind are often connected with the main vent flues of large buildings, such as schools, halls, churches, theatres, etc., and are especially adapted for use in connection with

Digitized by Google

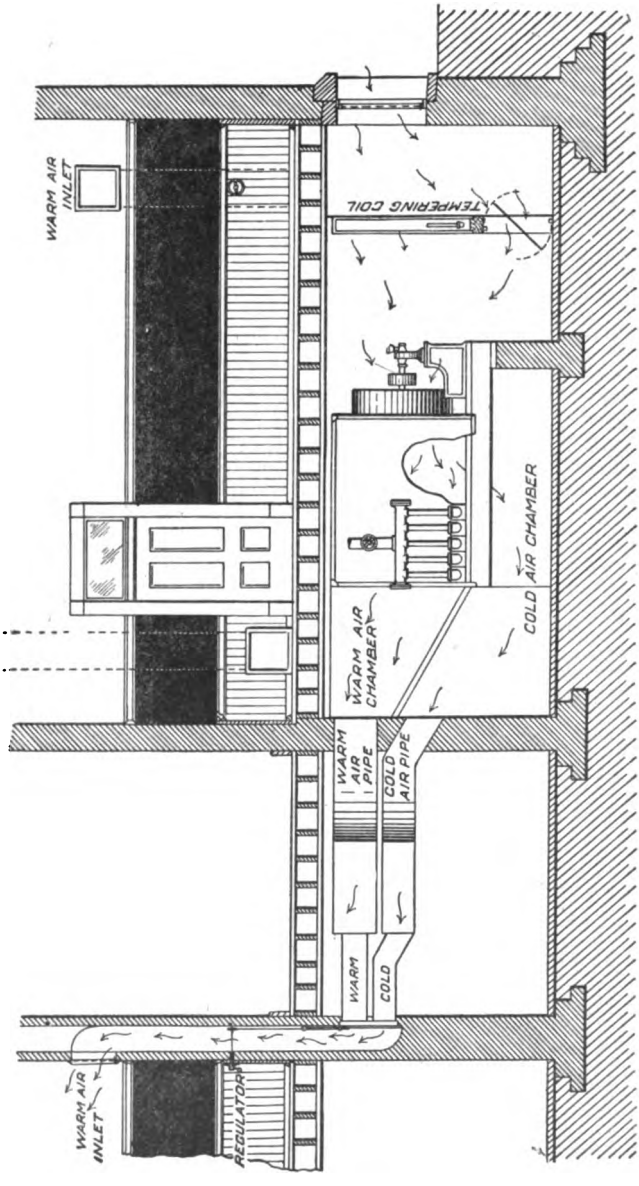


Fig. 23.

Digitized by Google

gravity heating systems. They are usually run by electric motors, and as a rule are placed in positions where an engine could

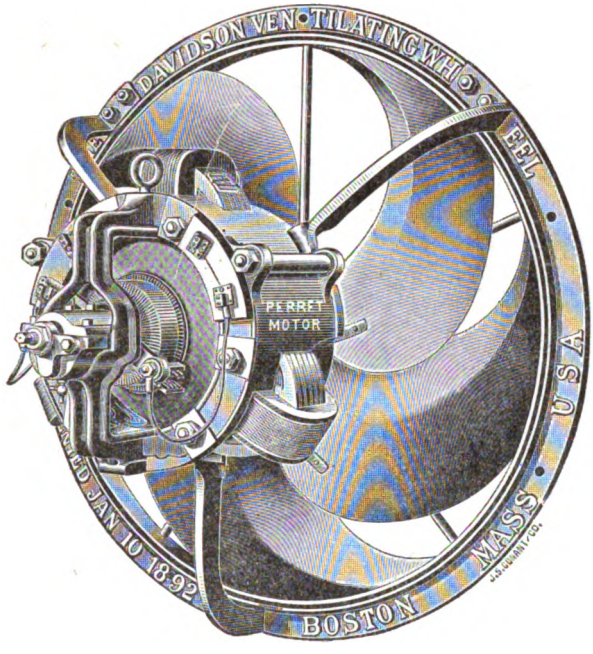


Fig. 24.

not be connected, and also in buildings where steam pressure is not available.

Table IV gives the air delivery per minute against slight resistance, and the proper size of motor for fans of the disc type.

TABLE IV.

Diameter of fan in inches.	Revolutions per minute.	Cubic feet of air delivered per minute.	H. P. of Motor.
12	1,000	600	$\frac{1}{4}$
18	800	1,500	$\frac{1}{2}$
24	500	2,300	1
30	410	3,500	1
36	380	5,700	$1\frac{1}{2}$
42	330	7,800	2
48	280	9,900	3
54	250	12,500	3
60	230	16,000	5

Digitized by Google

ELECTRIC HEATING.

Unless electricity is produced at a very low cost, it is not commercially practicable for heating residences or large buildings. The electric heater, however, has quite a wide field of application in heating small offices, bathrooms, electric cars, etc. It is a convenient method of warming rooms on cold mornings in late spring and early fall, when furnace or steam heat is not at hand. It has the especial advantage of being instantly available, and

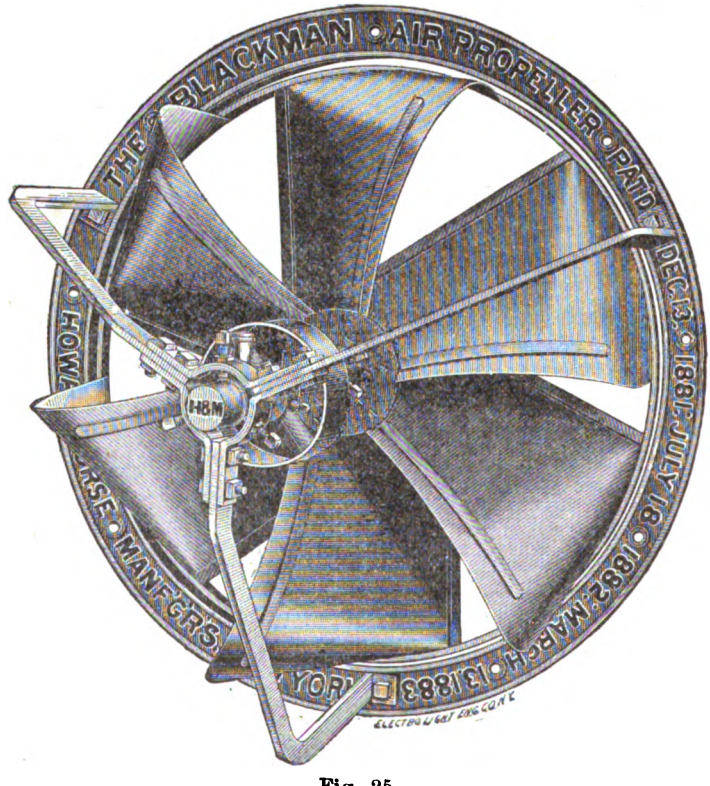


Fig. 25.

the amount of heat can be regulated at will. The heaters are perfectly clean, do not vitiate the air, and are portable.

Electric Heat and Energy. The commercial unit for electricity is one watt for one hour, and is equal to 3.41 B. T. U. Electricity is usually sold on the basis of 1,000 watt hours (called Kilowatt-hours), which is equivalent to 3,410 B. T. U. A watt,

Digitized by Google

as we have learned, is the product obtained by multiplying a current of 1 ampere by an electro-motive force of 1 volt.

From the above we see that the B. T. U. required per hour for warming, divided by 3,410, will give the Kilowatt-hours necessary for supplying the required amount of heat.

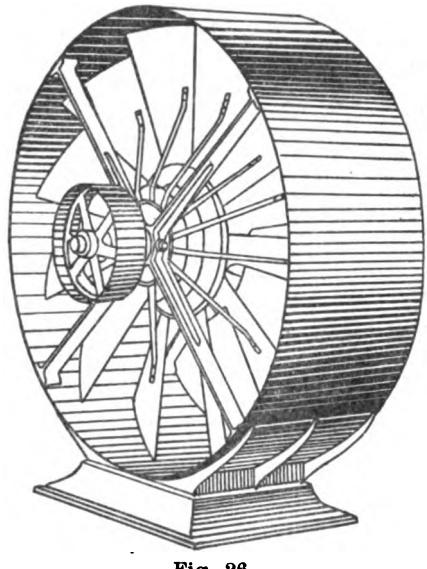


Fig. 26.

Construction of Electric Heaters. Heat is obtained from the electric current by placing a greater or less resistance in its path. Various forms of heaters have been employed. Some of the simplest consist merely of coils or loops of iron wire, arranged in parallel rows, so that the current can be passed through as many coils as are needed to provide the required amount of heat. In other forms the heating material is surrounded with fire-clay, enamel or asbestos, and in some cases the material itself has been

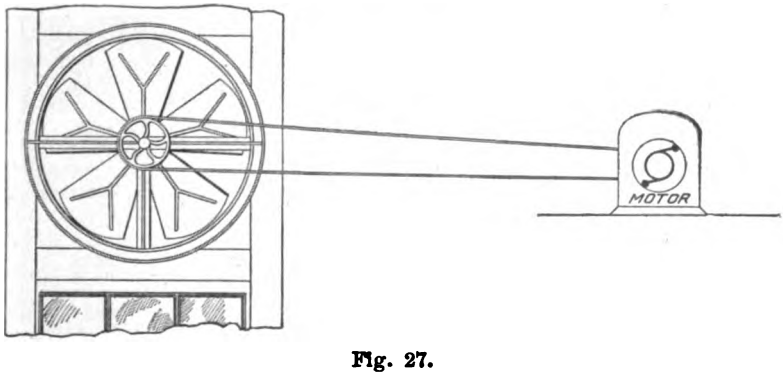


Fig. 27.

such as to give considerable resistance to the current. A form of electric car heater is shown in Fig. 28. Forms of radiators are shown in Figs. 21, 22 and 23, in Part I.

Digitized by Google

Connections for Electric Heaters. The method of wiring for electric heaters is essentially the same as for lights which require the same amount of current. A constant electro-motive force or voltage is maintained in the main wire leading to the heaters. A much less voltage is carried on the return wire, and the current in passing through the heater from the main to the return, drops in voltage or pressure. This drop provides the energy which is transformed into heat.

The principle of electric heating is much the same as that involved in the non-gravity return system of steam heating. In that system the pressure on the main steam pipes is that of the boiler, while that on the return is much less, the reduction in pressure occurring in the passage of the steam through the

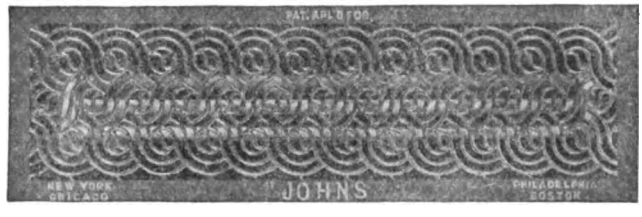


Fig. 28.

radiators; the water of condensation is received into a tank and returned to the boiler by a pump.

In a system of electric heating the main wires must be sufficiently large to prevent a sensible reduction in voltage or pressure between the generator and the heater, so that the pressure in them shall be substantially that in the generator The pressure or voltage in the main return wire is also constant, but very low, and the generator has an office similar to that of the steam pump in the system just described; that is, of raising the pressure of the return current up to that in the main. The power supplied to the generator can be considered the same as the boiler in the first case. All of the current which passes from the main to the return must flow through the heater and in so doing its pressure or voltage falls from that of the main to that of the return.

From the generator shown in Fig. 29, main and return wires

Digitized by Google

are run the same as in a two-pipe system of steam heating, and these are proportioned to carry the required current without sensible drop or loss of pressure. Between these wires are placed the various heaters, which are arranged so that when electric connection is made they draw the current from the main and discharge it into the return wire. Connections are made and broken by switches which take the place of valves on steam radiators.

Cost of Electric Heating. The expense of electric heating must in every case be great, unless the electricity can be supplied

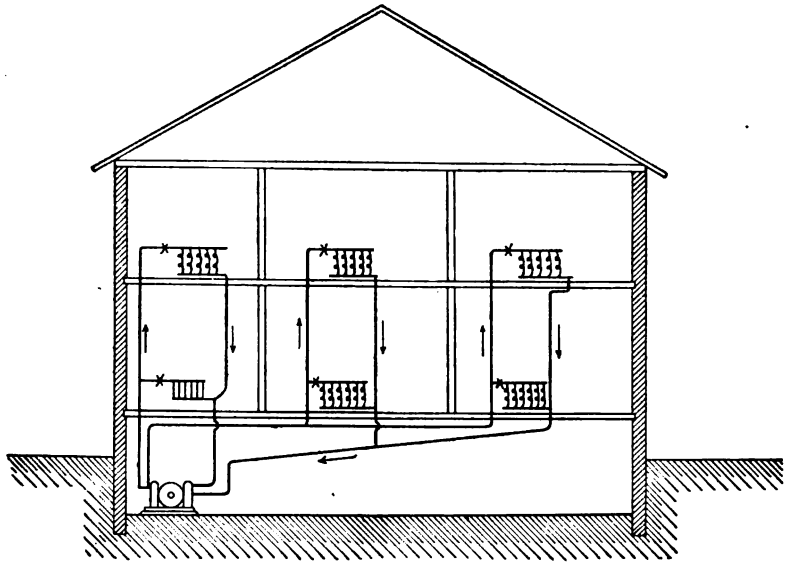


Fig. 29.

at an exceedingly low cost. Estimated on the basis of present practice, the average transformation into electricity does not account for more than 4 per cent of the energy in the fuel which is burned in the furnace: although under best conditions 15 per cent has been realized, it would not be safe to assume that in ordinary practice more than 5 per cent could be transformed into electrical energy. In heating with steam, hot water or hot air, the average amount utilized will probably be about 60 per cent,

Digitized by Google

so that the expense of electrical heating is approximately from 12 to 15 times greater than by these methods.

TEMPERATURE REGULATORS.

The principal systems of automatic temperature control

Fig. 30.

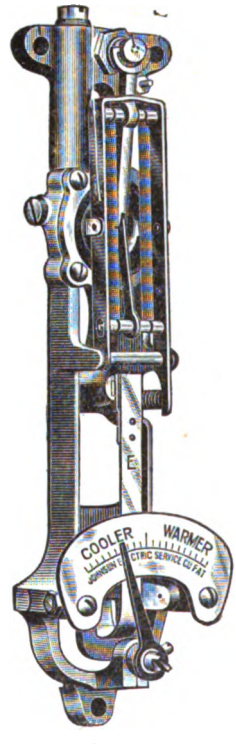


Fig. 31.

now in use consist of three essential features: First, an air compressor, reservoir and distributing pipes; second, thermostats, which are placed in the rooms to be regulated; and third, special diaphragm or pneumatic valves at the radiators.

The *air compressor* is usually operated by water pressure in

Digitized by Google

small plants and by steam in larger ones; electricity is used in some cases. Fig. 30 shows a form of water compressor. It is similar in principle to a direct-acting steam pump, in which water under pressure takes the place of steam. A piston in the upper cylinder compresses the air, which is stored in a reservoir provided for the purpose. When the pressure in the reservoir drops below a certain point, the compressor is started automatically, and continues to operate until the pressure is brought up to its working standard.

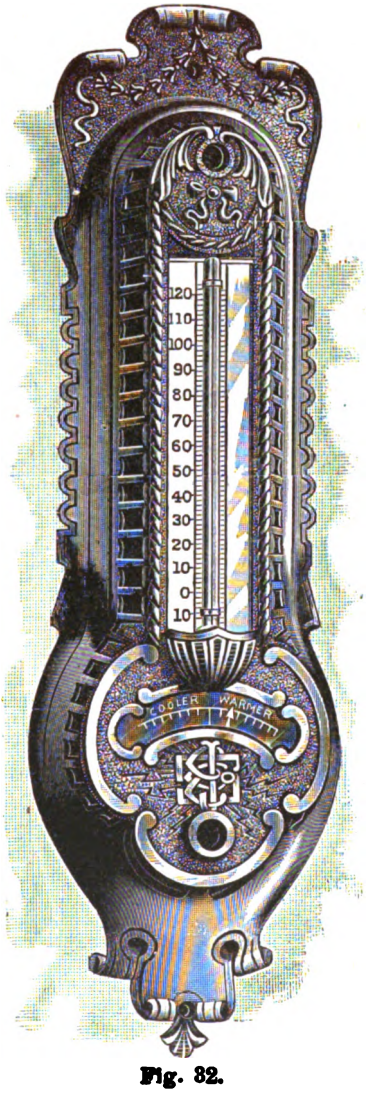


Fig. 32.

A *thermostat* is simply a mechanism for opening and closing one or more small valves, and is actuated by changes in the temperature of the air in which it is placed. Fig. 31 shows a thermostat in which the valves are operated by the expansion and contraction of the metal strip E. The degree of temperature at which it acts may be adjusted by throwing the pointer at the bottom one way or the other. Fig. 32 shows the same thermostat with its ornamental casing in place. The thermostat shown in Fig. 33 operates on a somewhat different principle. It consists of a vessel separated into two chambers by a metal diaphragm. One of these chambers is partially filled with a liquid, which will boil at a temperature below that desired in the room. The vapor of the liquid produces considerable pressure at the normal temperature

Digitized by Google

of the room, and a slight increase of heat crowds the diaphragm over and operates the small valves in a manner similar to that of the metal strip in the case just described.

The general form of a *diaphragm valve* is shown in Fig. 34. These replace the usual hand valves at the radiator. They are similar in construction to the ordinary globe or angle valve, except the stem slides up and down instead of being threaded and running in a nut. The top of the stem connects with a flat plate, which rests against a rubber diaphragm. The valve is held open by a spring, as shown, and is closed by admitting compressed air to the space above the diaphragm.

In connecting up the system, small concealed pipes are carried

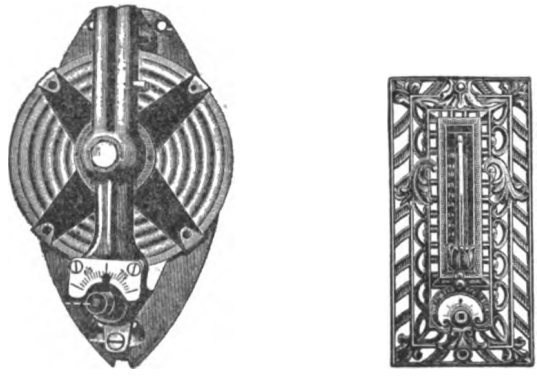


Fig. 33.

from the air reservoir to the thermostat, which is placed upon an inside wall of the room, and from there to the diaphragm valve at the radiator. When the temperature of the room reaches the maximum point for which the thermostat is set, its action opens a small valve and admits air pressure to the diaphragm, thus closing off the steam from the radiator. When the temperature falls, the thermostat acts in the opposite manner, and shuts off the air pressure from the diaphragm valve, and at the same time opens a small exhaust which allows the air above the diaphragm to escape. The pressure being removed the valve opens and again admits steam to the radiator. Thermostats and diaphragms are also used for operating mixing dampers in a similar manner.

Digitized by Google

HEATING AND VENTILATION.

Various Classes of Buildings.

The different methods used in heating and ventilation, together with the manner of computing the various proportions of the apparatus, having been taken up, the application of these systems to the different classes of buildings will now be considered briefly.

School Buildings. For school buildings of small size, the furnace system is simple, convenient and generally effective. Its use is confined as a general rule to buildings having not more

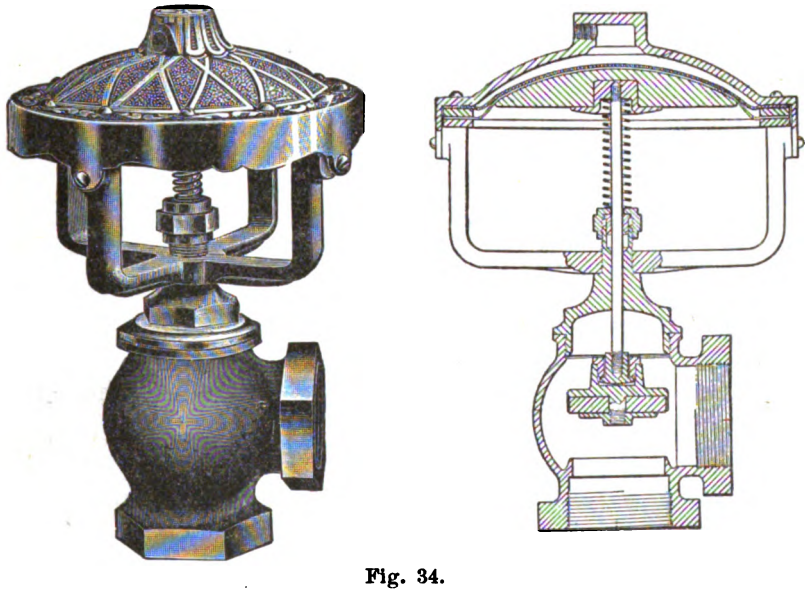


Fig. 34.

than eight rooms. For large ones this method must generally give way to some form of indirect steam system with one or more boilers, which occupy less space, and are more easily cared for than a number of furnaces scattered about in different parts of the basement. Like all systems that depend on natural circulation, the supply and removal of air is considerably affected by changes in the outside temperature and by winds.

The furnaces used are generally built of cast iron; this material being durable, and easily made to present large and

Digitized by Google

effective heating surfaces. To adapt the larger sizes of house heating furnaces to schools a much larger space must be provided between the body and the casing, to permit a sufficient volume of air to pass to the rooms. The free area of the air passage should be sufficient to allow a velocity of about 400 feet per minute.

The size of furnace is based on the amount of heat lost by radiation and conduction through walls and windows plus that carried away by air passing up the ventilating flues. These quantities may be computed by the usual methods for "loss of heat by conduction through walls," and "heat required for ventilation." With more regular and skillful attendance, it is safe to assume a higher rate of combustion in schoolhouse heaters than in those used for warming residences. Allowing a maximum combustion of 6 pounds of coal per hour per square foot of grate, and assuming that 8,000 B. T. U. per pound are taken up by the air passing over the furnace, we have $6 \times 8{,}000 = 48{,}000$ B. T. U. furnished per hour per square foot of grate. Therefore, if we divide the total B. T. U. required for both warming and ventilation by 48,000, it will give us the necessary grate surface in square feet. It has been found in practice that a furnace with a fire-pot 32 inches in diameter, and having ample heating surface, is capable of heating two 50-pupil rooms in zero weather. The sizes of ducts and flues may be determined by rules already given under furnace and indirect steam heating.

The indirect gravity system of steam heating comes next in cost of installation. One important advantage of this system over furnace heating comes from the ability to place the heating coils at the base of the flues, thus doing away with horizontal runs of air pipe, which are required to some extent in furnace heating. The warm-air currents in the flues are less affected by variations in the direction and force of the wind where this construction is possible, and this is of much importance in exposed locations. The method of supplying cold air to the coils or heaters is important, and should be carefully worked out in the manner previously described. Mixing dampers for regulating the temperature of the rooms should be provided for each flue. The effectiveness of these dampers will depend largely upon their construction, and they should be made tight against cold-air

Digitized by Google

leakage by covering the surfaces or flanges against which they close with some form of asbestos felting. Both inlet and outlet gratings should be provided with adjustable dampers. One of the disadvantages of this system is the delivery of all the heat to the room from a single point, and this not always in a position to give the best results. The outer walls are thus left unwarmed, except as the heat is diffused throughout the room by air currents. When there is considerable glass surface, as in most of our modern schoolrooms, draughts and currents of cold air are frequently found along the outside walls.

A very satisfactory arrangement is the use of indirect heaters for warming the air needed for ventilation, and the placing of direct radiation in the rooms for heating purposes. The general construction of the indirect stacks and flues may be the same, but the heating surface can be reduced, as the air in this case must be raised only to 70 or 75 degrees in zero weather; the heat to offset that lost by conduction, etc., through walls and windows being provided by the direct surface. The mixing dampers are also omitted, and the temperature of the room is regulated by opening or closing the steam valves on the direct coils, which may be done either by hand or automatically. The direct-heating surface, which is best made up of lines of $1\frac{1}{4}$-inch pipe, should be placed along the outer walls beneath the windows. This supplies heat where most needed, and does away with the tendency to draughts. In mild weather, during the spring and fall, the indirect heaters may prove sufficient for both ventilation and warming.

Where direct radiation is placed in the rooms, the quantity of heat supplied is not affected by varying wind conditions, as is the case in indirect heating. Although the air supply may be reduced at times, the heat quantity is not changed. Direct radiation has the disadvantage of a more or less unsightly appearance, and architects and owners often object to the running of mains or risers through the rooms of the building. Air valves should always be provided with drip connections carried to a sink or dry well in the basement.

When circulation coils are used, a good method of drainage is to carry separate returns from each coil to the basement, and place

Digitized by Google

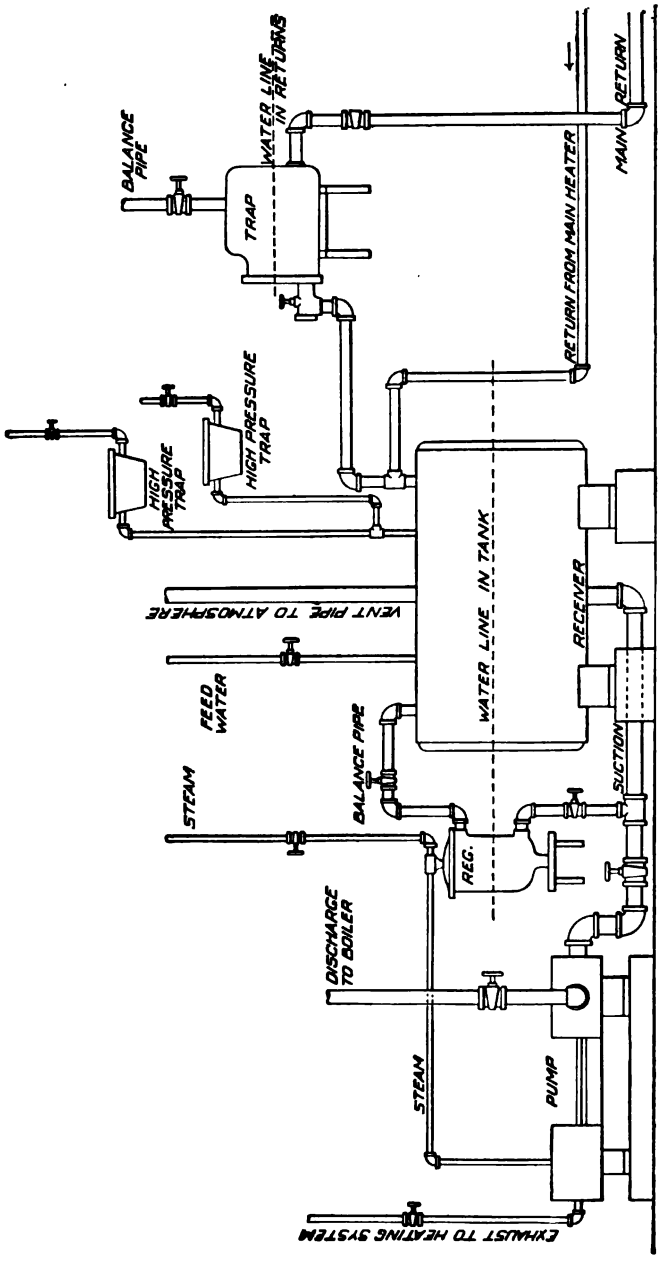


Fig. 35.

Digitized by Google

the air valves in the drops just below the basement ceiling. A check valve should be placed below the water line in each return.

The fan or blower system for ventilation with direct radiation in the rooms for warming, is considered to be one of the best possible arrangements.

In designing a plant of this kind the main heating coil should be of sufficient size to warm the total air supply to 70 or 75 degrees in the coldest weather, and the direct surface should be proportioned for heating the building independently of the indirect system. Automatic temperature regulation should be used in connection with systems of this kind by placing pneumatic valves on the direct radiation. It is customary to carry from 3 to 8 pounds pressure on the direct system and from 8 to 15 on the main coil depending upon the outside temperature. The foot-warmers, vestibule and office heaters should be placed on a separate line of piping, with separate returns and trap, so that they can be used independently of the rest of the building if desired. Where there is a large assembly hall it should be arranged so that it may be both warmed and ventilated when the rest of the building is shut off. This may be done by a proper arrangement of valves and dampers. When different parts of the system are run on different pressures the returns from each should discharge through separate traps into a receiver having connection with the atmosphere by means of a vent pipe. Fig. 35 shows a common arrangement for the return connections in a combination system of this kind. The different traps discharge into the vented receiver as shown, and the water is pumped back to the boiler automatically when it rises above a given level in the receiver, a pump governor being used to start and stop the pumps as required.

A water level or seal of suitable height is maintained in the main returns by placing the trap at the required elevation and bringing the returns into it near the bottom; a balance pipe is connected with the top for equalizing the pressure the same as in the case of a pump governor. Sometimes a fan is used with the heating coils placed at the base of the flues, instead of in the rooms. Where this is done the radiating surface may be reduced about one-half. This system is less expensive to install, but has the disadvantage

Digitized by Google

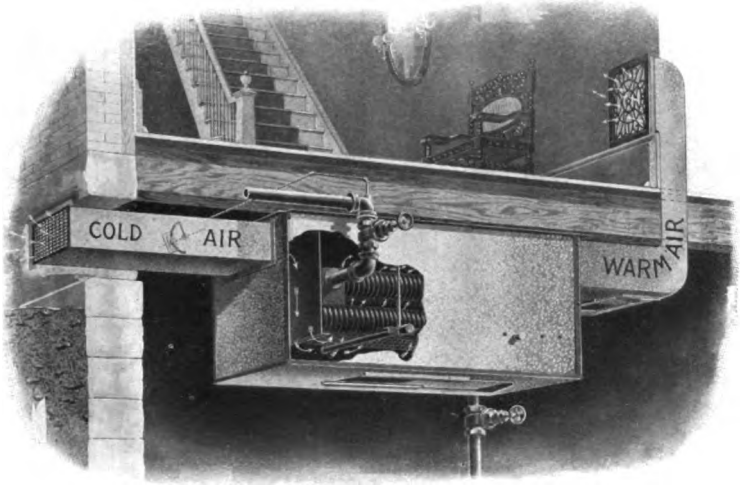
of removing the heating surface from the cold walls where it is most needed.

Churches. Churches may be warmed by furnaces, indirect steam, or by means of a fan. For small buildings the furnace is more commonly used. This apparatus is the simplest of all and is comparatively inexpensive. Heat may be generated quickly, and when the fires are no longer needed they may be allowed to go out without danger of damage to any part of the system from freezing.

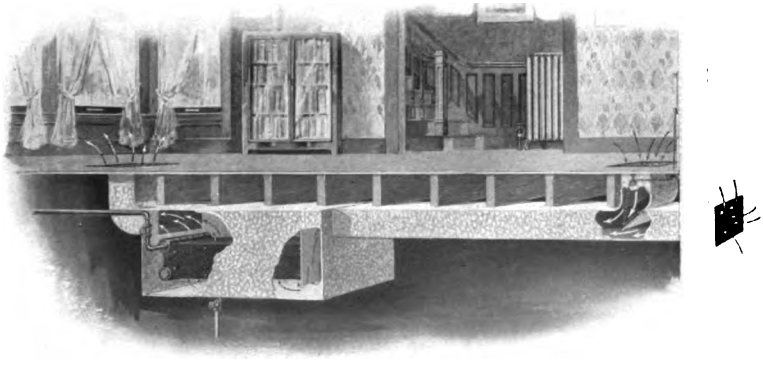
It is not usually necessary that the heating apparatus be large enough to warm the entire building at one time to 70 degrees with frequent change of air. If the building is thoroughly warmed before occupancy, either by rotation or by a slow inward movement of outside air, the chapel or Sunday-school room may be shut off until near the close of the service in the auditorium, when a portion of the warm air may be turned into it. When the service ends, the switch damper is opened wide, and all of the air is discharged into the Sunday-school room. The position of the warm-air registers will depend somewhat upon the construction of the building, but it is well to keep them near the outer walls and the colder parts of the room. Large inlet registers should be placed in the floor near the entrance doors, to stop cold drafts from blowing up the aisles when the doors are opened, and also to be used as foot-warmers.

Ceiling ventilators are generally provided, but should be no larger than is necessary to remove the products of combustion from the gaslights, etc. If too large, much of the warmest and purest air will escape through them. The main vent flues should be placed in or near the floor and should be connected with a vent shaft leading outbound. This flue should be provided with a small stove or flue heater made especially for this purpose. In cold weather the natural draft will be found sufficient in most cases. The same general rules follow in the case of indirect steam as have been described for furnace heating. The stacks are placed beneath the registers or flues and mixing dampers provided. If there are large windows, flues should be arranged to open in the window sills so that a sheet of warm air may be delivered in front of the windows, to counteract the effects of cold down drafts from

Digitized by Google



EXCELSIOR PATTERN RADIATOR USED IN THE INDIRECT METHOD OF WARMING
American Radiator Company



METHOD OF INDIRECT WARMING AND VENTILATION, SHOWING ROTARY CIRCULATION OF AIR
American Radiator Company

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

the exposed glass. These flues may usually be made 3 or 4 inches in depth, and should extend the entire width of the window. Small rooms, such as vestibules, library, pastor's room, etc., are usually heated with direct radiators. Rooms which are used during the week are often connected with an independent heater so that they may be warmed without running the large boilers, as would otherwise be necessary.

When a fan is used it is desirable, if possible, to deliver the air to the auditorium through a large number of small openings. This is often done by constructing a shallow box under each pew, running its entire length, and connecting it with the distributing ducts by means of a pipe from below. The air is delivered at a low velocity through a long slot, as shown in Fig. 36.

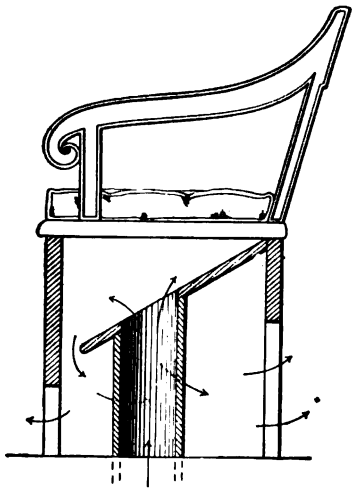


Fig. 36.

The warm-air flues in the window sills should be retained but may be made shallower and the air forced in at a high velocity.

Halls. The treatment of a large audience hall is similar to that of a church, and is usually warmed in one of the three ways already described. Where a fan is used the air is commonly delivered through wall registers placed in part near the floor and partly at a height of 7 or 8 feet above it. They should be made of ample size, so that there will be freedom from draughts. A part of the vents should be placed in the ceiling and the remainder near the floor. All ceiling vents both in halls and churches should be provided with dampers, having means for holding them in any desired position. If indirect gravity heaters are used, it will generally be necessary to place heating coils in the vent flues for use in mild weather; but if the fresh air is supplied by means of a fan there will usually be pressure enough in the room to force the air out without the aid of other means. When the vent air ways

Digitized by Google

are restricted, or the air is impeded in any way, electric ventilating fans are often used. These give especially good results in warmer weather, when natural ventilation is sluggish. The temperature may be regulated either by using the double duct system or by shutting off or turning on a greater or less number of sections in the main heater. After an audience hall is once warmed and filled with people, very little heat is required to keep it comfortable, even in the coldest weather.

Theaters. In designing heating and ventilating systems for theaters, a wide experience and the greatest care are necessary to secure the best results. A theater consists of three parts: the body of the house, or auditorium; the stage and dressing-rooms; and the foyer, lobbies, corridors, stairways and offices. Theaters are usually located in cities, and surrounded with other buildings on two or more sides, thus allowing no direct connection by windows with the external air; for this reason artificial means are necessary for providing suitable ventilation, and a forced circulation by means of a fan is the only satisfactory means of accomplishing this. It is usually advisable to create a slight excess of pressure in the auditorium, in order that all openings shall allow for the discharge rather than the inward leakage of air.

The general and most approved method of air distribution is to force it into closed spaces beneath the auditorium and balcony floors, and allow it to discharge upward through small openings among the seats. One of the best methods is through chair-legs of special latticed design, which are placed over suitable openings in the floor; in this way the air is delivered to the room in small streams at a low velocity without drafts or currents. The discharge ventilation should be largely through ceiling vents, and this may be assisted if necessary by the use of ventilating fans. Vent openings should also be provided at the rear of the balconies either in the wall or ceiling, and these should be connected with an exhaust fan either in the basement or attic, as is most convenient.

The close seating of the occupants produces a large amount of animal heat, which usually increases the temperature from 6 to 10 degrees, or even more; so that in considering a theater once

Digitized by Google

filled and thoroughly warmed it becomes more of a question of cooling than one of warming to produce comfort.

Office Buildings. This class of buildings may be satisfactorily warmed by direct steam, hot water, or where ventilation is desired by the fan system. Probably direct steam is used more frequently than any other system for this purpose. Vacuum systems are well adapted to the conditions usually found in this type of building, as most modern office buildings have their own light and power plants, and the exhaust steam can be thus utilized for heating purposes. The piping may be either single or double. If the former is used it is better to carry a single main riser to the upper story and run drops to the basement, as by this means the flow of steam and water are in the same direction and much smaller pipes can be used than would be the case if risers were carried from the basement upward. Special provision must be made for the expansion of the risers or drops in tall buildings. They are usually anchored at the center and allowed to expand in both directions. The connections with the radiators must not be so rigid as to cause undue strains or lift the radiators from the floor.

It is customary in most cases to make the connections with the end farthest from the riser; this gives a length of horizontal pipe which has a certain amount of spring, and will care for any vertical movement of the riser which is likely to occur. Forced hot-water circulation is often used in connection with exhaust steam. The water is warmed by the steam in large heaters, similar to feed-water heaters, and circulated through the system by means of centrifugal pumps. This has the usual advantage of hot water over steam, inasmuch as the temperature of the radiators may be regulated to suit the conditions of outside temperature.

Apartment Houses. These are warmed by furnaces, direct steam and hot water. Furnaces are more often used in the smaller houses, as they are cheaper to install, and require a less skilful attendant to operate them. Steam is probably used more than any other system in blocks of larger size. A well-designed single pipe connection with automatic air valves dripped to the basement is probably the most satisfactory in this class of work.

Digitized by Google

People who are more or less unfamiliar with steam systems are apt to overlook one of the valves in shutting off or turning on steam, and where only one valve is used, the difficulty arising from

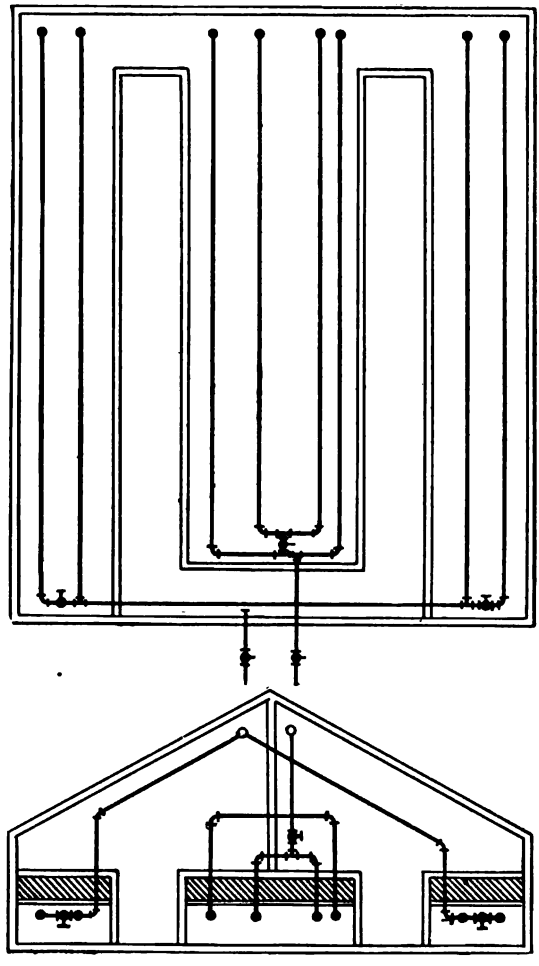


Fig. 37.

this is avoided. Where pet-cock air valves are used they are often left open through carelessness, and the automatic valves, unless dripped, are likely to give more or less trouble.

Greenhouses and conservatories are heated in some cases by

Digitized by Google

steam and in others by hot water, some florists preferring one and some the other. Either system when properly designed and constructed should give satisfaction, although hot water has its usual advantage of a variable temperature. The methods of piping are in a general way like those already described, and the pipes may be located to run underneath the beds of growing plants or above as bottom or top heat is desired. The main is generally run near the upper part of the greenhouse and to the furtherest extremity in one or more branches, with a pitch upward from the heater for hot water and with a pitch downward for steam. The principal

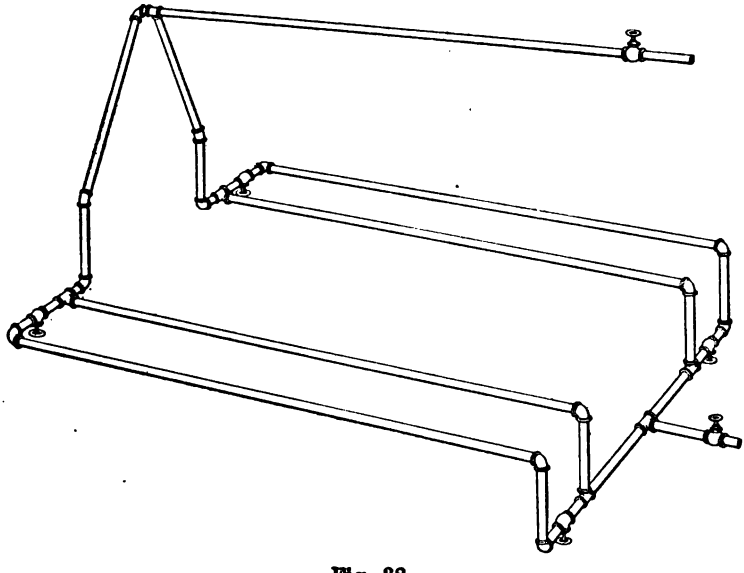


Fig. 38.

radiating surface is made of parallel lines of $1\frac{1}{2}$ inch, or larger, pipe, placed under the benches and supplied by the return current. Figs. 37, 38 and 39 show a common method of running the piping in greenhouse work. Fig. 37 shows a plan and elevation of the building with its lines of pipe, and Figs. 38 and 39 give details of the pipe connections of the outer and inner groups of pipes respectively.

Any system of piping which gives free circulation and which is adapted to the local conditions should give satisfactory results.

Digitized by Google

The radiating surface may be computed from the rules already given. As the average greenhouse is composed almost entirely of glass we may for purposes of calculation consider it such, and if we divide the total exposed surface by 4 we shall get practically the same result as if we assumed a heat loss of 85 B. T. U. per square foot of surface per hour and an efficiency of 330 B. T. U.

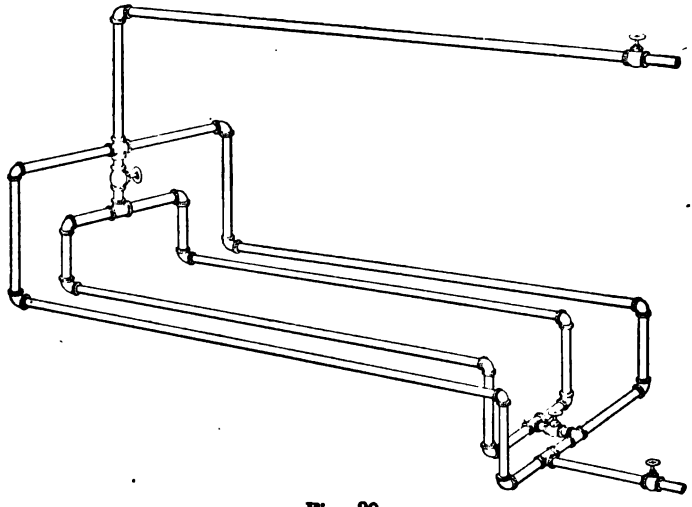


Fig. 89.

for the heating coils; so that we may say in general that the square feet of radiating surface required equals the total exposed surface divided by 4 for steam coils and by 2.5 for hot water. These results should be increased from 10 to 20 per cent for exposed locations.

CARE AND MANAGEMENT.

The care of furnaces, hot-water heaters and steam boilers has been discussed in connection with the design of these different systems of heating, and need not be repeated. The management of the heating and ventilating systems in large school buildings is a matter of much importance, especially in those using a fan system; to obtain the best results as much depends upon the skill of the operating engineer as upon that of the designer.

Beginning in the boiler room, he should exercise special care

Digitized by Google

in the management of his fires, and the instruction given in "Boiler Accessories" should be carefully followed; all flues and smoke passages should be kept clear and free from accumulations of soot and ashes by means of a brush or steam jet. Pumps and engine should be kept clean and in perfect adjustment, and extra care should be taken when they are in rooms through which the air supply is drawn, or the odor of oil will be carried to the rooms. All steam traps should be examined at regular intervals to see that they are in working order, and upon any sign of trouble they should be taken apart and carefully cleaned.

The air valves on all direct and indirect radiators should be inspected often, and upon the failure of any room to heat properly the air valve should first be looked to as a probable cause of the difficulty. Adjusting dampers should be placed in the base of each flue, so that the flow to each room may be regulated independently. In starting up a new plant the system should be put in proper balance by a suitable adjustment of these dampers, and when once adjusted they should be marked and left in these positions. The temperature of the rooms should never be regulated by closing the inlet registers. These should never be touched unless the room is to be unused for a day or more.

In designing a fan system provision should be made for "air rotation"; that is, the arrangement should be such that the same air may be taken from the building and passed through the fan and heater continuously. This is usually accomplished by closing the main vent flues and the cold-air inlet to the building, then opening the class-room doors into the corridor ways, and drawing the air down the stairwells to the basement and into the space back of the main heater through doors provided for this purpose. In warming up a building in the morning this should always be practiced until about fifteen minutes before school opens. The vent flues should then be opened, doors into corridors closed, and cold-air inlets opened wide, and the full volume of fresh air taken from out of doors.

At night time the dampers in the main vents should be closed, to prevent the warm air contained in the building from escaping. The fresh air should be delivered to the rooms at a temperature of from 70 to 75 degrees, and this temperature must

Digitized by Google

be obtained by proper use of the shut-off valves, thus running a greater or less number of sections on the main heater. A little experience will show the engineer how many sections to carry for different degrees of outside temperature. A dial thermometer should be placed in the main warm-air duct near the fan, so that the temperature of the air delivered to the rooms can be easily noted.

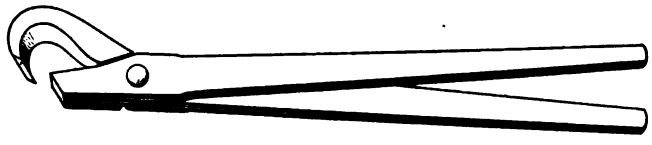


Fig. 40.

The exhaust steam from the engine and pumps should be turned into the main heater; this will supply a greater number of sections in mild weather than in cold, owing to the less rapid condensation.

STEAM FITTING.

In order to design a system intelligently the engineer should have some knowledge of the methods of actual construction, the tools used, etc. It is customary where a piece of work is to be done to send a supply of pipe and fittings to the building some-

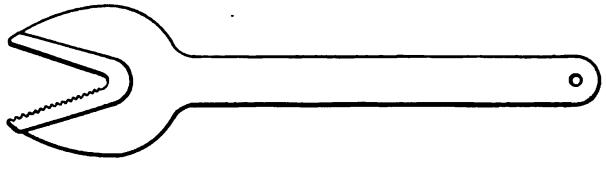


Fig. 41.

what greater than is required, and the workman after receiving the plans of construction, which show the location and sizes of the various pipes to be erected, makes his own measurements, cuts the pipes to the proper length at the building, threads them and screws them into place.

Digitized by Google

The tools belonging to this trade consist of tongs or wrenches for screwing the pipe together, cutters for cutting, taps and dies for threading the pipe, and vises for holding it in position while cutting or threading. A great variety of tongs and wrenches are

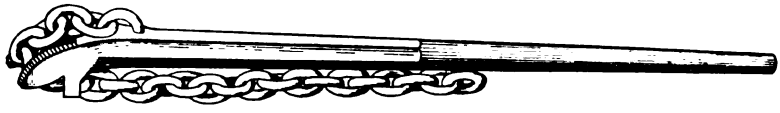


Fig. 42.

to be found on the market. For rapid work no tool is superior to the plain tongs (shown in Fig. 40), especially for the smaller sizes of pipe. The alligator wrench (shown in Fig. 41) is used in a similar manner on light work and where the pipes turn easily.

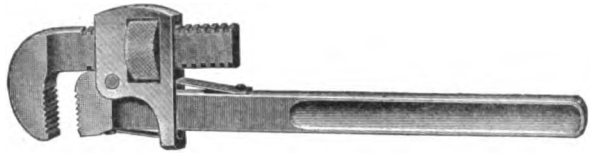


Fig. 43.

For large pipe, chain tongs of some pattern are the best, and may be used with little danger of crushing the pipe. (See Fig. 42.) A form of wrench, known as the Stilson, one form of which is shown in Fig. 43, is widely used. The wrenches or tongs which are used

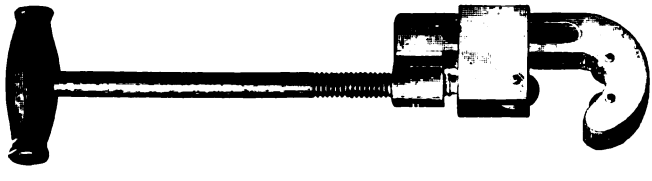


Fig. 44.

for turning the pipe, in most cases, exert more or less lateral pressure, and if too great strength is applied at the handles there is a tendency to split the pipe. The cutter ordinarily employed for small pipe consists of one or more sharp-edged steel wheels,

Digitized by Google

which are held in an adjustable frame (see Fig. 44); the cutting being performed by applying pressure and revolving it around the pipe. A section of one of the cutting wheels is shown in Fig. 45. With this tool the cutting is accomplished by simply crowding the metal to one side, and hence burrs of considerable size will be formed on the outside and inside of the pipe. Usually the outside burr must be removed by filing before the pipe can be threaded. The inside burr forms a great obstruction

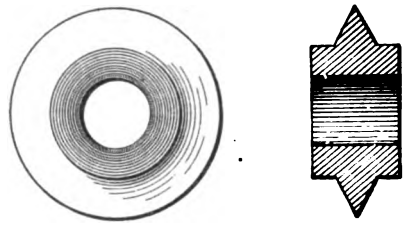


Fig. 45.

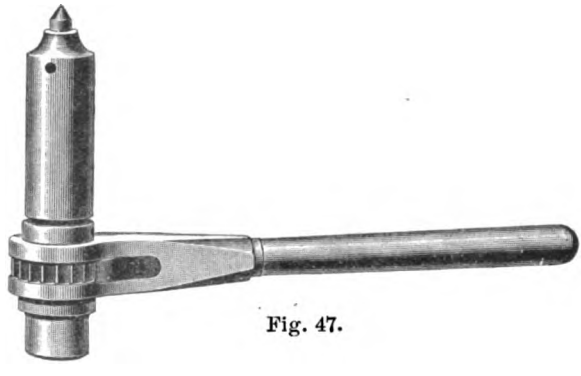


Fig. 47.

to the flow of steam or water, and should in every case be removed by the use of the reamer. There are many forms of reamers for

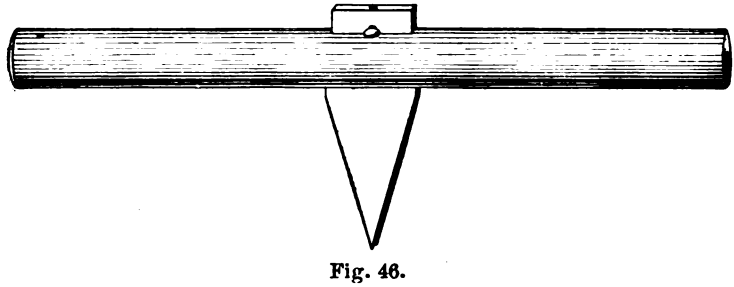


Fig. 46.

use in various cases; one of the simplest is shown in Fig. 46.

The ratchet drill is another tool often used, and is especially useful in drilling holes in pipes or fittings after the work is in

Digitized by Google

place. One of these is shown in Fig. 47. A common form of vise used for holding the pipe while cutting and threading is shown in Fig. 48. The combination vise is shown in Fig. 49.

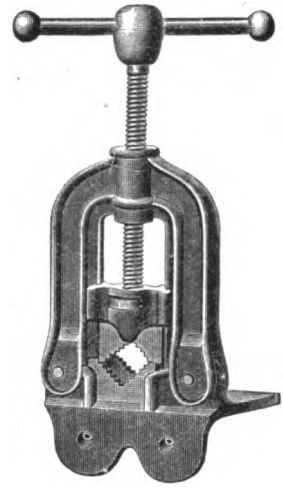


Fig. 48.

The dies for threading the pipes are usually of a solid form, each die fitting into a stock or holder with handles. (See Fig. 50.) The cutting edges of the dies should be kept very sharp and clean, otherwise perfect threads cannot be cut. In cutting threads on wrought iron pipe, oil should always be used, which will tend to prevent heating and crumbling, and make the work easier. In erecting pipe great care should be taken to preserve the proper pitch and alignment, and to appear well the pipes should be screwed together until

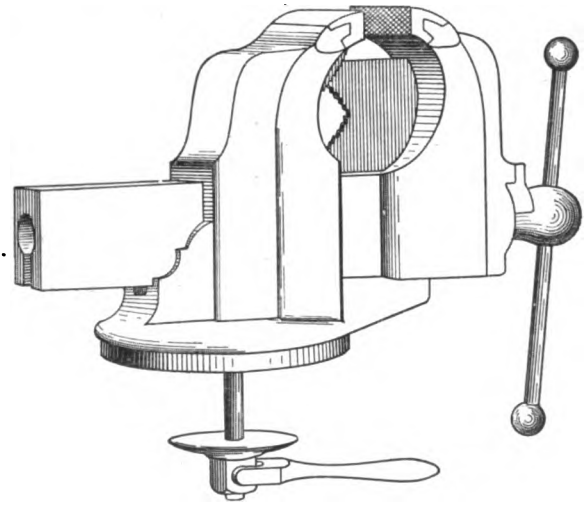


Fig. 49.

no threads are in sight. Every joint should be screwed from 6 to 8 complete turns for sizes 2 inches and under and from 8 to 12 turns for the larger sizes, otherwise there will be danger of leakage.

In screwing pipes together, red or white lead is often used.

Digitized by Google

It will generally be found that linseed or some good lubricating oil will be equally valuable. If possible, the work should be arranged so that it can be made up with right and left couplings or other fittings.

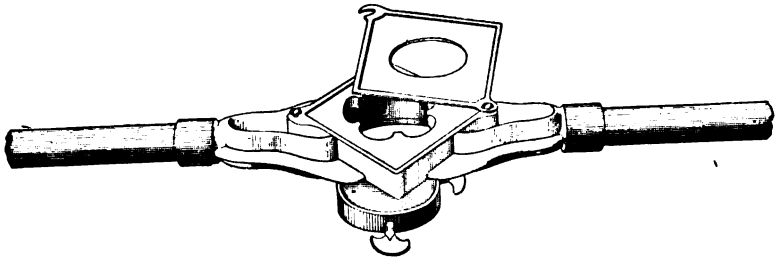
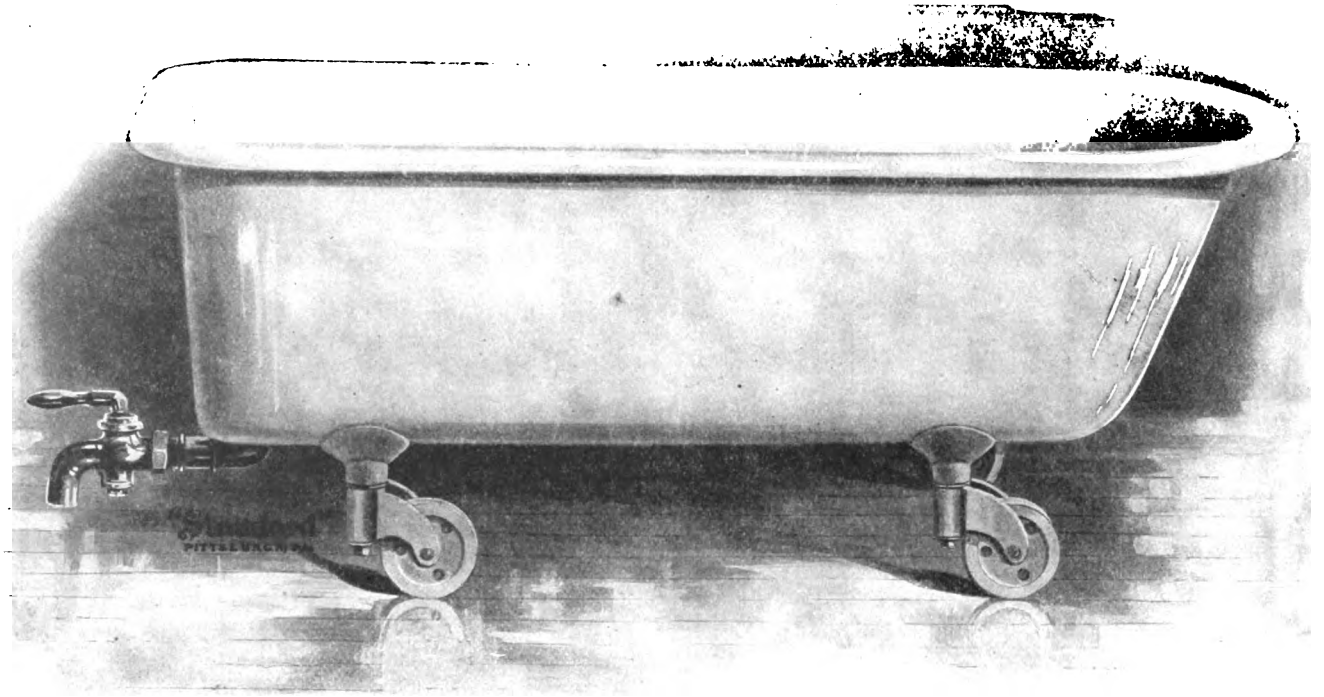


Fig. 50.

Packed joints, especially unions, are objectionable and likely to leak after use. Flange-unions with copper gaskets should be used on heavy work. Good workmanship in pipe-fitting is shown by the perfection with which small details are executed, and poor workmanship in any of the particulars mentioned may defeat the perfect operation of the best designed plant.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google



Standard Bath Tub for Hospital Use.

Digitized by Google

PLUMBING.

PART I.

PLUMBING FIXTURES.

Bath Tubs. There are many varieties of bath tubs in use at the present time, ranging from the wooden box lined with zinc or copper which was in common use a number of years ago and is still to be found in the old houses, to the finest crockery and enameled tubs which are now used in the best modern plumbing. In selecting a tub we should choose one with as little woodwork about it as possible. Those lined with zinc or copper are hard to keep clean and are liable to leak and are, therefore, undesirable from a sanitary standpoint. The plain cast iron tub, painted, is the next in cost. This makes a serviceable and satisfactory tub if

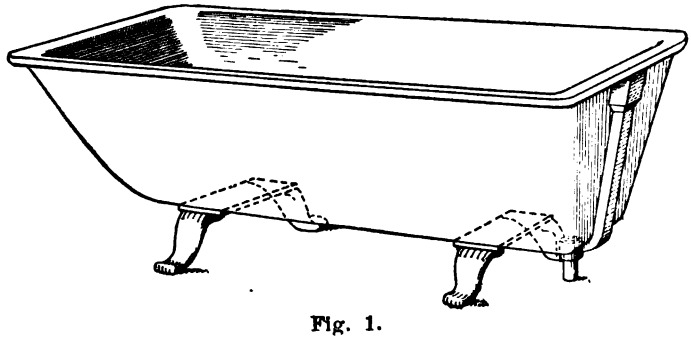


Fig. 1.

kept painted; it is used quite extensively in asylums, hospitals, etc. One of this type is shown in Fig. 1. These are sometimes galvanized instead of being painted.

The "steel-clad" tub shown in Fig. 2 is a good form for a low-priced article. This tub is formed of sheet steel and has a lining of copper. This form is light and easy to handle; it is an open fixture the same as the cast iron tub and requires no casing. It is provided with cast iron legs and a wooden cap. Probably the most common form to be found in the average house at the present time is the porcelain lined iron tub as shown in Fig. 3.

Digitized by Google

This has a smooth interior finish and is easily kept clean. It will not, however, stand the hard usage of those above described as the lining is likely to crack if struck by any hard substance.

In Fig. 4 is shown a crockery or porcelain tub arranged for needle and shower baths. This is a most sanitary article in every respect and requires no woodwork of any kind; being made of one

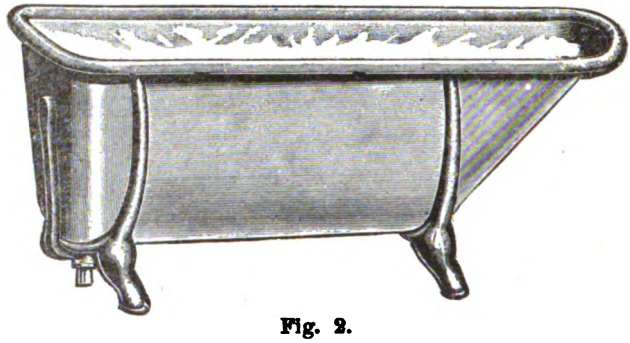


Fig. 2.

piece, there is no chance for dirt to collect. It is a heavy tub and requires great care in handling. This material is very cold to the touch until it has become thoroughly warmed by the hot water. Fig. 5 shows a seat bath and Fig. 6 a foot bath, both of which are

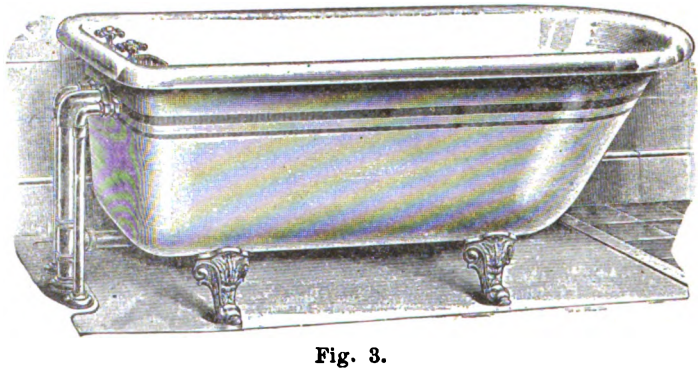


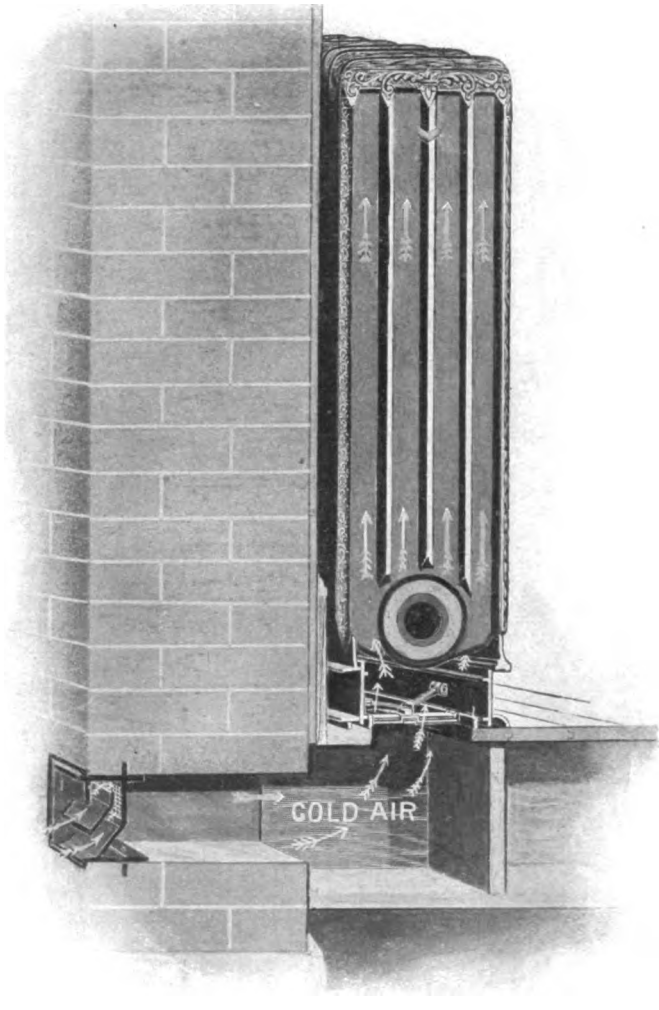
Fig. 3.

very convenient and should be placed in all well equipped bath rooms if the expense does not prohibit their use.

Water Closets. There is a great variety of water closets from which to choose, many operating upon the same principle but varying slightly in form and finish. The best are made of

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google



DIRECT-INDIRECT METHOD OF WARMING TAKING A FRESH AIR SUPPLY FROM OUTSIDE AND PASSING IT UPWARD
American Radiator Company

Digitized by Google

porcelain, the bowl and trap being in one piece without corners or crevices so that they are easily kept clean. The top of the bowl is provided with a wooden rim and cover. The general arrangement of seat and flushing tank is shown in Fig. 7. A section through the bowl is shown in Fig. 8. This type is known as a

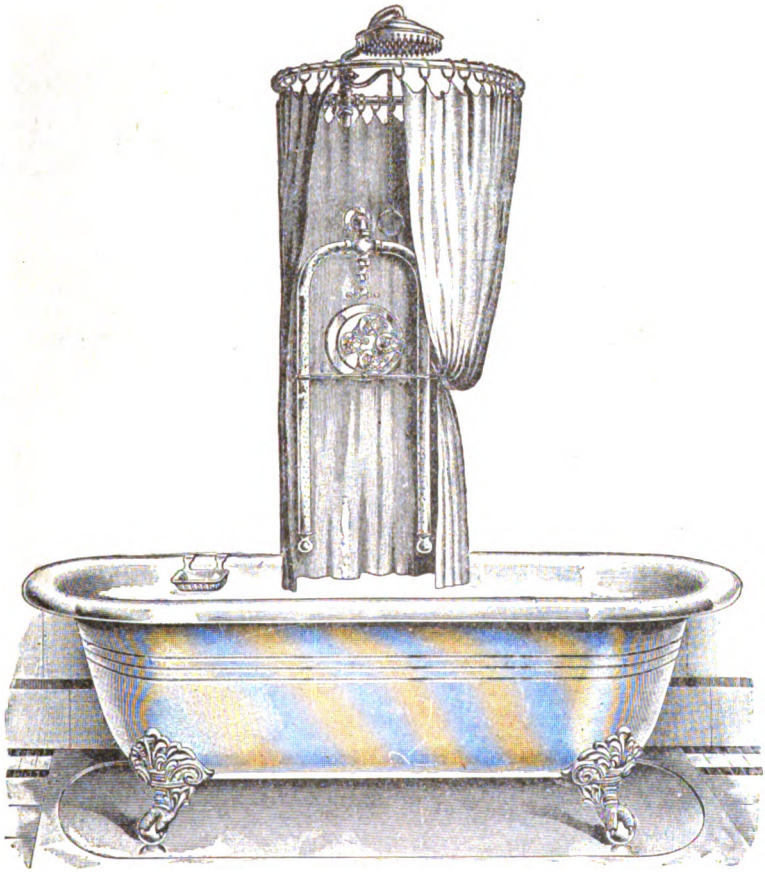


Fig. 4.

syphon closet, and those made on this principle are probably the most satisfactory of any in present use. They are made in different forms by various manufacturers but each involves the principle which gives it its name. Water stands in the bottom as shown, thus forming a seal against gases from the sewer.

Digitized by Google

When the closet is flushed, water rushes down the pipe and fills the small chamber at the rear which discharges in a jet at the bottom as shown by the arrow. The syphon action thus set up draws the entire contents of the bowl over into the soil pipe. In the meantime a part of the water from the tank fills the hollow rim of the bowl and is discharged in a thin stream around the

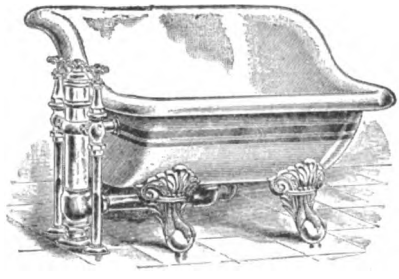


Fig. 5.

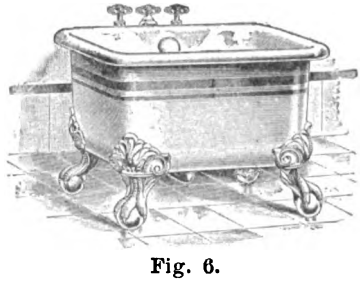


Fig. 6.

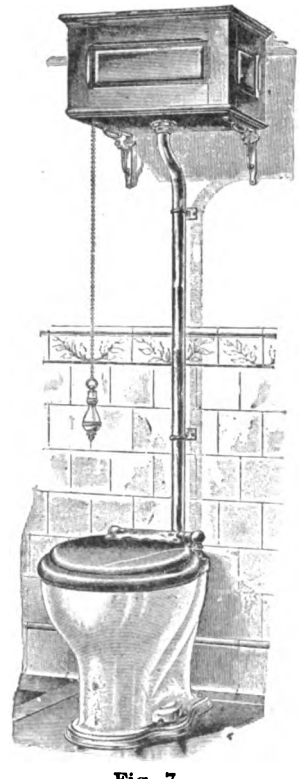


Fig. 7.

entire perimeter which thoroughly washes the inside of the bowl each time it is flushed. Fig. 9 shows a form called the "wash-out" closet. In this case the whole of the water is discharged through the flushing rim but with greater force at the rear which washes the contents of the upper bowl into the lower which overflows into the soil pipe. This is a good form of closet and is widely used. A similar form, but without the upper bowl is

Digitized by Google

shown in Fig. 10. This is known as the "wash down" closet and operates in the manner already described. The water enters the bowl through the flushing rim and discharges its contents by

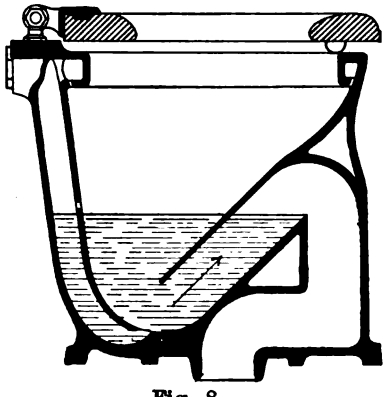


Fig. 8.

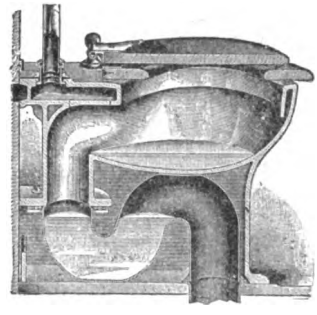


Fig. 9.

overflowing into the soil pipe. This is a simple form of closet and easily kept clean.

One of the simplest closets is the "hopper" shown in Fig. 11. This consists of a plain bowl of porcelain or cast iron tapering to

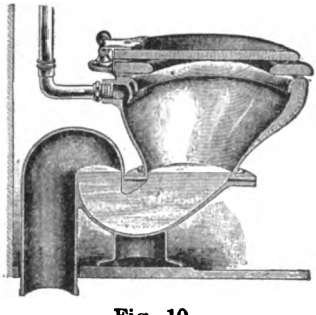


Fig. 10.

Fig. 11.

an outlet about 4″ in diameter at the bottom. It is connected directly with the soil pipe as shown. The trap may be placed either above the floor or below as desired. They are provided with a flushing rim at the top similar to that already described. This type of closet is the cheapest but at the same time the least satisfactory of any of the different kinds shown.

Digitized by Google

It is sometimes desirable to place a closet in a location where there would be danger of freezing if the usual form of flushing tank was used. Fig. 12 shows an arrangement which may be used in a case of this kind. The valve and water connections are placed below the frost line and a pipe not shown in the cut is carried up to the rim of the bowl. Whenthe rim is shut down the

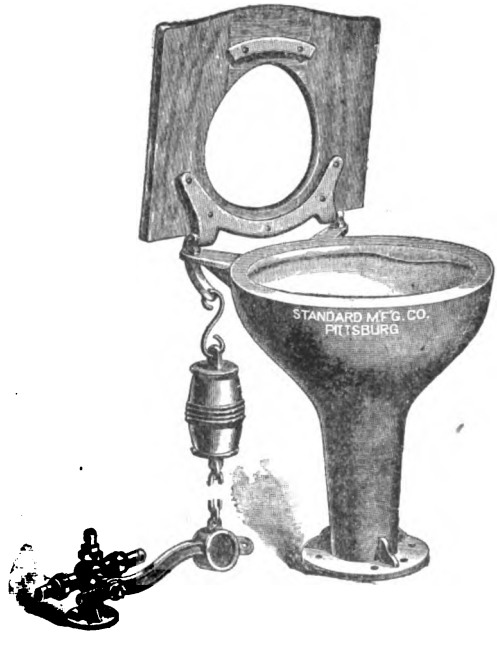


Fig. 12.

valve is opened by means of the chain attached to it and water flows through the bowl while in use. When released, the weight on the lever closes the valve and raises the wooden rim to its original position. Any water which remains in the flush pipe is drained to the soil pipe through a small drip pipe which is seen in the cut.

Urinals. A common form of urinal is shown in Fig. 13. The partitions and slab at the back are either of slate or marble and the bowl of porcelain. They may be flushed like a closet. Fig. 14 shows a section through the bowl and indicates the

Digitized by Google

manner of flushing, partly through the rim and partly at the back. The trap or seal is shown at the bottom. Another form is shown in Fig. 15. In this case the bowl remains partly filled with water which forms a seal as shown. It is flushed both through the rim and the passage at the back. In action it is the same as the syphon closet shown in Fig. 8 and the bowl is drained each

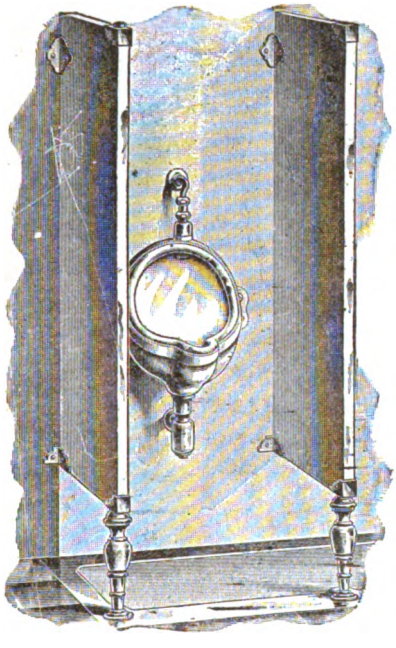


Fig. 13.

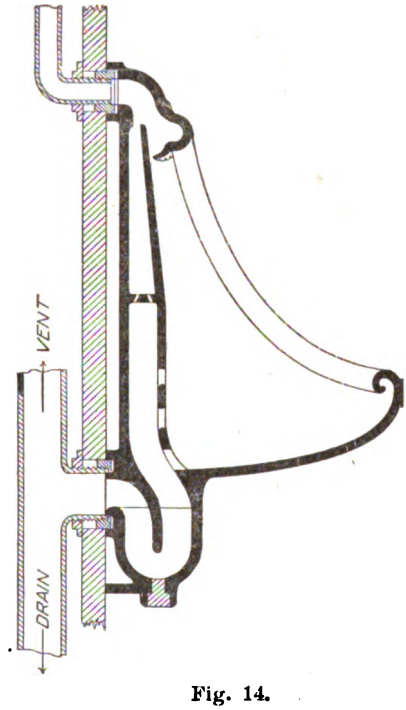


Fig. 14.

time it is flushed, but immediately fills with water to the level indicated.

An automatic flushing device is illustrated in Fig. 16. When the water line in the tank reaches a given level, the float lever releases a catch and flushes the urinal. The intervals of flushing can be regulated by adjusting the cock shown in the inlet pipe, near the bottom of the tank.

A simple form of urinal commonly used in schools and public buildings is shown in Fig. 17. This is flushed by means of

Digitized by Google

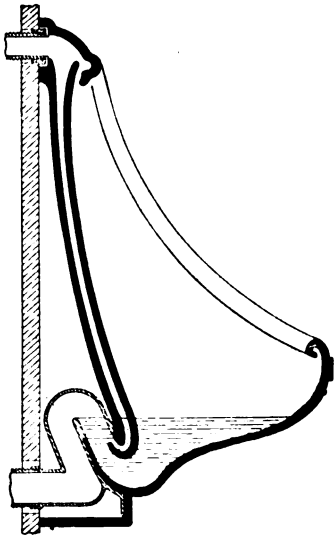


Fig. 15.

small streams of water which are discharged through the perforated pipe near the top of the slab at the back and run down in a thin sheet to the gutter at the bottom.

Lavatories. Bowls and lavatories can be had in almost any form. Fig. 18 shows a simple corner lavatory, made of porcelain and provided

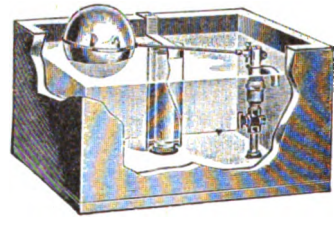


Fig. 16.

Fig. 17.

with hot and cold water faucets. It has an overflow, shown by the small openings at the back and a rubber plug for closing the drain at the bottom.

The lavatory shown in Fig. 19 is provided with marble slabs and is more expensive. Fig. 20 shows a section through the bowl. The waste pipe is at the back, which

Digitized by Google

brings the plug and chain well out of the way. A pattern still more elaborate is shown in Fig. 21, and a section through the bowl in Fig. 22. The waste pipe plug in this case is in the form of a hollow tube and acts as an overflow when closed and as a strainer when open. It is held open by means of a slot and

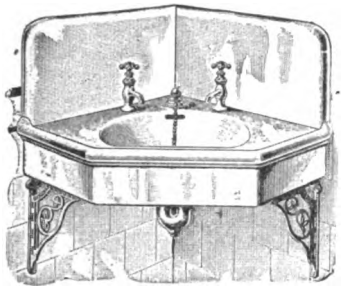


Fig. 18.

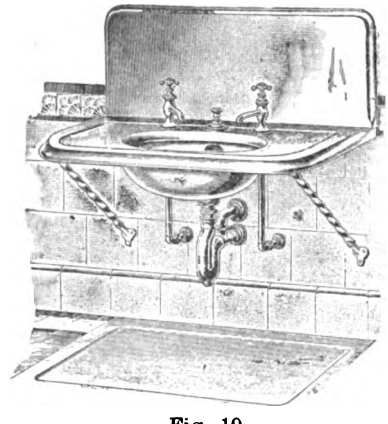


Fig. 19.

pin near the top. Fig. 23 shows a bowl so arranged that either hot, cold or tepid water may be drawn through the same opening which is placed well down in the bowl where it is out of the way.

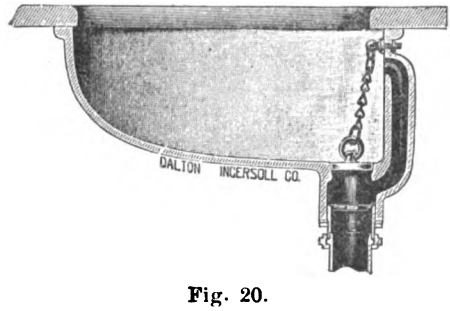


Fig. 20.

Sinks. Sinks are made of plain wood, and of wood lined with sheet metal, such as copper, zinc or galvanized iron. They are also made of sheet steel, cast iron, either plain, galvanized or enameled, and of soapstone and porcelain. Each has its advantages and disadvantages. The wooden sink is liable to leak,

Digitized by Google

and is difficult to keep thoroughly clean. The lined sink is most satisfactory when new, but holes are quite easily cut or punched through the lining and it then becomes very objectionable from a sanitary standpoint as the greasy water and vegetable matter which works through the opening causes the woodwork to decay rapidly and to give off in the process a gas which is not only unhealthful but tends to destroy the lining of the sink from the underside so that its destruction is rapid after a leak is once started. The cast iron sink is satisfactory. The appearance is improved by galvanizing, but this soon wears off on the inside. Enameled sinks are easily kept clean but likely to become cracked or broken from hard usage or from extremes of hot or cold; the porcelain sink has the same defects;

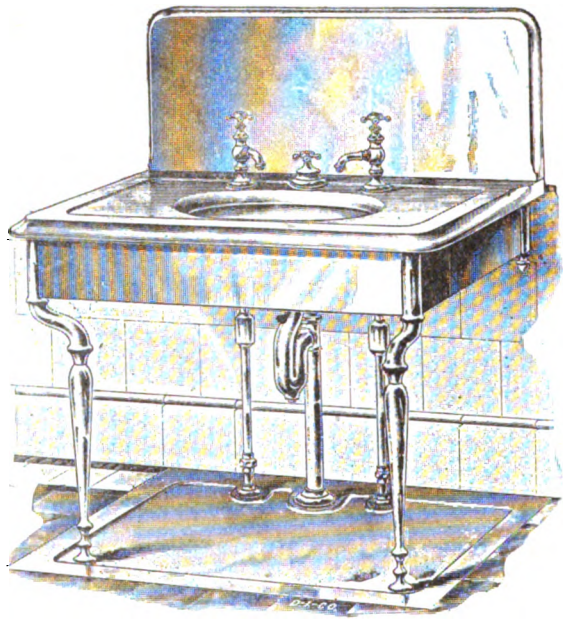


Fig. 21.

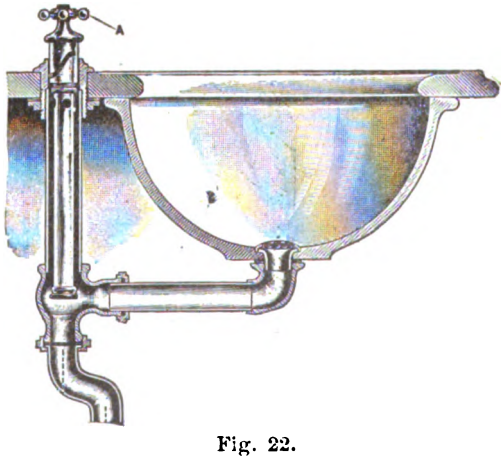


Fig. 22.

Digitized by Google

they are both however well adapted to places where they will receive careful usage.

Taking all points into consideration the soapstone sink may perhaps be considered the most satisfactory for all-around use.

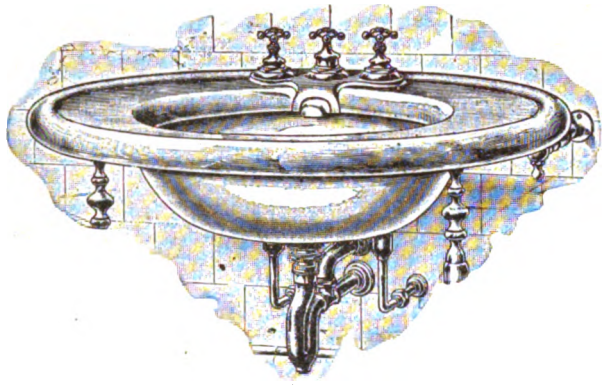


Fig. 23.

It will not absorb moisture ; is not affected by the action of acids; oil or grease will not enter the pores and it is not injured by hot water nor liable to crack.

Fig. 24 shows the ordinary cast iron sink, made to be set in a wooden casing ; this is not to be recommended however, and it is

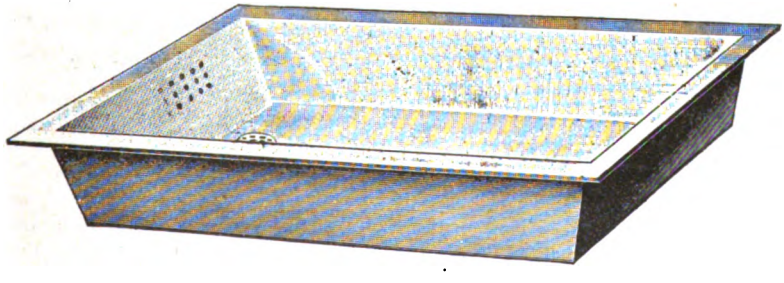


Fig. 24.

much better to support them upon iron brackets or legs. Fig. 25 shows an enameled sink mounted in this way. A porcelain sink with dish racks is shown in Fig. 26. This is a good form for a pantry sink which is used only for washing cutlery, glassware,

Digitized by Google

crockery, etc., and is not subjected to hard usage. A slop sink is shown in Fig. 27. This, as will be noticed, is provided with an extra large waste pipe and trap to prevent clogging. These sinks are made of cast iron with different finishes and of porcelain.

Set tubs for laundry use are made of soapstone, slate, cast

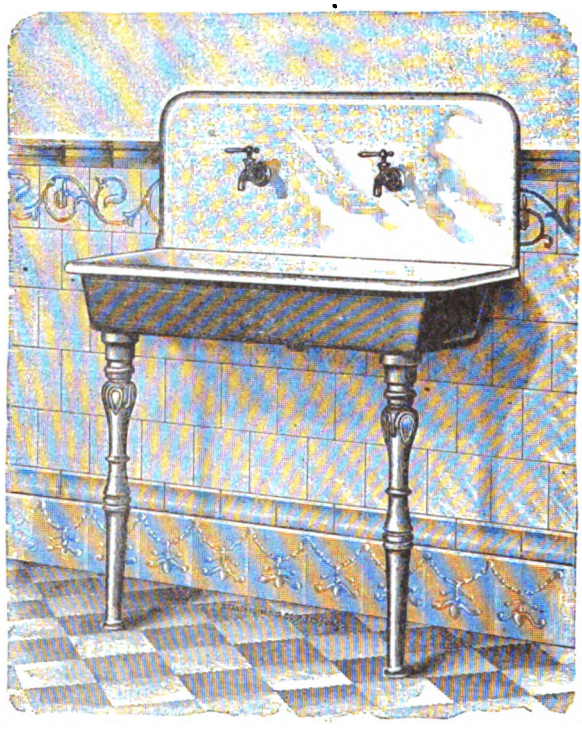


Fig. 25.

iron (enameled or galvanized) and of porcelain. What has been said in regard to kitchen sinks applies equally well in this case.

A set of enameled tubs is shown in Fig. 28.

Traps. A trap is a loop or water seal placed in a pipe to prevent the gases from the drain or sewer from passing up through the waste pipes of the fixtures into the rooms. A common form made up of cast iron pipe and known as a "running trap" is shown in Fig. 29. A trap of this form is placed in the main drain pipe of a

Digitized by Google

building outside of all the connections to prevent gases from the main sewer or cesspool from entering the building. A removable cover is placed on top of the trap to give access for cleaning.

The floor trap shown in section in Fig. 30 is made both of brass and of lead. It is commonly used for kitchen sinks and is placed on the floor just beneath the fixture. It is provided with a removable trap screw or clean-out for use when it is desired

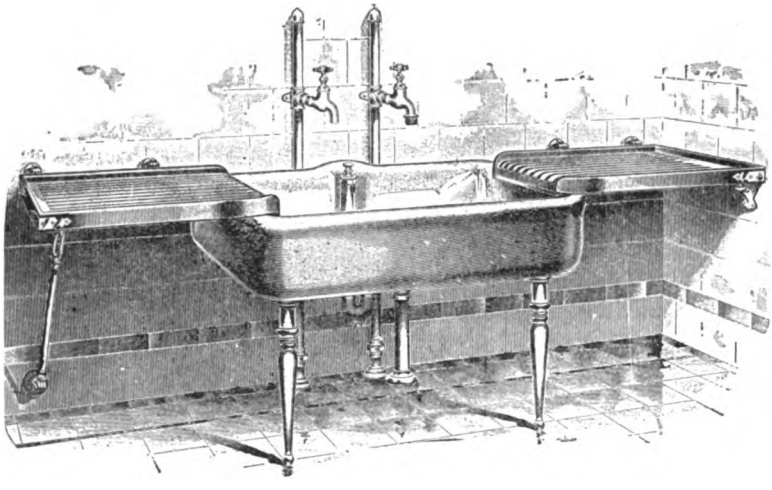


Fig. 26.

to remove grease or sediment from the interior. Fig. 31 shows a common form for lavatories, which consists simply of a loop in the waste pipe. These are usually made of brass and nickle plated when used with open fixtures. A trap for similar purposes is shown in Figs. 32 and 33.

Figs. 34 and 35 show a form known as the centrifugal trap on account of the rotary or whirling motion given to the water by the peculiar arrangement of the inlet and outlet. This motion carries all solid particles to the outside and discharges them with the water, thus keeping the trap clear of sediment. Where there is likely to be a large amount of grease in the water as in the case of waste from a hotel or restaurant it becomes necessary to use a special form of separating trap to prevent the waste pipes from becom-

Digitized by Google

ing clogged. A grease trap designed for this purpose is shown in Fig. 36. Its action is readily seen as the fatty matter will be separated, first by dropping into a large body of cold water and then being driven against the center partition before an outlet can be gained. The grease then rises to the surface where it cools and can then be easily removed as often as necessary.

Sometimes a cellar or basement is drained into a sewer which

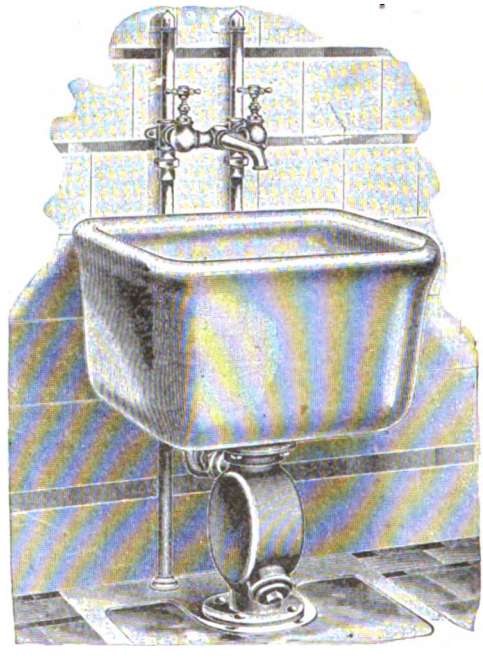


Fig. 27.

is liable to be filled at high tide or from other causes and a special trap or check must be used to prevent the cellar from becoming flooded. Such a trap is shown in Fig. 37. When water flows in from below, the float rises, and the rubber rim pressing against the valve seat prevents any passage through the trap; the cut shows the valve closed by the action of high water.

Tanks or cisterns for flushing closets or other fixtures are usually made of wood and lined with zinc or copper. These are generally placed inside a finished casing. A common form is shown

Digitized by Google

in Fig. 38. The arrangement of valves for supplying water to the tank and for flushing the fixtures is shown in Fig. 39. The large float or ball cock regulates the flow of water into the tank from the street main or house tank. When the water in the tank

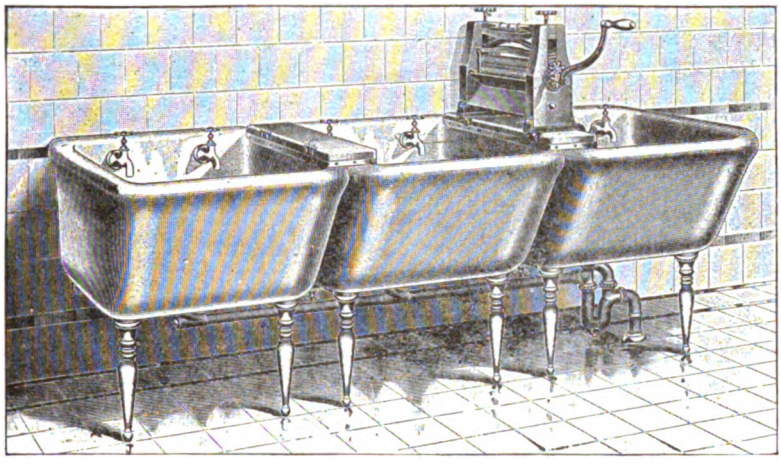


Fig. 28.

falls below a certain level the float drops and opens a valve, thus admitting more water, and closes again when the tank is filled. The closet is flushed by pulling a chain attached to the lever at the right which opens the valve in the bottom of the tank and admits water to the flushing pipe. In this form the valve remains open only while the lever is held down by the chain, the weight on the other end of the lever closing the valve as soon as the chain is released. Another form which is partially automatic is shown in Fig. 40. When the chain is pulled it raises the central valve from its seat and allows the water to flow down the flush pipe until the tank is nearly empty. When empty, the strong suction seals the valve which remains closed until the chain is again pulled. In this type of valve a single pull of the chain is sufficient to flush the closet without further attention.

Fig. 29.

A purely automatic flushing device is shown in Fig. 41.

Digitized by Google

The chain in this case is attached to the rim of the seat so that when it is pressed down, the valve in the compartment at the bottom, connecting with the flush pipe is closed and at the same time

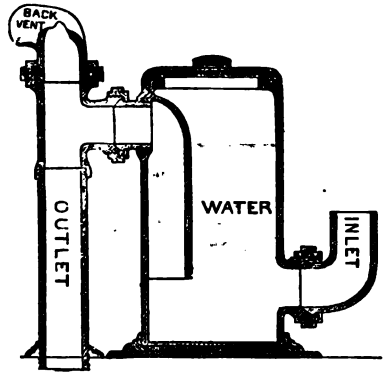


Fig. 30.

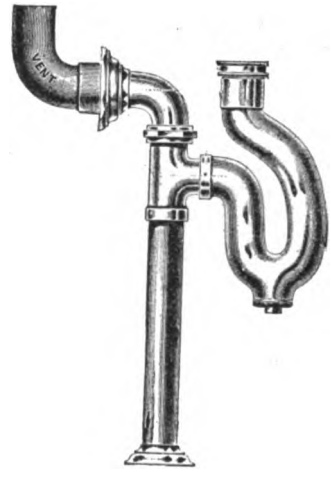


Fig. 31.

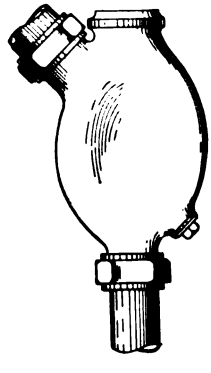


Fig. 32.

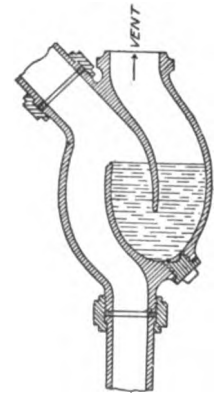


Fig. 33.

communication is opened between the two compartments. When the pull on the chain is released the valve connecting the flush pipe is opened and the opening between the compartments closed

Digitized by Google

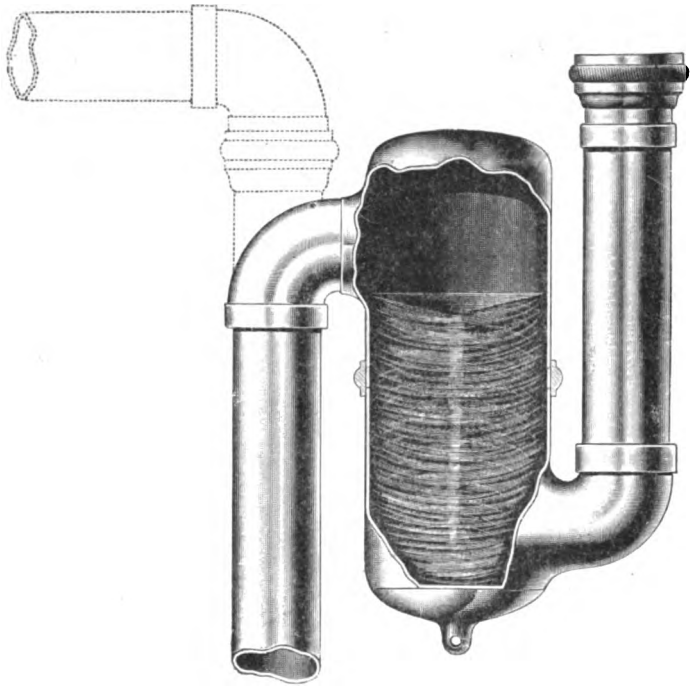


Fig. 34.

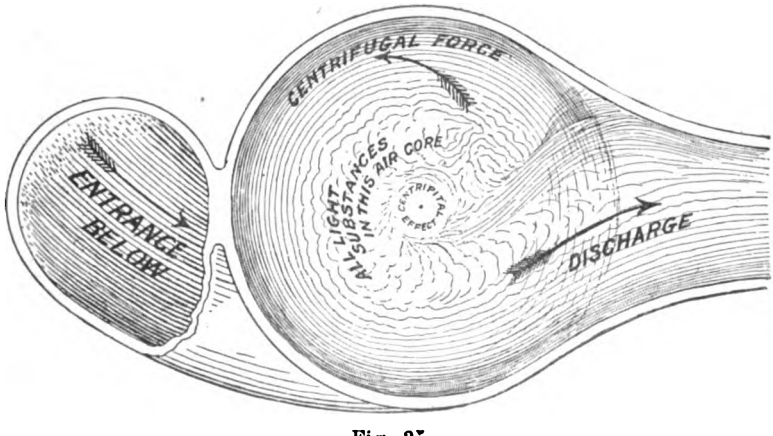


Fig. 33.

Digitized by Google

so that the water in the lower portion of the tank flows through the flush pipe into the closet automatically, and when empty no more can be admitted until the lever is again pulled down and the valve in the partition opened.

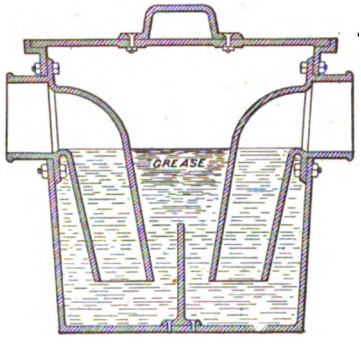


Fig. 36.

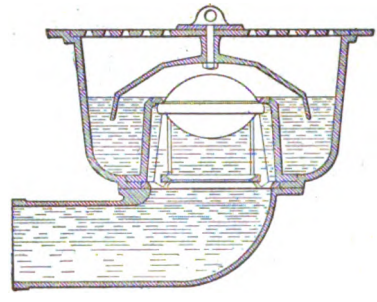


Fig. 37.

Faucets. There are many different forms of faucets in use. The most common is the compression cock shown in Fig. 42. This has a removable leather or asbestos seat which requires renewing from time to time as it becomes worn. Fig. 43 shows a similar form, in which the valve seat is free to adjust itself, being held in place by a spring. Another

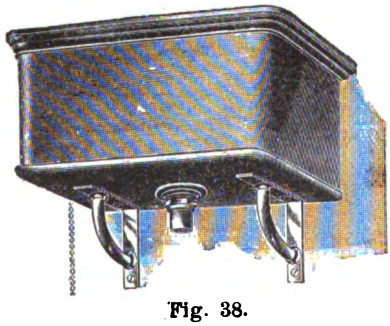


Fig. 38.

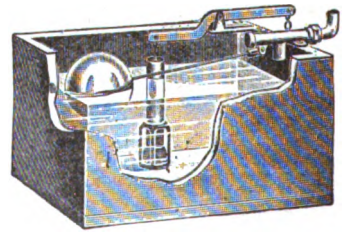


Fig. 39.

style often used in hotels and other public places is the self-closing faucet. These are fitted with springs in such a way that they remain closed except when held open. Two different forms are shown in Figs. 44 and 45.

There are various arrangements for mixing the hot and cold water for bowls and bath tubs before it is discharged. This is

Digitized by Google

NICKEL PLATED BRASS SHOWER BATH.
The Federal Company.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

accomplished by having both faucets connect with a common nozzle. Such a device for a lavatory is shown in Fig. 46.

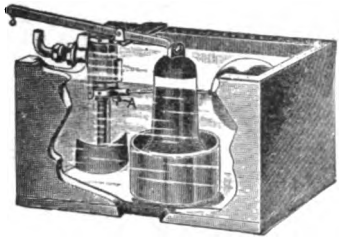


Fig. 40.

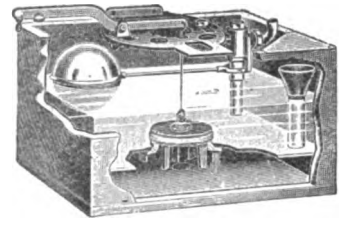


Fig. 41.

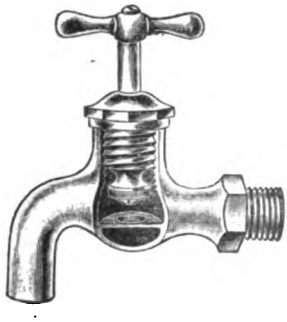


Fig. 42.

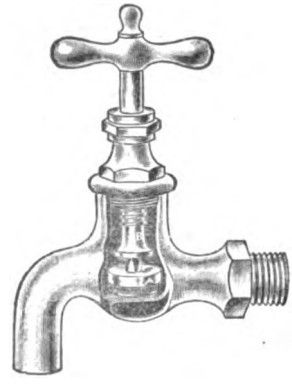


Fig. 43.

SOIL AND WASTE PIPES.

Cast-Iron Pipe. There are many different forms of soil pipes and fittings, and one can best acquaint himself with these by looking over the catalogues of different manufacturers. Figs. 47 and 48 show two lengths of soil pipe; the first is the regular pattern, having only one hub, and the second is a length of double-hub pipe; this can be used to good advantage where many short pieces are required.

Figs. 49 to 57 show some of the principal soil pipe fittings. Figs. 49, 50, 51, 52 and 53 show quarter, sixth, eighth, sixteenth

Digitized by Google

and return bends respectively, and by the use of these almost any desired angle can be obtained. Different lines of pipe may be connected by means of the Y and T-Y branches shown in Figs.

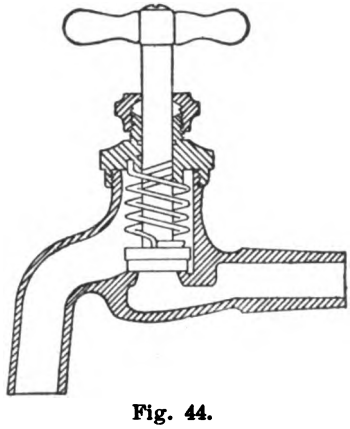


Fig. 44.

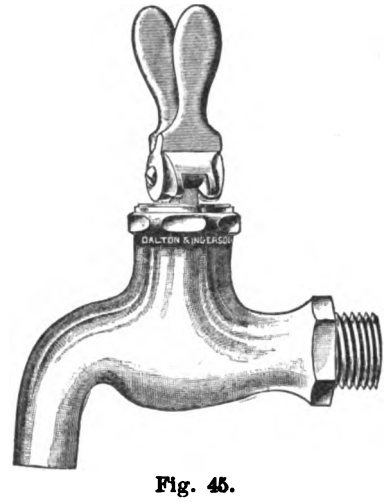


Fig. 45.

54, 55, 56 and 57. The T-Y fitting, Fig. 56, is used in place of the Y branch, Fig. 54, in cases where it is desired to connect two pipes which run perpendicular to each other.

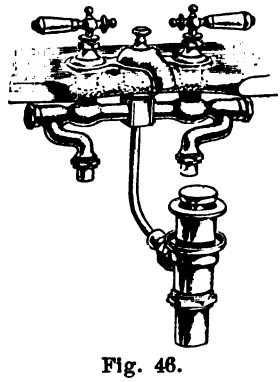


Fig. 46.

The double T-Y, Fig. 57, is convenient for use in double houses where a single soil pipe answers for two lines of closets.

Pipe Joints. Great care should be given to making up the joints in a proper manner, as serious results may follow any defective workmanship which allows sewer gas to escape into the building. In making up a joint, first place the ends of the pipes in position and fasten them rigidly, then pack the joint with the best picked oakum. In packing the oakum around the hub, the first layer must be twisted into a small rope so that it will drive in with ease and still not pass through to the inside of the pipe where the ends join.

Digitized by Google

In a 4-inch pipe the packing should be about 1 inch in thickness and calked perfectly tight so that it will hold water of itself without the lead. Just before the packing is driven tightly into

Fig. 47.

Fig. 48.

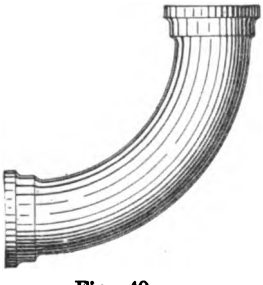


Fig. 49.

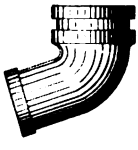


Fig. 50.

Fig. 51.

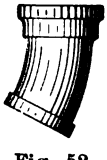


Fig. 52.

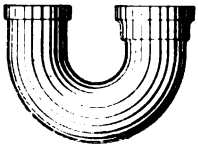


Fig 53.

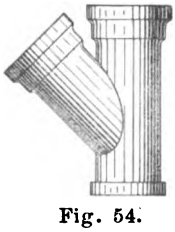


Fig. 54.

the hub, the joint should be examined to see that the space around the hub is the same, so that the lead will flow evenly and be of the same thickness at all points, as the expansion and contraction

Digitized by Google

will work an imperfect joint loose much sooner than one in which the lead is of an even thickness all the way around. Only the best of clean soft lead should be used for this purpose. In calking in the lead after it has been poured, great care must be exercised, as the pipe, if of standard grade, is easily cracked and will stand but little shock from the calking chisel and hammer.

Fig. 58 shows a section through the calked joint of a cast iron soil pipe.

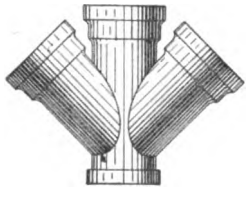


Fig. 55.

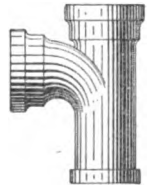


Fig. 56.

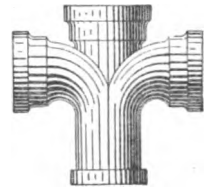


Fig. 57.

Wrought Iron Pipe. This is used but little in connection with the waste pipes except for the purpose of back venting where it may be employed with screwed joints the same as in steam work. It is sometimes used where only small drain pipes are

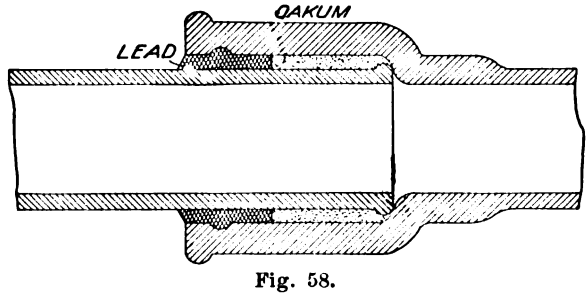


Fig. 58.

necessary, but is not desirable as it is likely to become choked with rust or to be eaten through by moisture from the outside.

Brass Pipe. Brass pipe, nickle plated, is largely used for connecting open fixtures, such as lavatories or bath tubs, with the soil pipe. It is common to use this for the exposed portions of the connections and to use lead for that part beneath the floor or in partitions. The various fittings are also made of brass and finished in a similar manner.

Digitized by Google

Lead Pipe. For sinks, bath tubs, laundry tubs, etc., nothing is better for carrying off the waste water than lead pipe, for the reason that it has a smooth interior surface which offers a small resistance to the flow of water, and does not easily collect dirt or sediment. It can also be bent in easy curves which is an advantage over fittings which make abrupt turns; this is especially important in pipes of small size.

Pipe Joints. There are two common methods of making joints in lead pipe, known as the "cup joint" and the "wipe joint." The first is suitable only on small pipes or very light pressures. This is made by flanging the end of one of the pipes and inserting the other, then filling in the flange with solder by means of a soldering iron, see Fig. 59. In making this joint great

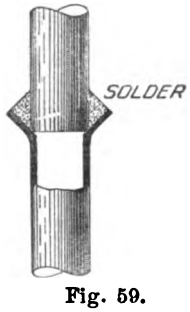


Fig. 59.

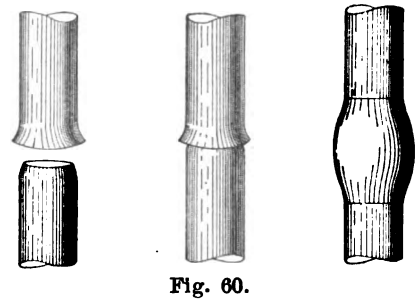


Fig. 60.

care should be taken that the ends of the pipes are round and fit closely so there will be no chance for the solder to run through inside the pipe and form obstructions for the collection of sediment.

The different stages of a wipe joint are shown in Fig. 60. The ends of the pipes are first cleaned and then fitted together as shown in the second stage. The solder is melted in a small cast iron crucible and is carefully poured on the joint or thrown on with a small stick called a "spatting stick." As the solder cools it becomes pasty and the joint can be worked into shape by means of the stick or a soft cloth, or both, depending upon the kind of joint and stage of operation. The final shape and smooth finish is given with the cloth. The ability to make a joint of this kind can be attained only by practice. and printed directions are

Digitized by Google

of little value as compared with observation and actual practice. This is the strongest and most satisfactory joint that can be made between two lead pipes or a lead and brass or copper pipe. In the latter case the brass or copper should be carefully tinned as far as the joint is to extend by means of a soldering iron.

Where lead waste pipes are to be connected with cast iron soil pipes a brass ferule should be used. Different forms of these are shown in Figs. 61 and 62. The lead pipe is wiped to the finished end of the ferule while the other end is calked into the hub of the cast iron pipe in the manner already described. The ferule should be made heavy so as not to be injured in the proc-

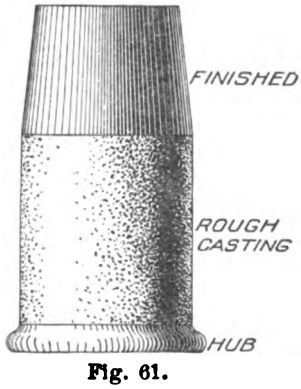


Fig. 61.

Fig. 62.

ess of calking. Cup joints should never be used for this purpose.

Tile Pipes. Nothing but metal piping should be used inside of a building, but in solid earth, starting from a point about 10 feet away from the cellar wall, we may use salt-glazed, vitrified, or terra cotta pipe for making the connection with the main sewer. This pipe is made in convenient lengths and shapes and is easily handled. Various fittings are made similar in form to those already described for cast iron. In laying tile pipe each piece should be carefully examined to see that it is smooth, round, and free from cracks. The ends should fit closely all around, and each length of pipe should fit into the next the full length of the hub. In making the joints nothing but the best hydraulic cement should be used, and great care should be taken that this is pressed well

Digitized by Google

into the space between the two pipes. All cement that works through into the interior should be carefully removed by means of a swab or brush made especially for this purpose. The earth should be filled in around a pipe of this kind before the cement is set or else the joints are likely to crack. Fine soil should be filled in around the pipe to a depth of 3 or 4 inches, and rammed down solid, and the ditch may then be filled in without regard to the pipe. No tile pipe should be used inside of a house or nearer than about 10 feet for the reason it might not stand the pressure in case a stoppage should occur in the sewer. This kind of pipe is not intended to carry a pressure and when used in this way is seldom entirely filled with water. Joints between iron and tile piping are made with cement in the manner described for two sections of tile.

Cesspools. It is often desired to install a system of plumbing in a building in the country or in a village where there is no system of sewerage with which to connect. In this case it becomes necessary to construct a cesspool. This is always undesirable, but if properly constructed and placed at a suitable distance from the house and in such a position that it cannot drain into a well or other source of water supply it may be used with comparative safety. Especial care should be taken in the construction, and when in use it should be regularly cleaned. One form of cesspool is shown in Fig. 63. This consists of two brick chambers located at some distance from the building and in a position where the ground slopes away from it if possible. The larger chamber has a clean-out opening in the top which should be provided with an air-tight cover. An ordinary cast iron cover may be made sufficiently tight by covering it over with 3 or 4 inches of earth packed solidly in place. A vent pipe should be carried from the top to such a height that all gases will be discharged at an elevation sufficient to prevent any harm.

The smaller chamber is connected with the first by means of a soil pipe as shown. This chamber is arranged for absorbing the liquids and for this purpose is provided with lengths of porous tile radiating from the bottom as shown in the plan. The house drain connects with the larger chamber, which fills to the level of the overflow, then the liquid portion of the sewage drains over

Digitized by Google

into chamber No. 2 and is absorbed through the porous tile branches. The solid part remains in chamber No. 1, and can be removed from time to time. A suitable trap should of course be placed in the house drain in the same manner as though connected with a street sewer. The safety of the cesspool will depend much upon its location, its general construction and care and the nature of the soil.

TRAPS AND VENTS.

Traps. The best method of connecting traps, and their actual value under all conditions, are matters upon which there is

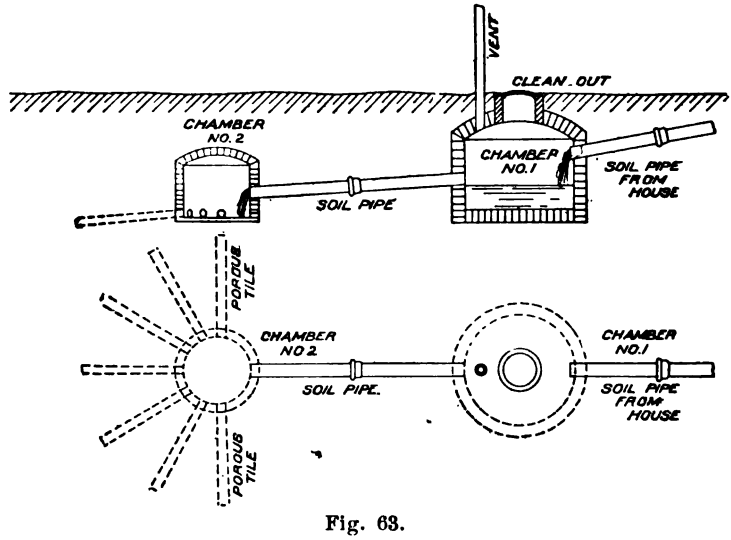


Fig. 63.

much difference of opinion. Cities also vary in their requirements to a greater or less extent, so that it will be possible to show in a general way only the various principles involved and to illustrate what is considered good practice, in the average case, at the present time.

A separate trap should in general be placed in the waste pipe from each fixture, although several of a kind, such as lavatories, etc., are often drained through a common trap, as shown in Fig. 64.

In addition to the traps at the fixtures a main or running trap is placed in the main soil pipe outside of all the connections;

Digitized by Google

this is sometimes placed in a manhole just outside the building, but more commonly in the cellar before passing through the wall; the former method is much to be preferred, as the trap may be cleaned without admitting gases or odors to the house. The running trap has been shown in Fig. 29, and is provided with a removable cap for cleaning.

The agencies which tend to destroy the water seal of traps

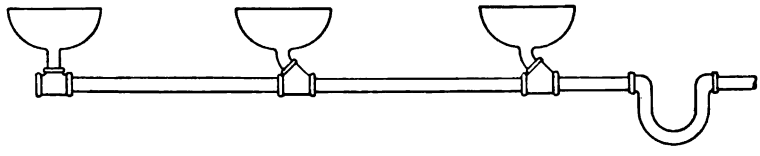


Fig. 64.

are siphonage, evaporation, back pressure, capillary action, leakage and accumulation of sediment.

Siphonage. This can best be illustrated by a few simple diagrams showing the principles involved. In Fig. 65 is shown a U tube with legs of equal length and filled with water. If we

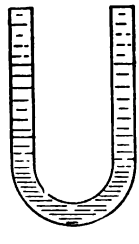


Fig. 65.

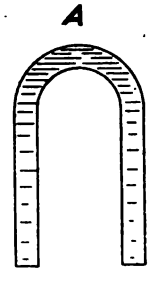


Fig. 66.

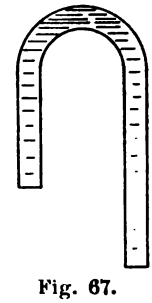


Fig. 67.

invert the tube, as shown in Fig. 66, the water will not run out, because the legs are of equal length, and contain equal weights of water, which pull downward from the top with the same force, tending to form a vacuum at the point A. If one of the legs is lengthened, as in Fig. 67, so that the column of water is heavier on one side than on the other, it will run out, while atmospheric pressure will force the water in the shorter tube up over the bend, as there

Digitized by Google

would be no pressure to resist this action should the column of water break at this point. This action is also assisted by the adhesion of the particles of water to each other. The column of water in the tube may be likened to a piece of flexible rope hanging over a pulley; when equal lengths hang over each side it will remain stationary, but if drawn over one side slightly, so that one end is heavier than the other, the whole rope will be drawn over the pulley toward the longer and heavier end. The first cause, due to atmospheric pressure, is the principal reason for the action of siphons, but the latter assists it to some extent. If the shorter leg of the siphon be dipped in a vessel of water, as shown in Fig. 68, the atmospheric pressure, which before acted on the bottom of the water in the tube, is transferred to the surface of the water in the vessel, and the flow through the tube will continue until the water level in the vessel falls slightly below the end of the tube and admits air pressure, which breaks the siphon action. Fig. 69 shows the same principle applied to the trap of a sink or bowl. If the bowl is well filled with water, so that when the plug is removed from the bottom, the waste pipe for some distance below the trap is filled with a solid column of water, a siphon action will be set up like the one just described, and the trap will be drained. Frequently a sufficient amount of water runs down from the fixture and sides of the pipe above the trap to partially restore the seal. This direct action of the water of a fixture in breaking its own trap seal by siphoning is called "self-siphonage."

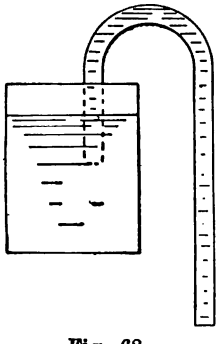


Fig. 68.

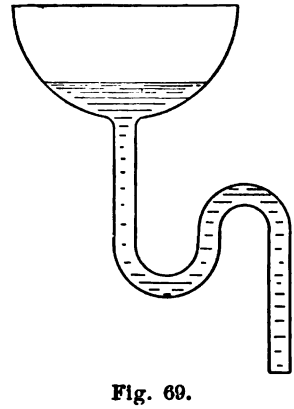


Fig. 69.

A more common form, where two or more fixtures connect with the same waste pipe, is shown in Fig. 70. In this case the seal of the lower closet is broken by the discharge of the upper. The

Digitized by Google

falling column of water leaves behind it a partial vacuum in the soil pipe, and the outer air tends to rush into the pipe through the way of least resistance, which is often through the trap seals of the fixtures below. The friction of the rough sides of a tall soil pipe, even though it be open at the roof, will sometimes cause more resistance to air flow than the trap seals of the fixtures, with the result that they are broken, and gases from the drain are free to enter the building.

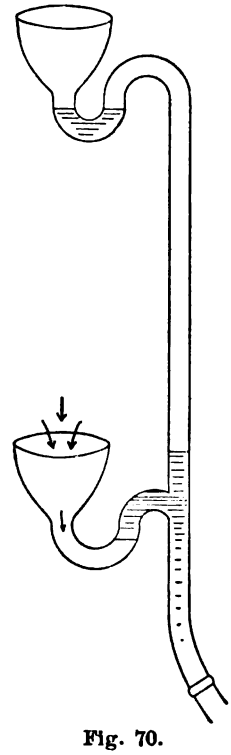


Fig. 70.

Three methods have been employed to prevent the destruction of the seal by siphonage. The first method devised was what is known as "back venting," and this is largely in use at the present time, although careful experiments have shown that in many cases it is not as effective as it was at first supposed to be, and is considered by some authorities to be a useless complication. It is, however, called for in the plumbing regulations of many cities, and will be taken up briefly in connection with other methods.

Back Venting. This consists in connecting a vent pipe at or near the highest part of the trap, as shown in Fig. 71. The action of this arrangement is evident; in place of the waste pipe receiving the air necessary to fill it, through the basin, after the solid column of water has passed down, it is drawn in through the vent pipe, as shown by the arrows, and the seal remains, or should remain, unbroken. It also prevents "self-siphonage" by breaking the column of water and admitting atmospheric pressure at the highest point or crown of the trap. The vent not only prevents the seal from being broken, as described, but allows any gases which may form in the waste pipe to escape above the roof of the house. In order to be effective, the back vent should be large, but even when of the same size as the waste pipe, the flushing of a closet will oftentimes break the seal, especially if the

Digitized by Google

vent pipe is of considerable length. The vent often becomes choked, either with the accumulation of sediment near the trap or by frost or snow at the top; in this case its effect is of course destroyed. Another disadvantage of the back vent is the hastening of evaporation from the trap and the unsealing of fixtures which are not often used.

The second method of guarding against the loss of seal by

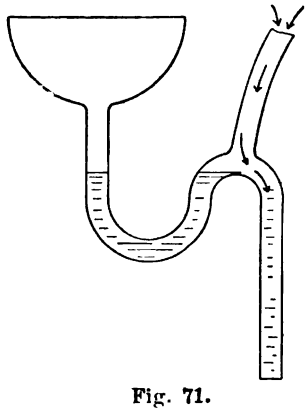


Fig. 71.

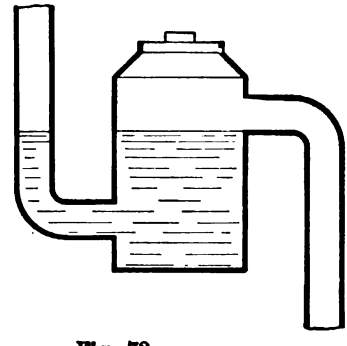


Fig. 72.

siphonage is to make the body of the trap so large that a sufficient quantity of water will always adhere to its sides after siphoning to restore a seal. The pot or cesspool trap shown in Fig. 72 is based on this principle.

The third method consists in the use of a trap of such form that it will not siphon, and will at the same time be self-cleaning. Among other types the centrifugal trap, shown in Figs. 34 and 35, is claimed to fulfil these conditions. The pot trap, while less affected by the siphoning action, is more or less objectionable on account of retaining much of the sediment and solid part of the sewage which falls into it.

Local Vents. A local vent is a pipe connected directly with a closet or urinal for carrying off any odor when in use. It has no connection with the soil pipe, unless the trap seal becomes broken, and is not provided for the purpose of carrying off gases from the sewer. A urinal provided with a local vent is shown in Fig. 73.

Sometimes a small register face back of the fixture, and con-

Digitized by Google

necting with a flue in the wall, is used in place of the regular local vent. In order for a vent flue of either form to be of any value, it must be warmed to insure a proper circulation of air through it. This is done in some cases by placing a gas-jet at the bottom of the flue, in others a steam or hot water pipe is run through a portion of the flue, and in still others the vent is carried up beside a chimney flue, from which it may receive sufficient warmth to assist the circulation to some extent.

Main or Soil Pipe Vent. It is customary to vent the main soil pipe by carrying it through the roof of the building, and leaving the end open. This is shown in Fig. 74. On gravel roofs which drain toward the center, the soil pipe is sometimes stopped on a level with the roof, and serves as a rain leader. In other cases the roof water may be led to the soil pipe in the cellar. If the latter method is used, the water should pass through a deep trap before connecting with the drain. These arrangements tend both to flush out the soil pipe and trap and prevent the accumulation of sediment.

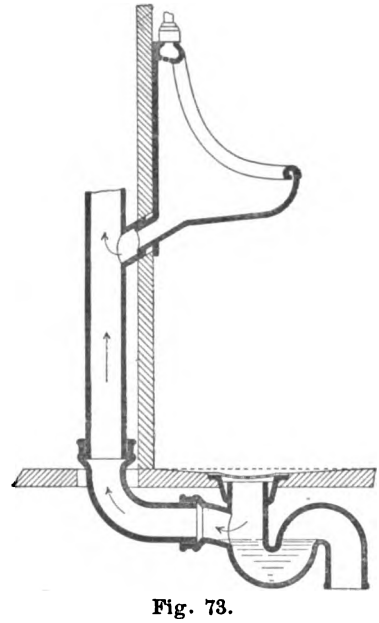


Fig. 73.

Fresh Air Inlets. The fresh air inlet shown just above the running trap Fig. 74 is to cause a circulation of air through the soil pipe, as shown by the arrows. The connection should be made just inside of the trap, so that the entire length of the drain will be swept by the current of fresh air. It is sometimes advised to extend the fresh air pipe up to the roof, because foul air may at times be driven out by heavy flushing of the drain pipe, but where this is done there is much less chance for circulation, as the inlet and outlet are nearly on a level, and the columns of air in them are more likely to be balanced. By carrying the inlet six or eight feet above the ground both objections are overcome to some extent,

Digitized by Google

unless this brings it near a window, which, of course, would not be safe. The main trap does not require a back vent, for should it be siphoned under ordinary conditions, it will always be filled

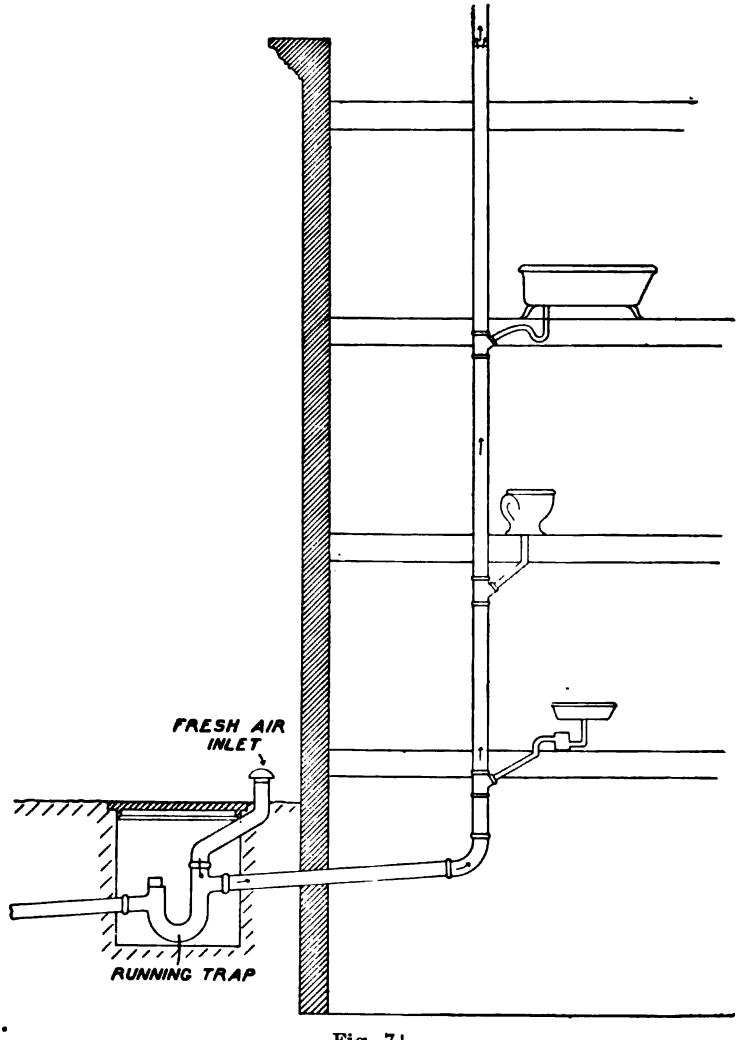


Fig. 74.

again within a few minutes; and if the main soil pipe is open at the top and all fixtures are properly tapped, no harm would come from the slight leakage of gas into the drain under these condi-

Digitized by Google

tions, and some engineers recommend the omission of the running trap.

Where a house drains into a cesspool instead of a sewer, it is far more necessary that the system should be trapped against it as it gives off a constant stream of the foulest gases. The usual form of running trap serves to protect the house, but the cesspool should have an independent vent pipe leading to some unobjectionable point and carried well up above the surface of the ground.

Disposal of Sewage. In cities and towns having a system of sewers, or where there is a large stream of running water near by, the matter is a simple one. In the first case, the house drain is merely extended to the sewer, into which it should discharge at as high a point as possible, and at an acute angle with the direction of flow. When the drain connects with a stream it should be carried out some distance from the shore and discharge under water, an opening for ventilation being provided at the bank. Where there are neither sewers nor streams, the cesspool must be used. When the soil is sufficiently porous the method shown in Fig. 63 may be employed. Sometimes the sewage is collected in a closed cistern and discharged periodically through a flush tank into a series of small tiles laid to a gentle grade, from 8 to 12 inches below the surface. By extending these tiles over a sufficient area and allowing from 40 to 70 feet of tile for each person, a complete absorption of the sewage takes place by the action of the atmosphere and the roots.

PIPE CONNECTIONS.

The Bath Room. There are different methods of connecting up the fixtures in a bath room, depending upon the general arrangement, type, the kind of trap used, etc. Fig. 75 shows a set of fixtures connected up with vented traps. Both the soil and vent pipes are carried above the roof with open ends. No trap or fixture should be vented into a chimney, as is quite commonly done; this may work satisfactorily when the flues are warm, but in summer time, when the fires are out, there are quite likely to be down drafts, which cause the gases to be carried into the rooms through stoves or fireplaces. The vent pipe, although usually carried through the roof independently, is sometimes

Digitized by Google

connected with the soil pipe above the highest fixture; the soil pipe is often made a larger size through the attic space and above the roof in order to increase the upward flow of air through it. Fig. 76 shows a set of bath room connections in which non-siphoning traps are used without back venting; this is a simpler and less expensive method of making the connections and is especially recommended by some engineers. Its efficiency of course depends upon the proper working of the traps.

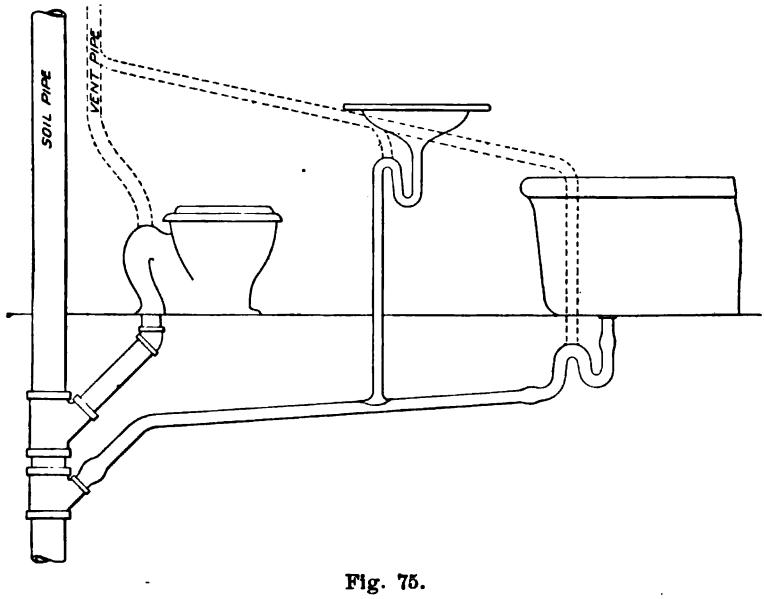
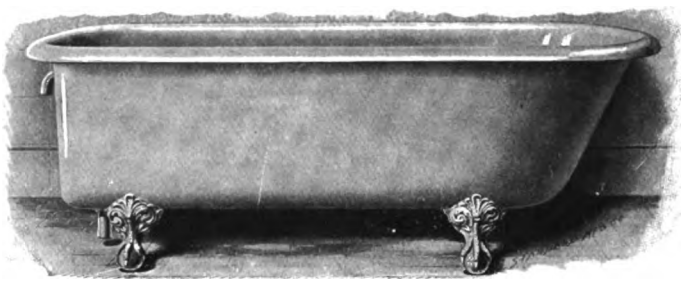


Fig. 75.

The bath room itself should be well lighted, and if possible, in a location where it will receive the sun. It should be arranged so that it may be heated to a higher temperature than other rooms in the house if desired, and it should also be thoroughly ventilated, the vent register being placed 5 or 6 feet above the floor in order that it may carry off any steam which rises from the bath tub. The walls, doors, etc., should be finished in a way to make them as nearly waterproof as possible; some form of good enamel paint answers well for this purpose. Paper should never be used on the walls, nor carpets on the floors, which should be of hard wood. Where the expense is not a matter of importance, glazed tile may be used for the floor and walls. Means should always be provided

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google



REPRESENTATIVE MODERN BATH ROOM AND LAVATORY FITTINGS.

Digitized by Google

for ventilating the bathroom without opening the door into the other rooms, and the greatest care should be taken to keep not only the fixtures, but the room itself, in the most perfect order.

Urinal Connections. The common form of urinal connection

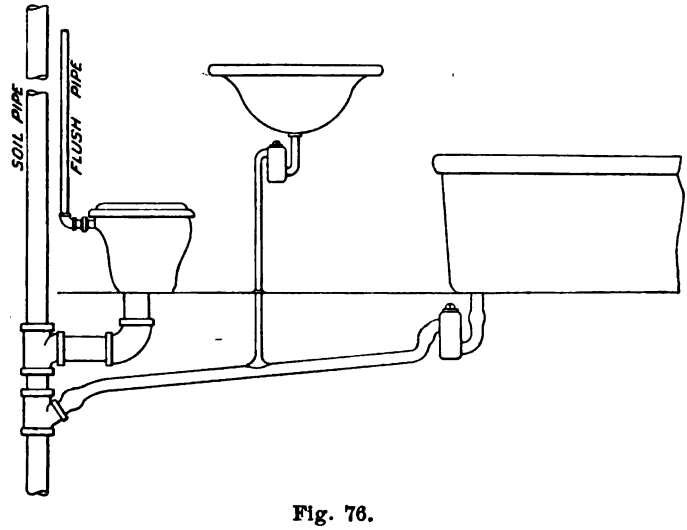


Fig. 76.

is shown in Fig. 14. The overflow from the trap ends in a tee, the lower outlet of which connects with the soil pipe and the upper with the vent pipe. Where several urinals are erected side by side it is usual to omit the individual traps, using the direct outlet connection shown in Fig. 77. These connect with a common waste pipe and drain through a single trap to the soil pipe.

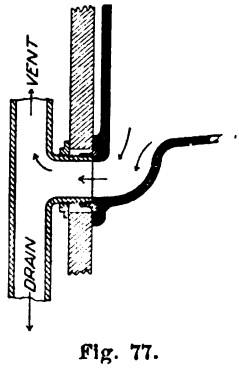


Fig. 77.

Kitchen Sink Connections. Fig. 78 shows the usual method of making the connections for a kitchen sink. The waste and vent are of lead, connected with the main cast-iron soil and vent pipes by means of brass ferules and wiped joints.

Soil and Waste Pipes. The various fixtures have been taken up, together with the different kinds of traps which are used in connection with them, and also the general methods of making the various connections for waste and vent. We will next take

Digitized by Google

up some of the points in regard to the manner of running and supporting the different pipes, together with the proper sizes to be used under different conditions.

The waste pipes of necessity contain more foul matter and therefore more harmful gases than the fixtures, so that especial care must be taken in their arrangement and construction. It is advisable to keep all piping as simple as possible, using as few connections as is consistent with the proper working of the system.

The fixtures on each floor should be arranged to come directly over each other, so as to avoid the running of horizontal pipes across or between the floor beams. The sizes of pipes commonly used require such a sharp grade that there is not sufficient space, in ordinary building construction, between the floor boards and ceiling lath below for horizontal runs of much length. One soil pipe is usually sufficient for buildings of ordinary size, and in cold climates is necessarily carried down inside the building to prevent freezing. One or more waste pipes from sinks, bathtubs, etc., are usually required in addition to the soil pipe. These may be connected directly with the soil pipe (through traps), if located near it, or may be carried to the basement vertically and then joined with the main drain pipe inside the running trap. These should also be placed on the inside wall of the house, and, if necessary to conceal them, the boxing used should be put together in such a manner that it may be easily removed for inspection.

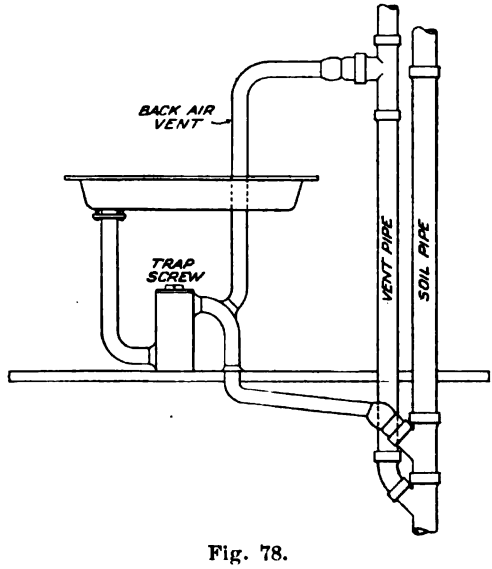


Fig. 78.

The main soil pipe should also be placed where it can be

Digitized by Google

seen, so that leaks may be easily discovered; it is commonly run along the basement wall and supported by suitable brackets or hangers. If carried beneath the cellar floor, it should run in a brick trench with removable covers. In running all lines of pipe, whether vertical or horizontal, they should be securely supported and, in the case of the latter, properly graded. Some of the various kinds of hangers and supports used are shown in Figs. 79 and 80. The grade of the pipes should be as sharp and as uniform as possible. The velocity in the pipes should be at least two feet per second to thoroughly clean them and prevent clogging. Generally speaking, the pitch of the pipes should not be in any case less than 1 foot in 50. In running lines of soil pipe, it is best to

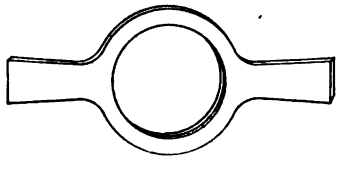


Fig. 79.

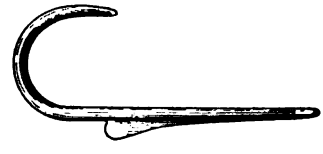


Fig. 80.

set the joints ready for calking in the exact positions they are to occupy and resting upon the supports which are intended to hold them permanently. In this way there is less liability of sagging or loosening of the joints after calking. In the running of vertical pipes, care should be taken to have them as straight as possible from the lowest fixture to the roof.

It is very necessary that the pipes be given such an alignment that the water entering them will meet with no serious obstructions. Where vertical pipes join those which are horizontal, they should be given a bend which will turn the stream gradually into the latter, thus preventing any resistance and the resulting accumulation of deposits. Horizontal pipes may be joined with vertical pipes without a bend, as the discharge will be sufficiently free without it. However, it is customary to use a Y or T branch, giving a downward direction to the flow when connecting a closet or other fixture where there is likely to be much solid matter in the sewage. Offsets should always be avoided as far as possible, as they obstruct the flow of both water and air.

Digitized by Google

Pipe Sizes. The most important requirements in the case of discharge pipes are that they carry away the waste matter as thoroughly as possible without stoppage of flow or eddying, and that they be well ventilated. In order to accomplish this they must be given such sizes as experience has shown to be the best. When water having solid matter in suspension half fills a pipe, the momentum or force for clearing the pipe will be much greater than when it forms only a shallow stream in one of a larger size, so that in proportioning the sizes of soil pipes and drains care must be taken that they are not made larger than necessary, for if the

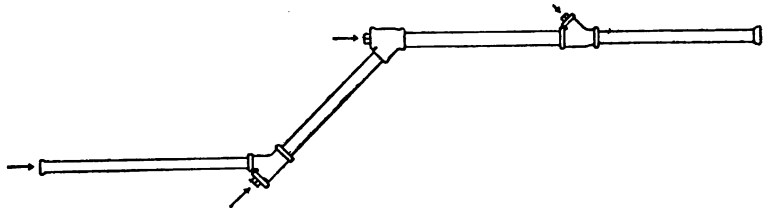


Fig. 81.

stream becomes too shallow the pipes will not be properly flushed and deposits are likely to accumulate. The amount of water used in a house of ordinary size, even when increased by the roof water from a heavy rain, will easily be cared for by a 4-inch pipe having a good pitch. While a pipe of this size would seem to be sufficient, it is found by experience that it is likely to become clogged at times by substances which through carelessness find their way into the drain, so that it seems best to use a somewhat larger size. For city buildings in general, it is recommended that the main drain should not be less than 5 or 6 inches in diameter, and in ordinary dwelling houses not less than 5 inches. The vertical soil pipes need not be larger than 4 inches, except in very high buildings.

Waste pipes may vary from $1\frac{1}{4}$ inches to 2 inches. The waste from a single bowl or lavatory should be $1\frac{1}{4}$ inches in diameter, from a bathtub, kitchen sink or laundry tub $1\frac{1}{2}$ inches, from a slop sink $1\frac{3}{4}$ inches. Smaller pipes should never be used. In laying out the lines of piping, provision should be made for clearing the pipes in case of stoppage. Fig. 81 shows how this

Digitized by Google

may be done. Clean-out plugs are left at the points indicated by the arrows, so that flexible sticks or strips of steel may be inserted to dislodge any obstruction which may occur.

The fresh-air inlet to the main drain pipe has already been referred to. This should be located away from windows, where foul air would be objectionable; in cities they may be placed at the curb line and covered with a grating. Sometimes they are arranged as shown in Fig. 82. The opening is made in the usual way, and a hood placed over the inlet, and a pipe leading from this is carried through the roof. When the circulation of air is upward through the main soil pipe the opening acts in the usual way, that is, as a fresh-air inlet, but should there be a reversal of the current from any reason, which would discharge foul air from the sewer, it would be caught by the overhanging hood and carried upward through the connecting vent pipe to a point above the roof. A general layout for house drainage is shown in Fig. 83.

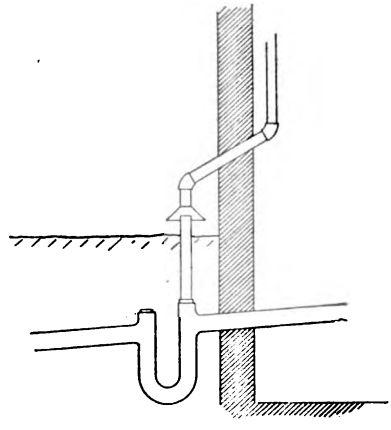


Fig. 82.

PLUMBING FOR VARIOUS BUILDINGS.

Dwelling Houses. The bathroom fixtures, laundry tubs and kitchen sink, with the possible addition of a slop sink, make up the usual fixtures to be provided for in the ordinary dwelling house. In houses of larger size these may be duplicated to some extent, but the general methods of connection are the same as have already been described and need not be taken up again in detail.

Apartment Houses. These are usually made up of duplicate flats, one above the other, so that the plumbing fixtures may be the same for each. It is customary to place the bathrooms in the same position on each floor, so that a single soil pipe will care for all.

Digitized by Google

Hotels. Here, as in the case just described, the bathrooms are placed one above another, so that a single soil pipe may care for each series, and the problem then becomes that of duplicating the layout for an apartment house. In addition to the private baths there is a public lavatory or toilet-room, usually on the first floor or in the basement. This is fitted up with closets,

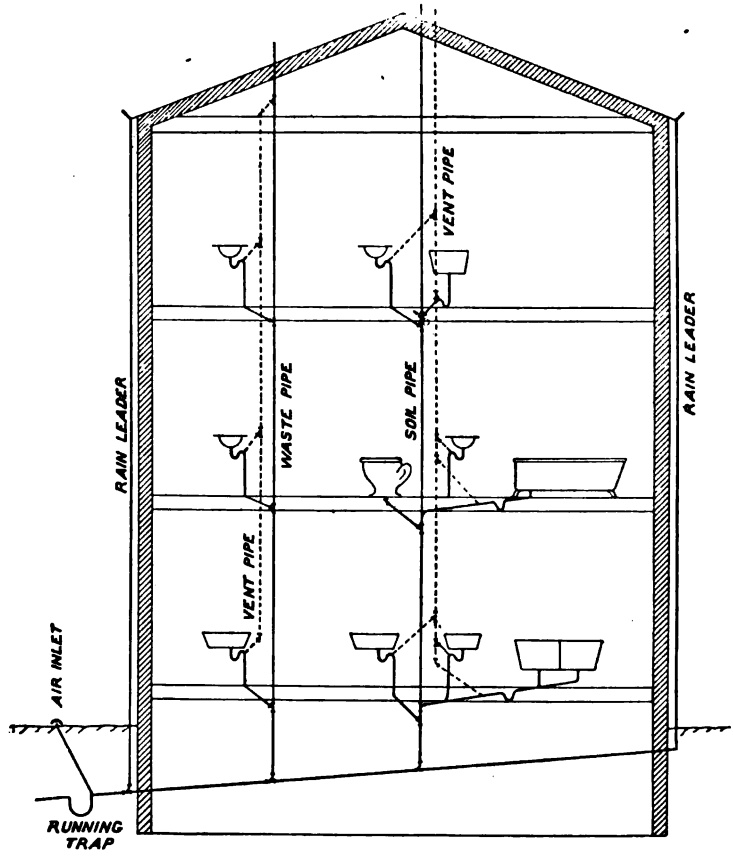


Fig. 83.

urinals and bowls. The closet seats and urinals are placed side by side, with dividing partitions, and connect with a common soil pipe running back of them and having a good pitch. Each fixture should have its own trap. The flushing of the fixtures is often made automatic, so that pressing down the wooden rim of a closet

Digitized by Google

seat will throw a lever which on being released will flush the closet. Urinals are commonly made to flush at regular intervals by some of the devices already shown. The lavatories are made up in long rows, as shown in Fig. 84.

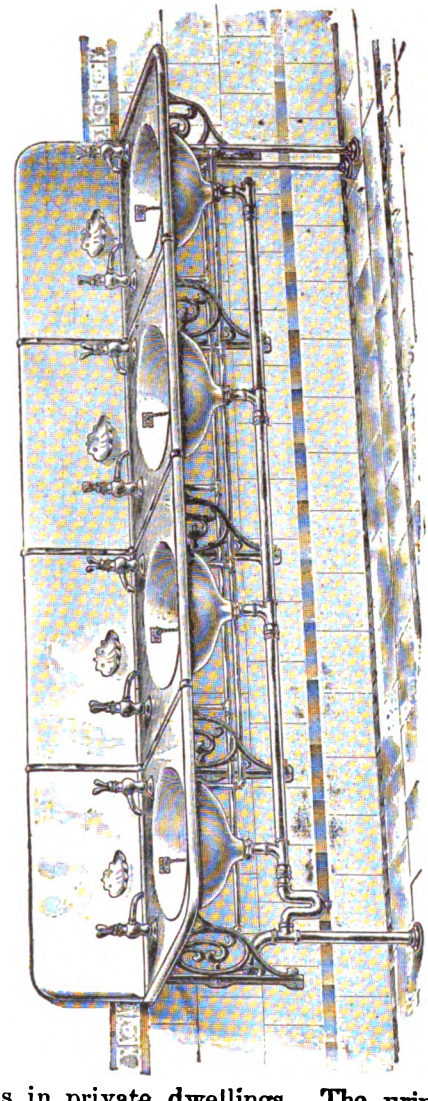


Fig. 84.

Railroad Stations. The plumbing of a railroad station is similar to that of a hotel, although even greater care should be taken to make the fixtures self-cleansing, as the patrons are likely to include many of the lowest and most ignorant class of people. Special attention should be given to both the local ventilation of the fixtures and the general ventilation of the room.

Schoolhouses. The same general rules hold in the case of school buildings as in hotels and railroad stations. As the pupils are under the direct supervision of teachers and janitors it is not necessary to have the fixtures automatic to as great an extent as in the cases just described, and it is customary to flush the closets by means of tanks, and pull chains or rods, the same as in private dwellings. The urinals may be automatic or a small stream of water may be allowed to flow through them continuously during school hours. A good form for this class of work is shown in Fig. 85.

Digitized by Google

Shops and Factories. Some simple type of fixture which can be easily cared for is best in buildings of this kind.

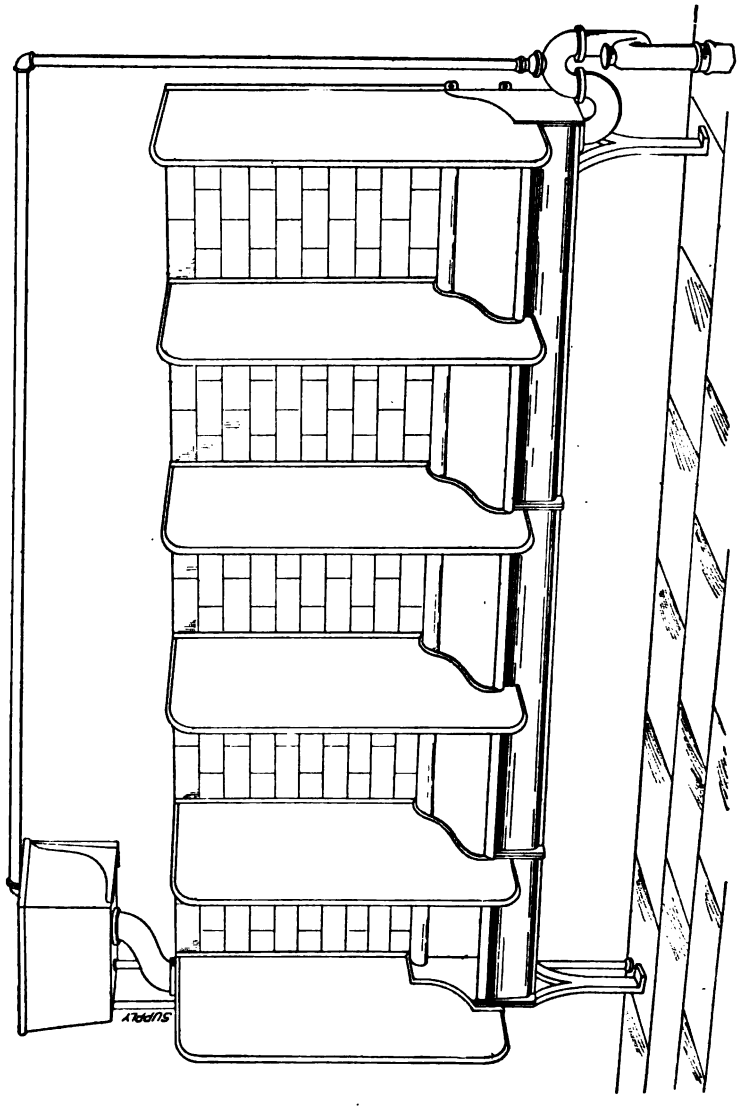


Fig. 85.

TESTING AND INSPECTION.

All plumbing work of any importance should be given two tests; the first, called the "roughing test," applies only to the

Digitized by Google

soil, waste and vent pipes, and is made before the fixtures are connected. The best method of making this test is to plug the main drain pipe just outside the running trap, and also all openings for the connections of fixtures, etc., and then fill the entire system with water. This may be done in small systems through the main vent pipe on the roof, and in larger ones by making a temporary connection with the water main. If any leaks are present they are easily detected in this way. In cold weather, when there would be danger of freezing, compressed air under a pressure of at least ten pounds per square inch may be used in place of water. Leaks in this case must be located by the sound of the issuing air. The water test is to be preferred in all cases, as it is easier to make, and small leaks are more easily detected.

The final test is made after the fixtures are in and all work is completed. There are two ways of making this test, one known as the "peppermint test," and the other as the "smoke test." In making either of these, the system should first be flushed with water, so that all traps may be sealed. If peppermint is used, 4 to 6 ounces of oil of peppermint, depending upon the size of the system, are poured down the main vent pipe, and then a quart or two of hot water to vaporize the oil. The vent pipe is then closed, and the inspector must carefully follow along the lines of piping and locate any leaks present by the odor of the escaping gas. Another and better way is to close the vent pipe and vaporize the oil in the receiver of a small air pump, and then force the gas into the system under a slight pressure. The receiver is provided with a delicate gage, so that after reaching a certain pressure (which must not be great enough to break the trap seals) the pump may be stopped and the pressure noted. If, after a short time, the pressure remains the same, it is known that the system is tight; if, however, the pressure drops, then leaks are present and must be located, as already described. Ether is sometimes used in place of peppermint for this purpose.

In making the smoke test the system is sealed, and the vent pipes closed in the same manner as for the test just described; smoke from oily waste or some similar substance is then forced into the pipes by means of a bellows. When the system is filled

Digitized by Google

with smoke, and a slight pressure produced, the fact is shown by a float, which rises and remains in this position if the joints are tight. If there are leaks, the float falls as soon as the bellows are stopped. Leaks may be detected in this way, both by the odor of the smoke and by the issuing jets from leaks of any size. Special machines are made for both the peppermint and smoke tests.

The water test is preferable for roughing in, and the smoke test for the final. Every system of plumbing should be tested at least once a year.

SEWERAGE AND SEWAGE PURIFICATION.

An abundant supply of pure water is a necessity in every town and city; and such a supply having been secured brings up the question of its disposal after being used. This is plainly the reverse of its introduction. As it was distributed through a network of conduits, diminishing in size, with its numerous branches, so it may be collected again by similar conduits, increasing in size, as one after another they unite in a common outlet.

This fouled water is called *sewage*, and the conduits which collect it constitute a sewerage system. In general, sewage is disposed of in two ways; either it must be turned into a body of water so large as to dilute it beyond all possibility of offence, and where it cannot endanger human life by polluting a public water-supply, or it must be purified in some manner.

The conduits which carry water collected from street surfaces during and after rains, or ground water collected from beneath the surface, are called drains. When one set of conduits removes sewage and another carries surface and ground water, it is said that the *separate* system of sewerage is in use. Where one system conveys both sewage and drainage water it is called the *combined* system. Various modifications of these two systems are possible, both for whole cities and for limited areas within the same town or city.

A sanitary sewerage system cannot be installed until a public water-supply has been provided. It is needed as soon as that is accomplished, for while the wells can then be abandoned the volume of waste water is greatly increased by the water-works system. Its foulness is also much increased through the introduction of water-

Digitized by Google

closets. Without sewers and with a public water-supply cesspools must be used, and with these begins a continuous pollution of the soil much more serious than that which commonly results from closets and the surface disposal of slops.

Among the data which should first be obtained in laying out a sewerage system are:

First.—The area to be served, with its topography and the general character of the soil.—A contour map of the whole town or city, showing the location of the various streets, streams, ponds or lakes, and contour lines for each 5 feet or so of change in elevation, is necessary for the best results. The general character of the soil can usually be obtained by observation and inquiry among residents or builders who have dug wells or cellars, or have observed work of this kind which was being done. The kind of soil is important as affecting the cost of trenching and its wetness or dryness, and this, together with a determination of the ground-water level, will be useful in showing the extent of underdraining necessary.

Second.—Whether the separate or combined system of sewerage, or a compromise between the two is to be adopted.—These points will depend almost wholly upon local conditions. The size and cost of combined sewers is much greater than the separate system, since the surface drainage in times of heavy rainfall is many times as great as the flow of sanitary sewage. In older towns and cities it sometimes happens that drains for removing the surface water are already provided, and in this case it is only necessary to put in the sanitary sewers; or again, the latter may be provided, leaving the matter of surface drainage for future consideration.

If the sewage must be purified, the combined system is out of the question, for the expense of treating the full flow in times of maximum rainfall would be enormous. Sometimes more or less limited areas of a town may require the combined system, while the separate system is best adapted to the remainder; and again it may be necessary to take only the roof water into the sewers. As already stated, local conditions and relative costs are the principal factors in deciding between the separate and combined systems.

Digitized by Google

Third.— Whether subsoil drainage shall be provided.— In most cases this also will depend upon local conditions. It is always an advantage to lower the ground-water level in places where it is sufficiently high to make the ground wet at or near the surface during a large part of the year. In addition to rendering the soil dry around and beneath cellars, the laying of underdrains is of such aid in sewer construction as to warrant their introduction for this purpose alone. This is the case where the trenches are so wet as to render the making and setting of cement joints difficult. The aim in all good sewer work is to reduce the infiltration of ground water into the pipes to the smallest amount; but in very wet soil, tight joints can be made only with difficulty, and never with absolute certainty. Cases have been known where fully one-half the total volume of sewage discharged consisted of ground water which had worked in through the joints.

Fourth.— The best means for the final disposal of the sewage.— Until recently it was turned into the nearest river or lake where it could be discharged with the least expense. The principal point to be observed in the disposal of sewage is that no public water-supply shall be endangered. At the present time no definite knowledge is at hand regarding the exact length of time that disease germs from the human system will live in water. The Massachusetts legislature at one time said that no sewer should discharge into a stream within 20 miles of any point where it is used for public water-supply, but it is now left largely in the hands of the State Board of Health. There may be cases where sewage disposal seems to claim preference to water supply in the use of a stream, but each case must be decided on its own merits. Knowing the amount of water and the probable quantity and character of the sewage, it is generally easy to determine whether all of the crude sewage of a city can safely be discharged into the body of water in question. Averages in this case should never be used; the water available during a hot and dry summer, when the stream or lake is at its lowest, and the banks and beds are exposed to the sun, is what must be considered. Where sewage is discharged into large bodies of water, either lakes or the ocean, it is generally necessary to make a careful study of the prevailing currents in order to determine the most available point of discharge,

Digitized by Google

in order to prevent the sewage becoming stagnant in bays, or the washing ashore of the lighter portions. Such studies are commonly made with floats, which indicate the direction of the existing currents.

Fifth.— Population, water consumption and volume of sewage for which provision should be made, together with the rainfall data, if surface drainage is to be installed.—The basis for population studies is best taken from the census reports, extending back many years. By means of these the probable growth may be estimated for a period of from 30 to 50 years. In small and rapidly growing towns it must be remembered that the rate of increase is generally less as the population becomes greater.

It is desirable to design a sewerage system large enough to serve for a number of years, 20 or 30 perhaps, although some parts of the work, such as pumping or purification works, may be made smaller and increased in size as needed.

The pipe system should be large enough at the start to serve each street and district for a long period, as the advantages to be derived from the use of city sewers are so great that all houses are almost certain to be connected with them sooner or later. It is often necessary to divide a city into districts in making estimates of the probable growth in population. Thus the residential sections occupied by the wealthiest classes will be comprised of a comparatively small population per acre, due to the large size of the lots. The population will grow more dense in the sections occupied by the less wealthy, the well-to-do and finally the tenement sections. In manufacturing districts the amount of sewage will vary somewhat, depending upon the lines of industry carried on.

The total water consumption depends mainly upon the population, but no fixed rule can be laid down for determining it beforehand. It is never safe to allow less than 60 gallons per day per capita as the average water consumption of a town if most of the people patronize the public water-supply. In general it is safer to allow 100 gallons. The total daily flow of sewage is not evenly distributed through the 24 hours. The actual amount varies widely during different hours of the day. In most towns there should be little if any sewage, if the pipes are tight enough

Digitized by Google

to prevent inward leakage, between about 10 o'clock in the evening and 4 in the morning. From $\frac{2}{3}$ to $\frac{3}{4}$ of the daily flow usually occurs in from 9 to 12 hours, the particular hours varying in different communities. This is not of importance in designing the pipe system, but only affects the disposal.

Rainfall data is usually hard to obtain except in the cities and larger towns. In cases of this kind the data of neighboring town or cities may be used if available. Monthly or weekly totals are of little value, as it is necessary to provide for the heaviest rains, as a severe shower of 15 minutes may cause more inconvenience and damage, if the sewers are not sufficiently large, than a steady rain extending over a day or two. A maximum rate of 1-inch per hour will usually cover all ordinary conditions. The proportion which will reach the sewers during a given time will depend upon local conditions, such as the slope of land, whether its surface is covered with houses and paved streets, cultivated fields or forests, etc.

Sixth.— Extent and cost of the proposed system.— This is a matter largely dependent upon the local treasury, or the willingness of the people to pay general taxes or a special assessment for the benefits to be derived.

DESIGN AND CONSTRUCTION.

The first step is to lay out the pipe or conduit system. For this the topographical map already mentioned will be found useful. This, however, should be supplemented by a profile of all the streets in which sewers are to be laid, in order to determine the proper grades. In laying out the pipe lines, special diagrams and tables which have been prepared for this purpose may be used. In the separate system it is generally best to use 8″ pipe as the smallest size to lessen the risk of stoppage, although 6″ pipe is ample for the volume of sanitary sewage from an ordinary residence street of medium length. Pipe sewers are generally made of vitrified clay, with a salt-glazed surface. Cement pipe is also used in some cities. The size of pipe sewers is limited to 30 inches in diameter, owing to the difficulty and expense of making the larger pipe and the comparative ease of laying brick sewers of any size from 24 or 30 inches up. In very wet ground,

Digitized by Google

cast iron pipe with lead joints is used, either to prevent inward leakage or settling of the pipe.

The pipes should be laid to grade with great care and a good alignment should be secured. Holes should be dug for the bells of the pipe, so that they will have solid bearings their entire length. If rock is encountered in trenching, it will be necessary to provide a bed for the pipe which will not be washed into fissures by the stream of subsoil water which is likely to follow the sewer when the ground is saturated.

Underdrains. Where sewers are in wet sand or gravel, underdrains may be laid beneath or alongside the sewer. These are usually the ordinary agricultural tiles, from 3 inches in diameter upward. They have no joints, being simply hollow cylinders, and are laid with their ends a fraction of an inch apart, wrapped with a cheap muslin cloth to keep out the dirt until the matter in the trench becomes thoroughly packed about them. These drains may empty into the nearest stream, provided it is not used for a public water-supply.

Manholes. These should be placed at all changes of grade and at all junctions between streets. They are built of brick and afford access to the sewer for inspection; in addition to this they are sometimes used for flushing. They are provided with iron covers which are often pierced with holes for ventilation.

Sewer Grades. The grades of sewers should be sufficient where possible, to give them a self-clearing velocity. Practical experiments show that sewers of the usual sections will remain clear with the following minimum grades: Separate house connections, 2 per cent; (2-feet fall in each 100 feet of length) small street sewers, 1 per cent; main sewers, 0.7 per cent. These grades may be reduced slightly for sewers carrying only rain or quite pure water.

The following formula may be used for computing the minimum grade for a sewer of clear diameter equal to "d" inches and either circular or oval in section.

$$\text{Minimum grade, in per cent} = \frac{100}{5d + 50}.$$

Flushing Devices. Where very low grades are unavoidable

Digitized by Google

and at the head of branch sewers, where the volume of flow is small, flushing may be used with advantage.

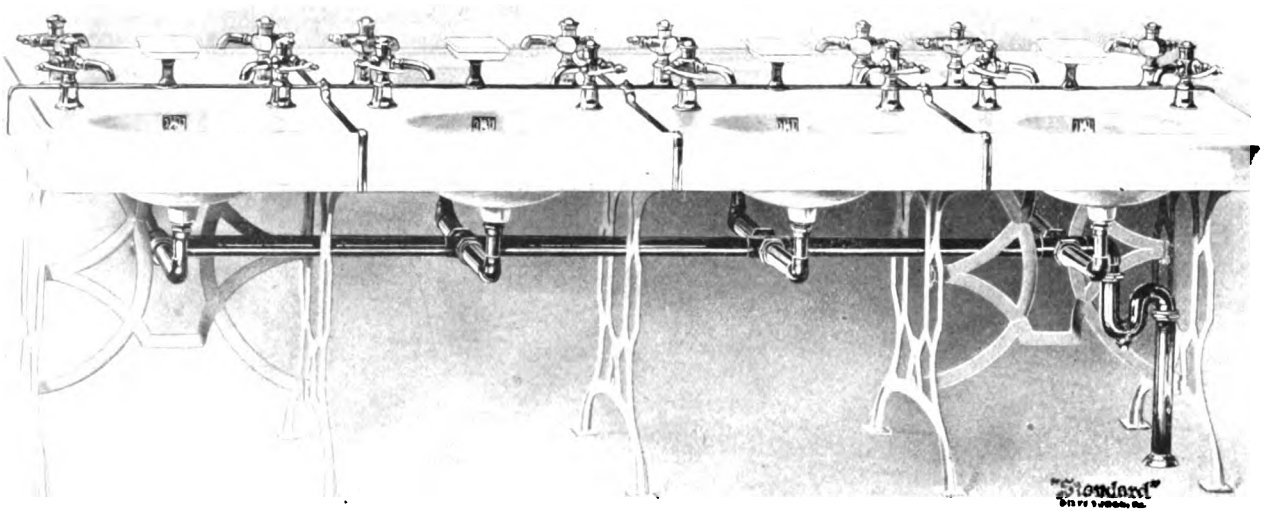
In some cases water is turned into the sewer through a manhole, from some pond or stream, or from the public water-works system. Generally, however, the water is allowed to accumulate before being discharged, by closing up the lower side of the manhole until the water partially fills it, then suddenly releasing it and allowing the water to rush through the pipe. Instead of using clear water from outside for this purpose, it may be sufficient at some points on the system to simply back up the sewage, by closing the manhole outlet, thus flushing the sewer with the sewage itself. Where frequent and regular flushing is required, automatic devices are often used. These usually operate by means of a self-discharging siphon, although there are other devices operated by means of the weight of a tank which fills and empties itself at regular intervals.

House Connections. Provision for house connections should be made when the sewers are laid, in order to avoid breaking up the streets after the sewers are in use. Y branches should be put in at frequent intervals, say from 25 feet apart upwards, according to the character of the street. When the sewer main is deep down, quarter bends are sometimes provided, and the house connection pipe carried vertically upwards to within a few feet of the surface to avoid deep digging when connections are made. Where house connections are made with the main, or where two sewers join, the direction of flow should be as nearly in the same direction as possible, and the entering sewer should be at a little higher level in order to increase the velocity of the inflowing sewage.

Depth of Sewers Below the Surface. No general rule can be followed in this matter except to place them low enough to secure a proper grade for the house connections, which are to be made with them. They must be kept below a point where there would be trouble from freezing, but the natural depth is usually sufficient to prevent this in most cases.

Ventilation of Sewers. There is more or less difference in opinion in regard to the proper method of ventilating sewer mains. Ventilation through house soil pipes is generally approved where the sewers and house connections are properly constructed and

Digitized by Google



PORCELAIN ENAMELED PANDORA DESIGN DOUBLE SECTIONAL LABORATORY
Standard Sanitary Mfg. Co.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

operated, and where the houses on a given street are of a uniform height, so that the tops of all the soil pipes will be above the highest windows. Where the houses are uneven in height, or where the sewerage system or connections are not well designed or constructed, it is recommended that main traps should be placed on all soil pipes, and that air inlets and air outlets be placed on the sewers at intervals of from 300 to 400 feet.

The Combined System. The principal differences between this and the separate system are in the greater size of conduits and the use of catch-basins or inlets for the admission of surface water. They are generally of brick, stone or concrete, or a combination of these materials, instead of vitrified pipe.

Another difference is the provision for storm overflows, by means of which the main sewers when overcharged in times of heavy rainfall may empty a part of their contents into a nearby stream. At such times the sewage is diluted by the rain-water, while the stream which receives the overflow is also of unusually large size.

Size, Shape and Material. The actual size of the sewer, and also to a large extent its shape and the material of which it is constructed, depends upon local conditions. Where the depth of flow varies greatly it is desirable to give the sewer a cross-section designed to suit all flows as fully as possible.

The best form to meet these requirements is that of an egg with its smaller end placed downward. With this form the greatest depth and velocity of flow is secured for the smallest amount of sewage, thus reducing the tendency to deposits and stoppages. Where sewers have a flow more nearly constant and equal to their full capacity the form may be changed more nearly to that of an ellipse. For the larger sewers brick is the most common material, both because of its low cost and the ease with which any form of conduit is constructed. Stone is sometimes used on steep grades, especially where there is much sand in suspension, which would tend to wear away the brick walls. Concrete is used where leakage may be expected or where the material is liable to movement, but is more commonly used as a foundation for brick construction.

A catch-basin is generally placed at each street corner and provided with a grated opening for giving the surface water access

Digitized by Google

to a chamber or basin beneath the sidewalk, from which a pipe leads to the sewer. Catch-basins may be provided with water traps to prevent the sewer air from reaching the street, but traps are uncertain in their action, as they are likely to become unsealed through evaporation in dry weather. To prevent the carrying of sand and dirt into the sewers, catch-basins should be provided with silt chambers of considerable depth, with overflow pipes leading to the sewer. The heavy matter which falls to the bottoms of these chambers may be removed by buckets and carted away at proper intervals.

Storm Overflows. The main point to be considered in the construction of storm overflows is to ensure a discharge into another conduit when the water reaches a certain elevation in the main sewer. This may be carried out in different ways, depending upon the available points for overflow.

Pumping Stations. The greater part of the sewerage systems in the United States operate wholly by gravity, but in some cases it is necessary to pump a part or the whole of the sewage of a city to a higher level. The lifts required are usually low, so that high-priced machinery is not required. In general the sewage should be screened before it reaches the pumps.

Where pumping is necessary, receiving or storage chambers are sometimes used to equalize the work required of the pumps, thus making it possible to shut down the plant at night. Such reservoirs should be covered, unless in very isolated localities. The force main or discharge pipe from the pumps is usually short, and is generally of cast iron put together in a manner similar to that used for water-supply systems.

Tidal Chambers. Where sewage is discharged into tide water it is often necessary to provide storage or tidal chambers, so that the sewage may be discharged only at ebb tides. These are constructed similar to other reservoirs, except that they must have ample discharge gates, so that they may be emptied in a short time. They are sometimes made to work automatically by the action of the tide.

SEWAGE PURIFICATION.

Before taking up this subject in detail it is well to consider what sewage is, from a chemical standpoint.

Digitized by Google

When fresh, it appears at the mouth of an outlet sewer as a milky-looking liquid with some large particles of matter in suspension, such as orange peels, rags, paper and various other articles not easily broken up. It often has a faint, musty odor and in general appearance is similar to the suds-water from a family laundry. Nearly all of the sewage is simply water, the total amount of solid matter not being more than 2 parts in 1,000, of which half may be organic matter. It is this 1 part in 1,000 which should be removed, or so changed in character as to render it harmless.

The two systems of purification in most common use are "chemical precipitation" and the "land treatment." Mechanical straining, sedimentation and chemical precipitation are largely removal processes, while land treatment by the slow process of infiltration, or irrigation, changes the decaying organic matter into stable mineral compounds.

Sedimentation. This is effected by allowing the suspended matter to settle in tanks. The partially clarified liquid is then drawn off leaving the solid matter, called "sludge" at the bottom for later disposal. This system requires a good deal of time and large settling tanks; therefore it is suitable only for small quantities of sewage.

Mechanical Straining. This is accomplished in different ways with varying degrees of success. Wire screens or filters of various materials may be employed. Straining of itself is of little value except as a step to further purification. Beds of coke from 6 to 8 inches in depth are often used with good results.

Chemical Precipitation. Sedimentation alone removes only such suspended matter as will sink by its own weight during the comparatively short time which can be allowed for the process.

By adding certain substances chemical action is set up, which greatly increases the rapidity with which precipitation takes place.

Some of the organic substances are brought together by the formation of new compounds, and as they fall in flaky masses they carry with them other suspended matter.

A great number and variety of chemicals have been employed for this purpose, but those which experience has shown to be most useful are lime, sulphate of alumina and some of the salts of iron.

Digitized by Google

The best chemical to use in any given case depends upon the character of the sewage and the relative cost in that locality. Lime is cheap, but the large quantity required greatly increases the amount of sludge. Sulphate of alumina is more expensive, but is often used to advantage in connection with lime. Where an acid sewage is to be treated, lime alone should be used.

The chemicals should be added to the sewage and thoroughly mixed before it reaches the settling tank; this may be effected by the use of projections or baffling plates placed in the conduit leading to the tank. The best results are obtained by means of long, narrow tanks, and they should be operated on the continuous rather than the intermittent plan. The width of the tank should be about one-fourth its length. In the continuous method the sewage is constantly flowing into one part of the tank and discharging from another. In the intermittent system a tank is filled and then the flow is turned into another, allowing the sewage in the first tank to come to rest. In the continuous plan the sewage generally flows through a set of tanks without interruption until one of the compartments needs cleaning. The clear portion is drawn off from the top, the sludge is then removed, and the tank thoroughly disinfected before being put in use again. The satisfactory disposal of the sludge is a somewhat difficult matter. The most common method is to press it into cakes, which greatly reduces its bulk and makes it more easily handled. These are sometimes burned but are more often used for fertilizing purposes. In some cases peat or other absorbent is mixed with the sludge and the whole mass removed in bulk. In other instances it is run out on the surface of coarse gravel beds and reduced by draining and drying. In wet weather little drying takes place and during the cold months the sludge accumulates in considerable quantities. This process also requires considerable manual labor, and in many cases suitable land is not available for the purpose. The required capacity of the settling tanks is the principal item in determining the cost of installing precipitation works.

In the treatment of house sewage provision must be made for about $\frac{1}{12}$ the total daily flow, and in addition to this, allowance must be made for throwing out a portion of the tanks for cleaning

Digitized by Google

and repairs. In general, the tank capacity should not be much less than $\frac{1}{8}$ the total daily flow.

In the combined system it is impossible to provide tanks for the total amount, and the excess due to storm water must discharge into natural water courses or pass by the works without treatment.

Broad Irrigation or Sewage Farming. Where sewage is applied to the surface of the ground upon which crops are raised the process is called "sewage farming." This varies but little from ordinary irrigation where clean water is used instead of sewage. The land employed for this purpose should have a rather light and porous soil, and the crops should be such as require a large amount of moisture. The application of from 5,000 to 10,000 gallons of sewage per day per acre is considered a liberal allowance. On the basis of 100 gallons of sewage per head of population this would mean that one acre would care for a population of from 50 to 100 people.

Sub-Surface Irrigation. This system is employed only upon a small scale and chiefly for private dwellings, public institutions and for small communities where for any reason surface disposal would be objectionable. The sewage is distributed through agricultural drain tiles laid with open joints and placed only a few inches below the surface. Provision should be made for changing the disposal area as often as the soil may require by turning the sewage into sub-divisions of the distributing pipes.

Intermittent Filtration. This method and the broad irrigation already described are the only purification processes in use on a large scale which can remove practically all the organic matter from sewage without being supplemented by some other method. The process is a simple one and consists in running the sewage out through distributing pipes onto beds of sand 4 or 5 feet in thickness with a system of pipes or drains below for collecting the purified liquid. In operation the sewage is first turned on one bed and then another, thus allowing an opportunity for the liquid portion to filter through. As the surface becomes clogged it is raked over or the sludge may be scraped off together with a thin layer of sand. The best filtering material consists of a clean, sharp sand with grains of uniform size such that the free space

Digitized by Google

between them will equal about one-third the total volume. When the sewage is admitted to the sand only a part of the air is driven out, so there is a store of oxygen left upon which the bacteria may draw. This is not a mere process of straining but the formation of new compounds by the action of the oxygen in the air, thus changing the organic matter into inorganic. Much depends upon the size and quality of the sand used. The grains that have been found to give the best results range from .1 to .5 of an inch in diameter. The work done by a filter is largely determined by the finer particles of sand and that used should be of fairly uniform quality, and the coarser and finer particles should be well mixed. The area and volume of sand or gravel required are so large that the transportation of material any great distance cannot be considered. Usually the beds are constructed on natural deposits, the top soil or loam being removed. The sewage should be brought into the beds so as to disturb their surface as little as possible, and should be distributed evenly over the whole bed.

The under drains should not be placed more than 50 feet apart, usually much less, and should be provided with manholes at the junctions of the pipes. Before admitting the sewage to the beds it is usually best to screen it sufficiently to take out paper, rags and other floating matter. The size of each bed should be such as to permit an even distribution of sewage over its surface.

Where the filtration area is small, it must be divided so as to permit of intermittent operation; that is, if a bed is to be in use and at rest for equal periods, then two or more beds would be necessary, the number depending on the relative periods of use and rest. Some additional area should also be provided for emergency, or for use while the beds are being scraped. If a large area is laid out, so that the size of the beds is limited only by convenience in use, then an acre may be taken as a good size.

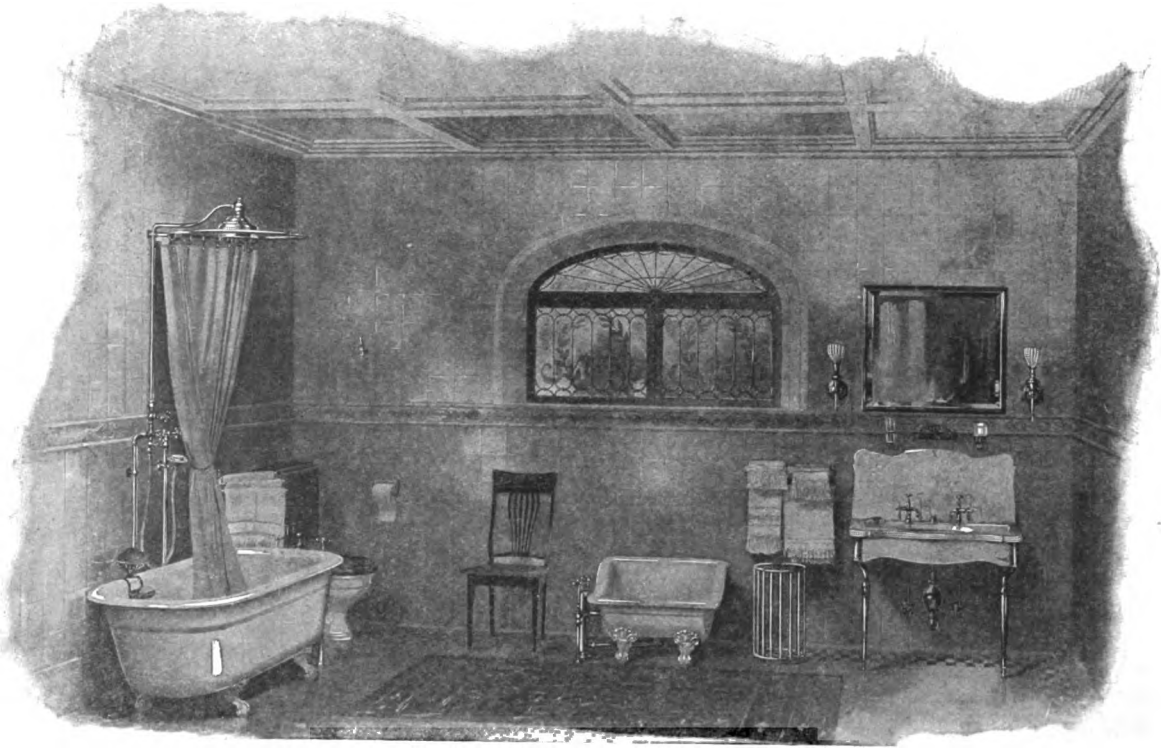
The degree of purification depends upon various circumstances, but with the best material practically all of the organic matter can be removed from sewage by intermittent filtration at a rate of about 100,000 gallons per day.

There is often much opposition to sewage purification by those living or owning property near the plants; but experience has shown that well-conducted plants are inoffensive both within

Digitized by Google

and without their enclosures. The employees about such works are as healthy as similar classes of men in other occupations. The crops raised on sewage farms are as healthful as those of the same kind raised elsewhere, and meat and milk from sewage farms are usually as good as when produced under other conditions. Good design and construction, followed by proper methods of operation, are all that are needed to make sewage purification a success. No one system can be said to be the best for all localities. The special problems of each case must be met and solved by a selection from among the several systems and the combinations of systems, and parts chosen that are best adapted to the conditions at hand.

Digitized by Google



Representative Type of Modern American Bath Room.

Digitized by Google

PLUMBING.

PART II.

DOMESTIC WATER SUPPLY.

Hydraulics of Plumbing. Although the principles of Hydraulics and Hydrostatics are discussed in "Mechanics," it will be well to review them briefly, showing their application to the various problems under the head of "Water Supply."

If several open vessels containing water are connected by pipes, the water will eventually stand at the same level in all of them, regardless of the length or the size of the connecting pipes.

The pressure exerted by a liquid at any given point is the same in all directions, and is proportional to the depth.

A column of water at 60° temperature having a sectional area of one square inch and a height of one foot, weighs .43 pound, and the pressure exerted by a liquid is usually stated in pounds per square inch, the same as in the case of steam. If a closed vessel is connected, by means of a pipe, with an open vessel at a higher level, so that it is 10 feet, for example, from the bottom of the first vessel to the surface of the water in the second, the pressure on each square inch of the entire bottom of the lower vessel will be $10 \times .43 = 4.3$ pounds, and the pressure per square inch at any given point in the vessel or connecting pipe will be equal to its distance in feet from the surface of the water in the upper vessel multiplied by .43. If a pipe is carried from a reservoir situated on the top of a hill to a point at the foot of the hill a hundred feet below the surface of the water, a pressure of $100 \times .43 = 43$ pounds per square inch will be exerted at the lower end of the pipe, provided it is closed. When the pipe is opened and the water begins to flow, the conditions are changed and the pressure in the different parts of the pipe varies with the distance from the open end.

In order for a liquid to flow through a pipe there must be a certain pressure or "head" at the inlet end. The total head causing the flow is divided into three parts, as follows: 1st, the

Digitized by Google

velocity head: the height through which a body must fall in a vacuum to acquire the velocity with which the water enters the pipe. 2d, the *entry* head: that required to overcome the resistance to entrance into the pipe. 3d, the *friction* head: due to the frictional resistance to flow within the pipe. In the case of long pipes and low heads the sum of the velocity and entry heads is so small that it may be neglected.

Table I shows the pressure of water in pounds per square inch for elevations varying in height from 1 to 135 feet.

Table II gives the drop in pressure due to friction in pipes of different diameters for varying rates of flow. The figures given are for pipes 100 feet in height. The frictional resistance in smooth pipes having a constant flow of water through them is proportional to the length of pipe. That is, if the friction causes a drop in pressure of 4.07 pounds per square inch in a $1\frac{1}{4}$-inch pipe 100 feet long, which is discharging 20 gallons per minute, it will cause a drop of $4.07 \times 2 = 8.14$ pounds in a pipe 200 feet long; or $4.07 \div 2 = 2.03$ pounds in a pipe 50 feet long, acting under the same conditions. The factors given in the table are for pipes of smooth interior, like lead, brass or wrought iron.

Example.— A $1\frac{1}{2}$-inch pipe 100 feet long connected with a cistern is to discharge 35 gallons per minute. At what elevation above the end of the pipe must the surface of the water in the cistern be to produce this flow?

In Table II we find the friction loss for a $1\frac{1}{2}$-inch pipe discharging 35 gallons per minute to be 5.05 pounds. In Table I we find a pressure of 5.2 pounds corresponds to a head of 12 feet, which is approximately the elevation required.

How many gallons will be discharged through a 2-inch pipe 100 feet long where the inlet is 22 feet above the outlet? In Table I we find a head of 22 feet corresponds to a pressure of 9.53 pounds. Then looking in Table I we find in the column of Friction Loss for a 2-inch pipe that a pressure of 9.46 corresponds to a discharge of 100 gallons per minute.

Tables I and II are commonly used together in examples.

A house requiring a maximum of 10 gallons of water per minute is to be supplied from a spring which is located 600 feet distant, and at an elevation of 50 feet above the point of dis-

Digitized by Google

TABLE I.

Head in feet.	Pressure pounds per square inch.	Head in feet.	Pressure pounds per square inch.	Head in feet.	Pressure pounds per square inch.
1	.43	46	19.92	91	39.42
2	.86	47	20.35	92	39.85
3	1.30	48	20.79	93	40.28
4	1.73	49	21.22	94	40.72
5	2.16	50	21.65	95	41.15
6	2.59	51	22.09	96	41.58
7	3.03	52	22.52	97	42.01
8	3.46	53	22.95	98	42.45
9	3.89	54	23.39	99	42.88
10	4.33	55	23.82	100	43.31
11	4.76	56	24.26	101	43.75
12	5.20	57	24.69	102	44.18
13	5.63	58	25.12	103	44.61
14	6.06	59	25.55	104	45.05
15	6.49	60	25.99	105	45.48
16	6.92	61	26.42	106	45.91
17	7.36	62	26.85	107	46.34
18	7.79	63	27.29	108	46.78
19	8.22	64	27.72	109	47.21
20	8.66	65	28.15	110	47.64
21	9.09	66	28.58	111	48.08
22	9.53	67	29.02	112	48.51
23	9.96	68	29.45	113	48.94
24	10.39	69	29.88	114	49.38
25	10.82	70	30.32	115	49.81
26	11.26	71	30.75	116	50.24
27	11.69	72	31.18	117	50.68
28	12.12	73	31.62	118	51.11
29	12.55	74	32.05	119	51.54
30	12.99	75	32.48	120	51.98
31	13.42	76	32.92	121	52.41
32	13.86	77	33.35	122	52.84
33	14.29	78	33.78	123	53.28
34	14.72	79	34.21	124	53.71
35	15.16	80	34.65	125	54.15
36	15.59	81	35.08	126	54.58
37	16.02	82	35.52	127	55.01
38	16.45	83	35.95	128	55.44
39	16.89	84	36.39	129	55.88
40	17.32	85	36.82	130	56.31
41	17.75	86	37.25	131	56.74
42	18.19	87	37.68	132	57.18
43	18.62	88	38.12	133	57.61
44	19.05	89	38.55	134	58.04
45	19.49	90	38.98	135	58.48

Digitized by Google

charge. What size of pipe will be required? From Table I we find an elevation or head of 50 feet will produce a pressure of 21.65 pounds per square inch. Then if the length of the pipe were only 100 feet, we should have a pressure of 21.65 pounds available to overcome the friction in the pipe, and could follow along the line corresponding to 10 gallons in Table II until we came to the

TABLE II.

Gallons discharged per minute.	¼ in.		⅜ in.		1 in.		1¼ in.		1½ in.		2 in.		2½ in.		3 in.	
	Velocity in feet per second.	Friction loss in pounds.	Velocity in feet per second.	Friction loss in pounds.	Velocity in feet per second.	Friction loss in pounds.	Velocity in feet per second.	Friction loss in pounds.	Velocity in feet per second.	Friction loss in pounds.	Velocity in feet per second.	Friction loss in pounds.	Velocity in feet per second.	Friction loss in pounds.	Velocity in feet per second.	Friction loss in pounds.
5	8.17	24.6	3.63	3 3	2.04	.84	1.31	.31	.91	.12						
10	16.3	96.0	7.25	13.0	4.08	3.16	2.61	1 05	1.82	.47	1.02	.12				
15			10.9	28.7	6.13	6.98	3.92	2.38	2.73	.97	1.53	.27				
20			14.5	50.4	8.17	12.3	5 22	4.07	3.63	1.66	2 04	.42				
25			18.1	78.0	10.2	19.0	6.53	6.40	4.54	2 62	2.55	.67	1.63	.21	1.13	.10
30					12.3	27.5	7.84	9.15	5.45	3.75	3.06	.91				
35					14.3	37 0	9.14	12 04	6.36	5.05	3.57	1.25				
40					16.3	48.0	10.4	16.10	7.26	6.52	4.09	1.60				
45							11.7	20.2	8.17	8 15	4.60	2.02				
50							13.1	24.9	9.08	10.0	5.11	2.44	3 26	.81	2.27	.35
75							19.6	56.1	13.6	22.4	7.66	5.32	4.90	1 80	3.40	.74
100									18.2	39.0	10.2	9.46	6.53	3 20	4.54	1.31
125											12.8	14.9	8.16	4.89	5.67	1.99
150											15.3	21.2	9 80	7.00	6.81	2.85
175											17.1	28.1	11.4	9.46	7.94	3.85
200											20.4	37.5	13.1	12.47	9.08	5.02

friction loss corresponding most nearly to 21.65, and take the size of pipe corresponding. But as the length of the pipe is 600 feet, the friction loss will be six times that given in Table II for given sizes of pipe and rates of flow; hence we must divide 21.65 by 6 to obtain the available head to overcome friction, and look for this quantity in the table, $21.65 \div 6 = 3.61$, and Table II shows us that a 1-inch pipe will discharge 10 gallons per minute with a friction loss of 3.16 pounds, and this is the size we should use.

EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.

1. What size pipe will be required to discharge 40 gallons per minute, a distance of 50 feet, with a pressure head of 19 feet?

Ans. $1\frac{1}{4}$ inch.

Digitized by Google

2. What head will be required to discharge 100 gallons per minute through a $2\frac{1}{2}$-inch pipe 700 feet long?

Ans. 52 feet.

PIPING.

Wrought iron, lead and brass are the principal materials used for water pipes. Wrought-iron pipe is the cheapest and easiest to lay, but is objectionable on account of rust and the consequent discoloration of water passing through it. When it

TABLE III.

Nominal inside diameter.	Actual outside diameter.	Thickness.	Actual inside diameter.	Internal circumference.	External circumference.	Length of pipe per square foot of inside surface.	Length of pipe per square foot of outside surface.	Internal area.	External area.	Length of pipe containing 1 cubic foot.	Weight per foot.	Number of threads per inch of screw.	Gallons per foot of length.
in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	feet	feet	in.	in.	feet	pounds		
												27	.0006
	.40	.068	.27	.85	1.27	14.1	9.44	.05	.13	2500.	.24	18	.0026
	.54	.088	.36	1.14	1.69	10.5	7.05	.10	.23	1385.	.42	18	.0057
	.67	.091	.49	1.55	2.12	7.67	5.65	.19	.36	751.5	.56	14	.0102
	.84	.109	.62	1.95	2.65	6.13	4.50	.30	.55	472.4	.84	14	.0230
	1.05	.113	.82	2.59	3.29	4.63	3.63	.53	.86	270.0	1.12	$11\frac{1}{2}$	.0408
1	1.31	.134	1.05	3.29	4.13	3.68	2.90	.86	1.35	166.9	1.67	$11\frac{1}{2}$	.0638
$1\frac{1}{4}$	1.66	.140	1.38	4.33	5.21	2.77	2.30	1.49	2.16	96.2	2.26	$11\frac{1}{2}$	.0918
$1\frac{1}{2}$	1.90	.145	1.61	5.06	5.96	2.37	2.01	2.04	2.83	70.6	2.69	$11\frac{1}{2}$	.1632
2	2.37	.154	2.06	6.49	7.46	1.85	1.61	3.35	4.43	42.3	3.66	8	.2550
$2\frac{1}{2}$	2 87	.204	2 47	7.75	9.03	1.54	1.33	4.78	6.49	30 1	5.77	8	.3673
3	3 50	.217	3.06	9.63	10.1	1.24	1.09	7.39	9.62	19.5	7.54	8	.4998
$3\frac{1}{2}$	4.00	.226	3.55	11.1	12.5	1.07	.95	9 88	12.5	14.5	9.05	8	.6528
4	4.50	.237	4 02	12.6	14.1	.95	.85	12.7	15.9	11.3	10.7	8	.8263
5	5.56	.259	5.04	15.8	17.4	.75	.63	20.0	24.3	7.2	14.5	8	1.469
6	6.62	.280	6.06	19.0	20.8	.63	.57	28.9	34.4	4.9	18.7	8	1.999

is employed for this purpose it is customary to use galvanized pipe, that is, pipe which has been covered with a thin coating of zinc or zinc and tin. This prevents rust from forming where the zinc is unbroken, but at the joints where threads are cut, and at other places where the zinc becomes loosened, as by bending, the pipe is likely to be eaten away more or less rapidly, depending upon the quality of the water. Zinc, when taken into the system, is poisonous, and for this reason galvanized pipes should not ordinarily be used for drinking water.

Digitized by Google

Table III gives the various dimensions of wrought-iron pipe. In using pipe of this kind, it is well to allow something in size for possible choking by rust or sediment. While galvanized pipe does not rust, for a time at least, there is likely to be a roughness which causes an accumulation of more or less sediment.

TABLE IV.

Lead Pipe.

Internal diameter.	External diameter.	Thickness.	Weight per foot.	Mean bursting pressure (pounds per square inch).	Safe working pressure.
⅜	.75	.18	1 lb. 12 oz.	1968	492
⅜	.55	.087	10	1085	271
½	1.00	.25	3	1787	446
½	.63	.065	10	625	156
⅝	1.10	.23	3 8	1548	387
⅝	.84	.10	1 4	708	177
¾	1.33	.29	4 14	1462	365
¾	.93	.09	1 3	505	126
1	1.60	.30	6	1230	307
1	1.18	.09	1 8	325	81
1¼	1.80	.275	6 12	962	240
1¼	1.44	.095	2	322	80
1½	2.08	.29	8	742	185
1½	1.74	.12	3	245	61
1¾	2.12	.19	5	460	116
1¾	2.0	.125	3 10	318	79
2	2.60	.30	10 11	611	152
2	2.18	.09	4	200	50

Iron pipe having a lining of tin $\frac{1}{16}$ inch or more in thickness is now manufactured, but being a comparatively new product, its wearing qualities have not yet been thoroughly tested.

Lead Pipe is the best and most widely used for domestic water supply. Although poisonous under certain conditions, as

Digitized by Google

when new and bright and when used with very pure water, it usually becomes coated with a scale which makes it practically harmless. It is more costly than iron pipe, and requires more skill in laying and making up the joints. It is less likely to burst from the action of frost, as it is a soft metal and stretches with the expansion of the ice in the pipe. When it does break under pressure it generally occurs in small holes not over an inch long, which are easily repaired without removing any part of the pipe, while in the case of iron pipe the cracks generally extend the entire length of the section in which the

TABLE V.

Tin-lined Lead Pipe.

Internal diameter.	AAA Weight per foot.		AA Weight per foot.		A Weight per foot.		B Weight per foot.		C Weight per foot.		D Weight per foot.		D light Weight per foot.		E Weight per foot.		E light Weight per foot.	
	lb.	oz.	lb.	oz.	lb.	oz.	lb.	oz.	lb.	oz.	lb.	oz.	lb.	oz.	lb.	oz.	lb.	oz.
⅜	1	8	1	5	1	2	1	0	0	13	0	10			0	8		
½	3	0	2	0	1	12	1	4	1	0	0	13			0	11	0	9
¾	3	8	2	12	2	8	2	0	1	12	1	8	1	4	1	0	0	12
1	4	8	3	8	3	0	2	4	2	0	1	12	1	8	1	4	1	0
1¼	6	0	4	12	4	0	3	4	2	8	2	0			1	8		
1½	6	12	5	12	4	12	3	12	3	0	2	8			2	0		
1¾	9	0	8	0	6	4	5	0	4	4	3	8			3	4		
2	10	12	9	0	7	0	6	0	5	4	4	0						

water is frozen, and new pipe will be required. Lead pipe is commonly made in six different thicknesses or weights, designated as AAA, AA, A, B, C and D, in which AAA is the heaviest and D the lightest. Table IV gives the principal properties of the heaviest and lightest weight for lead pipe of different diameters.

Tin-lined lead pipe is used to some extent for conveying water for domestic purposes. The principal objection to this pipe lies in the difficulty experienced in making the joints. Tin melts at a considerably lower temperature than lead, so that in making wipe joints it is likely to melt before the lead and block up the passage through the pipe. Another objection is due to the fact

Digitized by Google

that the tin lining and the outer lead covering are simply pressed together, and it often happens that in bending the pipe the lining pulls away from the lead, thus both obstructing and weakening the pipe. When used for hot water, the uneven expansion of the two metals may separate the two layers, and so cause the same difficulties already mentioned.

Table V gives some of the properties of tin-lined lead pipe.

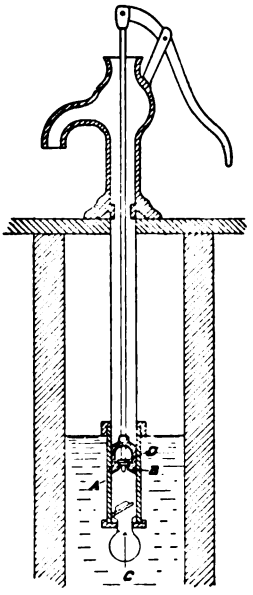


Fig. 1.

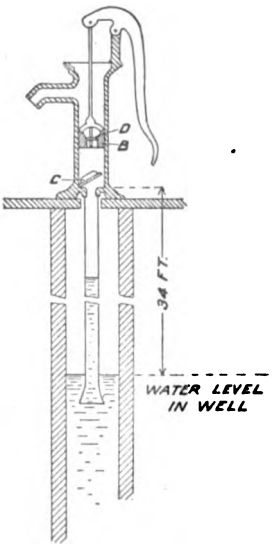


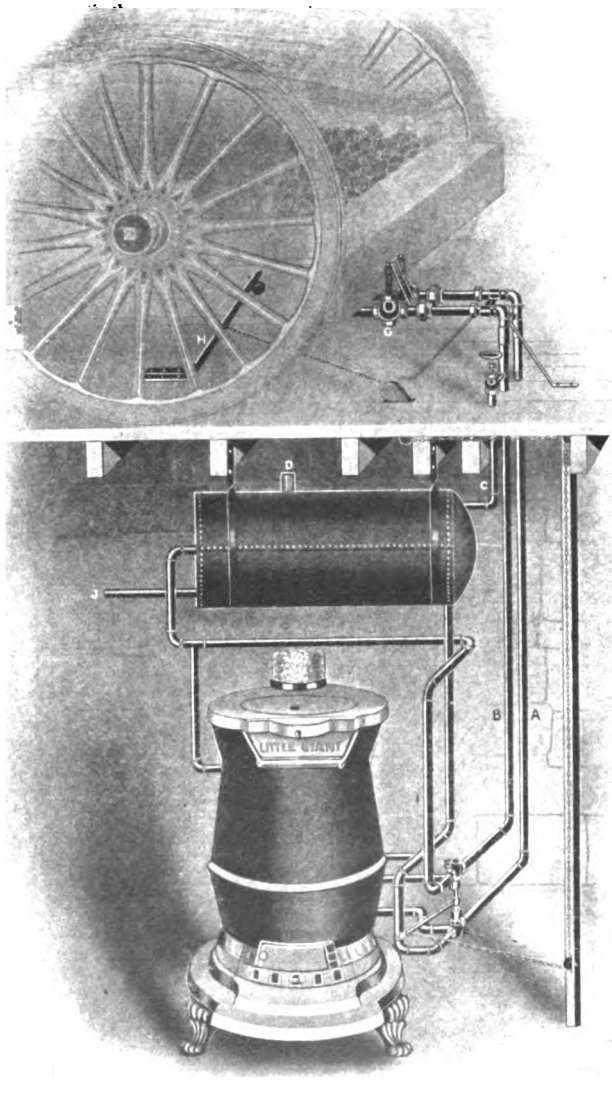
Fig. 2.

The strength of tin-lined pipe is about the same as that of lead pipe, the greater strength of the tin being offset by the lighter weight of the pipe made in this way.

Brass Pipe. Brass is one of the best materials for hot-water pipes, and should be used where the cost is not the controlling feature. It is commonly employed for connecting pumps and boilers and for the steam-heating coils inside laundry-water heaters. It is often used for the connections between the kitchen hot-water tank and range, and when nickel plated is extensively employed in connection with bathroom fixtures. The sizes and thicknesses are approximately the same as wrought-iron pipe.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google



LITTLE GIANT BOILER AS INSTALLED FOR FIRE DEPARTMENT SERVICE
Pierce, Butler & Pierce Mfg. Co.

Digitized by Google

PUMPS.

The principle upon which the pump operates has already been taken up in the Instruction Paper, "Mechanics." The more common forms are known as the "lift pump," the "suction pump" and a combination of the two called the "deep well pump."

Fig. 1 shows a pump of the first kind. In this pump A is the cylinder, B the plunger, C the bottom valve and D the plunger valve. When the plunger is drawn up, a vacuum is formed in the cylinder, and water flows in through C to fill it. When the plunger is forced down, valve D opens and allows the water to flow through the plunger while C remains closed. As this operation is repeated, the water is raised by the plunger at each stroke until the entire length of the pump barrel is filled, and it will then flow from the spout in an intermittent stream.

In the suction pump shown in Fig. 2, the cylinder and valves are the same, but they are placed at the top of the well and are connected with the water below by means of a pipe, as shown. When the pump is operated, a vacuum is formed in the cylinder and pipe below the plunger, and the pressure of the atmosphere upon the surface of the water forces it up the pipe and fills the chamber, after which the action becomes the same as in the case of a lift pump. The pressure of the atmosphere is approximately 15 pounds per square inch, which corresponds to the weight of a column of water 34 feet high, which is the height that the water may be raised theoretically by suction.

When the surface of the water is a greater distance than this below the point of discharge, a pump similar to that shown in Fig. 3 must be used. A is a cylinder with plunger and valves similar to those of a suction pump. The cylinder is supported in the well at some point less than 34 feet above the surface of the water; E is an air chamber connecting with the upper part of the pump cylinder, and F a discharge pipe leading from the bottom of the air chamber E. The action is as follows: water is pumped into the bottom of the air chamber, and as it rises and seals the end of the discharge pipe, the air in the upper part of the chamber is compressed, and as soon as sufficient pressure is obtained the water is forced out through the discharge pipe F. The pressure

Digitized by Google

required in the air chamber depends upon the height to which the water is raised.

The Hydraulic Ram. This is a device for automatically raising water from a lower to a higher level, the only requirements within certain limits being that the ram shall be placed at a given distance from the spring or source of supply and at a lower level, depending upon the height to which the water is to be raised and the length of the pipe through which it is to be forced. The distance from the source or spring to the ram should be at least from 25 to 50 feet, in order to secure the required velocity for proper operation. A difference in level of 2 feet, or even less, is sufficient to operate the ram; but the greater the difference, the more powerful is its operation. For ordinary purposes, where the water is to be conveyed from 50 to 60 rods, about $\frac{1}{10}$ to $\frac{1}{14}$ of the total amount used can be raised and discharged at an elevation ten times as great as the fall from the spring to the ram.

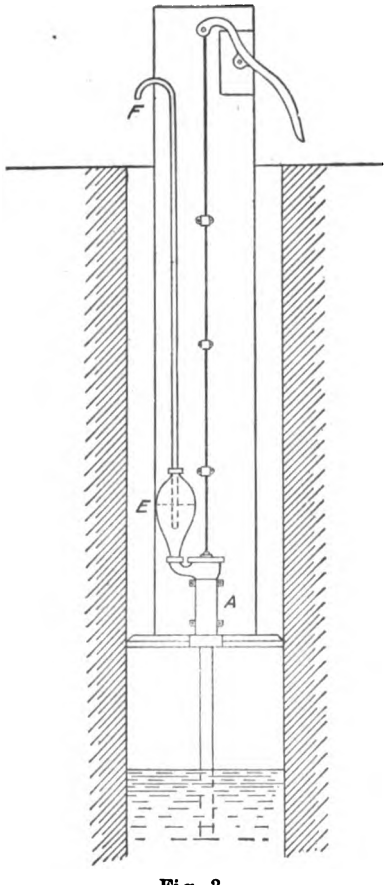


Fig. 3.

In Fig. 4, A represents the source or spring, B the supply pipe, C a valve opening upward, D an air chamber, E a valve closing when raised, and F the discharge pipe. When the water in the pipe is at rest, the valve E drops by its own weight and allows the water to flow through it. As soon as a sufficient velocity is reached by the water, its momentum or force raises the valve against its seat and closes it. The water being thus suddenly arrested in its

Digitized by Google

passage flows into the chamber D, where its sudden influx compresses the air in the top of the chamber, and this in turn forces the water upward through the discharge pipe F. As soon as the water in the pipe B becomes quiet, the valve E again opens and the operation is repeated. Bends in either the drive or discharge pipe should be avoided if possible. If elbows are necessary, the extra long turn pattern should be used in order to give as little resistance as possible. These machines are made of iron and

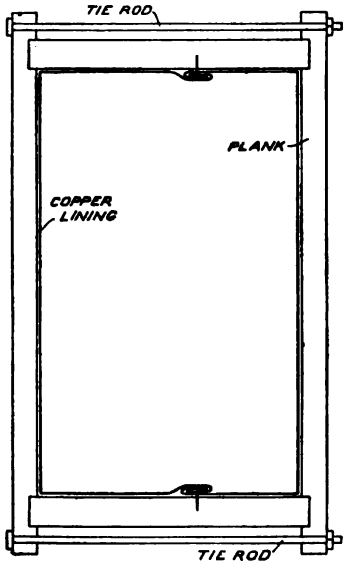


Fig. 5.

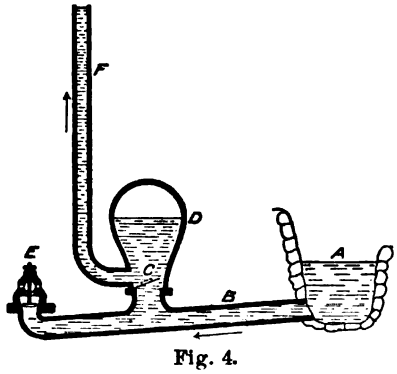


Fig. 4.

brass. The valve and stem are of bronze, on account of its wearing qualities.

Cisterns and Tanks. Water cisterns and tanks are made of various materials and in different shapes and sizes, according to the special uses for which they are required. A durable and satisfactory tank may be made of heavy woodwork or plank bolted together with iron rods and nuts and then lined with some sheet metal, such as copper, lead or zinc. Copper or lead makes the best lining, as the zinc has a greater tendency to corrode and become leaky. If copper is used, it should be tinned on the outside. Fig. 5 shows a wooden tank in plan, with the method of locking the joints in the copper lining. All nails should be so placed as to be covered by the copper, and the joints soldered with the best quality of solder, which should be allowed to soak into the seams. If the tank is lined with lead, a good weight

Digitized by Google

should be used (about six pounds per square foot) and the joints carefully wiped by an experienced workman. If used for the storage of drinking water, this form of lining is open to the same objections as lead pipe, but if kept filled at all times, and especially if the water contains mineral matter to any extent, there is very little danger, as a coating is soon formed over the surface of the lead, protecting it from the action of the water.

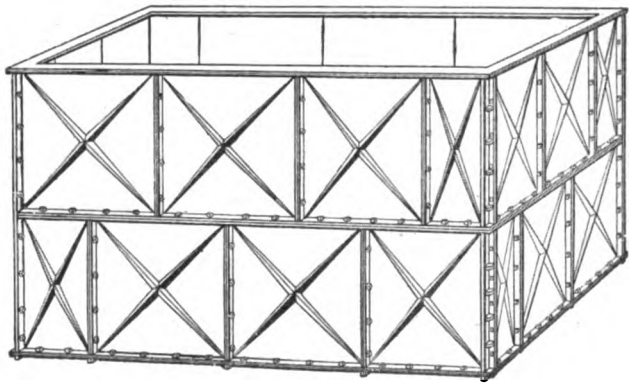


Fig. 6.

Cast-iron sectional tanks can be had in almost any size or shape. A tank of this form is shown in Fig. 6. It is made up of plates which are planed and bolted together, the joints being made tight with cement. The sections are made in convenient sizes, so that they may be handled easily and conveyed without difficulty through small openings to any part of the house. These tanks are easily set up, and are practically indestructible. Wrought-iron tanks are often used, but are not as easily handled as either of the kinds just described. Table VI will be found useful in computing the size of cylindrical tanks.

COLD-WATER SUPPLY.

Systems. There are two general methods of supplying a building with water, one known as the "direct supply" system, and the other as the "indirect" or "tank" system.

In the direct system each fixture is connected with the supply pipe and is under the same pressure as the street main,

Digitized by Google

unless a reducing valve is introduced. This system is not always desirable, as the street pressure in many places is likely to vary, especially where the water is pumped into the mains. A variable pressure is injurious to the fixtures, causing them to leak much sooner than if subjected to a steady pressure. Where the pressure in the street main exceeds 40 pounds per square inch, a reducing valve should be used if the direct system is to be employed.

TABLE VI.

Capacity of Cisterns, in Gallons, for each 10 inches in Depth.

Diameter in feet.	Gallons.	Diameter in feet.	Gallons.	Diameter in feet.	Gallons.
2.0	19.5	6.0	176.3	10	489.6
2.5	30.5	6.5	206.8	11	592.4
3.0	44.6	7.0	239.9	12	705.0
3.5	60.0	7.5	275.4	13	827.4
4.0	78.3	8.0	313.3	14	959.6
4.5	99.1	8.5	353.7	15	1101.6
5.0	122.4	9.0	396.5	20	1958.4
5.5	148.1	9.5	461.4	25	3059.4

The following factors for changing a given quantity of water from one denomination to another will often be found useful:

Cubic feet $\times$ 62½ = Pounds
Pounds $\div$ 62½ = Cubic feet
Gallons $\times$ 8.3 = Pounds
Pounds $\div$ 8.3 = Gallons
Cubic feet $\times$ 7.48 = Gallons
Gallons $\div$ 7.48 = Cubic feet

For domestic purposes the indirect system is much better. In this case the connection with the street main is carried directly to a tank placed in the attic or at some point above the highest fixture, and all the water used in the house discharged into it. The supply of water is regulated by a ball-cock in the tank which shuts it off when a certain level is reached. All the plumbing fixtures are supplied from the tank, and are therefore

Digitized by Google

under a constant pressure. This pressure depends upon the distance of the fixture below the tank. The pipes and fixtures in a house supplied with the tank system will last much longer and

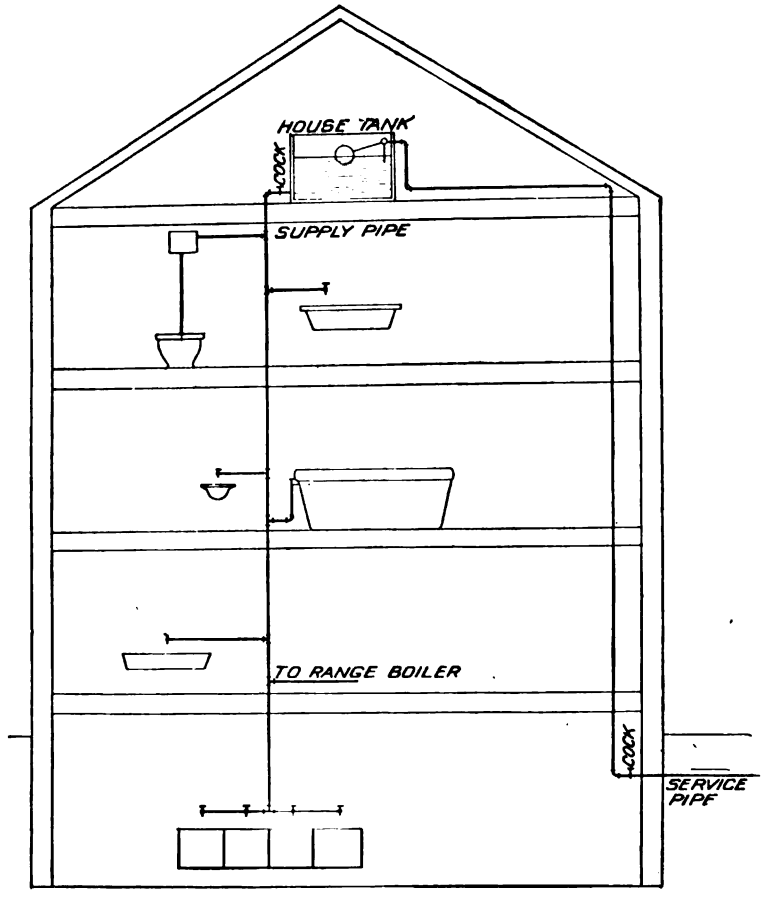


Fig. 7.

give much better results than if connected directly with the street main. The tank is also found useful for storage purposes in case of repairs to the street mains, which is often a matter of much inconvenience.

Fig. 7 shows the general arrangement of the cold-water pipes of an indirect supply system. On the right is shown the service

Digitized by Google

pipe, which is carried directly from the street to the attic, and then connected with a ball-cock located inside the house tank. A supply pipe is taken from the bottom of the tank and carried downward through the building for supplying the various fixtures. A stopcock should be placed in the supply pipe for closing off the tank connections in case of repairs to the house-piping or fixtures.

Tank Overflow Pipe. In order to prevent any possibility of overflow, every house tank should be supplied with an overflow pipe of sufficient size to carry off easily the greatest quantity of water that may be discharged into it. The overflow from a house tank should never be connected directly with a sewer or soil pipe, even if provided with traps, for the water may seldom flow

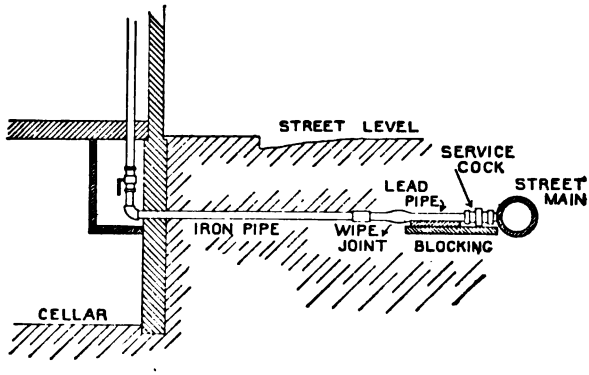


Fig. 8.

through this pipe, thus allowing the trap to become unsealed through evaporation. It is much better to let the end of the overflow pipe be open to the atmosphere or drop over some fixture which is in constant use.

Service Pipe Connections. Fig. 8 shows the usual method of connecting the service pipe with the street main. The service cock is connected directly with the main, and should be carefully blocked, so that any pressure of earth from above will not break the connection or strain the cock. To do this properly, the earth under the pipe should be rammed down solid after the connections are made, and the pipe at this point should be supported on sound

Digitized by Google

wooden blocks. If galvanized iron is used for the service pipe, it should in all cases be connected to the main service cock with a short piece of lead pipe two or three feet long, for the reason that lead will give or sag with the pressure of the earth without breaking. The remainder of the pipe should be carefully embedded in the earth, to prevent uneven strains at any particular point. Connections between the lead and iron pipes should be made by means of brass ferrules and wiped joints. A stopcock should be placed in the service pipe just inside the cellar wall, and in a position where it will be accessible in case of accident. A drip should be connected with the stopcock for draining the pipes when water is shut off.

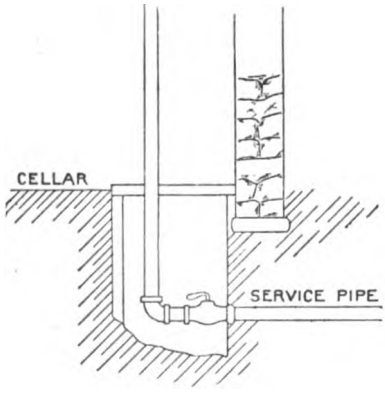


Fig. 9.

In protecting pipes against freezing it is well to pack them in hair, felt, granulated cork or dry shavings where they pass through the floor. This is shown in Fig. 8. When the service pipe comes in below the cellar floor, it may be arranged as shown in Fig. 9. The cock should be placed about 18 inches below the cellar bottom in a wooden box with hinged cover, so that it may be easily reached.

In many cities and in certain elevated situations the pressure in the mains is not sufficient to carry the water to the house tanks in the attics of the higher buildings, and it becomes necessary to use some form of automatic pump for this purpose. The screw pump shown in Fig. 10 is especially adapted to uses of this kind when equipped with an electric motor and automatic starting and stopping devices. A float in the tank operates an electric switch by means of a chain and weights, as shown. A centrifugal or rotary pump is also satisfactory for this work.

Another device which may be attached to a steam pump is shown in Fig. 11. When the water line in the tank reaches a given height, the float closes a butterfly valve in the discharge pipe, thus increasing the pressure within it; this

Digitized by Google

in pressure acts on the bottom of a piston by means of a connecting pipe, and in raising the piston, shuts off the steam supply to the pump. When the water line in the tank is lowered, the float falls and the butterfly valve opens, relieving the pressure in the pipe and allowing the steam valve to open by the action of the counterweights attached to the lever arm of the valve, as shown. The automatic valve is shown in section in Fig. 12. Another means of raising water to an elevation for domestic purposes, especially in the country, is by the use of a windmill. A large storage tank is placed at a suitable height so that a sufficient supply may be pumped on windy days to last over intervening periods of calm weather.

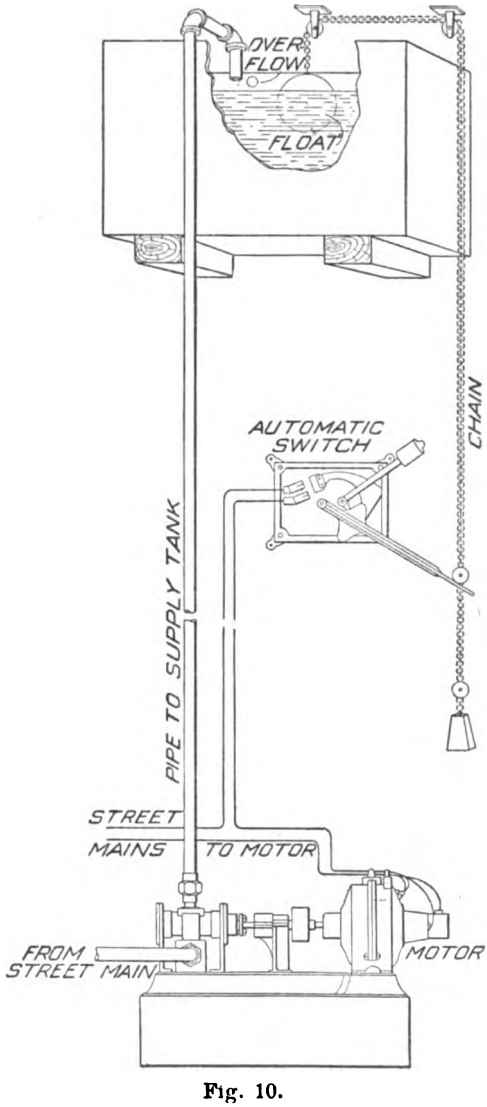


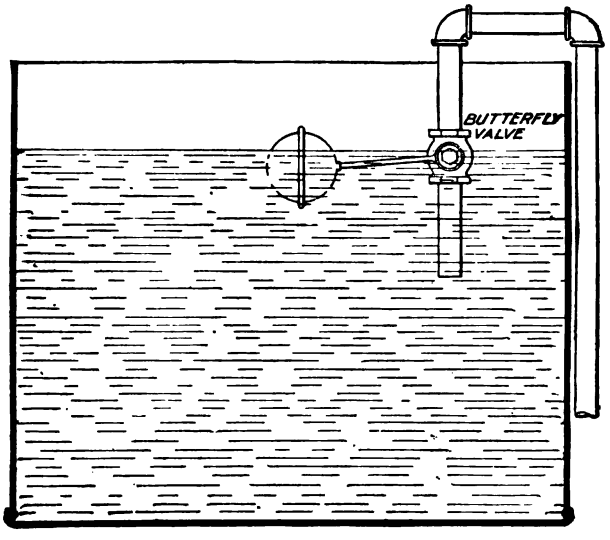
Fig. 10.

HOT-WATER SUPPLY.

All modern systems of plumbing include a hot-water supply to the various sinks, bowls, bathtubs and laundry-tubs throughout the house.

Fig. 13 shows the usual arrangement of a kitchen boiler and water-back with the necessary pipe connections. The boiler is

Digitized by Google



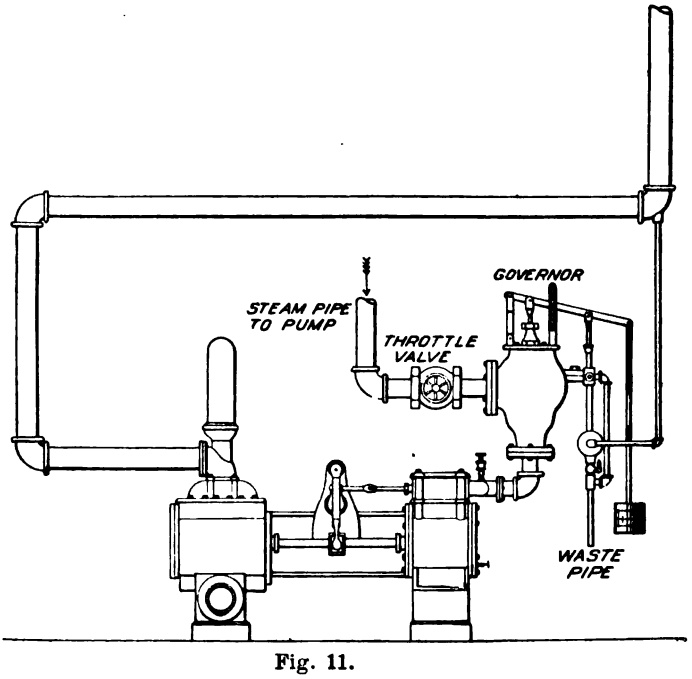


Fig. 11.

Digitized by Google

commonly made of copper and supported upon a cast-iron base. It may be located in the kitchen near the range, or may be concealed in a nearby closet. The "water-back," so called, is a special casting placed so as to form one side of the fire box in

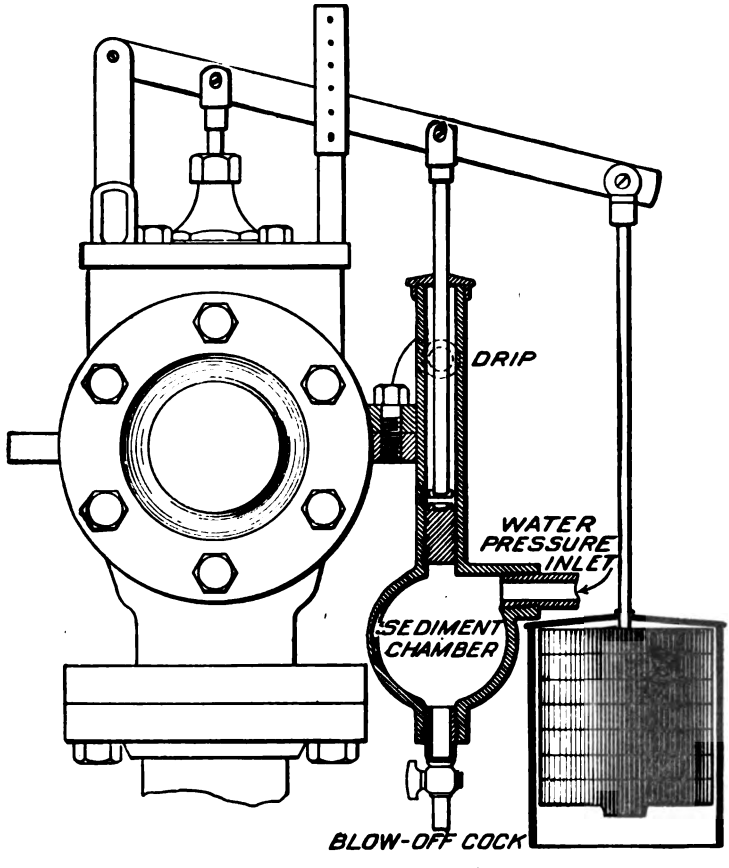


Fig. 12.

the range. The cold-water supply pipe to the boiler usually enters at the top and is carried down to a point near the bottom, as shown by the dotted lines. Connection is made between the bottom of the boiler and the lower chamber of the water-back. The upper chamber is connected at a point about one-third of the way up in the side of the boiler, as shown. The circulation of water

Digitized by Google

through the boiler and supply pipes is the same as already described for hot-water-heating systems. The range fire in contact with the water-back heats the water within it, which causes it to rise through the pipe connected with the upper chamber and

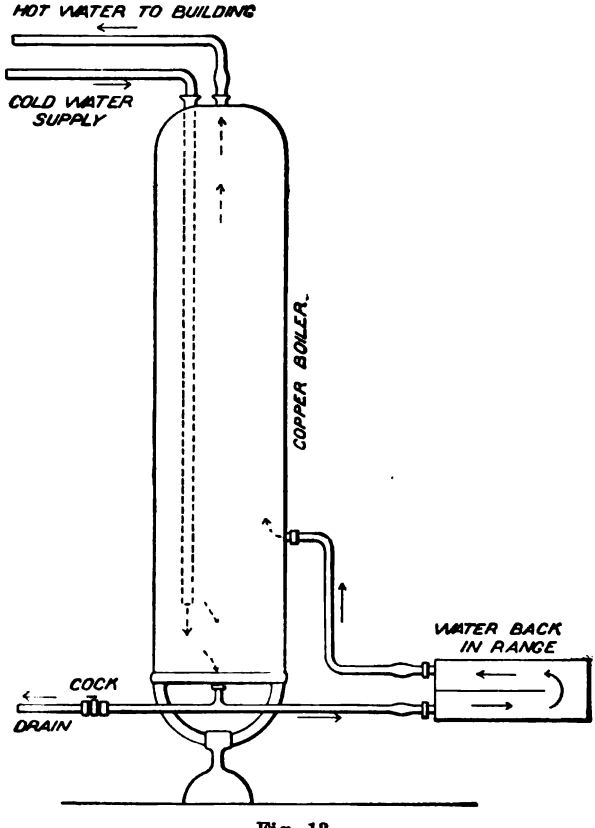


Fig. 13.

flow into the boiler or tank; in the meantime cooler water flows in at the lower connection to take its place, and the circulation thus set up is constant as long as there is a fire in the range.

The "boiler," so called, is not a heater, but only a storage tank. As the water becomes heated it rises to the top of the tank and is carried to the different fixtures in the building through a pipe or pipes connected at this point. The cold-water supply pipe is connected with the house tank so that the pressure in the boiler

Digitized by Google

is that due to the height of the tank above it. When any of the hot-water faucets are open, the pressure of the cold water in the supply pipe forces out the hot water at the top of the boilers and rushes in to take its place. There is no connection between the circulation through the water-back and the pressure in the cold-water supply pipe. The circulation is due only to the difference in temperature between the water in the pipe leading from the top of the water-back and the water in the lower part of the boiler, and difference in elevation of the connections with the boiler. The nearer the top of the boiler the discharge from the water-back is connected, the more rapid will be the circulation and the greater the quantity of water which will be heated in a given time. The cold-water supply simply furnishes a pressure to force the hot water through the pipes to the different fixtures, and replaces any water that is drawn from the boiler.

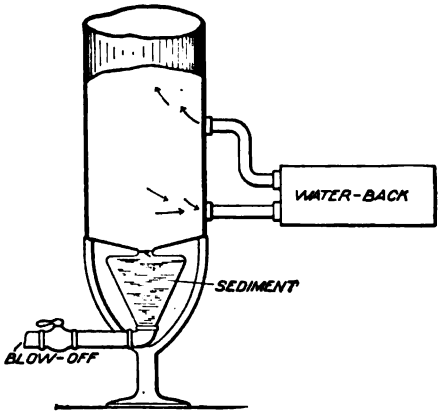


Fig. 14.

Care should always be taken to have the pipes between the water back and the boiler free from sediment or any other obstruction. If the water-back from any cause should become shut off from the boiler, an explosion would be likely to occur if there was a hot fire in the range. Freezing of the pipes is sometimes a cause of accident. The sediment which accumulates more or less rapidly should be regularly blown off through the blow-off cock provided for this purpose at the bottom of the boiler. The best time for doing this is in the morning, before the fire is started. The device shown in Fig. 14 is intended to prevent the sediment from collecting in the pipes or from being drawn into the water-back, making the water roily when a large amount is drawn off at one time. It consists of a small cylinder or chamber connected to the bottom of the boiler in such a way that the sediment will fall into it and not be disturbed by the circulation of the water through the pipes.

Digitized by Google

Double Water-back Connections. It is often desirable to connect a boiler with two water-backs, one in the kitchen range and another in a laundry stove in the cellar for summer use. Fig. 15 shows the common method of making the connections. In this case either may be used separately, or both together without any adjustment of valves. The blow-off cock at the bottom

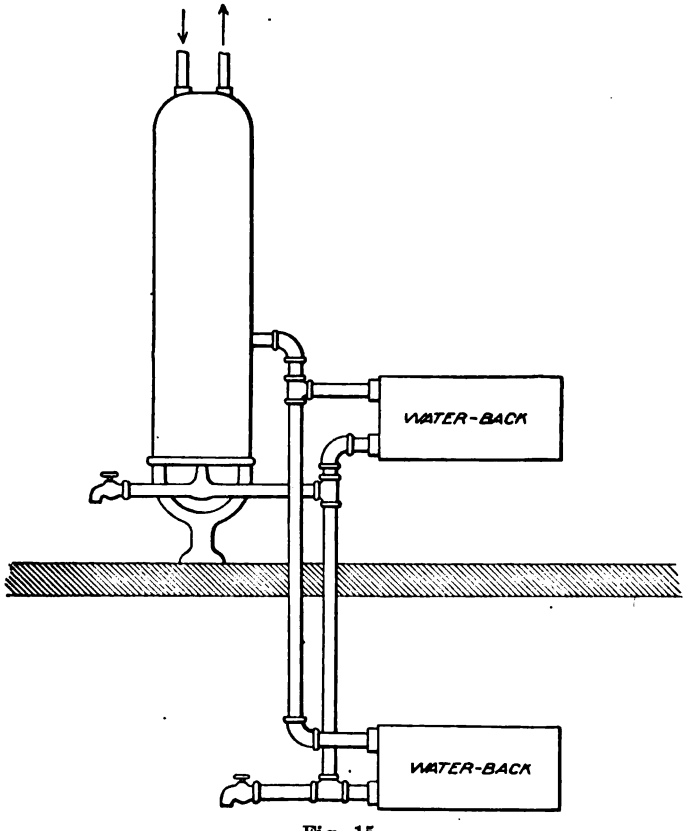


Fig. 15.

of the lower water-back should be opened quite often to clear it of sediment, as it will collect much faster at this point than at the bottom of the boiler.

Double Boiler Connections. It quite frequently happens that the kitchen boiler does not have sufficient capacity for the entire house, and it is not desirable to use a larger boiler on account

Digitized by Google

of the limited space in the kitchen. In such cases a second boiler may be connected with the laundry stove if one is provided, and the water pipes from both boilers be connected together at some point so that they may both discharge hot water into the same general supply.

Stopcocks should be placed in the pipe connections as shown, so that either boiler may be shut off for repairs without interfering with the operation of the other. Waste cocks should always be used for this purpose, so that when closed there will be a connection between the boiler and the atmosphere. This will prevent damage to the boiler in case those in charge should forget to open the cocks when starting up a fire in the stove with which the boiler is connected.

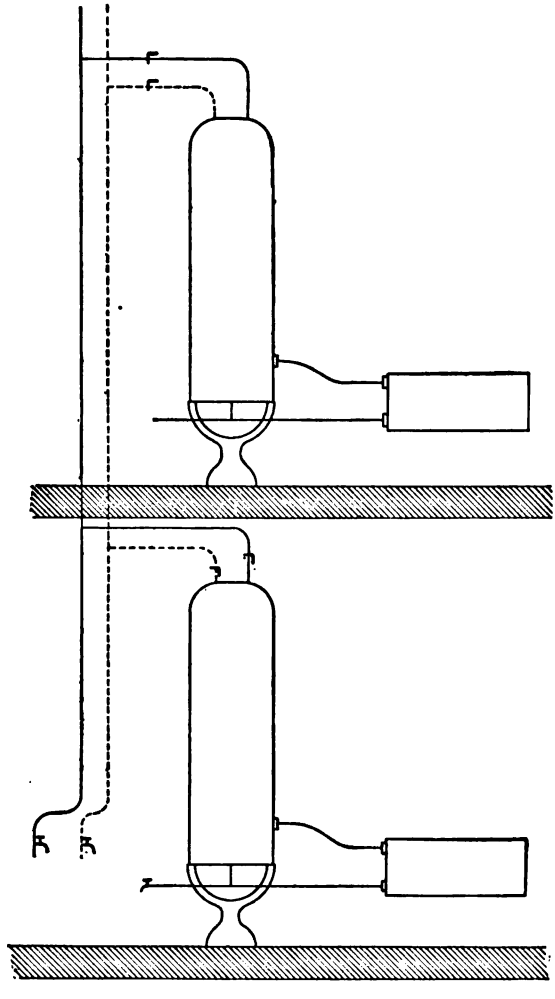


Fig. 16.

Circulation Pipes. It is often desirable to produce a continuous circulation in the distributing pipes so that hot water may be drawn from the faucets at once, without waiting for the cooler water in the pipe between the boiler and the faucet to run out.

Digitized by Google

This is accomplished by connecting a small pipe with the hot-water pipe near the faucet, and connecting it with the bottom of the boiler as shown in Fig. 17. This makes a circuit, and a constant circulation is produced by the difference in temperature of the water in the supply and circulation pipes.

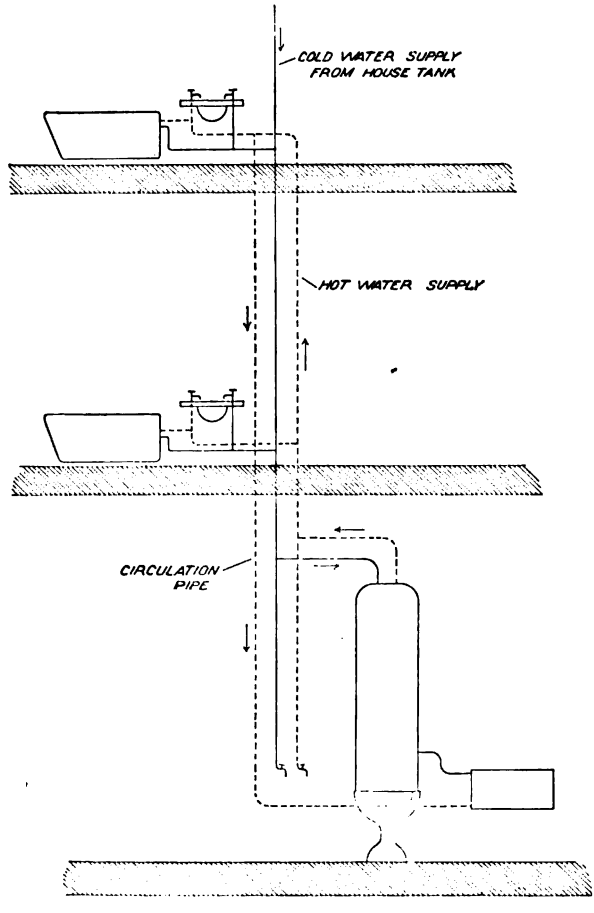
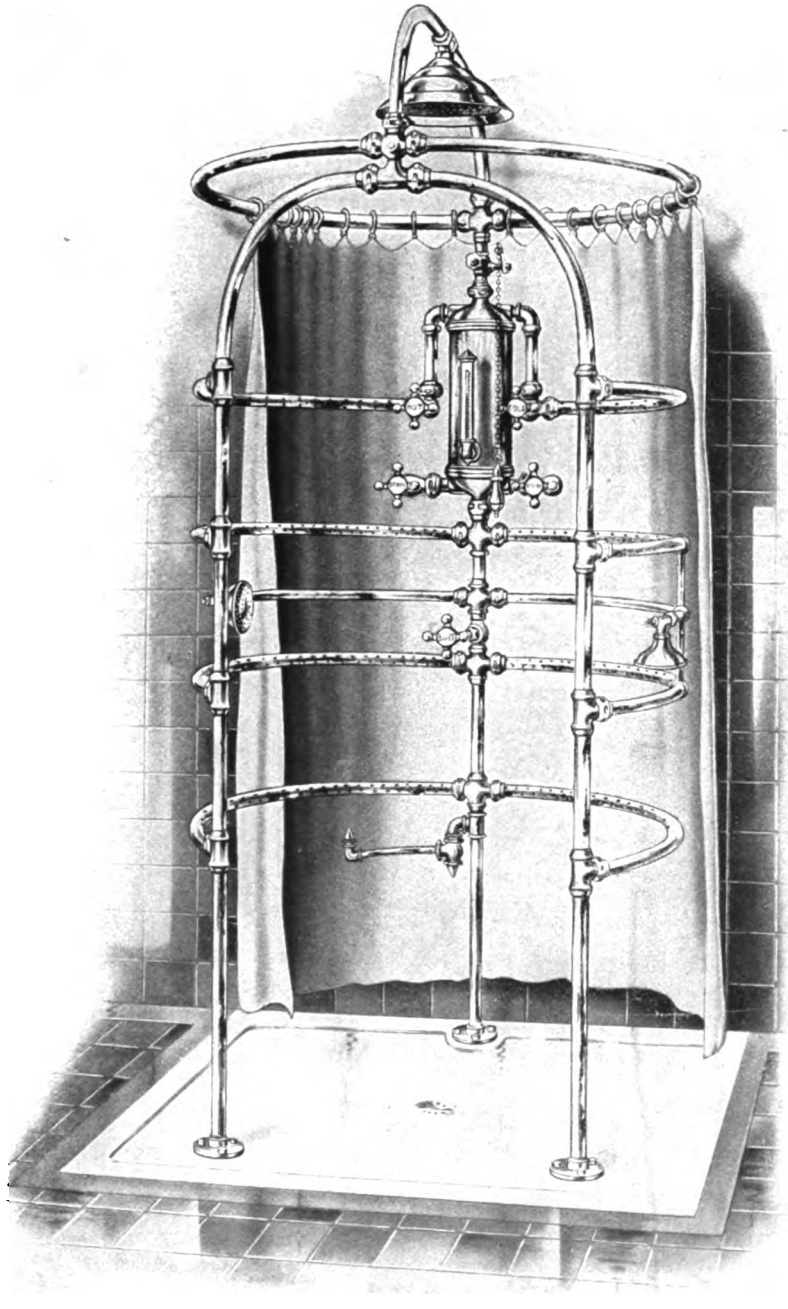


Fig. 17.

Pipe Connections. Brass or copper pipe with screwed fittings should always be used for making the connections between the boiler and water back. Where unions are used they should have ground joints without packing. Lead pipe is too soft to

Digitized by Google



COMBINED NEEDLE AND SHOWER BATH ARRANGED FOR HOT AND COLD WATER.
The Federal Company.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

stand the high temperature to which these pipes are sometimes subjected.

Laundry Boilers. In laundries, hotels, etc., where a large amount of hot water is used, it is necessary to have a larger storage tank and a heater with more heating surface than can be

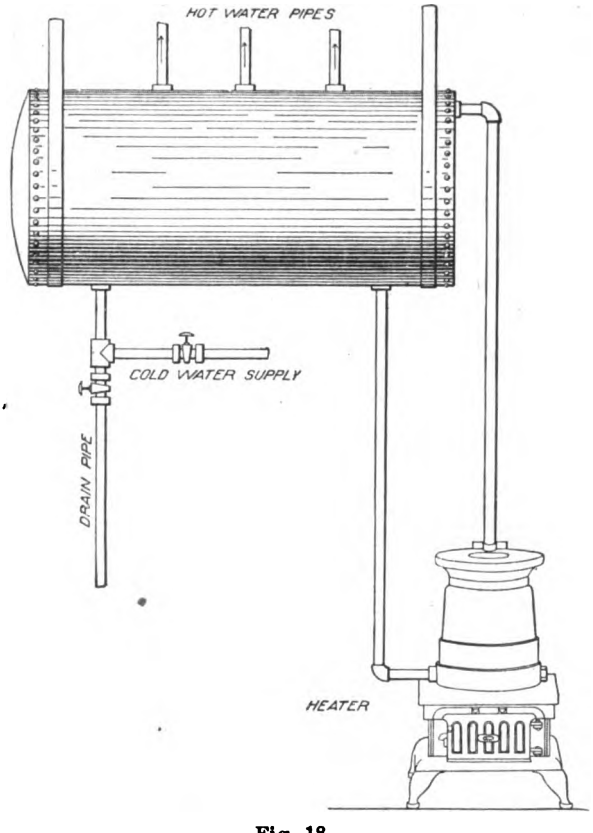


Fig. 18.

obtained in the ordinary range water-back. Fig. 18 shows an arrangement for this purpose.

The boiler may be of wrought iron or steel of any size desired, and is usually suspended from the ceiling by means of heavy strap iron. The heaters used are similar to those employed for hot water warming. The method of making the connections is indicated in the illustration.

Digitized by Google

The capacity of the heater and tank depends entirely upon the amount of water used. In some cases a large storage tank and a comparatively small heater are preferable, and in others the reverse is more desirable.

The required grate surface of the heater may be computed as follows: first determine or assume the number of gallons to be heated per hour, and the required rise in temperature. Reduce gallons

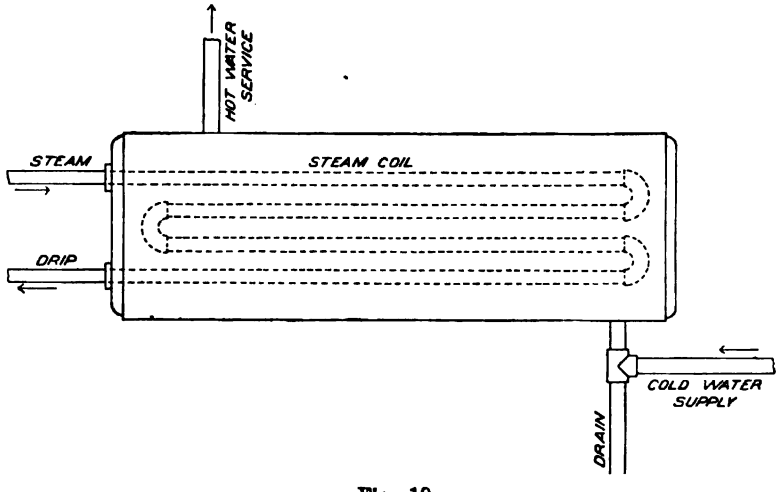


Fig. 19.

to pounds by multiplying by 8.3, and multiply the result by the rise in temperature to obtain the number of thermal units. Assuming a combustion of five pounds of coal per square foot of grate, and an efficiency of 8,000 thermal units per pound of coal, we have

$$\text{Grate Surface in sq. ft.} = \frac{\text{gal. per hour} \times 8.3 \times \text{rise in temp.}}{5 \times 8{,}000}$$

Example.— How many square feet of grate surface will be required to raise the temperature of 200 gallons of water per hour from 40 degrees to 180 degrees?

$$\frac{200 \times 8.3 \times (180 - 40)}{5 \times 8000} = 5.8 \text{ square feet}$$

In computing the amount of water required for bathtubs it is customary to allow from 20 to 30 gallons per tub, and to con-

Digitized by Google

sider that the tub may be used three or four times per hour as a maximum during the morning. This will vary a good deal, depending upon the character of the building. The above figures are based on apartment hotel practice.

Boilers with Steam Coils. In large buildings where steam is available, the water for domestic purposes is usually warmed by placing a steam coil of brass or copper pipe in the storage tank. This may be a trombone coil made up with brass fittings, or a spiral consisting of a single pipe. Heaters of these types are shown in Figs. 19 and 20. The former must be used in tanks which are placed horizontally, and the latter in vertical tanks. If the steam is used at boiler pressure, the condensation may return directly to the boiler by gravity; but if steam at a reduced pressure is used, it must be trapped to the receiver of a return pump or to the sewer.

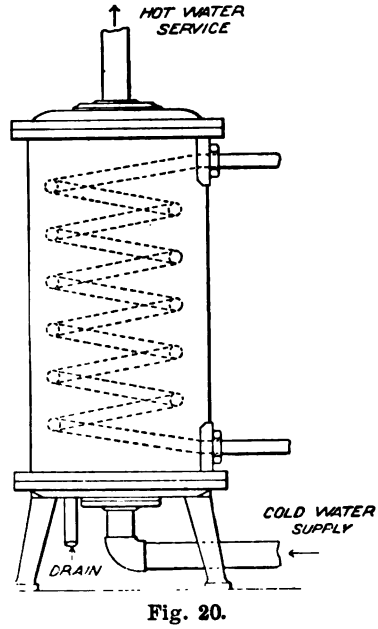


Fig. 20.

The cold water is supplied near the bottom of the tank, and the service pipes are taken off at the top. A drip pipe should be connected with the bottom, for draining the tank to the sewer. Gate valves should be provided in all pipe connections for shutting off in case of repairs. Sometimes a storage tank is connected with a steam-heating system for winter use, and cross connected with a coal-burning heater for summer use where steam is not available. Such an arrangement is shown in Fig. 21.

The efficiency of a steam coil surrounded by water is much greater than when placed in the air. A brass or copper pipe will give off about 200 thermal units per square foot of surface per hour for each degree difference in temperature between the steam and the surrounding water. This is assuming that the water is

Digitized by Google

circulating through the heater so that it moves over the coil at a moderate velocity. In assuming the temperature of the water we must take the average between that at the inlet and outlet.

Example.—How many square feet of heating surface will be required in a brass coil to heat 100 gallons of water per hour from 38 degrees to 190 degrees, with steam at 5 pounds pressure?

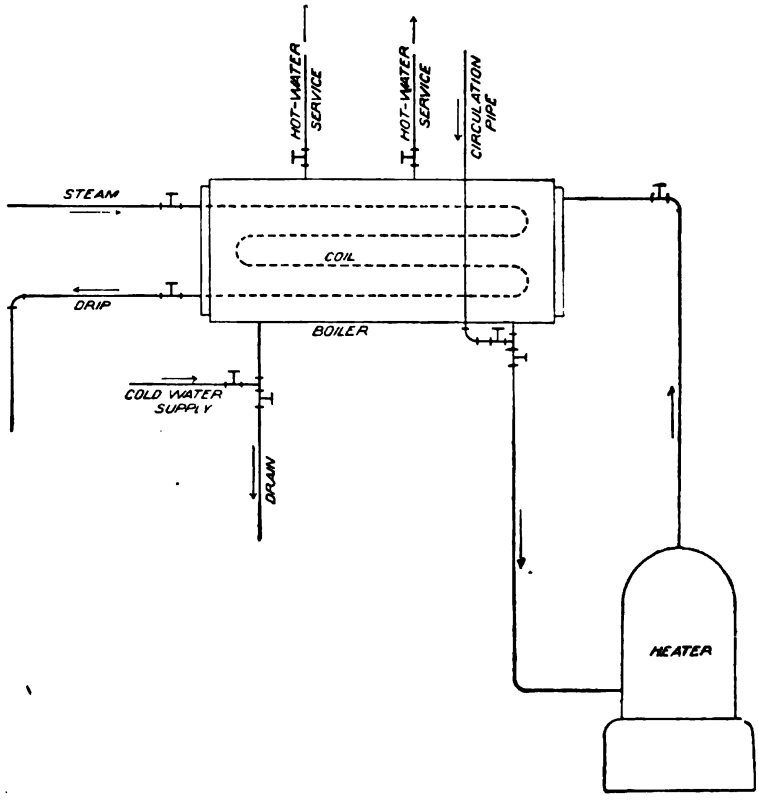


Fig. 21.

Water to be heated $= 100 \times 8.3 = 830$ pounds.
Rise in temperature $= 190 - 38 = 152$ degrees.
Average temperature of water in contact with the coils

$$= \frac{190 + 38}{2} = 114 \text{ degrees}$$

Digitized by Google

Temperature of steam at 5 pounds pressure = 228 degrees.

The required B. T. U. per hour = 830 × 152 = 126,160.

Difference between the average temperature of the water and the temperature of the steam = 228 — 114 = 114 degrees.

B. T. U. given up to the water per square foot of surface per hour = 114 × 200 = 22,800, and

$$\frac{126{,}160}{22{,}800} = 5.5 \text{ square feet.} \quad \text{Ans.}$$

EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.

1. How many linear feet of 1-inch brass pipe will be required to heat 150 gallons of water per hour from 40 to 200 degrees, with steam at 20 pounds pressure?

Ans. 21.3 feet.

2. How many square feet of grate surface will be required in a heater to heat 300 gallons of water per hour from 50 to 170 degrees?

Ans. 7.4 square feet.

3. A hot-water storage tank has a steam coil consisting of 30 linear feet of 1-inch brass pipe. It is desired to connect a coal-burning heater for summer use which shall have the same capacity. Steam at 5 pounds pressure is used, and the water is raised from 40 to 180 degrees. How many square feet of grate surface are required? Ans. 5.9 sq. ft.

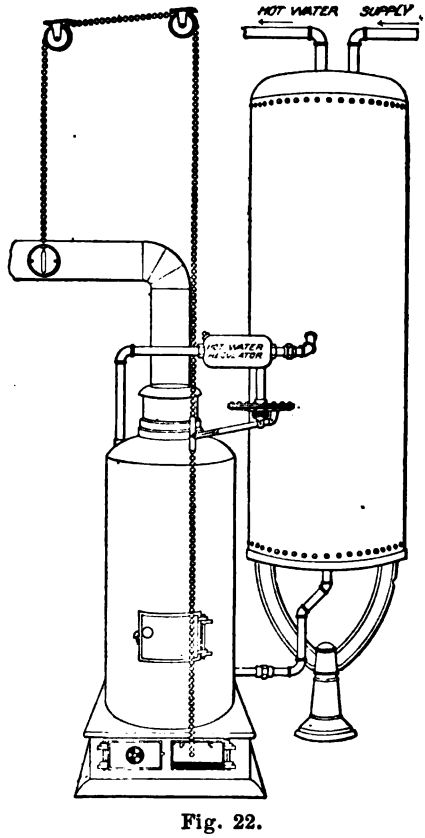


Fig. 22.

4. A hotel has 30 bathtubs, which are used three times apiece between the hours of seven and nine in the morning. The

Digitized by Google

hot-water system has a storage tank of 400 gallons. Allowing 20 gallons per bath, and starting with the tank full of hot water, how many square feet of grate surface will be required to heat the additional quantity of water within the stated time, if the temperature is raised from 50 to 130 degrees? If steam at 10 pounds pressure is used instead of a heater, how many square feet of heating coil will be required?

Ans. { 11.6 sq. ft. grate.
15.3 sq. ft. coil.

Temperature Regulators. Hot-water storage tanks having special heaters or steam coils should be provided with some means for regulating the temperature of the water. Fig. 22 shows a simple form attached to a coal-burning heater. It consists of a

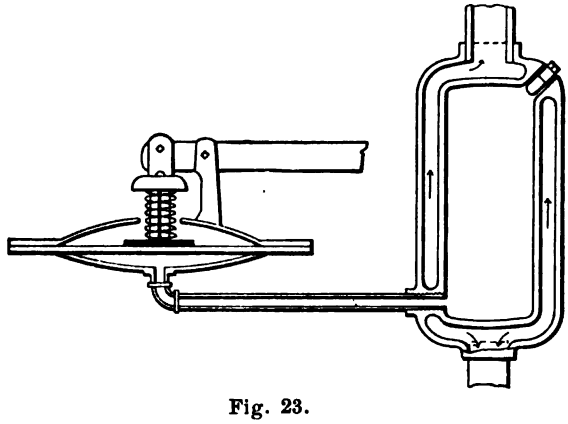


Fig. 23.

casting about nine inches long, tapped at the ends to receive a 2-inch pipe, and containing within it a second shell called the steam generator. (See Fig. 23.) The outer shell is connected with the circulation pipe as shown in Fig. 22. The generator is filled with kerosene, or a mixture of kerosene and water, depending upon the temperature at which it is wished to have the regulator operate. The inner chamber connects with the space below a flexible rubber diaphragm. The boiling point of the mixture in the generator is lower than that of water alone, and depends upon the proportion of kerosene used, so that when the temperature of the water in the outer chamber reaches this point, the mixture boils, and its vapor creates a pressure which forces down the diaphragm and closes the draft door of the heater with which it is connected.

Digitized by Google

A form of regulator for use with a steam coil is shown in Fig. 24. This consists of a rod made up of two metals having different coefficients of expansion, and so arranged that this difference in expansion will produce sufficient movement, when the water reaches a given temperature, to open a small valve. This

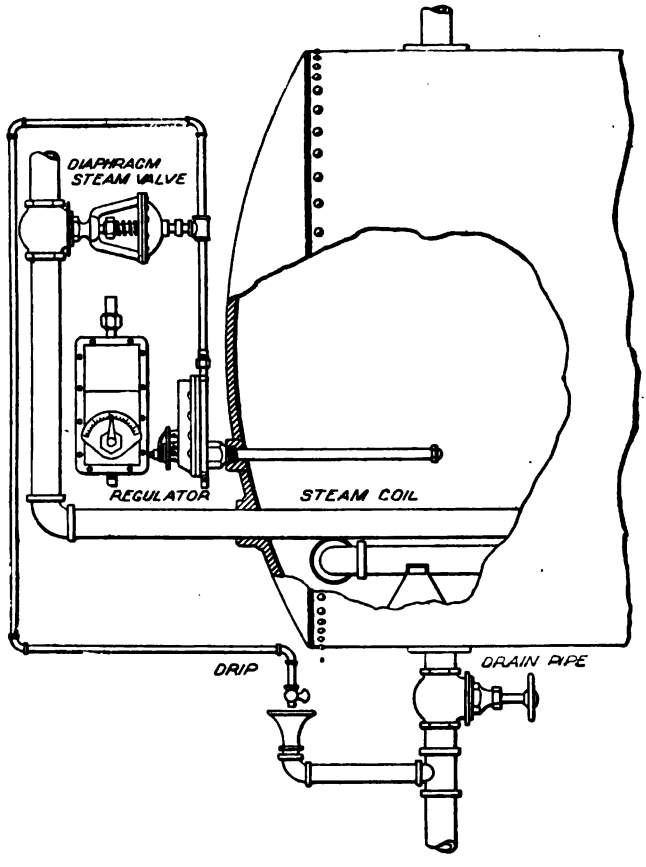


Fig. 24.

allows water pressure from the street main with which it is connected, to flow into a chamber above a rubber diaphragm, thus closing the steam supply to the coil. When the water cools, the rod contracts, and the pressure is released above the diaphragm, allowing the valve to open and thus again admit steam to the coil.

Digitized by Google

GAS FITTING.

Next to heating and ventilation and plumbing there is no part of interior house construction requiring so much attention as the gas piping and gas fitting.

Gas piping in buildings should be installed according to carefully drawn specifications, and only experienced workmen should be employed. The gas fitter should work from an accurate sketch plan showing the location of all gas service and distributing pipes in the building and the locations of the meter and shut-off cock. The plan should also indicate the exact location and size of the risers and the position of the lights in the different rooms.

Service Pipe and Meter. The service pipe by which the gas is conveyed to a building is always put in by the gas company. The size of this pipe is governed by the number of burners to be supplied, but it should never in any case, even for the smallest house, be less than 1 inch in diameter. This may be slightly larger than is necessary, but the cost is only a little more and the liability of stoppages is much less; this also allows for the future addition of more burners, which is often a matter of much convenience. Service and distributing pipes for water, or naphtha gas, should be from 15 to 20 per cent larger than for coal gas. The material for the main service pipe, from the street to the house, should be either lead or wrought iron. As a rule, wrought-iron pipe with screwed joints is preferable to lead, because it is less likely to sag in the trench, thus causing dips for the accumulation of water of condensation. Care must be observed in the use of wrought-iron pipe to protect it by coating with asphalt, or coal tar, to prevent corrosion. The pipe should also be well supported in the trench. Service pipes should preferably rise from the street gas main toward the house in order to allow all condensation to run back into the mains. This, however, cannot always be done, owing to the relative levels of the street main and the meter in the house. The latter should be placed in a cool, well-lighted position, at or below the level of the lowest burner, which is usually in the cellar. If the meter is below the gas main, the service pipe must grade toward the house and should be provided with a drip pipe, or "siphon," before connecting with the meter.

Digitized by Google

When water accumulates in the siphon, the cap is removed and the pipe drained. The gas company usually supplies and sets the meter, which should be of ample size for the number of lights burned.

A stopcock, or valve, is placed by the company in the service pipe, so that the gas may be shut off from each building separately. This is usually placed outside near the curb in the case of buildings requiring a pipe $1\frac{1}{2}$ inches in diameter, or larger. In the case of theaters or assembly halls it is often required by law as a safeguard in case of fire. The meter is connected with both the service pipe and the main house pipe by means of short connections of extra heavy lead pipe. A cock is placed near the meter, and in large buildings this is arranged so that a lock may be attached to it when the gas is shut off by the company. Gate valves are preferable for gas mains, as they give a free opening equal to the full size of the pipe.

PIPES.

Distributing Pipes. The distributing pipes inside of a house are usually of wrought iron, except where exposed in rooms, or

Fig. 25.

Fig. 26.

Fig. 27.

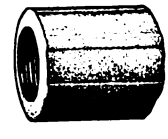


Fig. 28.

carried along walls lined with enameled brick, or tile, in which case they may be of polished bass, or copper. The chief requirements for wrought-iron distributing pipes are that they be carefully welded and perfectly circular in section. The first is important in order to avoid splitting when cutting or threading them on the pipe bench.

All gas pipes are put together with screwed joints, a thread being cut upon the outside. When the pipe is irregular in section the threading will be more or less imperfect, and as a result the joints will be defective. A good gas fitter must examine all pipe as it is delivered at the building, and observe the section

Digitized by Google

either by means of the eye or by the use of calipers. Plain wrought-iron pipe is likely to rust upon the inside, especially where the gas supplied is imperfectly purified, and for this reason it is often advisable to use rustless, or galvanized pipe, for the smaller sizes.

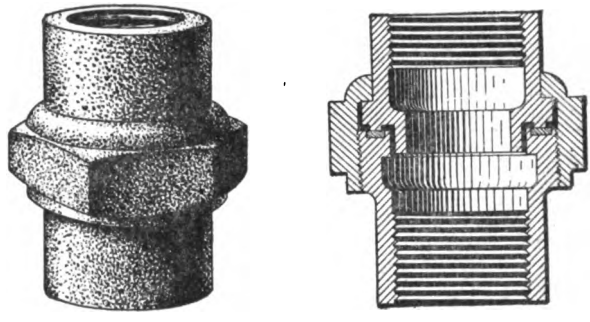


Fig. 29.

Fittings and Joints. The fittings used in gas piping are similar to those employed in steam work, such as couplings, elbows, tees, crosses, etc. (see Figs. 25, 26, 27 and 28). Other fittings not so extensively used are the union, the flange union, the running socket and right and left couplings. Fig. 29 shows a screwed union and Fig. 30 a flange. These fittings are of cast iron, or of malleable iron, the latter being preferred for the smaller sizes. Fittings may be either galvanized, or rustless, as in the case of pipe, and it is especially necessary that they be free from sand holes. In making pipe joints the gas fitter should make use of red lead, or red and white lead mixed, to make up for any possible imperfections in the threads; this, however, should be used sparingly so that the pipe may not be choked or reduced in size. The use of gas fitters' cement should be prohibited. It is important that each length should be tightly screwed into the fitting before the next length is put on. It is always a wise precaution

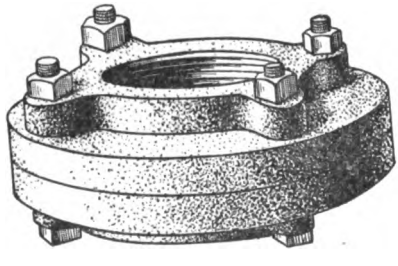


Fig. 30.

Digitized by Google

to examine each length of pipe before it is put in place, to make sure it is free from imperfections of any kind.

Running Pipes and Risers. All large risers should be exposed, and it is desirable to keep all piping accessible as far as possible so that it may be easily reached for repairs. All horizontal pipes should be run with an even though slight grade toward the riser, and all sags in the pipes must be avoided to prevent the collection of water, and for this reason they should be well supported. Floor boards over all horizontal pipes should be fastened down with screws so that they may be removed for inspection of the pipes. When it becomes necessary to trap a pipe, a drip with a drain cock must be put in, but this should always be avoided under floors or in other inaccessible places. When pipes under floors run across the timbers, the latter should be cut into near the ends, or where supported upon partitions, in order to avoid weakening the timbers. All branch outlet pipes should be taken from the side or top of the running lines, and bracket pipes should be run up from below instead of dropping from above. Never drop a center pipe from the bottom of a running line; always take such an outlet from the side of the pipe. Where possible it is better to carry up a main riser near the center of the building, as the distributing pipes will be smaller than if carried up at one end. Where this is done the timbers will not require so much cutting, and the flow of gas will be more uniform throughout the system.

When a building has different heights of post it is always better to have an independent riser for each height rather than to drop a system of piping from a higher to a lower post and grading to a lower point and establishing drip pipes. Drips in a building should be avoided if possible and the whole system of piping be so arranged that any condensed gas will flow back through the system and into the service pipe. All outlet pipes should be securely fastened in position, so that there will be no possibility of their moving when the fixtures are attached. Center pipes should rest on a solid support fastened to the floor timbers near the top. The pipe should be securely fastened to the support to prevent movement sidewise. The drop must be perfectly plumb and pass through a guide fastened near the bottom of the timbers in order to hold it rigidly in position. (See arrangement, Fig. 31.)

Digitized by Google

Unless otherwise directed, outlets for brackets should be placed $5\frac{1}{2}$ feet from the floor except in the cases of hallways and bathrooms, where it is customary to place them 6 feet from the floor. Upright pipes should be plumb, so that nipples which project through the walls will be level; the nipples should not

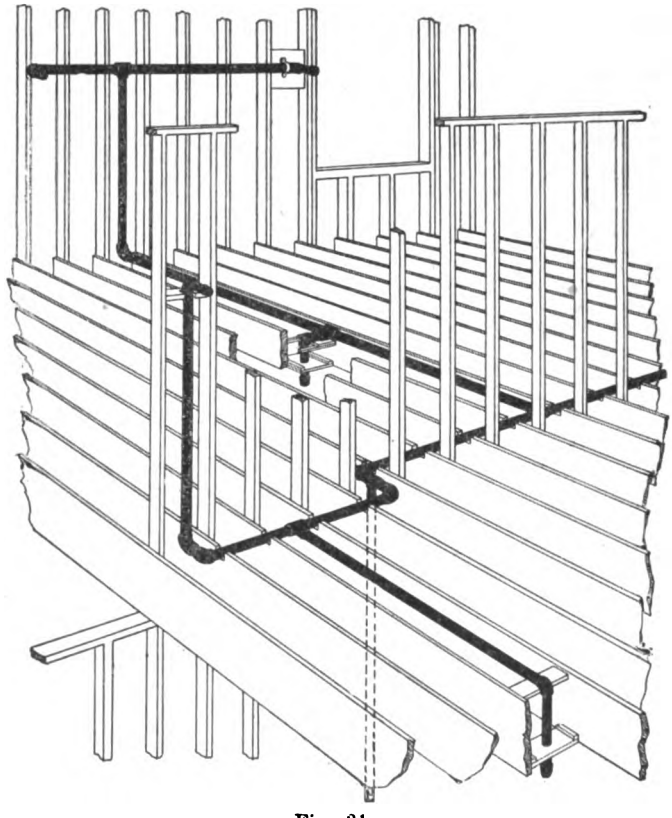


Fig. 31.

project more than $\frac{3}{4}$ inch from the face of the plastering. Lathes and plaster together are usually about $\frac{3}{4}$ inch thick, so the nipples should project about $1\frac{1}{2}$ inches from the face of the studding.

Gas pipes should never be placed on the bottoms of floor timbers that are to be lathed and plastered, because they are inaccessible in case of leakage or alterations.

Pipe Sizes. All risers and distributing pipes, and all

Digitized by Google

branches to bracket and center lights should be of sufficient size to supply the total number of burners indicated on the plans. Mains and branches should be proportioned according to the number of lights they are to supply, and not the number of outlets.

No pipe should be less than $\frac{3}{8}$ inch in diameter, and this size should not be used for more than two-bracket lights. No pipe for a chandelier should be less than $\frac{1}{2}$ inch up to four burners, and it should be at least $\frac{3}{4}$ inch for more than four burners. The following table gives sizes of supply pipes for different numbers of burners and lengths of run.

TABLE VII.

Size of Pipe. Inches.	Greatest Length of Run. Feet.	Greatest Number of Burners to be Supplied.
$\frac{3}{8}$	20	2
$\frac{1}{2}$	30	4
$\frac{3}{4}$	50	15
1	70	25
$1\frac{1}{4}$	100	40
$1\frac{1}{2}$	150	70
2	200	140
$2\frac{1}{2}$	300	225
3	400	300
4	500	500

Testing Gas Pipes. As soon as the piping is completed, it should be tested by means of an air pump; a manometer or mercury gage is used to indicate the pressure. In the case of large buildings, it is better to divide the piping into sections, and test each separately. All leaks revealed must be repaired at once, and the test repeated until the whole system is air tight at a pressure of from 15 to 20 inches of mercury, or $7\frac{1}{2}$ to 10 pounds per square inch.

The final test is of great importance. This test is to provide against future troubles and dangers from leaks resulting from sand holes in the fittings, split pipe, imperfect threads, loose joints or outlets left without capping. If the building is new, a careful inspection should first be made to see that all outlets are closed, then the valve in the service pipe closed and the air pump attached to any convenient side-light. To the same outlet or an

Digitized by Google

adjacent one attach the mercury column gage used by gas fitters, and having a column from 15 to 20 inches in height. Care must be taken that there are no leaks in the gage or its connections; a tight-closing valve must be placed between the gas pipe and the temporary connections with the pump, so that it may be shut off immediately after the pump stops, thus preventing any leakage through the pump valves or hose joints. When all is ready, pump the system full of air until the mercury rises to a height of at least 12 inches in the gage; then close the intermediate valve between the pump and the piping. Should the mercury column "stand" for five minutes, it is reasonable to assume that the pipes are sufficiently tight for any pressure to which they will afterward be subjected.

If the mercury rises and falls with the strokes of the pump, it indicates a large leak or open outlet near the pump. But should there be a split pipe or an aggregation of small leaks, the mercury will run back steadily between the strokes of the pump, though more slowly than it rose. Should it rise well in the glass and sink at the rate of 1 inch in five seconds, small leaks in fittings or joints may be expected.

A leak that cannot be detected by the sound of issuing air may usually be found by applying strong soap-water with a brush over suspected joints or fittings; the leak in this case being indicated by the bubbles blown by the escaping air. Sometimes it is necessary to use ether in the pipes for locating leaks, if the pipes are in partitions or under floors. The ether is put into a bend of the connecting hose, or in a cup attached to the pump, and forced in with the air. By following the lines of the pipe, the approximate position of a leak may be determined by the odor of escaping ether.

If the house is an old one or has been finished, the meter should be taken out and the bottom of the main riser capped. Next remove all fixtures and cap the outlets. Then use ether to locate the leaks before tearing up floors or breaking partitions.

GAS FIXTURES.

Burners. Illuminating gas is a complex mixture of gases, of which various chemical compounds of carbon and hydrogen

Digitized by Google

form the principal light-giving properties. Gas always contains more or less impurities, such as carbonic oxide, carbonic acid, ammonia, sulphureted hydrogen and bisulphides of carbon. These are partly removed by purifying processes before the gas leaves the works.

When the gas-jet is lighted, the hydrogen is consumed in the lower part of the flame, producing sufficient heat to render the minute particles of carbon incandescent. The hydrogen, in the process of combustion, combines with the oxygen from the air, forming an invisible vapor of water, while the carbon unites with the oxygen, forming carbonic acid.

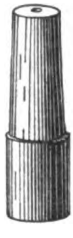


Fig. 32.

Fig. 33.

Fig. 34.

Various causes tend to render combustion incomplete: there may be excessive pressure of gas, lack of air or defective burners. An excess of pressure at the burners causes a reduction of the amount of illumination; on the other hand, if the pressure is insufficient, the heat of the flame will not raise the carbon to a white heat, and the result will be a smoky flame. It therefore follows that for every burner there is a certain pressure and corresponding flow of gas which will cause the brightest illumination.

There is a great variety of burners upon the market, among which the following are the principal types:

The single-jet burner, the bat's-wing burner, the fish-tail burner, the Argand burner, the regenerative burner and the incandescent burner.

The Single-jet burner (Fig. 32) is the simplest kind, having

Digitized by Google

only one small hole from which the gas issues. It is suitable only where a very small flame is required.

The Bat's-wing or slit burner (Fig. 33) has a hemispherical tip with a narrow vertical slit from which the gas spreads out in a thin, flat sheet, giving a wide and rather low flame, resembling in shape the wing of a bat, from which it is named. The common kind of slit burners are not suitable for use with globes, as the flame is likely to crack the glass.

The Union-jet or *Fish-tail* burner (Figs. 34 and 35) consists of a flat tip slightly depressed or concave in the center, with two small holes drilled, as shown in Fig. 35. Two jets of equal size issue from these holes, and by impinging upon each other produce a flat flame longer and narrower in shape than the bat's-wing, and not unlike the tail of a fish. Neither of these burners require a chimney, but the flames are usually encased with glass globes.

Fig. 35.

The Argand burner (Fig. 36) consists of a hollow ring of metal connected with the gas tube, and perforated on its upper surface with a series of fine holes, from which the gas issues, forming a round flame. This burner requires a glass chimney. As an intense heat of combustion tends to increase the brilliancy of the flame, it is desirable that the burner tips shall be of a material that will cool the flame as little as possible. On this account

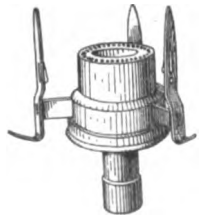


Fig. 36.

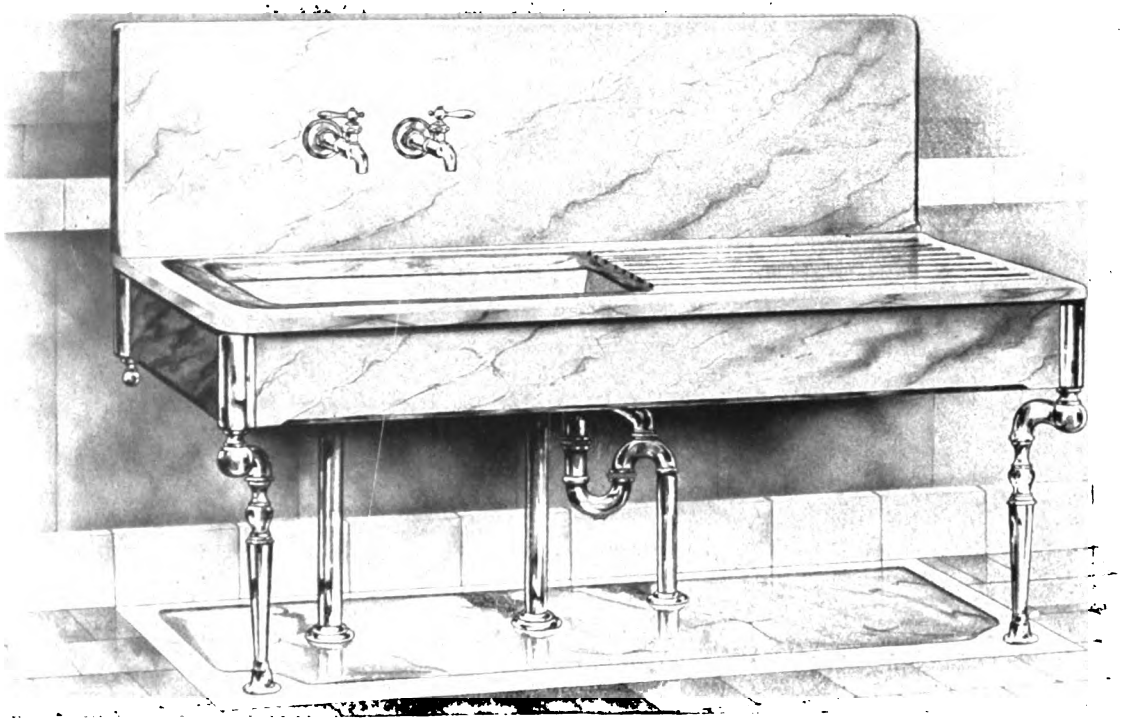
Fig. 37.

Fig. 38.

metal tips are inferior to those made of some nonconducting material, such as lava, adamant, enamel, etc. Metal tips are also objectionable because they corrode rapidly, and thus obstruct the passage of the gas. Figs. 37 and 38 show lava tips for bat's-wing and fish-tail burners. Burner tips should be cleaned occa-

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google



ITALIAN MARBLE KITCHEN SINK.
The Federal Company.

Digitized by Google

sionally, but care should be taken not to enlarge the slits or holes.

In all *regenerative* burners the high temperature due to the combustion in a gas flame is used to raise the temperature of the gas before ignition, and of the air before combustion. These powerful burners are used for lighting streets, stores, halls, etc.

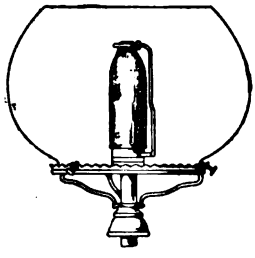


Fig. 39.

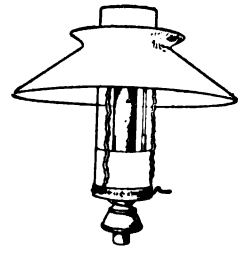


Fig. 40.

In the incandescent burner the heat of the flame is applied in raising to incandescence some foreign material, such as a basket of magnesium or platinum wires, or a funnel-shaped asbestos wick or mantel chemically treated with sulphate of zirconium and other chemical elements. A burner of this kind is shown in Fig. 39, where the mantel may be seen supported over the gas flame by a wire at the side. Fig. 40 shows another form of this burner in which a chimney and shade are used in place of a globe. Burners of this kind give a very brilliant white light when used with water gas unmixed with naphtha gases. The mantel, however, is very fragile, and is likely to lose its incandescence when exposed to an atmosphere containing much dust.

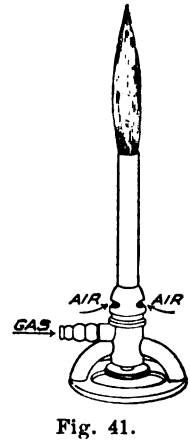


Fig. 41.

The Bunsen burner shown in Fig. 41 is a form much used for laboratory work. It burns with a bluish flame, and gives an intense heat without smoke or soot. The gas before ignition is mixed with a certain quantity of air, the proportions of gas and air being regulated by the thumbscrew at the bottom, and by screwing the

Digitized by Google

outer tube up or down, thus admitting a greater or less quantity of air at the openings indicated by the arrows. This same principle is utilized in a burner for brazing, the general form of which is shown in Fig. 42. A flame of this kind will easily melt brass in the open air.

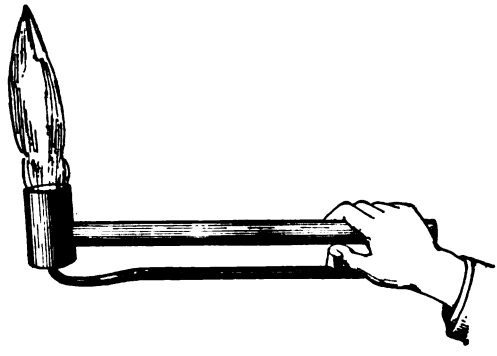


Fig. 42.

Cocks. It is of greatest importance that the stopcocks at the fixtures should be perfectly tight. It is rare to find a house piped for gas where the pressure test could be successfully applied without first removing the fixtures, as the joints of folding

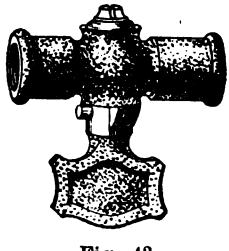


Fig. 43.

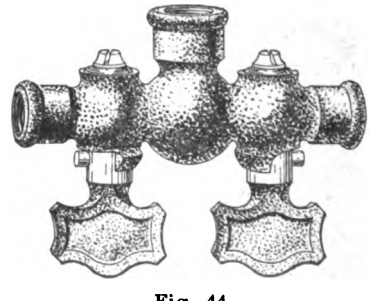


Fig. 44.

brackets, extension pendants, stopcocks, etc., are usually found to leak more than the piping. The old-fashioned, "all-around" cock should never be allowed under any conditions whatever; only those provided with stop pins should be used. Various forms of cocks with stop pins are shown in Figs. 43, 44 and 45. All

Digitized by Google

joints should be examined and tightened up occasionally to prevent their becoming loose and leaky.

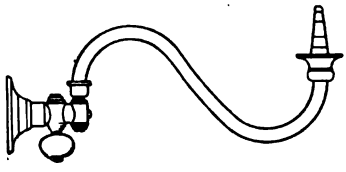


Fig. 46.

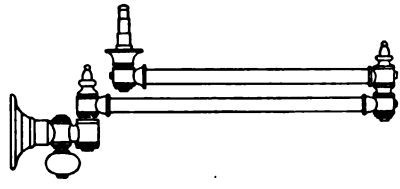


Fig. 47.

Brackets and Chandeliers. Poor illumination is frequently caused by ill-designed or poorly constructed brackets or chandeliers. Gas fixtures, almost without exception, are designed solely from an artistic standpoint, without regard to the proper conditions for obtaining the best illumination. Fixtures having too many scrolls or spirals may, in the case of imperfectly purified gas, accu-

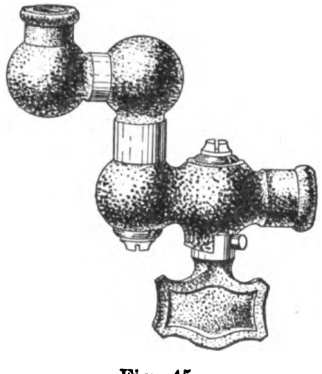


Fig. 45.

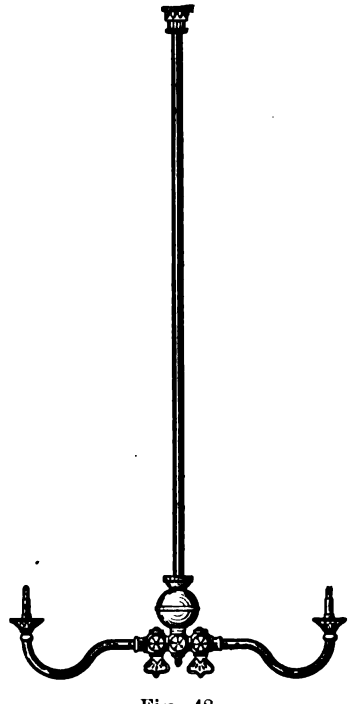


Fig. 48.

mulate a large amount of a tarry deposit which in time hardens and obstructs the passages. Another fault is the use of very small tubing for the fixtures, while a third defect consists in the many leaky stopcocks of the fixtures, caused either by defec-

Digitized by Google

tive workmanship, or by the keys becoming worn and loose. Common forms of brackets are shown in Figs. 46 and 47, the latter being an extensive bracket. There is an endless variety of chandeliers used, depending upon the kind of building, the finish of the room and the number of lights required. Figs. 48, 49 and 50 show common forms for dwelling houses, Fig. 50 being used for halls and corridors.

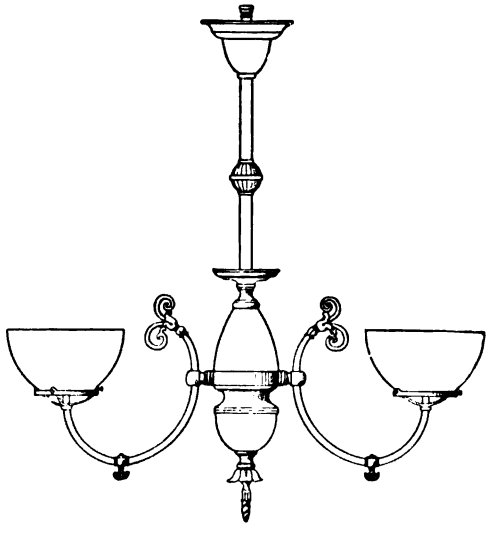


Fig. 49.

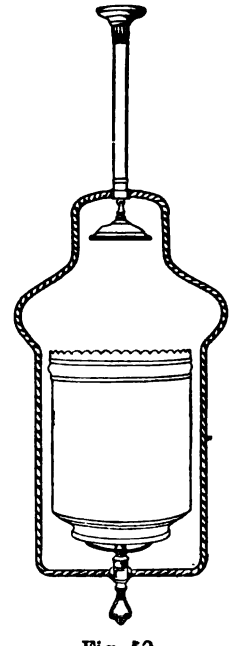


Fig. 50.

Globes and Shades. Next to the burners, the shape of the globes or shades surrounding the flame affects the illuminating power of the light. In order to obtain the best results, the flow of air to the flame must be steady and uniform. Where the supply is insufficient the flame is likely to smoke ; on the other hand, too strong a current of air causes the light to flicker and become dim through cooling.

Globes with too small openings at the bottom should not be used. Four inches should be the smallest size of opening for an ordinary burner. All glass globes absorb more or less light, the

Digitized by Google

loss varying from 10 per cent for clear glass to 60 per cent or more for colored or painted globes. Clear glass is therefore much more economical, although where softness of light is especially desired the use of opal globes is made necessary.

COOKING AND HEATING BY GAS.

Cooking by gas as well as heating is now very common and there is a great variety of appliances for its use in this way. Cooking by gas is less expensive and less troublesome than by coal, oil or wood and is more healthful on account of the absence of waste heat, smoke and dust. A gas range is always ready for use and is instantly lighted by applying a match to the burner. The fire, when kindled, is at once capable of doing its full work; it is easily regulated and can be shut off the moment it has been used, so that if properly managed there is no waste of fuel as in the case of coal or wood. The kitchen in the summertime may be kept comparatively cool and comfortable. Gas stoves are made in all sizes, from the simple form shown in Fig. 51 to the most elaborate range for hotel use. A range for family use, with ovens and water heater, is shown in Fig. 52. Figs. 53 and 54 show the forms of burners used for cooking, the former being a griddle burner and the latter an oven burner.

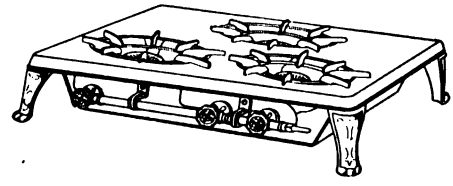


Fig. 51.

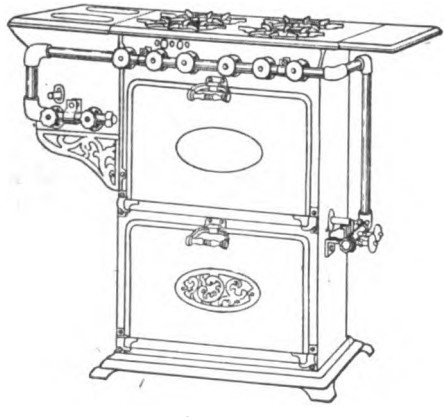


Fig. 52.

A broiler is shown in Fig. 55; the sides are lined with asbestos, and the gas is introduced through a large number of small

Digitized by Google

openings. The asbestos becomes heated and the effect is the same as a charcoal fire upon both sides.

Heating by Gas. Gas as a fuel has not been used to any great extent for the warming of whole buildings, its application

Fig. 54.

being usually confined to the heating of single rooms. Unlike cooking by gas, a gas fire for heating is not as cheap as a coal fire when kept burning constantly. In other ways it is effective and convenient. It is especially adapted to the warming of small apartments and single rooms where heat is only wanted occasion-

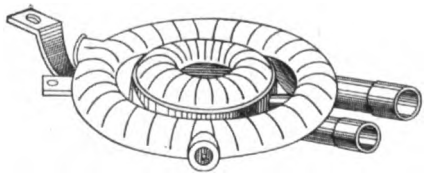


Fig. 53.

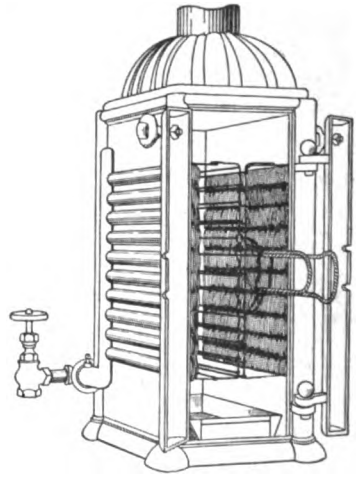


Fig. 55.

ally and for brief periods of time. In the case of bedrooms, bathrooms or dressing-rooms, a gas fire is preferable to other modes of warming and fully as economical. It may be used on cold winter days as a supplementary source of heat in houses heated by stoves or by furnaces. Again, a gas fire may be used as a substitute for the regular heating apparatus in a house, in the spring or fall, when the fire in the furnace or boiler has not yet been started. It is often employed as the only means for heating smaller bedrooms, guest rooms, bathrooms, and for temporary heating in summer hotels where fires are required only on occasional cold days.

The most common form of heater is that shown in Fig. 56. This is easily carried from room to room and may be connected

Digitized by Google

with a gas-jet, after first removing the tip, by means of rubber tubing. The heater is simply a large burner surrounded by a sheet-iron jacket or funnel. Another and more powerful form is the gas radiator, shown in Fig. 57. This is arranged with a flue for conducting the products of combustion to the chimney, as shown in the section Fig. 58. Each section of the radiator consists of an outer and an inner tube with the gas flame between the

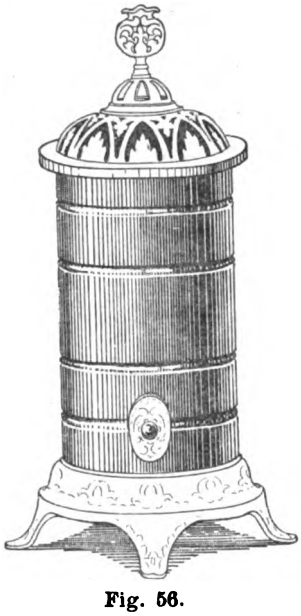


Fig. 56.

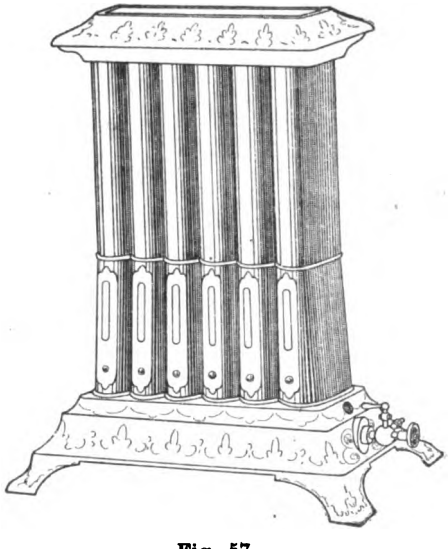


Fig. 57.

two. This space is connected with the flue, while the air to be heated is drawn up through the inner tube, as shown by the arrows.

Fig. 59 shows an asbestos incandescent grate, and Fig. 60 a grate provided with gas logs made of metal or terra-cotta and asbestos. The gas issues through small openings among the logs, and gives the appearance of an open wood fire.

Hot-water Heaters. The use of gas cooking ranges makes it necessary to provide separate means for heating water. This is accomplished in several ways. The range shown in Fig. 52 has a boiler attached which is provided with a separate burner.

Fig. 61 shows a gas heater attached to the ordinary kitchen

Digitized by Google

boiler. A section through the heater is shown in Fig. 62. This consists of a chamber surrounded by an outer jacket with an air space between. Circulation pipes, through which the water passes, are hung in the inner chamber just above a powerful gas-burner placed at the bottom of the heater.

A heater of different form for heating larger quantities of

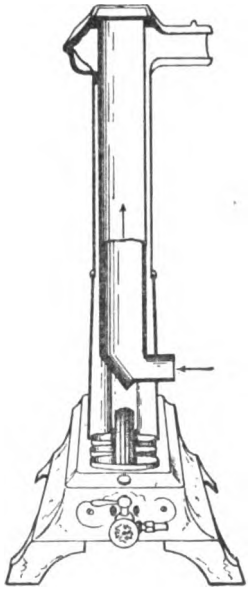


Fig. 58.

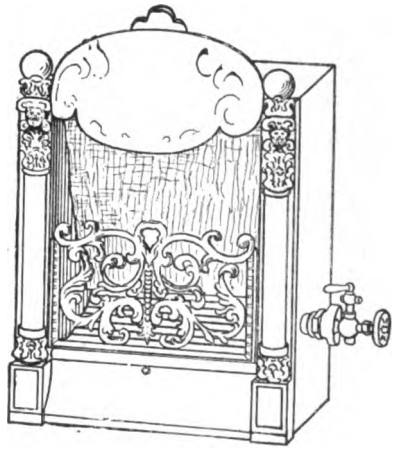


Fig. 59.

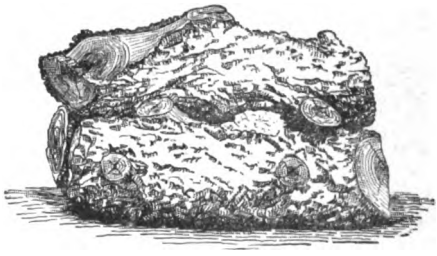


Fig. 60.

water is shown in Figs. 63 and 64. This consists, as in the case just described, of a circulation coil suspended above a series of burners. The supply of gas admitted to the burners is regulated by an automatic valve, which is opened more or less as the flow of water through the heater is increased or diminished. When no

Digitized by Google

water is being used, the gas is shut off from the burners, and only a small "pilot light," which takes its supply from above the automatic valve, is left burning. As soon as a faucet in any part of the building is opened and a flow of water started through the heater, the automatic valve opens, admitting gas to the main burn-

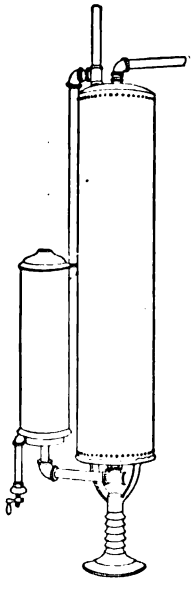


Fig. 61.

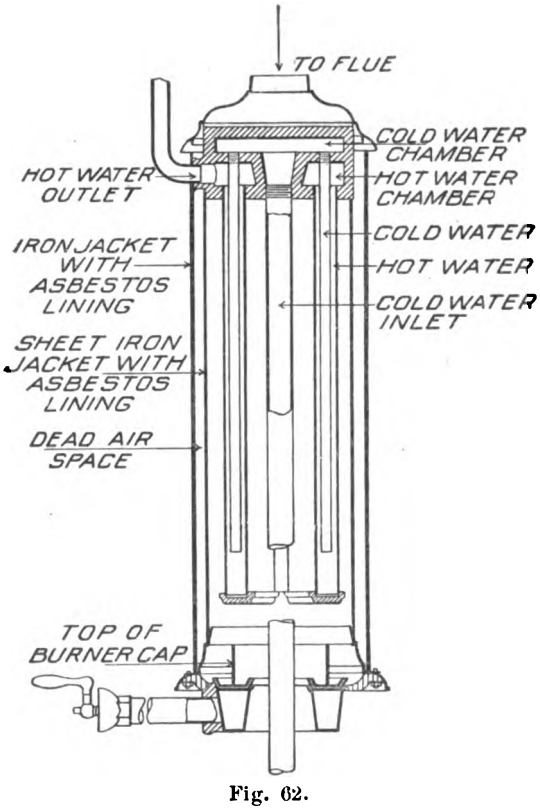


Fig. 62.

ers, which is ignited by the pilot light, and in a few moments hot water will flow from the faucet. The heater shown has a capacity of 9 gallons per minute from a temperature of 55 to 130°.

Another type is that known as the instantaneous water heater, one form of which is shown in Fig. 65. This is made especially for bathrooms, and will produce a continuous stream of hot water whenever desired. The heater is shown in section in Fig. 66, in

Digitized by Google

which A is the gas valve, B the water valve, D the pilot light, FF the burners, I a conical heating ring, J a disc to retard and spread the rising heat, K a perforated copper screen, and L a revolving water distributer. In this heater the water is exposed directly to the heated air and gases in addition to its passing over the heated surface of the ring I. The upward arrows show the path of the heat, and the downward arrows the passage of the water.

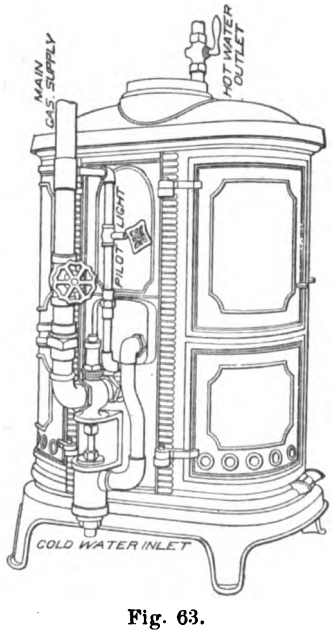


Fig. 63.

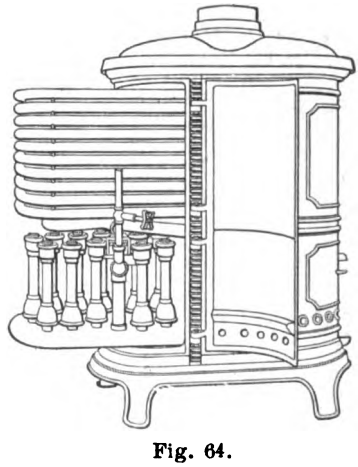


Fig. 64.

GAS METERS.

The meter should be placed in such a position that it is easily accessible and may be read without the use of an artificial light. It is connected into the system between the service pipe and main riser to the building, the connections being made as shown in Fig. 67.

Different meters vary but little in the arrangement of the dials. In large meters there are often as many as five dials, but those used for dwelling houses usually have but three. Fig. 68 shows the common form of index of a dry meter. The small index hand, D, on the upper dial is not taken into consideration when

Digitized by Google

reading the meter, but is used merely for testing. The three dials, which record the consumption of gas, are marked A, B and C, and each complete revolution of the index hand denotes 1,000, 10,000 and 100,000 cubic feet respectively. It should be noted that the index hands on the three dials do not move in the same direction:

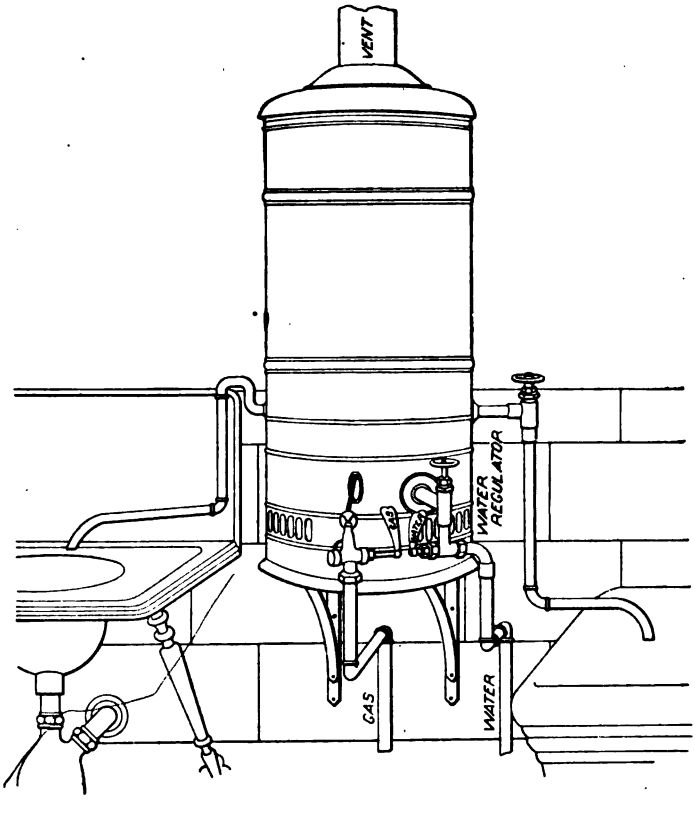


Fig. 65.

A and C move with the hands of a watch, and B in the opposite direction. The index shown in Fig. 68 should be read 48,700. Suppose after being used for a time, the hands should have the position shown in Fig. 69. This would read 64,900, and the amount of gas used during this time would equal the difference in the readings: 64,900 — 48,700 = 16,200 cubic feet.

Digitized by Google

GAS MACHINES.

While the manufacture of gas for cities and towns is a matter beyond the scope of gas fitting, it may not be out of place to take up briefly the operation of one of the forms of gas machines

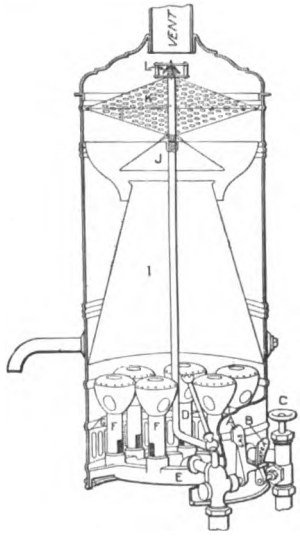


Fig. 66.

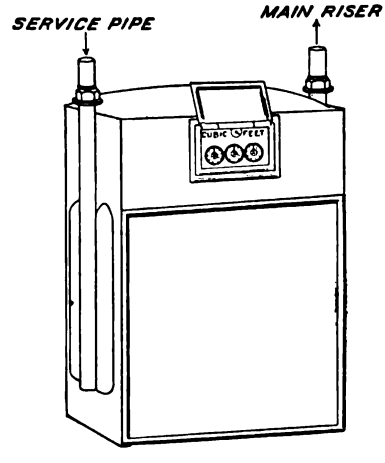


Fig. 67.

which are used for supplying private residences or manufacturing plants.

The general arrangement of the apparatus is shown in Fig.

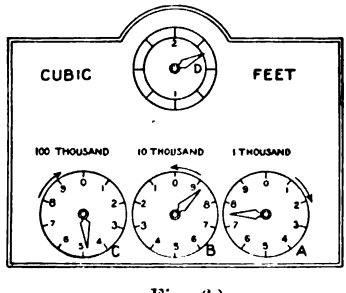


Fig. 68.

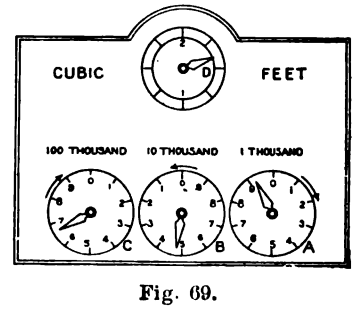


Fig. 69.

70, which consists of a generator, containing evaporating pans or chambers, and an automatic air pump, together with the necessary piping for air and gas. The gas made by these machines is com-

Digitized by Google

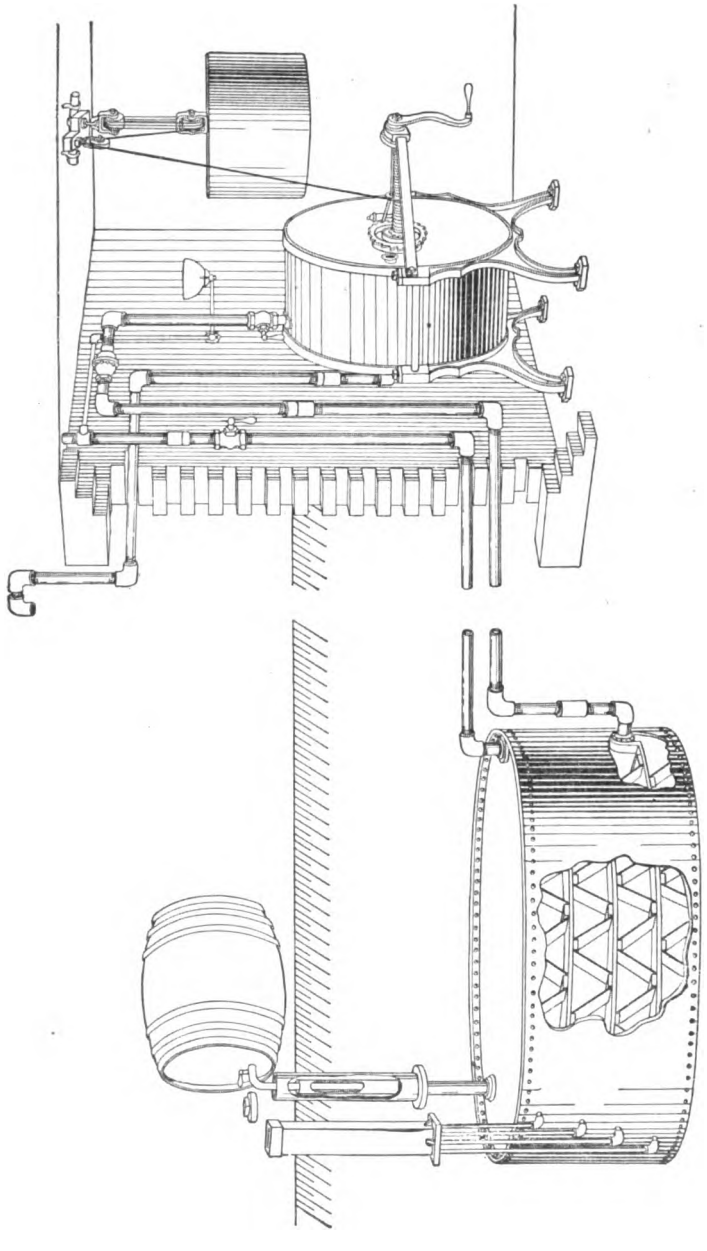


Fig. 70.

Digitized by Google

monly known as carbureted air gas, being common air impregnated with the vapors of gasoline. It burns with a rich bright flame similar to coal gas, and is conducted through pipes and fixtures in the same manner.

Referring to Fig. 70, the automatic air pump is seen in the cellar of the house, and connected to it and running underground are the air and gas pipes connecting it with the generator, which may be a hundred feet or more away if desired. When the machine is in operation, the pump forces a current of air through the generator, where it becomes carbureted, thus forming an illuminating gas that is returned through the gas pipe to the house, where it is distributed to the fixtures in the usual way. The operation is automatic, gas being generated only as fast and in such quantities as required for immediate consumption. The process is continuous while the burners are in use, but stops as soon as the lights are extinguished. Power for running the air compressor is obtained by the weight shown at the right, which must be wound up at intervals, depending upon the amount of gas consumed. An air compressor to be run by water power is shown in Fig. 71.

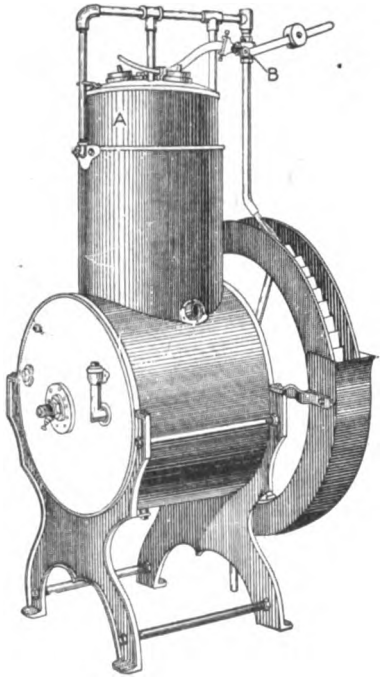


Fig. 71.

The action of this machine is entirely automatic, the supply of water being controlled by the rising and falling of the holder A, which, being attached by a lever to the valve B, regulates the amount of water supplied to the wheel in exact proportion to the number of burners lighted. If all the burners are shut off, the pressure accumulating in the holder A raises it and shuts the water off. If a burner is lighted, the holder falls slightly, allow-

Digitized by Google

ing just enough water to fall upon the wheel to furnish the amount of gas required. A pump or compressor of this kind requires about two gallons of water per hour for each burner. The advan-

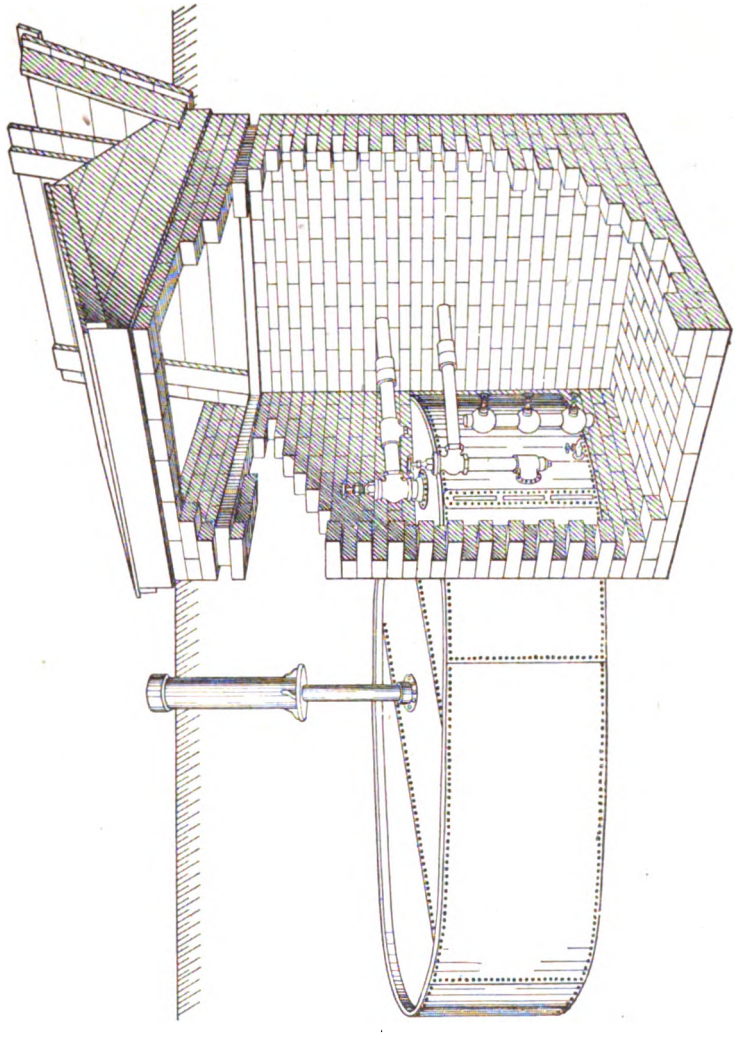


Fig. 72.

tages of a water compressor over one operated by a weight are that it requires no attention, never runs down and is ready for immediate use at all times.

The generator is made up of a number of evaporating pans or chambers placed in a cylinder one above another. These chambers

Digitized by Google

are divided by supporting frames into winding passages, which give an extended surface for evaporation. Fig. 72 shows the generator when set with a brick pit and manhole at one side. It is supplied with mica gages for showing the amount of gasoline in each pan, and with tubes and valves for distributing it to the different pans as required. In small plants the generator is usually buried without the pit being provided, but for larger plants the setting shown in Fig. 72 is recommended. Carbureted air gas of standard quality contains 15 per cent of vapor to 85 per cent of air. A regulator or mixer for supplying gas having these proportions is shown in section in Fig. 73. It consists of a cast-iron case in which is suspended a sheet-metal can, B, filled with air and closely sealed. The balance beam E, to which this is hung, is supported by the pin H, on agate bearings. Since the weight of the can B is exactly balanced by the ball on the beam E, movement of B can only be caused by a difference in the weight or density of the gas inside the chamber A and surrounding the can B. If the gas becomes too dense, B rises and opens the valve C, thus admitting more air; and if it becomes too light, C closes and partially or wholly shuts off the air, as may be required.

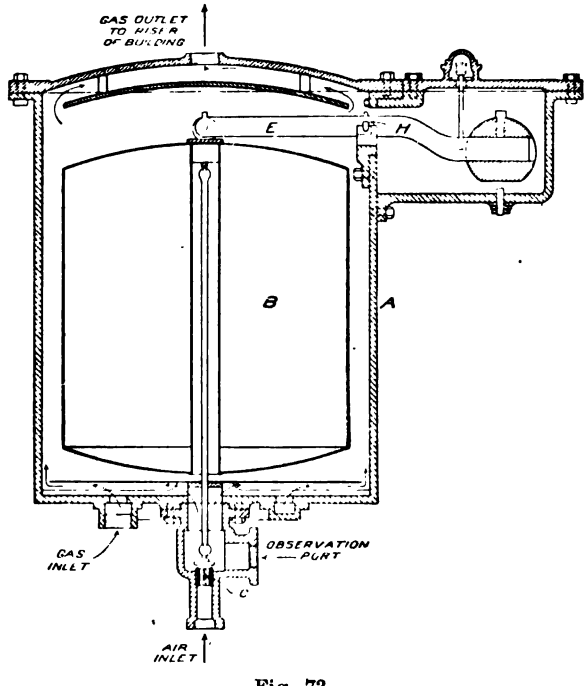
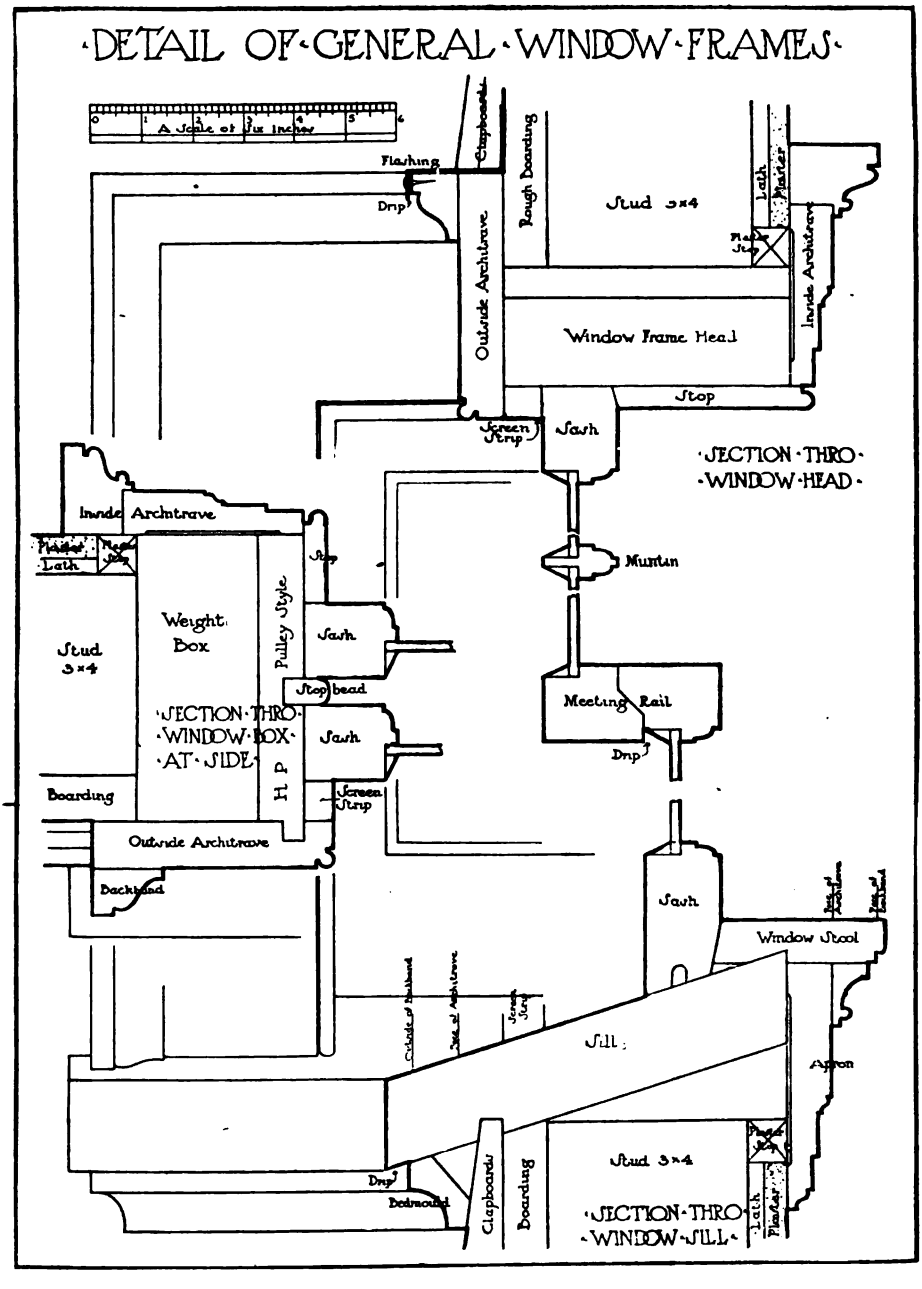


Fig. 73.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google



TYPICAL ARCHITECT'S DRAWING SHOWING DETAILS OF WINDOW FRAME.

Digitized by Google

CARPENTRY.

PART I.

The art of Carpentry has been practiced by men in all ages and in all lands, and is likely to continue as long as there is any timber out of which dwellings and utensils can be made. Under different conditions and in widely separated parts of the world there have been developed various methods of doing the same work, and men have attained to various degrees of proficiency in the handling of tools, and in the making of the tools themselves. From the time when the primitive man built himself a hut out of brush-wood and mud, to the present day, when we live in comfortable dwellings built of seasoned timber, there has been constant progress and development, so that there has accumulated a vast amount of experience to which we are the fortunate heirs.

The carpenter has always found his material at hand, provided by nature, and needing only to be cut down and shaped to suit his purposes. In those places where wood did not grow near by, there were no carpenters; but instead, workers in stone or clay.

A knowledge of the characteristics of wood, which plays so important a part in all our lives and which is so plentiful in our own land, is likely to prove of advantage to anyone, and is an absolute necessity to a carpenter. Let us therefore, first of all, devote some space to a consideration of timber, both in its natural state, and in its commercial form as prepared for the market.

NATURAL TIMBER.

Wood is one of the most common of building materials, and may be seen everywhere in its natural state as well as in various forms prepared for use. It is all taken originally from some kind of tree or shrub, and a consideration of the manner of growth of the tree itself will explain many peculiarities and defects of timber in its commercial form.

Digitized by Google

Classes of Trees. The trees from which most of our timber is taken are of two kinds: the "broad-leaved," such as the oak, poplar, and maple, and the "conifer" or "needle-leaved," such as the pines, the fir, and the cedar. In the South some timber is used which comes from another class of trees, of which the palms are the most common representatives; the use of this timber, however, is very limited. In general, it may be said that the wood from the broad-leaved trees is "hardwood" while that from the conifers is "soft-wood," but this rule does not hold true in all cases.

Manner of Growth. There is a marked difference between the three classes of trees mentioned above in regard to their manner of growth. While the members of the third class, the palms and others, grow only at the top, and have the same diameter of trunk after years of development, the members of the other two classes increase in size of trunk as well as in height. Each year a new layer of wood is formed on the outside of the trunk and branches, underneath the bark, and the age of the tree may usually be determined by counting the number of layers. In the center of the tree there is always a small whitish part, called the "pith," about which the wood itself is arranged in concentric rings, as shown in Fig. 1, in which A is the pith, B the woody part of the tree, and C the bark. The arrangement of the wood in concentric rings is due to the fact that it was formed gradually, one layer being added each year, and for this reason the rings or layers are called "annual rings."

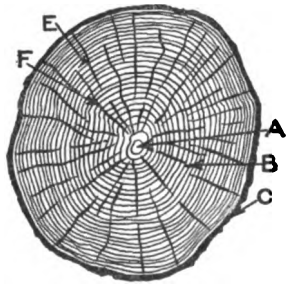


Fig. 1. Section of Log.

The wood nearest the center, or pith, is considerably harder and darker in color than that which is on the outside nearer the bark; it is called the "heartwood" to distinguish it from the other which is called the "sapwood." Only the heartwood should be used for building work. The reason why it is harder than the sapwood is that it is older and has been compressed more and more each year as the tree has increased in size, and the pores have gradually become filled up. The sapwood is soft and of lighter color and shows that it has been recently formed. The time required to transform the wood from sapwood into heartwood varies from nine to thirty-five

Digitized by Google

years, according to the nature of the tree, and those trees which perform this hardening in the shortest time are usually the most durable. The sap rises in the spring from the roots of the tree to the branches and twigs, forming the leaves, and in the autumn it flows back again between the wood and the bark. Thus a new annual ring is formed.

The width of the annual rings varies from $\frac{1}{50}$ inch to $\frac{1}{8}$ inch according to the character of the tree and the position of the ring. In general it may be said that the widest rings are found nearest the center, or pith, and that they grow regularly narrower as they approach the bark. Also they are wider at the bottom of the trunk than at the top. The rings are very seldom circular or regular in form, but follow the contour of the tree trunk.

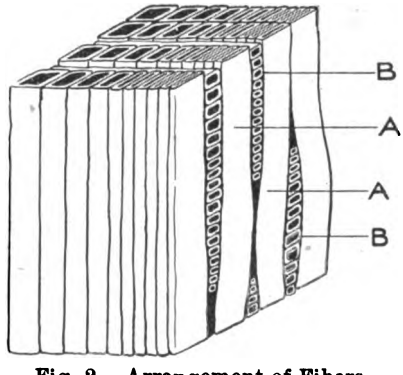


Fig. 2. Arrangement of Fibers.

In addition to the annual rings there may be seen on the cross-section of any log other lines which run from the center toward the bark at right angles to the annual rings. These are called the "medullary" rays. Usually they do not extend to the bark, but alternate with others which start at the bark and run inward toward the center but are lost before they reach the pith. This is shown at E and F in Fig. 1.

Details of Structure. The two above-mentioned classes of wood differ considerably in their structure, that of the conifers being very simple and regular in arrangement, while that of the broad-leaved trees is complex and irregular. The wood is made up of bundles of fibers or long tubes, parallel to the stem of the tree, which are crossed by other fibers that form the medullary rays, passing from the pith to the bark and binding the whole together. Besides these there are resin ducts and other fibers scattered through the trunk of the tree. The arrangement is shown in Fig. 2. A A are the long fibers, and B B the pith or medullary fibers. Of course these are so small that the individual fibers cannot be distinguished without the aid of a powerful microscope. In pine more than fifteen thousand pith rays occur on a square inch of section.

Digitized by Google

Grain of Wood. Woods are commonly spoken of as "fine-grained," "coarse-grained," "cross-grained," or "straight-grained." The wood is said to be fine-grained when the annual rings are relatively narrow, and coarse-grained when these rings are wide. Fine-grained wood can be made to take a high polish while with coarse-grained wood, in general, this is not possible. When the fibers are straight, and parallel to the direction of the trunk of the tree, the wood is said to be straight-grained, but if they are distorted or if they are twisted so as to be spiral in form, not growing straight up but following around the trunk of the tree, the wood is said to be cross-grained.

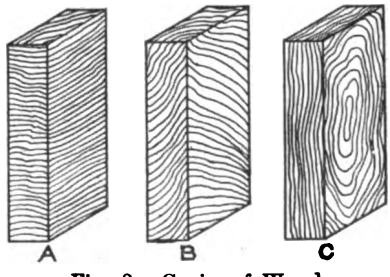


Fig. 3. Grain of Wood.

In Fig. 3 are shown three pieces of timber of which A is absolutely cross-grained, B is partially cross-grained and C is straight-grained.

Defects. Most of the defects which render timber unsuitable for building are due to irregularities in the growth of the tree from which the timber was taken. These defects are known by various names, such as "Heartshakes," "Windshakes," "Starshakes," and "Knots." Other defects are due to deterioration of the timber after it has been in place for some time or even before the tree has been felled, among which are "Dry Rot" and "Wet Rot." The defects of the first class are defects of structure — those of the second class are defects of the material itself.

Fig. 4. Heartshake.

Heartshake. Fig. 4 shows what is known as a heartshake. There is first a small cavity at the heart of the tree caused by decay, and flaws or cracks extend from it out toward the bark. The heartshake is most often found in those trees which are old, rather than in young, vigorous saplings; it is especially to be feared in hemlock timber.

Windshake. Fig. 5 shows what is known as a windshake or cupshake. This is caused by a separation of the annual rings one from another so that a crack is formed in the body of the tree; this

Digitized by Google

crack may extend for a considerable distance up the trunk. This defect is said to be caused by the expansion of the sapwood, and it is also claimed that it is caused by the wrenching to which the tree is subjected by high winds. Windshakes are very often found in pine timber.

A *starshake* is very much like a heartshake, the chief difference being that the starshake cracks extend right across the center of the trunk without any appearance of decay at that point.

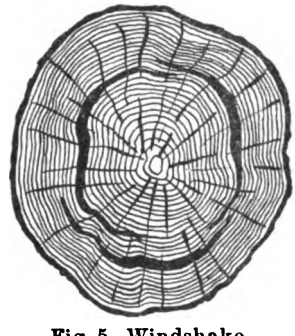


Fig. 5. Windshake.

Dry rot in timber is caused by a fungus growth, and takes place most readily when the timber is in such a position that it is alternately wet and dry. If wood is kept perfectly dry, or, on the other hand, is kept constantly under water, it will last indefinitely without any sign of rot. For this reason piles should always be cut off below the water level. Decay takes place very rapidly when the wood is in a confined position, as when buried in a brick wall, so that the gases cannot escape. It is also hastened by warmth, and is much more common in the South than in the northern states. Decay may be prevented by introducing into the timber certain salts, such as the salts of mercury. It may also be prevented by heating the wood to a temperature above 150 degrees Fahrenheit and maintaining that temperature. All wood should be perfectly seasoned before being painted, and good ventilation should always be provided for. Wood should be especially protected whenever in contact with masonry from which it may absorb moisture.

Wet rot is a form of decay which takes place in the growing tree. It is caused by the tree becoming saturated with water, as in a swamp or bog, and it may be communicated from one piece of timber to another by contact.

Warping in timber is the result of the evaporation or drying out of the water which is held in the cell walls of the wood in its natural state, and the consequent shrinkage of the piece. If timber were perfectly regular in structure, so that the shrinkage would be the same in every part, there would be no warping; but wood is made up of a large number of fibers, the walls of which are of differ-

Digitized by Google

ent thickness in different parts of the tree or log, so that in drying one part shrinks much more than another. Since the wood is rigid, one part cannot shrink or swell without changing the shape of the whole piece, because the block as a whole must adjust itself to the new conditions; consequently the timber warps.

In Fig. 6, if the fibers in the top portion of the piece near the face *a b e* happen to have, on the average, thicker walls than those

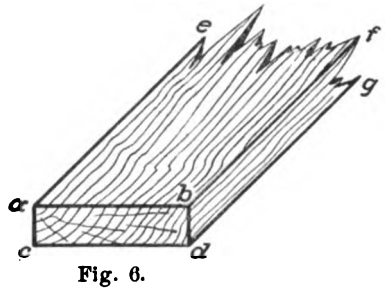


Fig. 6.

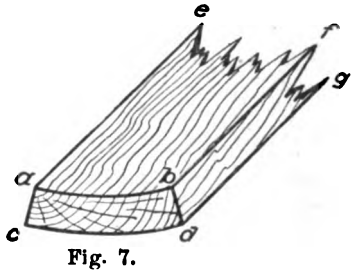


Fig. 7.

in the bottom portion, near the face *c d g*, the top part will shrink more than the bottom; the distance *a b*, originally equal to the distance *c d*, becomes smaller and the shape of the whole piece changes, as shown in Fig. 7.

The only way in which warping can be prevented is to have the timber thoroughly dried out before it is used. After it is once thoroughly seasoned it will not warp unless it is allowed to absorb more moisture. All wood that is to be used for fine work, where any warping after it is in place will spoil the appearance of the whole job, must be so seasoned, either in the open air or in a specially prepared kiln.

The wood of the "conifers," which is very regular in its structure, shrinks more evenly and warps less than the wood of the broad-leaved trees with its more complex and irregular structure. Sapwood, also, as a rule shrinks more than does heartwood.

Checks also are due to the uneven shrinkage of timber. In any log there is a chance for the wood to shrink in two directions — along the radial lines following the direction of the medullary rays, and around the circumference of the log, following the direction of the annual rings. If the wood shrinks in both directions at the same rate, the only result will be a decrease in the volume of the log, but if it shrinks more rapidly in one of these directions than it does in

Digitized by Google

the other, the log must crack around the outside as shown in Fig. 8. This cracking is called "checking," and is likely to take place. In timber which has been prepared for the market it shows itself in the form of cracks which extend along the faces of solid square timbers and boards, and seriously impairs the strength. Fig. 9 shows checks in a square post or column.

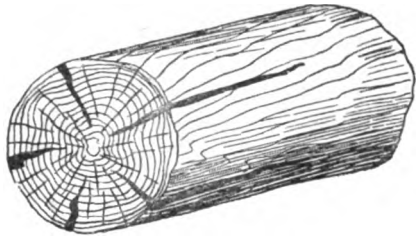


Fig. 8. Cracks Caused by Shrinkage.

Knots are very common in all timber. They are formed at the junction of the main tree trunk and a branch or limb. At such points the fibers in the main trunk, near the place where the branch comes in, do not follow straight along up the trunk, but are turned aside and follow along the branch as shown in Fig. 10. Frequently a branch may be broken off near the trunk while the tree is still young, and the tree continue to grow. The trunk will increase in size until the end of the branch, which was left behind buried in the main trunk, is entirely covered up. Meanwhile the end of the branch dies and a knot is formed. This bit of dead wood has no connection with the living wood about it. In time it works loose, and when the tree is sawed up into boards the knot may drop out. A knot does not seriously impair a piece subjected to a compressive stress, so long as it remains in place, but it greatly weakens a piece subjected to tension. A knot always spoils the appearance of any wood which is to be polished.

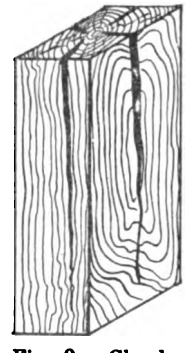


Fig. 9. Checks in Square Post.

Fig. 10. Knots.

TIMBER IN ITS COMMERCIAL FORM.

Conversion of Timber. Timber may be found in lumber yards in certain shapes ready for use, having been cut from the logs and relieved of the outside covering, or bark. There are various methods of cutting up the logs to form boards, planks and heavy timbers. If the log is to be squared off to form but

Digitized by Google

one heavy beam, a good rule to follow is to divide the diameter into three equal parts, and draw perpendiculars to the diameter at these points, one on each side of the diameter, as shown at A and B in Fig. 11. The points *c* and *d* in which these perpendiculars cut the circumference of the tree trunk, together with the points *e* and *f* in which the chosen diameter cuts the circumference of the tree trunk, will be the four corners of the timber. The lines joining these points will give an outline of the timber. This will be found to be the largest and best timber which can be cut from the log.

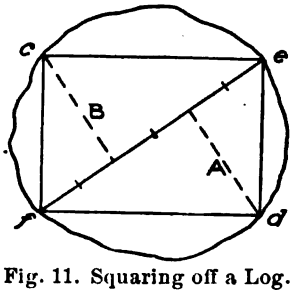


Fig. 11. Squaring off a Log.

Another good rule is to divide the diameter of the log into *four* equal parts and proceed in the same way as described above, using the outside quarter points on the diameter as shown in Fig. 12. This method will give a stiffer beam but it will not be so strong.

In Fig. 13 are shown several different methods of cutting planks from a log. First it is divided into quarters, and the planks are cut out as shown. The method shown at A, called "quarter sawing," is the best. All the planks are cut radiating from the center and there will be no splitting and warping. A fairly good method is that shown at B, where the planks are pretty nearly in radial lines and may be much more easily cut out than can those shown at A. The method shown at C is a common one and leads to fairly good results, although only the plank in the center is on a radial line. It is practically as good a method as that shown at B and is much more simple. The method shown at D is not so good as the others; planks cut in this way being very liable to warp and twist. If the silver grain, caused by the cutting of the medullary rays, is desired, the planks should be cut as at A or B.

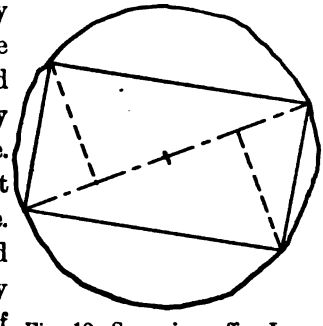


Fig. 12. Squaring off a Log.

Planks may sometimes be simply sliced from the log as shown in Fig. 14, without first dividing it into quarters. This is the worst possible way to cut them, as the natural tendency of the timber to

Digitized by Google

shrink causes the planks to curl up as shown in Fig. 15. It is almost impossible to flatten them out again and they cannot be used as they are.

VARIETIES OF TIMBER.

There are a great many different kinds of timber growing in the United States, and a considerable quantity is imported from other countries. Each variety possesses certain characteristics which render it especially suitable for use in one part of the build-

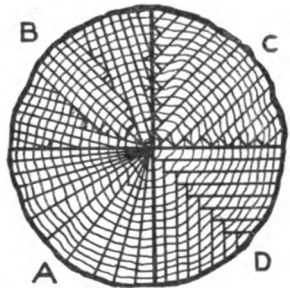


Fig. 13. Quarter Sawing.

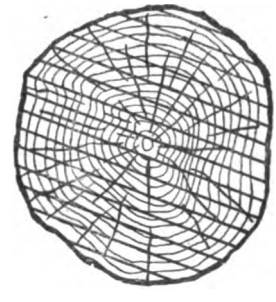


Fig. 14. Straight Sawing.

ing, while the same peculiarities of growth or of texture may unfit it for use in another place.

For timbers which are to be partly buried in the ground a wood is required which is able to withstand the deteriorating effects of contact with the earth; and for this purpose chestnut, white cedar, cypress, redwood or locust may be used.

For light framing we need a cheap, light wood free from structural defects such as knots and shakes, and which can be obtained in fairly long, straight pieces. Spruce, yellow pine, white pine and hemlock all satisfy these requirements fairly well, spruce being perhaps a little better than the others, and at any rate more popular.

For heavy framing, such as wooden trusses, girders and posts, we require a strong timber and one which can be obtained in large, long pieces. Georgia pine, Oregon pine and white oak may all be used for such work, and also Norway pine and Canadian red pine.

Fig. 15.

A wood which is easily worked and which will also withstand the effects of the weather is needed for the outside finish; for this we select white pine and

Digitized by Google

also cypress and redwood. The same woods are used for shingles, clapboards and siding, with the addition of cedar for shingles, and sometimes Oregon pine and spruce for siding.

For the interior finish is chosen a wood which will make a pleasing appearance, and which will take a polish; while for floors, hardness and resistance to wear are the further requirements. For floors, oak, hard pine, and maple are good; and for the rest of the interior finish, white pine, cypress and redwood, or any of the hard woods such as ash, butternut, cherry and mahogany, may be selected.

Some of the more important varieties of timber used in carpentry will now be mentioned, and a brief description of each kind given to convey an idea of its characteristics and the part of the country from which it comes.

EVERGREENS OR CONIFERS.

Cedar. There are five different kinds of white cedar in the United States, of which four are different species of the white cedar, and the fifth is what is known as "canoe" cedar. The wood is not very strong, but is light and soft, possessing considerable stiffness and a fine texture. In color it is grayish brown, the sapwood being, however, of a lighter shade than the heartwood. It seasons quickly, is very durable and does not shrink or check to any great extent. Its principal use in carpentry is for shingles, for which its durability makes it especially valuable, and for posts and ties. The trees are usually scattered among others of different kinds, forming occasionally, however, quite considerable forests. They are found all through the northern part of the country and on the Pacific coast in California, Oregon and Washington. Some of the trees are of medium size while others are very large, especially the canoe cedar in the Northwest.

In addition to the white cedars, there are the red cedars, which are similar to the others, but have a somewhat finer texture. There are two varieties, the red cedar and redwood, the former found principally in the southern states and the latter only in California. Red cedar is used but little in building construction except for cabinet work and veneers, but redwood has been used extensively in the West for outside finish, shingles and clapboards. Its resistance to

Digitized by Google

fire is remarkable, which makes it valuable for the exterior of dwellings, but it is too soft for interior finish.

Cypress. This wood is found in the southern states only, where it grows in the swamp land along the banks of the rivers. Although there are a great many varieties, they are similar in their general characteristics and differ only in quality. "Gulf cypress," growing near the Gulf of Mexico, is the best. The timber is light, straight-grained and soft, and is used for shingles and siding, water tables, sills and gutters. It does not warp and shows great resistance to dampness.

Hemlock. There are two varieties of hemlock, one found in the northern states, from Maine to Minnesota, and also along the Alleghanies, southward to Georgia and Alabama; and the other found in the West, from Washington to California, and eastward to Montana. The eastern tree is smaller than the western, and its wood is lighter and softer and generally inferior. The timber is of a light reddish-gray color, fairly durable, but shrinks and checks badly, and is rough, brittle, and usually cross-grained. It is sometimes used in the East for cheap framing, but it is so liable to imperfections such as windshakes and starshakes that it is not suitable for this purpose. It is often used for rough boarding or sheathing.

Spruce. There are three kinds of spruce — white, black, and red, of which the white spruce is the variety commonly found on the market. The wood is light and soft, but fairly strong, and is of a whitish color. It is much used in the northeastern states for light framing, but can be obtained only in small sizes. It is considered by many to be the best framing timber, excepting the pines.

The white spruce is found scattered throughout all of the northern states, along the streams and lakes, the largest varieties being in Montana.

The black spruce is found in Canada and in some of the northern states. It is distinguished from the other varieties only by its leaves and bark.

The red spruce is sometimes known as Newfoundland red pine and is found in the northeastern part of North America. Its wood is similar to the black spruce.

Pines. There are two distinct classes of pines used in building work, the soft and the hard pines, both of which are found in great

Digitized by Google

abundance scattered over the whole of the United States. The great variety of uses to which pine timber may be applied in building construction and the ease with which it can be cut and shipped to market, make it the most popular wood in use at the present time. The softer varieties are used for outside finishing of all sorts, and the harder kinds for heavy framing and for flooring. The tree itself is very tall, with a straight trunk and few branches, so that timbers can be obtained in large sizes and great lengths. There are many different kinds of pines, which are recognized in various parts of the country under various names, but there are five general classes into which the species is commonly divided, though the same timber may be called by different names in two different localities, as will be seen.

1. The term "hard pine" is used to designate any pine which is not white pine, and is a very general classification, though it is often met with in specifications and in works on Carpentry.

2. "White pine," "soft pine" and "pumpkin pine" are terms which are used in the eastern states for the timber from the white pine tree, while on the Pacific coast the same terms refer to the wood of the sugar pine.

3. The name "yellow pine" when used in the northeastern part of the country applies almost always to the pitch pine or to one of the southern pines, but in the West it refers to the bull pine.

4. "Georgia pine" or "longleaf yellow pine" is a term used to distinguish the southern hard pine which grows in the coast region from North Carolina to Texas, and which furnishes the strongest pine lumber on the market.

5. "Pitch pine" may refer to any of the southern pines, or to pitch pine proper, which is found along the coast from New York to Georgia and among the mountains of Kentucky.

Of the soft pines there are two kinds, the white pine and the sugar pine, the latter being a western tree found in Oregon and California, while the former is found in all the northern states from Maine to Minnesota. There is also a smaller species of white pine found along the Rocky Mountain slopes from Montana to New Mexico.

There are ten different varieties of hard pine, of which, however, only five are of practical importance in the building industry. These are the "longleaf southern pine," the "shortleaf southern pine," the "yellow pine," the "loblolly pine" and the "Norway pine."

Digitized by Google

The longleaf pine, also known as the "Georgia pine," the "yellow pine" and the "long straw pine," is a large tree, which forms extensive forests in the coast region from North Carolina to Texas. It yields very hard, strong timber which can be obtained in long, straight pieces of very large size.

The loblolly pine is also a large tree, but has more sapwood than the longleaf pine, and is coarser, lighter and softer. It is the common lumber pine from Virginia to South Carolina, and is also found in Texas and Arkansas. It is known as well by the name of "slash pine," "old field pine," "rosemary pine," "sap pine," and "short straw pine," and in the West as the Texas pine.

The shortleaf pine is much like the loblolly pine and is the chief lumber tree of Missouri and Arkansas. It is also found in North Carolina and Texas.

The Norway pine is a northern tree found in Canada and the northern states. It never forms forests, but is scattered among other trees, and sometimes forms small groves. The wood is fine-grained and of a white color, but is largely sapwood and is not durable.

BROAD-LEAVED TREES.

Ash is a wood that is frequently employed for interior finishing in public buildings, such as schoolhouses, and in the cheaper classes of dwelling houses. It is one of the cheapest of the hard woods; it is strong, straight-grained and tough, but is coarse in texture. It shrinks moderately, seasons with little injury, and will take a good polish. The trees do not grow together in forests, but are scattered. They grow rapidly, and attain only medium height. Of the six different species found in the United States, only two, the "white ash" and the "black ash," are used extensively in building work. The first is more common in the basin of the Ohio River, but is also found in the North from Maine to Minnesota, and in the South, in Texas. The black ash is found from Maine to Minnesota, and southward to Virginia and Arkansas. There is very little difference between the two species. The black ash is also known as the "hoop ash" and the "ground ash."

Beech. Another wood used to some extent for inside finish is the beech. It is heavy, hard and strong, but of coarse texture like the ash. In color it is light brown, or white. It shrinks and checks

Digitized by Google

during the process of drying and is not durable when placed in contact with the ground. It works easily, stands well, and takes a good polish.

Birch is a very handsome wood of a brown color and with a satiny luster. It takes a good polish, works easily, and does not warp after it is in place, but it is not durable if exposed. It is used quite extensively for inside finish, and to imitate cherry and mahogany, as it has a grain which is very similar to the grain of these woods. The trees are of medium size and form large forests. They are found throughout the eastern part of the United States.

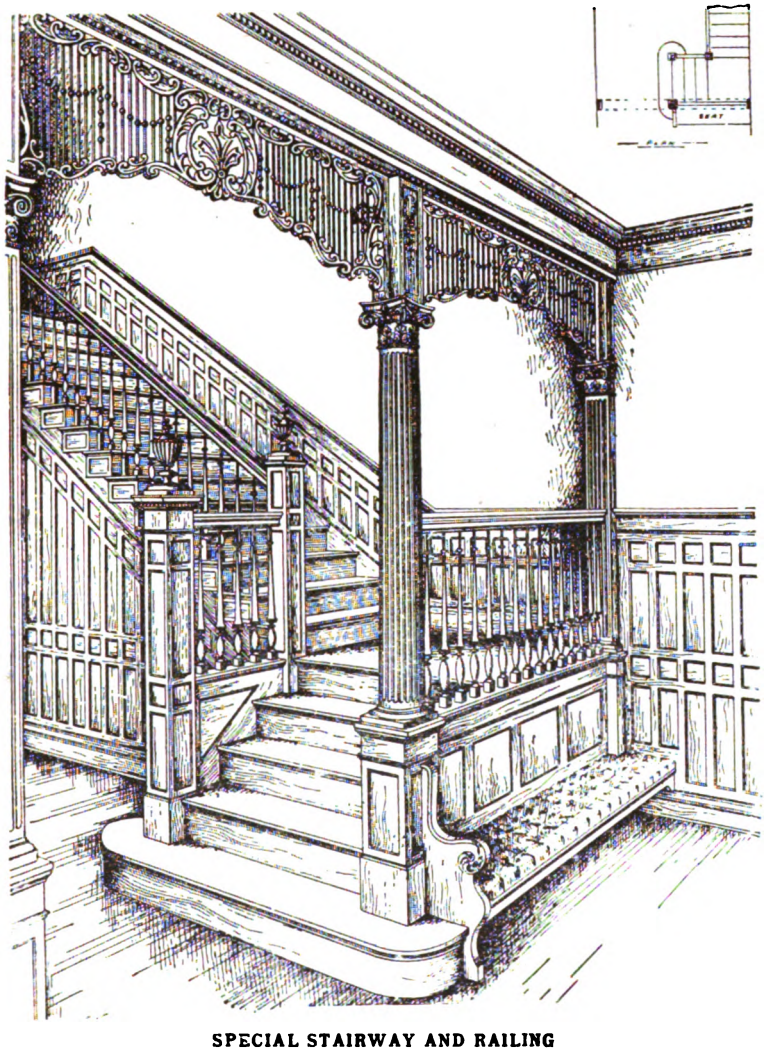
Butternut is also used as a finishing wood, and is cheaper than many of the other harder woods. It is light, but not strong, and is fairly soft. In color it is light brown. The trees, of medium size, are found in the eastern states from Maine to Georgia.

Cherry is a wood which is frequently used as a finishing wood for the interior of dwellings and of cars and steamers; but owing to the fact that it can be obtained only in narrow boards, it is most suitable for moulded work, and work which is much cut up. The wood is heavy, hard, strong and of fine texture. The heartwood is of a reddish brown color, while the sapwood is yellowish white. It is very handsome and takes a good polish, works easily and stands well. It shrinks considerably in drying. The timber is cut from the wild black cherry tree, which is of medium size and found scattered among the other broad-leaved trees along the western slope of the Alleghanies and as far west as Texas.

Chestnut timber is used in cabinet work, for interior finishing, and sometimes for heavy construction. It is light, fairly soft, but not strong. It has a rather coarse texture, works easily and stands well, but shrinks and checks in drying. The timber is very durable. The tree grows in the region of the Alleghanies, from Maine to Michigan, and southward to Alabama.

Elm. There are five species of elm trees in the United States, scattered throughout the eastern and central states. The trees are usually large and of rapid growth, and do not form forests. The timber is hard and tough, frequently cross-grained, hard to work, and shrinks and checks in drying. The wood has not been used very extensively in building, but has a beautiful figured grain, can take a high polish, and is well adapted to staining. The texture is coarse to fine, and the color is brown with shades of gray and red.

Digitized by Google



SPECIAL STAIRWAY AND RAILING
Foster-Munger Company

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Gum. The wood of the gum tree is used extensively for cabinet work, furniture, and interior finish. It is of fine texture and handsome appearance, heavy, quite soft, yet strong, and reddish brown in color. It warps and checks badly, is not durable if exposed, and is hard to work. The species of gum tree used in carpentry is the sweet gum, which is of medium size, with straight trunk; it does not form forests, though it is quite abundant east of the Mississippi River.

Maple. Almost all of the maple used in building work comes from the sugar maple tree, which is most abundant in the region of the Great Lakes, but which is also found from Maine to Minnesota, and southward to Florida. The trees are of medium to large size, and form quite considerable forests. The wood is heavy and strong, of fine texture, and often has a fine wavy grain which gives the effect known as "curly." It is of a creamy white color, shrinks moderately, works easily and takes a good polish. It is often used for flooring, and sometimes for other inside finish.

Oak. There are about twenty different kinds of oak to be found in various parts of the United States, but there are three distinctly different species, which are sold separately. These are the "white oak," the "red oak" and the "live oak." The red oak is usually more porous, less durable and of coarser texture than the white oak or the live oak. The trees are of medium size and form a large proportion of all the broad-leaved forests. Live oak was once extensively used, but has become scarce and is now expensive. Both the red oak and the white oak are used for inside finishing, but they are liable to shrink and crack and must therefore be thoroughly seasoned. They are of slightly different color, the white oak having a straw color while the red oak has a reddish tinge, so that they cannot be used together where the work is to be finished by polishing. Oak is always better if quarter-sawed, when it shows what is known as the "silver grain."

Poplar. This wood is also known as "whitewood" and "tulip wood." There are a number of different varieties growing in various parts of the country. The tree is large, and is most common in the Ohio Basin, but does not form forests. The wood is light, soft, free from knots, and of fine texture. In color it is white, or yellowish-white, and frequently it has a satiny luster. It can be so finished as to retain its natural appearance, but it is often stained to imitate

Digitized by Google

some of the more costly woods, such as cherry. It is used extensively for cheap inside finish and fittings, such as shelving, and sometimes for doors, but it warps badly if it is not thoroughly seasoned.

Sycamore is frequently used for finishing, and is a very handsome wood. It is heavy, hard, strong, of coarse texture, and is usually cross-grained. It is hard to work, and shrinks, warps, and checks considerably. The tree is of large size and rapid growth, found in all parts of the eastern United States, but is most common along the Ohio and Mississippi Rivers.

Black Walnut is a wood which has been and is still used very extensively for interior finishing and in the manufacture of furniture. It is a heavy, hard timber, of coarse texture, and of a dark-brown color. Very handsome pieces having a beautiful figure, may be selected for veneers for furniture and cabinet work. Although the wood shrinks somewhat in drying, it works easily, stands well, and will take a very good polish. The tree is large and of rapid growth. It was formerly very abundant in the Alleghany region, and was found from New England to Texas and from Michigan to Florida, but it is now becoming scarcer and the timber is expensive.

Imported Timber. Besides the woods which grow in the United States, a number of others are brought in from foreign lands for use in the best grade of public buildings and private residences. The most popular of these are the mahogany, rosewood, satinwood, French burl, and Circassian walnut.

Mahogany comes from Cuba and Mexico, and formerly was obtained also from Santo Domingo and Honduras. It is generally imported in the rough log and cut up by the purchasers as it is required. The wood is easy to work, will take an excellent polish, and stays in place very well if it is well seasoned. It varies in color from very light to deep red and becomes darker with age. It is usually employed in the form of veneers on account of its cost.

Satinwood comes from the West Indies, French burl from Persia, and Circassian walnut from near the Black Sea. They are all very expensive and are used only as veneers, and in only the finest work.

GENERAL CHARACTERISTICS OF TIMBER.

In speaking of wood we are accustomed to use certain words to express our idea of its mechanical properties, or of its probable

Digitized by Google

behavior under certain conditions. Thus we say that a wood is hard, or tough, or brittle, or flexible, and frequently we use these terms without having a clear understanding of just what they mean. A very brief discussion of some of these properties or characteristics of timber will now be given in order that we may see what peculiarities of structure or of growth cause them.

Hardness. If a block of wood is struck with a hammer when lying on a bench, the hammer-head will make an impression or dent in the wood, which will be deeper or shallower according as the wood is soft or hard. A wood is said to be very hard when it requires a pressure of about 3,000 pounds per square inch to make an impression one-twentieth of an inch deep. A hard wood requires only about 2,500 pounds to produce the same effect. Fairly hard wood will be indented by a pressure of 1,500 pounds, and soft woods require even less. Maple, oak, elm and hickory are very hard; ash, cherry, birch and walnut are hard; the best qualities of pine and spruce are fairly hard; and hemlock, poplar, redwood and butternut are soft.

Toughness. "Toughness" is a word which is often used in relation to timber, and implies both strength and pliability, such as is found in the wood of the elm and hickory. Such timber will withstand the effect of jars and shocks which would cause other woods, like pine, to be shattered.

Flexibility. Timber is said to be flexible when it bends before breaking instead of breaking off short, or, in other words, a flexible wood is the opposite of one which is brittle. The harder woods, taken from the broad-leaved trees, are usually more flexible than the softer woods, taken from the cone-bearing trees. The wood of the main tree trunk is more flexible than that of the limbs and branches, and moist timber is more flexible than dry wood. Hickory is one of the most flexible woods.

Cleavage. Most woods split very easily along the grain, especially when the arrangement of the fibers is simple, as in the conifers. In splitting with an axe, the axe-head acts as a wedge and forces the fibers apart, and usually the split runs along some distance ahead of the axe. Hard woods do not split so easily as soft woods, and seasoned wood not so easily as green wood, while all timber splits most easily along radial lines.

Digitized by Google

THE STEEL SQUARE.

If it is important that a workman should know his material thoroughly, it is even more essential that he should understand his tools and be able to apply them in the most useful way to any particular piece of work. This is especially true of the tool known as the "Carpenter's Steel Square" which is without doubt the most useful of all the tools to be found in a carpenter's chest, but which is not always thoroughly understood even by experienced workmen. As the square will be referred to frequently in these pages a brief description of it will be given.

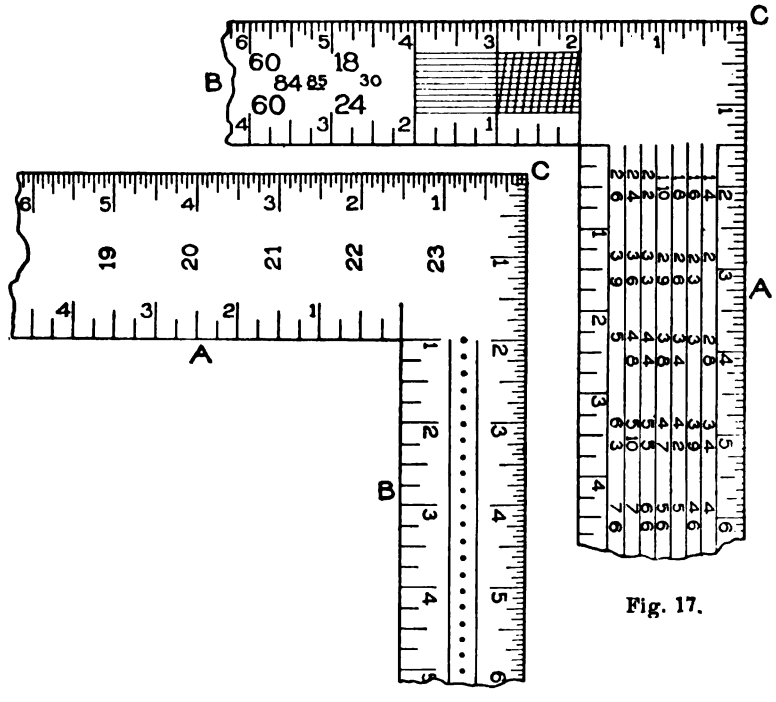


Fig. 16. Carpenter's Steel Square.

Fig. 17.

It is shown in Figs. 16 and 17, each view showing one side of the square. It is essentially a measuring and calculating tool, and all of the various markings and scales found on either side have their own special uses. All squares are not alike, there being several kinds on the market and in daily use among mechanics, but the

Digitized by Google

variations in the markings on the different squares are so slight that if one is explained the others can be readily understood.

There are three parts to the tool which are distinguished by special names, the tongue, the blade and the heel. The longer, wider arm is called the blade; the shorter, narrower arm is called the tongue; and the point in which the tongue and the blade meet, on the outside edge of the square, is called the heel. In the figures, A is the blade, B the tongue, and C the heel. In carefully made tools, the blade is two feet long and two inches wide, while the tongue is from fourteen to eighteen inches long and one and one-half inches wide.

Starting at the heel and reading away from it, the outside edges of the blade and the tongue on both sides of the square, are divided into inches and fractions of an inch, one side of the square showing sixteenths and the other side showing twelfths. Starting at the interior angle opposite the heel, the inside edges are divided in a similar way except that the inches on both sides of the square are divided into eighths only. In some squares one of these scales is shown divided into thirty-seconds of an inch. On one side of the blade the inch marks are numbered in both directions, from the heel outward, and also from the end of the blade inward, toward the heel, so that each inch mark has two numbers, one showing its distance, in inches, from the heel, and the other showing its distance from the end of the blade. These extra numbers are very useful in measuring the depth of mortises and in all similar work. The arrangement is shown in Fig. 16.

On the other side of the blade, which is shown in Fig. 17, in addition to the scales on the two edges, we find a column of figures directly under each of the inch marks on the outer edge. The figures are arranged in eight rows, parallel to the edges of the square, and the rows are marked off by lines running the full length of the blade. These figures enable a man to tell at a glance the number of board-feet in a piece of timber whose dimensions he knows. Under the twelve-inch mark there are figures showing the different lengths which can be measured in this way, so that each row of figures corresponds to a certain length, found under the twelve-inch mark. Under each of the other inch marks there are figures, each of which gives the number of board-feet in a plank one inch thick, whose

Digitized by Google

width in inches is indicated by the number of the inch marks under which the figure is found, and whose length, in feet, is indicated by the number found in the same row with the figure itself under the twelve-inch mark. There are seven or eight different lengths given, and twenty-three different widths for each length, the widths varying from two inches up to twenty-four inches. The figures expressing the board measure are given as feet and inches, the number of feet being separated from the number of inches by a vertical line, with the feet on the left and the inches on the right. For instance, 11 8 is read as eleven feet and eight inches.

On the same side of the square which shows the board measure on the blade, we find on the tongue what is known as the "brace rule," placed in the middle of the tongue between the two scales which are marked off along the edges. The brace rule consists of two similar numbers representing length in feet, placed one above the other, with a third number placed just to the right of them, as $\frac{24}{24}$ 33.94. The two similar numbers represent the length, in feet, of the side of a perfect square, and the third number represents the length of the diagonal of this square, expressed in feet and decimals of a foot. In other words the number to the right is equal to the square root of the sum of the squares of the other two numbers, or is equal to one of these numbers multiplied by the square root of 2, which is 1.414, in accordance with the principle that the length of the diagonal of a square is equal to the length of the side multiplied by the square root of two. There are a number of different sets of figures like this on the tongue of the square; they are very useful in finding the length of braces which make an angle of forty-five degrees with the post into which they frame, or which have a total rise equal to their total run.

On the same side of the tongue which shows the brace rule, placed near the heel of the square, is found another scale which may be called the "Scale of Hundredths." It consists of a number of lines drawn along the tongue parallel to the edges, which are just one-tenth of an inch apart.

They are drawn diagonally, so that the end of one line is directly under the starting point of the next line. By means of this scale any number of hundredths of an inch can be readily measured off. The scale may be seen in Fig. 17.

Digitized by Google

The opposite side of the square shows two lines, drawn near together in the center of the tongue. Parallel to the edges and between these lines a single line of dots is placed. They are a little more than one-fifth of an inch apart and numbered by tens. The dots constitute what is called the "octagon scale," and are used in the process of cutting a stick of octagonal section out of a stick of square section. Suppose for example we take a stick ten inches square and wish to cut from it a stick of octagonal section. We will first draw a line lengthwise in the center of each of the four faces of the square stick. Then applying the square, we measure off on both sides of this center line, in each face, perpendicular to the edges of the piece, as many of the spaces shown by the line of dots as there are inches in the side of the square stick. Thus in this case, we measure off ten spaces on each side of each center line, and then draw through the points thus located two lines in each face, parallel to the center line and equidistant from it. These eight lines represent the eight edges of the octagonal stick, and by cutting away the four corners, the desired shape is obtained.

This completes the description of the markings upon the square, and although there are undoubtedly some squares in use which may not be exactly like the model described, they all have nearly the same markings, arranged in the same way or with but slight variations.

Some of the numerous applications of the square in the solution of practical problems in Carpentry are explained in connection with the work on "framing," and others will suggest themselves to the thoughtful student. The uses to which the instrument may be put are so many and so various that it would require a large book to explain them all, but those who use the tool constantly will readily discover them and perhaps many new ones besides.

LAYING OUT.

Having now considered the material and the most important of the tools with which the carpenter performs his work, we shall pass to a consideration of the work itself, and see how a building of wooden construction is put together.

In undertaking the construction of any building, the first thing to do is to make a very thoughtful examination of the piece of ground upon which the structure is to be placed. This is very important,

Digitized by Google

since the character of the soil upon which a dwelling is located will very largely determine its sanitary condition, and will influence to a great extent the health of the occupants. Very often a difference of a few yards in the position of a building will be enough to cause the difference between a perfectly dry cellar and one which is constantly flooded with water. Water is, indeed, the one thing above all others which must be guarded against, since it is almost impossible to keep it out of a cellar which is sunk in damp ground.

At a certain distance below the surface of the earth there is always to be found what is known as "ground water." This stands always nearly at a level, so that it is not met with so near the surface of a slight knoll or other elevation as in the case of a depression. If possible, the house should be so located that the bottom of the cellar need not come below the ground-water level, and consequently it should be placed on comparatively high land. Below the surface of a hill, however, there may be a stratum of rock which will hold the rain water and prevent it from sinking at once to the ground-water level. Such a ledge of rock causes the water to collect, and then flow off in small subterranean streams, which will almost surely penetrate the walls of a cellar if it happens to be in their path.

A good way to discover the depth of the ground-water level, or the existence of rock ledges beneath the surface of the ground, is to dig a number of small, deep holes at various points of the site. These should be carried below the proposed level of the cellar bottom. A suitable location for the building may thus be chosen.

When the approximate position of the structure has been decided upon, the next step is to "stake it out." That is, the position of the corners of the building must be located and marked in some way on the ground, so that when the excavation is begun the workmen may know what are the exact boundaries of the cellar. This "staking out" should always be carefully attended to, no matter how small the building may be. In works of importance it is always best to have the work done by an engineer, but on small work it is customary for the contractor or the architect to attend to it. It is well to have at hand some instrument with which angles can be accurately measured, such as a transit; but the work can be done very satisfactorily with a tape measure and a "mason's square." This simple instrument is composed of three sticks of timber nailed together as shown in Fig.

Digitized by Google

18, to form a right-angled triangle. It is important that the tape used should be accurate, a steel tape being always preferable, and that the square should give an exact right angle. A mistake in the staking out may cause endless trouble when the erection of the building itself is begun, and it is then too late to remedy it.

There are several different lines which must be located at some time during the construction, and they may as well be settled at the start. These are: the line of excavation, which is outside of all; the face of the basement wall, inside of the excavation line; and, in the case of a masonry building, the ashlar line, which indicates the outside of the brick, or stone walls. In the case of a wooden structure only the two outside lines need be located, and often only the line of the excavation is determined at the outset.

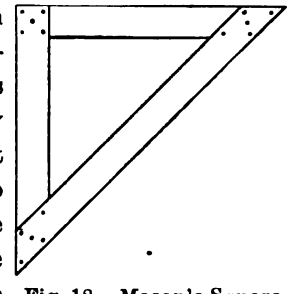


Fig. 18. Mason's Square.

The first thing to do is to lay out upon the ground the main rectangle of the building, after which the secondary rectangles which indicate the position of ells, bay windows, etc., may be located. Starting at any point on the lot where it is desired to place one corner of the building, a stake should be driven into the ground and a line laid out either parallel or perpendicular to the street upon which the structure is to face. At the end of this line, which forms one side of our rectangle, and the length of which is determined by the dimensions of the building, another stake should be driven, and these two stakes will determine the direction and the length of the line. The exact location of the ends of the line may be indicated by a nail driven into the top of each stake.

After one line has been thus laid out, others may be laid out perpendicular to it at its ends, with the aid of the mason's square and the tape measure. The accuracy of the right angle may be checked by the use of the "three-four-five" rule. This rule is based upon the fact that a triangle, whose three sides are respectively three, four, and five feet long, is an exact right-angled triangle, the right angle being always the angle between the three-foot and the four-foot sides. This fact may be proven by applying the well-known theorem which states that the length of the hypothenuse of

Digitized by Google

a right-angled triangle is equal to the square root of the sum of the squares of the other two sides. The rule may be used as follows :

Lay off on one of the side lines already laid out on the ground, any multiple of three feet, as nine feet, or twelve feet. On the other line, presumably at right angles to the first one, lay off the same multiple of four feet, as twelve feet, or sixteen feet. Now a straight line, measured between the points so obtained, should have a length equal to the same multiple of five feet, as fifteen feet or twenty feet.

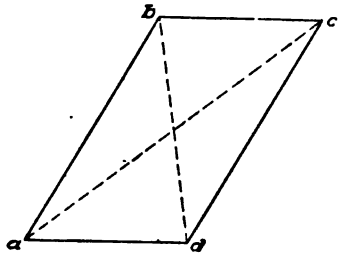


Fig. 19.

If this is not found to be the case, the angle laid out is not an exact right angle, and instead of a rectangle we have a parallelogram as shown in Fig. 19. This will not do at all, and the inaccuracy must be corrected. It is possible to lay out the right angle in the first place by this same method, using two flexible cords, respectively four feet and five feet long. The end of the four-foot cord should be fastened at the end of the side line of the building, and the end of the five-foot cord should be fastened on this same side line, three feet away from the corner. When the loose ends of both cords are held together, and the cords are both drawn taut, the point where the ends meet will be a point on the side line of the building perpendicular to the first side line. It is evident that this point must be just four feet from the corner, and that the distance between it and the point on the other side line, three feet from the corner, must be five feet.

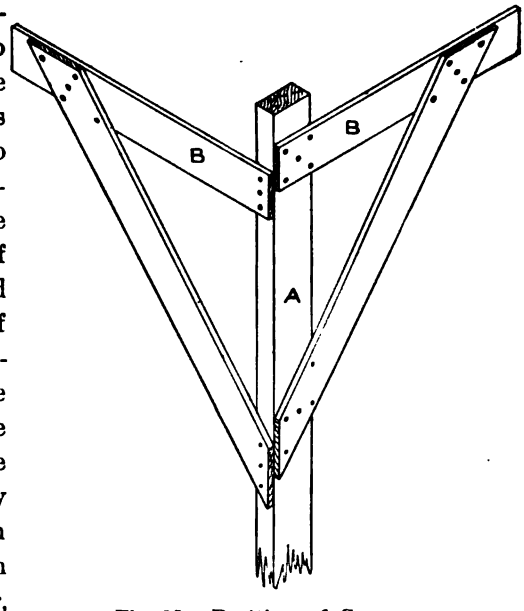


Fig. 20. Position of Corner.

Digitized by Google

After all the corners of the building have been located, their position should be indicated by the use of "batter boards." One of these is shown in Fig. 20. It will be seen that it consists of a post A, which is set up at the corner, together with two horizontal pieces B, B, which extend outward for a short distance along the sides of the rectangle that has been laid out. The horizontal pieces may be braced securely as shown, and the whole will be a permanent indication of the position of the corner. Notches may be cut in the top of the horizontal pieces to indicate the position of the various lines, and cords may then be stretched between the notches from batter board to batter board. These cords will give the exact location of the lines.

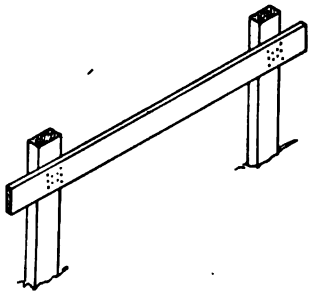


Fig. 21. Batter Boards.

Another way to indicate the position of the lines is by driving small nails into the tops of the batter boards instead of cutting notches in them; but nails may be withdrawn, while the notches, when they are once cut, cannot easily be obliterated.

Batter boards should always be set up very securely, so that they will not be displaced during the building operations. If there is danger that the form of batter board shown in Fig. 20 may be displaced, because of the large size of the structure and the length of time during which they must be used, the form shown in Fig. 21 may be substituted. Two of these, at right angles to each other, must be placed at each corner.

LIGHT FRAMING.

After the building has been laid out, and the batter boards are in place, the next work which a carpenter is called upon to do is the framing. This consists in preparing a skeleton, as we may say, upon which a more or less ornamental covering is to be placed. Just as the skeleton is the most essential part of the human body, so is the frame the most essential part of a wooden building; and upon the strength of this frame depends the strength and durability of the structure. When the carpenter comes to the work, he finds everything prepared for him; the cellar has been dug and the

Digitized by Google

foundation walls and the underpinning have been built. It is his business to raise the framework on top of them. First is the wall, then the floors and the roof. Therefore the subject may be subdivided, and considered under these three main headings. In connection with the walls we may consider the partitions as well as the outside walls, and in connection with the floors we may consider the stairs, while the roof may be taken as comprising the main roof and also subordinate roofs over piazzas, balconies and ells. This covers all the framing that will be found in a wooden building, except special framing, which will be treated later. Whatever framing there is in a brick or stone building is similar to that in a wooden building, with the slight differences which may be noted as we come to them.

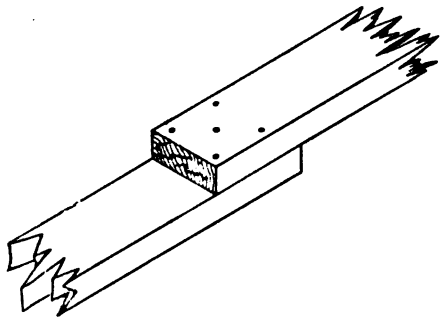


Fig. 22. Splice.

JOINTS AND SPLICES.

Joints. Before beginning a description of the framing of the wall, it will be well to consider the methods employed in joining pieces of timber together. The number of different kinds of connections is really very small, and the principles upon which they are based may be mastered very quickly.

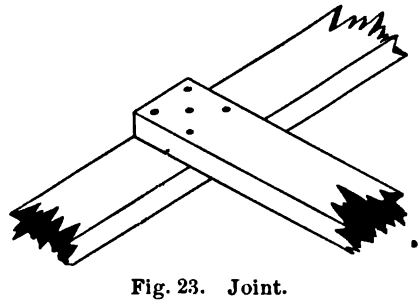


Fig. 23. Joint.

All connections between pieces of timber may be classified as joints or as splices. By a "splice" we mean a connection between two pieces which extend in the same direction, as shown in Fig. 22, and each one of which is merely a continuation of the other. The only reason for the existence of such a connection is the fact that sticks of timber can be obtained only in limited lengths, and must therefore very often be pieced out. By a "joint" we mean any connection between two pieces which come together at an angle, as

Digitized by Google

shown in Fig. 23, and which are therefore not continuous. Such a connection may be required in a great many places, and especially at the corners of a building.

Joints. The principal kinds of joints to be met with in carpentry are the "butt joint," the "mortise-and-tenon joint," the "gained joint," the " halved joint," the "tenon-and-tusk joint," and the "double tenon joint."

The Butt Joint. This is the most simple of all the joints, and is made by merely placing the two pieces together and nailing them firmly to each other, after both have been trimmed square and true. Such a joint is shown in Fig. 24. The two pieces are perpendicular to each other and neither piece is cut. The nails are driven diagonally through both pieces, an operation which is known as "toe-nailing," and are driven home, if necessary, with a nail set. This is called a "square" butt joint. Fig. 25 shows two pieces which are not perpendicular to each other. They are trimmed to fit closely together, and are then nailed in place. Such a joint is called an "oblique" butt joint. The butt joint does not make a strong connection between the pieces, and should not be used if much strength is required. It depends entirely upon the nails for its strength, and these are very likely to pull out.

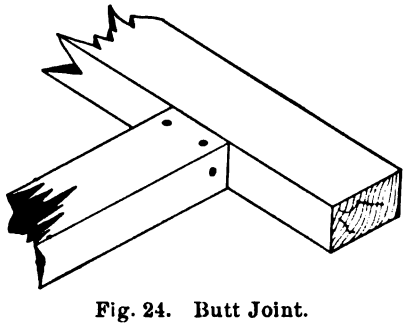


Fig. 24. Butt Joint.

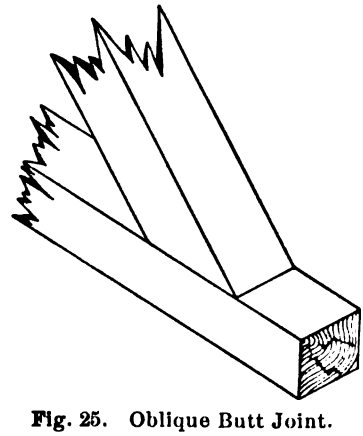
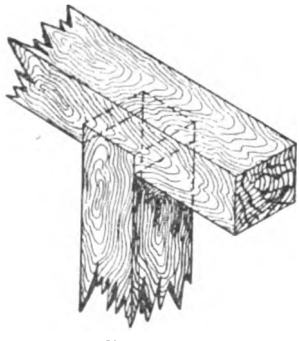


Fig. 25. Oblique Butt Joint.

This form of joint is sometimes modified by cutting away a part of one of the pieces, so that the other may set down into it as shown in Fig. 26, the square joint at A, and the oblique joint at B. This gives much additional strength to the joint, especially in the case shown at B, where there may be a tendency for one piece to slide along the other.

Digitized by Google

The Mortise-and-Tenon Joint. From the modified butt joint it is only a step to the "mortise-and-tenon" joint, which is formed by cutting a hole called a "mortise" in one of the pieces of timber, to receive a projection called a "tenon" which is cut on the end of the other piece. This is shown in Fig. 27. The mortise is at *a* and the tenon at *b*. It will be noticed that there is a hole bored



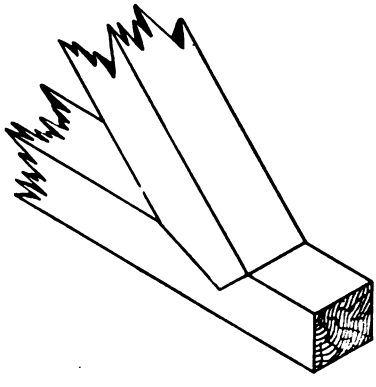


Fig. 26 A. Modified Butt Joints. Fig. 26 B.

through the tenon at *c*, and another hole in the mortised piece at *d*. These holes are so placed that when the pieces are joined together, a wooden pin may be driven through both holes, thus preventing the tenon from being withdrawn from the mortise. This pin should *always* be inserted in a mortise-and-tenon joint. Ordinarily it is of hard wood even when the pieces to be joined are themselves of soft wood, and it may be of any desired size. Round pins from three-quarters to seven-eighths of an inch in diameter are ordinarily employed, although it may sometimes be found better to use a square pin.

The Bridge Joint. The form of mortise-and-tenon joint described above may be used wherever the pieces are perpendicular to each other. When, however, the pieces are inclined to each other, a modification of the above joint known as the "bridge" or "straddle" joint is employed. This joint is shown in Figs. 28 and 29. It is similar to the square mortise-and-tenon joint, having a similar mortise and tenon, but these are cut in a slightly different way. In Fig. 28 the tenon *a* is cut in the end of the inclined piece and fits into the mortise *b* cut in the other piece.

Digitized by Google

In Fig. 29 the mortise *a* is cut in the end of the inclined piece and the tenon *b* is cut in the other piece.

The Gained Joint. The joints which have so far been described are applicable only where the members are subjected to

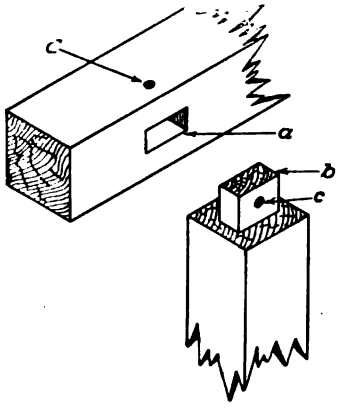


Fig. 27. Mortise-and-Tenon Joint.

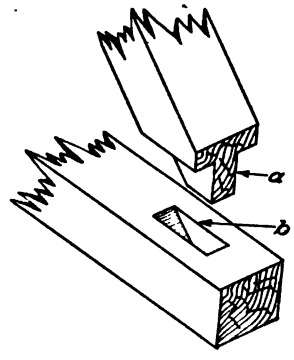


Fig. 28. Bridge Joint.

direct compression, as in the case of posts or braces, or in certain cases where direct tension is the only force acting on the pieces. When bending and shearing are to be expected, as in the case of

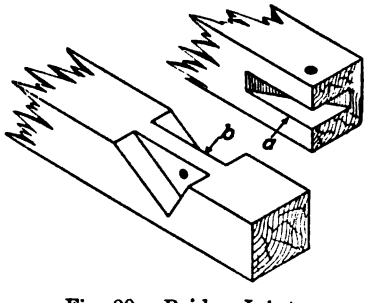


Fig. 29. Bridge Joint.

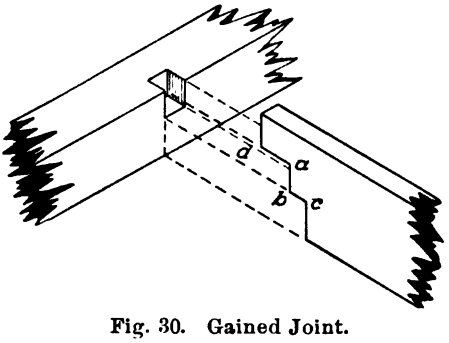


Fig. 30. Gained Joint.

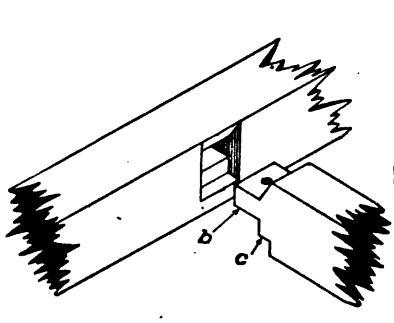
floor beams connecting to sills or girders, a slightly different sort of joint must be employed.

One of the most common joints for such places is a modification of the mortise-and-tenon joint which is known as the "gained joint." An example of this form of connection is shown in Fig. 30, and it may be seen that the end of one piece is tenoned in a peculiar way. The tenon proper is the part *a-b-c* and this tenon

Digitized by Google

sets into a corresponding mortise cut in the other piece as shown. It is evident that the tenon cannot be held in place by a pin, but it may be secured by nailing.

The reason for this peculiar form of tenon may be explained as follows: A floor beam, or any other timber which is loaded transversely, has a tendency to fall to the ground, and must be supported at its ends either by resting directly on a wall or sill, or by being mortised into the latter member. Moreover, in order that the end of the piece resting on the support may not be crushed or broken, a certain amount of bearing surface must be



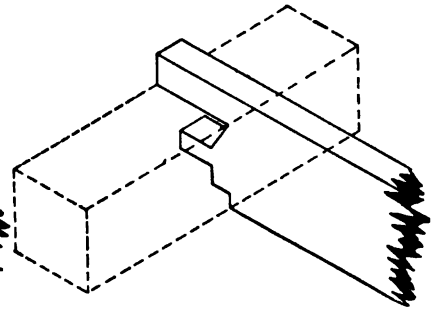


Fig. 31. Tenon-and-Tusk Joints. Fig. 32.

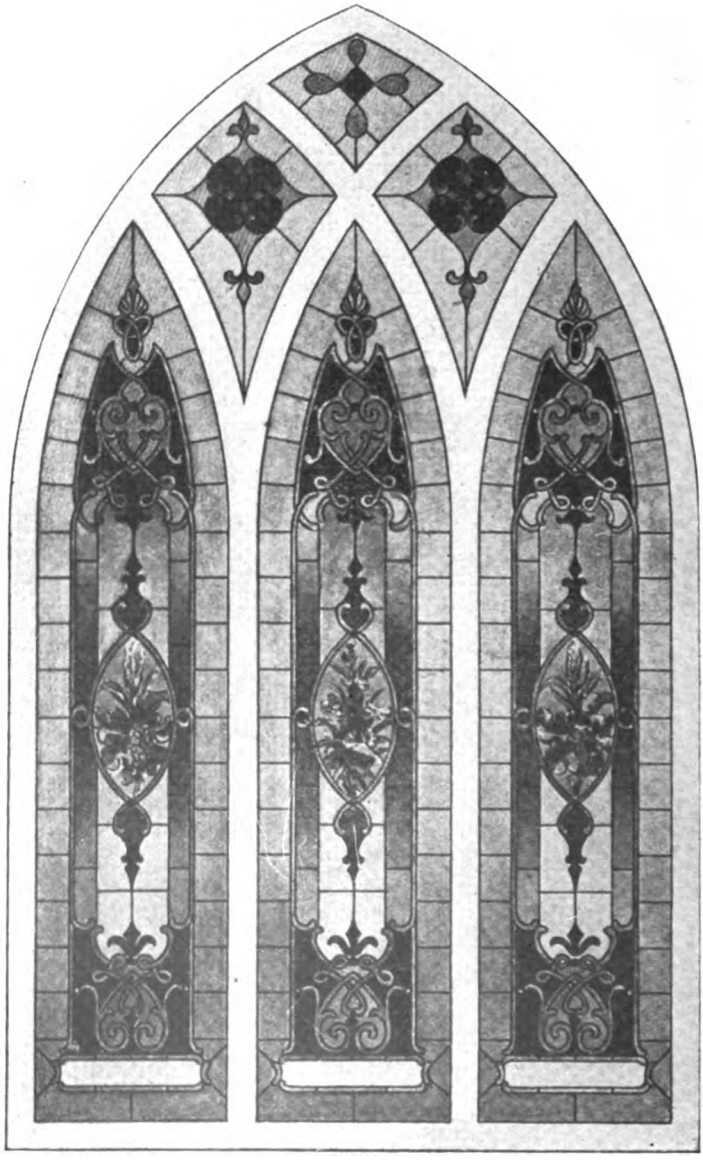
available. This same bearing surface must be provided in every case no matter whether the timber rests directly on the top of the sill or is mortised into it. Of course the simplest connection is obtained by resting the transverse piece directly on top of the sill without cutting either piece; but such a joint is not stiff and strong, and it is often necessary to bring the timbers flush with each other at the top or at the bottom. For this reason a mortised joint is used; and in order to obtain the required amount of bearing surface without cutting the pieces too much, the form of tenon shown is employed. The available bearing area here is furnished by the surfaces *d-a* and *b-c* and it may easily be seen that this area is the same as would be available if the piece rested directly on top of the sill.

The operation of cutting such a tenon and mortise is known as "gaining," and one piece is said to be "gained" into the other.

The Tenon-and-Tusk Joint. A joint in very common use

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google



ART GLASS CHURCH WINDOW
Foster-Munger Company

Digitized by Google

in such situations as have just been mentioned is a development of the gained joint which is called the "tenon-and-tusk" or the "tusk-tenon" joint. This joint is shown in Fig. 31. The characteristic feature is to be found in the peculiar shape of the tenon which is cut in the end of one of the pieces to be joined, as shown in the figure. It may be seen that there is a small square tenon *b* cut in the extreme end of the piece, and that in addition to this there are other cuts *c* which constitute the "tusk." The bearing area is furnished partly by the under side of the tenon and partly by the under side of the tusk.

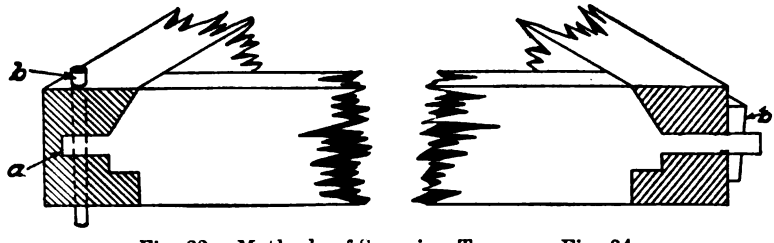


Fig. 33. Methods of Securing Tenons. Fig. 34.

This joint makes a very good connection, and the cutting of the mortise does not weaken the piece of timber so much as does the mortise for a gained joint. It is especially applicable when it is desired to have the pieces flush on top, though it may also be used in other positions. When the top of the tenoned piece must project above the top of the mortised piece, the tenon may be cut as shown in Fig. 32.

There are several ways of securing the tenon in place. The simplest is that shown in Fig. 33, where the pin *b* is passed through the tenon and the mortised piece so as to hold the tenon securely in place. Another scheme is to cut the square tenon a little longer, as shown in Fig. 34, so as to pass clear through the mortised piece, and to fasten it with a peg *b* on the other side. The peg may be cut slightly tapering, as shown, so that when it is driven in place it will draw the pieces together. Still another plan is shown in Fig. 35. Here a small square hole *a* is cut in the header some

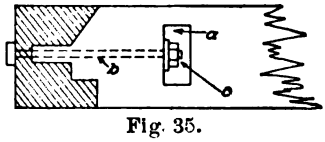


Fig. 35.
Method of Securing Tenon.

Digitized by Google

distance back from the tenon and a nut *c* is placed in it, while a bolt *b* is passed through a hole bored lengthwise in the header to receive it. The bolt passes through the nut, which may be screwed up tight, thus drawing the pieces closely together and making the joint tight. In screwing this up, it is the bolt which must be turned, while the nut is held stationary by the side of the square hole in which it is inserted and which is just large enough to receive it.

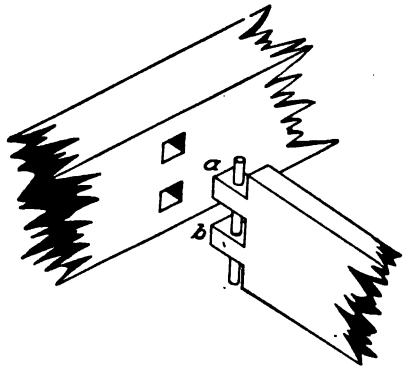


Fig. 36. Double Tenon Joint.

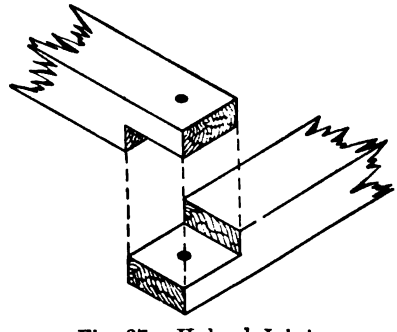


Fig. 37. Halved Joint.

The Double Tenon Joint. Fig. 36 shows a form of tenon joint called the "double tenon" joint, which is not very extensively used at the present time but which has some advantages. As may be readily seen, there are two small tenons *a* and *b* through which a pin may be passed if desired.

The Halved Joint. A form of joint which may be used to connect two pieces that meet at a corner of a building, is shown in Fig. 37.

This is known as the "halved" joint from the fact that both pieces are cut half way through and then placed together. The pieces are held in place by nails or spikes.

If one piece meets the other near the center instead of at the end of the piece, and if there is danger that the two pieces may pull away from each other, a form of joint called the "dovetail" halved joint is used. This is shown in Fig. 38. Both the tenon and the mortise are cut in the shape of a fan, or dovetail, which prevents them from being pulled apart. This joint may also be

Digitized by Google

cut as shown in Fig. 39, with the flare on only one side of the tenon, the other side being straight.

Splices. As already explained, a splice is merely a joint between two pieces of timber which extend in the same direction, and is sometimes necessary because one long piece cannot be conveniently or cheaply obtained. The only object in view, then, is

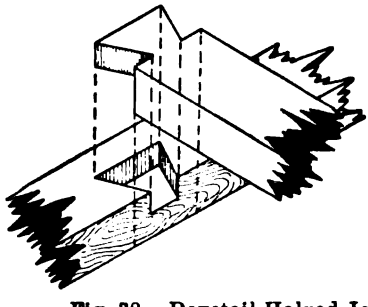


Fig. 38. Dovetail Halved Joint.

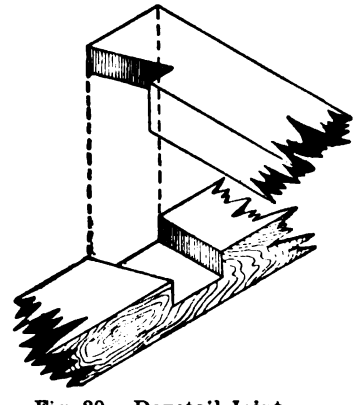


Fig. 39. Dovetail Joint.

to fasten the two timbers together, in such a way that the finished piece will be in all respects equivalent to a single unbroken piece, and will satisfy all the requirements of the unbroken piece. This is really the only measure of the efficiency of a splice.

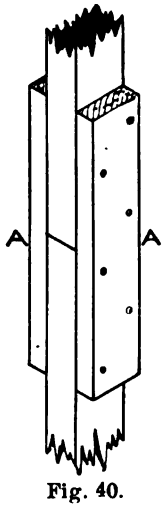


Fig. 40.
Fished Splice.

There are three kinds of forces to which a piece may be subjected, namely: compression, tension, and bending. A splice which would be very effective in a timber acted upon by one of these forces might be absolutely worthless in a piece which must resist one of the other forces. We have, therefore, three classes of splices, each designed to resist one of these three forces.

Splices for Compression. The simplest splices are those to resist compression alone, and of these the most simple is that shown in Fig. 40. This piece is said to be "fished;" the two parts are merely sawed off square and the ends placed together. A couple of short pieces A A, called "fish plates" are

Digitized by Google

nailed on opposite sides to keep the parts in line. In the splice shown in Fig. 40, these are of wood, and ordinary nails are used to fasten them in place, but in more important work thin iron plates are used, the thickness being varied to suit the conditions. They are held in place by means of bolts with washers and nuts.

If for any reason, it is desired not to use plates of this kind, four small pieces called dowels may be used, as indicated in Fig. 41. These dowels may be set into the sides of the timbers to be spliced, so that they do not project at all beyond the faces of these pieces and a very neat job may thus be obtained.

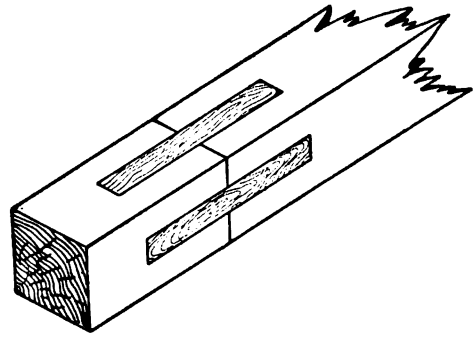


Fig. 41. Splice Using Dowels.

It is but a step to pass from this simple splice to the "halved" splice shown in Fig. 42. It will be noticed that it is much like the halved joint described above, the only difference being that the pieces are continuous, instead of perpendicular to each other. The nature of the splice will be easily understood from the figure

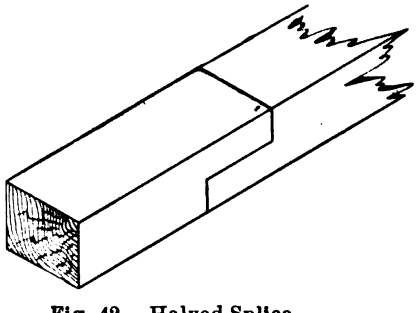


Fig. 42. Halved Splice.

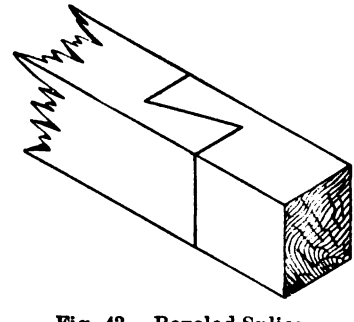


Fig. 43. Beveled Splice.

without further explanation. A modification of this which is somewhat more effective, is shown in Fig. 43. The cuts are here made on a bevel in such a way that the parts fit accurately when placed together, and the splice is called a "beveled" splice.

The halved splice is perhaps the best that can be used to

Digitized by Google

resist direct compression, and when it is combined with fish plates and bolts as shown in Fig. 44 it may be used in cases where some tension is to be expected. It will be noticed that in Fig. 44 the ends of the timbers are cut with a small additional tongue *a* but this does not materially strengthen the splice and it adds considerably to the labor of forming it. In general it may be said that the simplest splice is the most effective.

Whenever the pieces are cut to fit into one another, as they do in the halved and beveled splices, the splice is known as a "scarf" splice, and the operation of cutting and joining the parts is called "scarfing." Scarf splices are used, as we have already seen, both alone and in combination with fish plates. The fished splice is always the stronger, but the splice where scarfing alone is resorted to has the neatest appearance.

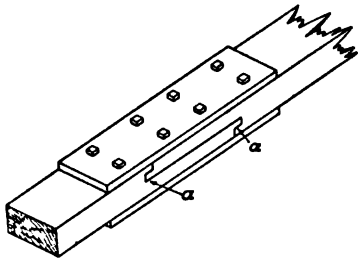


Fig. 44. Halved Splice with Fish Plates.

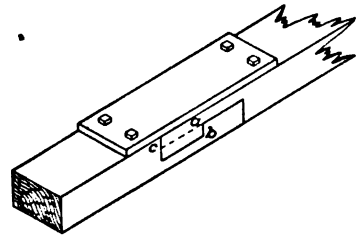


Fig. 45. Splice for Tension.

Splices for Tension. There are several common forms of splices for resisting direct tension. These differ from each other mainly in the amount of labor involved in making them. The simplest of them is shown in Fig. 45, and it will be seen that it is only a slight modification of the halved splice used for resisting compression. It is evident that the pieces cannot pull apart in the direction of their length until the timber crushes along the face marked *a-b*, or shears along the dotted line *a-c*. By varying the dimensions of the splice it may be made suitable for any situation. The parts are held closely together by the light fishplates shown in the figure, which also incidentally add something to the strength of the splice.

Instead of cutting the ends of the beams square, as shown in Fig. 45, they frequently are cut on a bevel as shown in Fig. 46,

Digitized by Google

and a further modification may be introduced by inserting a small "key" of hard wood between the pieces for them to pull against. This key is usually made of oak and may be in two parts, as shown in Fig. 47, each part in the shape of a wedge, so that when they are driven into place a tight joint may be obtained. The two wedge-shaped pieces may be driven in from opposite sides, the hole being made a little smaller than the key. If the key is made

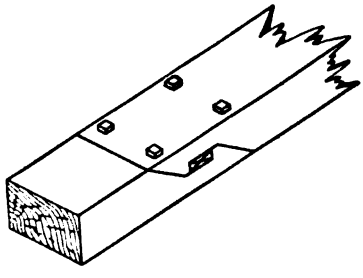


Fig. 46. Splice for Tension.

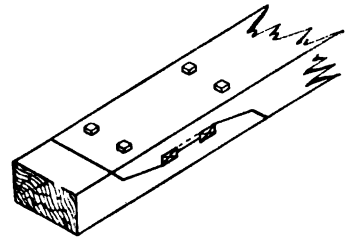


Fig. 47. Splice with Two Keys.

much too large for the hole, however, a so-called "initial" stress is brought into the timbers, which uses up some of their strength even before any load is applied. This should be avoided.

If it is desired, two or more keys may be employed in a splice, the only limiting condition being that they must be placed far enough apart so that the wood will not shear out along the dotted line shown in Fig. 48. Another feature of the splice here shown

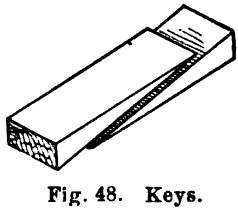


Fig. 48. Keys.

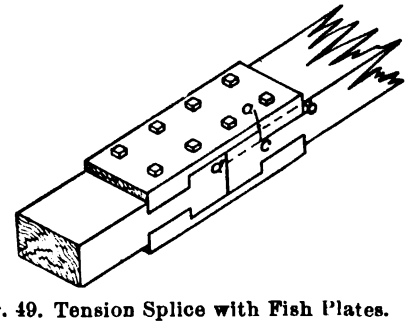


Fig. 49. Tension Splice with Fish Plates.

is the way in which the pieces are cut with two bevels on the end instead of one. One bevel starts at the edge of the key and is very gradual, the other starts at the extreme end of the piece and

Digitized by Google

is rather steep and sharp. These bevels can be used only in joints which resist tension alone. If such a splice were subjected to compression, the beveled ends would slide on each other and push by each other very easily, except as they are prevented from so doing by the fish plates, if these are used.

Tension Splice with Fish Plates. The splices for tension which have so far been described have all been scarf joints, but there is a fished splice which is very commonly used for tension. This splice is shown in Fig. 49. The fish plates, in this case of wood, are cut into the two pieces to be spliced, so as to hold them firmly together. The pieces cannot be pulled apart until one of the plates shears off along the dotted line *a-b*. The distance *c-d* must also be made large enough so that the piece will not shear. This splice is very often used for the lower chords of wooden trusses, and it is really one of the best that can be used for resisting direct tension.

Splices for Bending. It sometimes happens that a piece which is subjected to a bending stress must be spliced, and in this case the splice must be formed to suit the existing conditions. It is well known that in a timber which is resisting a bending stress the upper part of the piece is in compression, and the tendency is for the fibers to crush, while the lower part of the piece is in tension, and the tendency is for the fibers to pull apart. To provide for this, a form of splice must be selected which combines the features of the tension and compression splices. Fig. 50 shows such a splice. The parts are scarfed together as in the case of the other splices described, but in this case the end of the top piece is cut off square to offer the greatest possible resistance to crushing, while the underneath piece is beveled on the end, as there is no tendency for the timbers to crush. These cuts are shown in the figure.

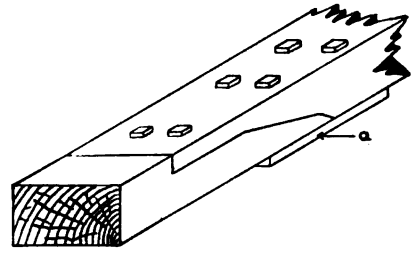


Fig. 50. Splice for Bending.

We have already seen that in the lower part of the splice

Digitized by Google

there is a tendency for the parts to be pulled away from each other. In order to prevent this, a fish plate *a* is used, which must be heavy enough to take care of all the tension, since it is evident that the wood cannot take any of this. The plate must be securely bolted to both parts of the splice. There is no need of a fish plate on the top of the pieces because there is no tendency for the pieces to pull apart on top, and the bolts shown in the figure are sufficient to prevent them from being displaced.

In any case where it is not desirable to scarf the pieces in a splice subjected to bending, the form of butt joint shown in Fig. 51 may be used. The plates (either of wood or iron) are in this case bolted to the sides of the pieces. If wood is used, of course the plates must be made very much heavier than if iron is used. In either case they must be large enough to take care of all the bending stress, and a sufficient number of bolts must be used to fasten them securely to both parts of the splice.

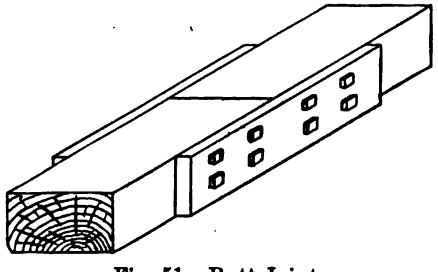


Fig. 51. Butt Joint.

THE WALL.

Let us next consider the framing of the walls of the building. In this work there are two distinct methods known respectively as "braced framing" and "balloon framing," of which the first is the older and stronger method, while the second is a modern development and claims to be more philosophical, as well as more economical, than the other. Balloon framing has come into use only since 1850, and is still regarded with disfavor by many architects, especially in the eastern states. Figs. 52 and 53 show the framing of one end of a small building by each of these methods, the braced framing in Fig. 52, and the balloon framing in Fig. 53.

Braced Frame. In a full-braced frame all the pieces should be fastened together with mortise-and-tenon joints, but this is much modified in common practice, a so-called "combination" frame being used, in which some pieces are mortised together and

Digitized by Google

others are fastened by means of spikes only. A framework is constructed consisting in each wall of the two "corner posts" A A (Fig. 52), the "sill" B, and the "plate" C, together with a horizontal "girt" D at each story, to support the floors, and a diagonal "brace" E at each corner, which, by keeping the corner square, prevents the frame from being distorted.

Balloon Frame. In a balloon frame there are no braces or girts; and the intermediate studs F F F (Fig. 53) are carried straight up from the sill H to the plate K, with a light horizontal piece J, called a "ribbon" or "ledger board," set into them at each floor level to support the floors. This frame depends mainly

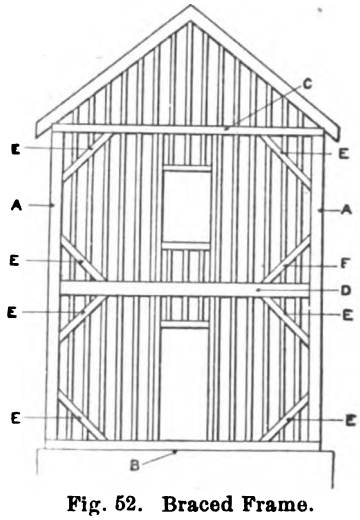


Fig. 52. Braced Frame.

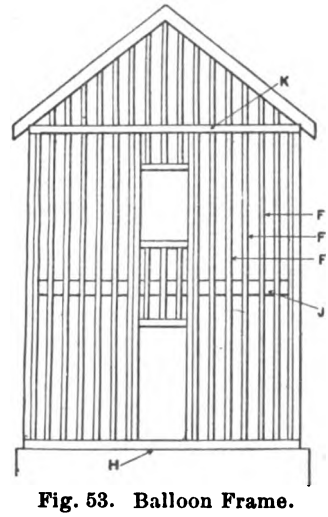


Fig. 53. Balloon Frame.

upon the boarding for its stiffness, but sometimes light diagonal braces are set into the studs at each corner to prevent distortion. The methods by which all these pieces are framed together will be explained in detail under the proper headings.

The Sill. The sill is the first part of the frame to be set in place. It rests directly on the underpinning and extends all around the building, being jointed at the corners and spliced where necessary; and since it is subject to much cutting and may be called upon to span quite considerable openings (for cellar windows, etc.) in the underpinning, it must be of good size. Usually it is made of six by six square timber, but in good work

Digitized by Google

it should be six by eight, and nothing lighter than six by six should be used except for piazza sills. For piazza sills a four by six timber is used. The material is generally spruce, although sometimes it is Norway pine or native pine (depending upon the locality).

The sill should be placed on the wall far enough back from the outside face to allow for the water table, which is a part of the outside finish; and one inch should be regarded as the minimum distance between the outside face of the sill and the outside face of the underpinning (see Fig. 54). A bed of mortar A, preferably of cement mortar, should be prepared on the top of the underpinning, in which the sill C should rest; and the under side of the sill should be painted with one or two coats of linseed oil to prevent it from absorbing moisture from the masonry. In many cases, at intervals of eight or ten feet, long bolts B are set into the masonry. These bolts extend up through holes bored in the sill to receive them, and are fastened at the top by a washer and a nut screwed down tight. They fasten the sill, and consequently the whole frame, securely to the underpinning, and should always be provided in the case of light frames in exposed positions.

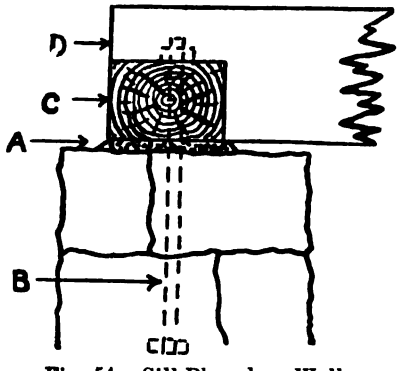


Fig. 54. Sill Placed on Wall.

The beams or "joists" D, which form the framework of the first floor, are supported at one or both ends by the sill and may be fastened to it in any one of several different ways. The ideal method is to hang the joist in a patent hanger fastened to the sill as shown in Fig. 55, where A is the sill, B the joist, and C the hanger. In this case neither the sill nor the joist need be

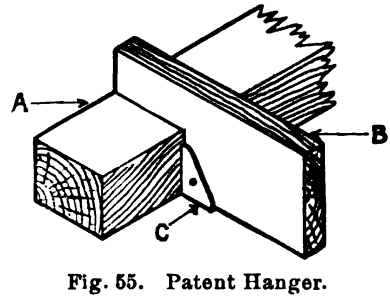


Fig. 55. Patent Hanger.

Digitized by Google

weakened by cutting, but this is too expensive a method for ordinary work, although the saving in labor largely offsets the cost of the hanger. The usual method is to cut a mortise in the sill to receive a tenon cut in the end of the joist (as shown at A in Fig. 56). These mortises are cut in the inside upper corner of the sill, are about four inches deep and cut two inches into the width of the sill, and are fixed in position by the spacing of the joists.

Mortises are also cut in the sill to receive tenons cut in the lower ends of the studs (as shown at B in Fig. 57). They are cut the full thickness of the studding, about one and one-half inches in the width of the sill and about two inches deep. The position of these is fixed by the spacing of the studding, and by the condition that the outer face of the studding must be flush with the outer face of the sill in order to leave a plain surface for the boarding.

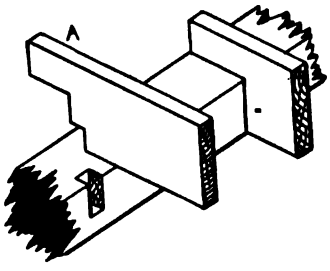


Fig. 56. Mortise in Sill.

The sills are usually halved and pinned together at the corners, as shown in Fig. 58; but sometimes they are fastened together by means of a tenon A cut in one sill, which fits into a mortise cut

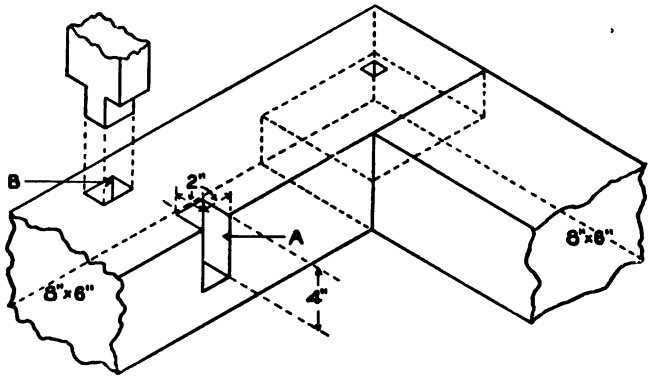


Fig. 57. Mortise in Sill for Studding.

in the other, as shown in Fig. 59. This may be stronger than the other method, but the advantage gained is not sufficient to compensate for the extra labor involved. Sills under twenty feet in

Digitized by Google

length should be in one piece, but in some cases splicing may be necessary. A scarf joint should always be used, the splice should be made strong, and the pieces should be well fitted together.

In some parts of the country it is customary to "build up" the sill from a number of planks two or three inches thick, which are spiked securely together. A six-by-six-inch sill may be made in this way from three planks, two inches thick and six inches wide, as shown in Fig. 60. Planks of any length may be used, and may be so arranged as to break joints with each other so that the sill may be made continuous, without splicing. It is often easier and cheaper to build up a sill in this way than it is to use a large, solid timber, and if the parts are well spiked together, such a sill is fully as good as the other. When a sill of this kind is used, however, it should always be placed on the wall in such a way that the planks of which it is made up will set up on edge and not lie flat.

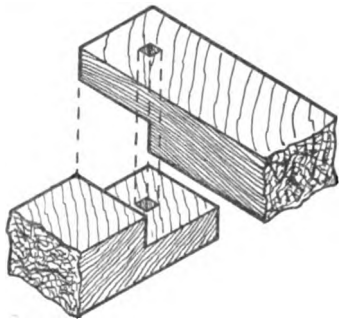


Fig. 58. Joint of Sills at Corner.

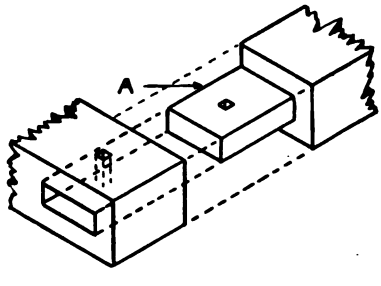


Fig. 59. Joint of Sills at Corner.

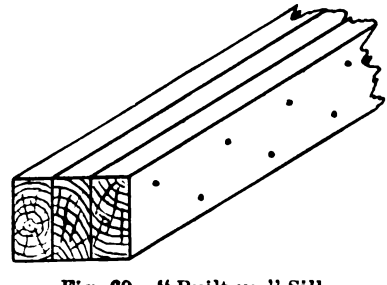


Fig. 60. "Built-up" Sill.

The Corner Posts. After the sill is in place, the first floor is usually framed and roughly covered at once, to furnish a surface on which to work, and a sheltered place in the cellar for the storage of tools and materials, after which the framing of the wall is continued. The corner posts are first set up, then the girts and the plate are framed in between them, with the braces at the corners to keep everything in place; and lastly the whole is filled in with studding. The corner posts are pieces four by eight, or

Digitized by Google

sometimes two pieces four by four placed close together. Corner posts must be long enough to reach from the sill to the plate. The post is really a part of only one of the two walls which meet at the corner, and in the other wall a "furring stud" of two-by-four stuff is placed close up against the post so as to form a solid

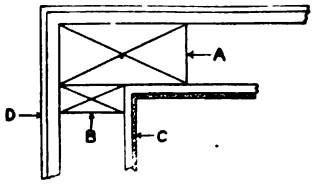


Fig. 61. Corner Post with One Furring Stud.

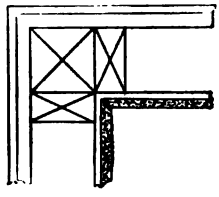


Fig. 62. Corner Post with Two Furring Studs.

corner, and give a firm nailing for the lathing in both walls. This arrangement is shown in plan in Fig. 61. A is the corner post, B the furring stud, C the plastering, and D the boarding and shingling on the outside. Sometimes a four-by-four piece is used for the corner post and a two-by-four furring stud is set close against it in each wall to form the solid corner, as shown in plan in Fig. 62; but a four-by-four-stick is hardly large enough for the long corner post, and the best practice is to use a four-by-eight, although in very light framing a four-by-six might be used. A tenon is cut in the foot of the corner post to fit a mortise cut in the sill, and mortises *c c*, Fig. 63, are cut in the post at the proper level to receive the tenons cut in the girts. Holes must also be bored to receive the pins *d d* which fasten these members to the post.

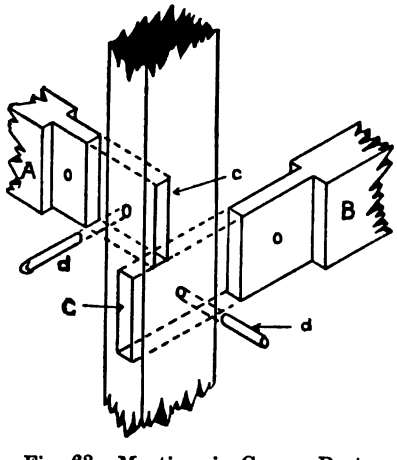


Fig. 63. Mortises in Corner Post.

The braces are often only nailed in place, but it is much better to cut mortises in the posts for these also, as shown at A in Fig. 64. The plate is usually fastened to the posts by means of spikes only, but it may be mortised to receive a tenon cut in the top of the post.

Digitized by Google

In the case of a balloon frame no mortises need be cut in the posts for the girts or braces, as they are omitted in this frame; but the post must be notched instead, as shown in Fig. 65, to receive the ledger board or ribbon and the light braces which are sometimes used.

The Girts. The girts are always made of the same width as the posts, being flush with the face of the post both outside and inside, and the depth is usually eight inches, although sometimes a six-inch timber may be used. The size is, therefore, usually four by eight. A tenon at each end fits into the mortise cut in the

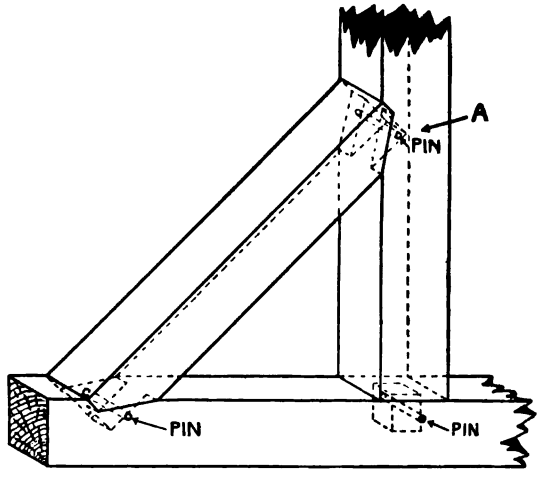


Fig. 64. Brace for Post and Sill.

post, and the whole is secured by means of a pin *d d* as shown in Fig. 63. The pin should always be of hard wood and about seven-eighths inch in diameter. It is evident that if the girts in two adjacent walls were framed into the corner post at the same level, the tenons on the two girts would conflict with each other. (See Fig. 63.) For this reason the girts A which run parallel with the floor joists are raised above the girts B on which these joints rest, and are called "raised girts" to distinguish them from the others which are called "dropped girts." The floor joists are carried by the dropped girts, and the raised girts are so placed that they are just flush on top with the joists which are parallel to them.

The Ledger Board. The heavy girts are used only in the

Digitized by Google

braced frame. In the balloon frame, light pieces called "ledger boards" or "ribbons" are substituted for them. These are usually made about one inch thick and six or seven inches deep, and are notched into the posts and intermediate studs instead of being

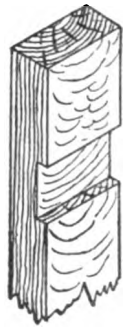


Fig. 65.

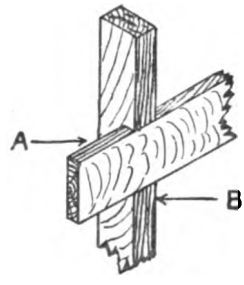


Fig. 66.

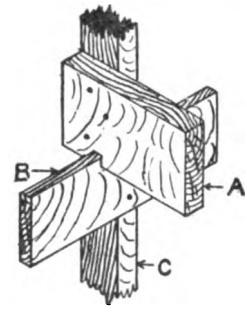


Fig. 67.

Notched Studs for Ledger Boards.

framed into them as in the braced frame. This notching is shown in Fig. 66 in which A is the ledger board and B the stud. The ledger boards themselves are not cut at all, but the floor joists which they carry are notched over them, as shown in Fig. 67, and spiked to them and to the studding. In Fig. 67 A is the joist, B the ledger board, and C the stud. Even in the braced frame a ledger board is usually employed to support the joists of the attic floor, which carry little or no weight. The disadvantage of the ledger board is that as a tie between the corner posts it is less effective than the girt, and consequently a wall in which it has been substituted for the girt is not as stiff as one in which the girt is used.

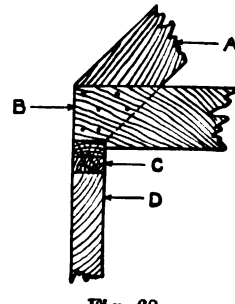


Fig. 68.

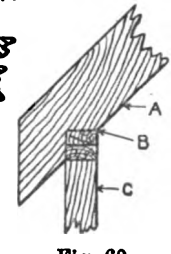


Fig. 69.

Construction at Plate.

The Plate. The plate serves two purposes: first, to tie the studding together at the top and form a finish for the wall; and second, to furnish a support for the lower ends of the rafters. (See Fig. 68). It is thus a connecting link between the wall and the roof, just as the sill and the girts are connecting links between

Digitized by Google

the floors and the wall. Sometimes the plate is also made to support the attic floor joists, as shown in Fig. 68, in which A is a rafter, B the joist spiked to the rafter, C the plate built up from two two-by-four pieces, and D the wall stud. It acts in this case like a girt, but this arrangement is not very common, the attic floor joists usually being supported on a ledger board as shown in Fig. 67. The plate is merely spiked to the corner posts and to the top of the studding; but at the corner where the plates in two adjacent walls come together, they should be connected by a framed joint, usually halved together in the same way as the sill. In the braced frame, a fairly heavy piece, usually a four by six, is used, although a four by four is probably sufficiently strong. In a balloon frame the usual practice is to use two two-by-four pieces placed one on top of the other and breaking joints, as shown at A in Fig. 70, in order to form a continuous piece. The corner joint is then formed, as shown at B in Fig. 70. No cutting is done on the plate except at the corners, the rafters and the attic floor joists being cut over it, as shown in Figs. 68 and 69.

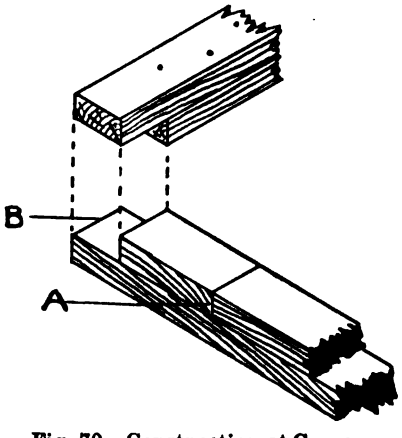
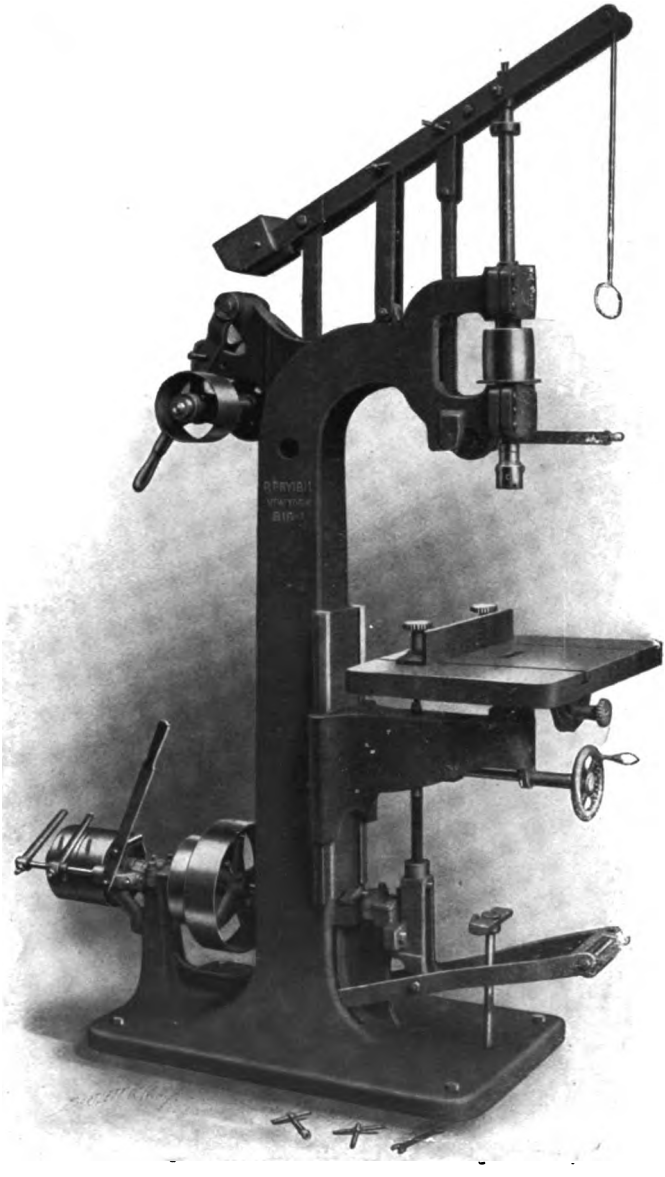


Fig. 70. Construction at Corner, "Breaking Joints."

Braces. Braces are used as permanent parts of the structure only in braced frames, and serve to stiffen the wall, to keep the corners square and true, and to prevent the frame from being distorted by lateral forces, such as wind. In a full-braced frame, a brace is placed wherever a sill, girt, or plate makes an angle with a corner post, as shown at E in Fig. 52. Braces are placed so as to make an angle of forty-five degrees with the post, and should be long enough to frame into the corner post at a height of from one-third to one-half the height of the story. This construction is often modified in practice, and the braces are placed as shown at A in Fig. 71. Such a frame is not quite so stiff and strong as the regular braced frame, but it is sufficiently strong in most cases.

Digitized by Google



VERTICAL BORING MACHINE.
P. Pryibil.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

The braces are made the same width as the posts and girts, usually four inches, to be flush with these pieces both outside and inside, and are made of three-by four or four-by-four stuff. They are framed into the posts and girders or sills, by means of a tenon cut in the end of the brace, and a mortise cut in the post or girt, and are secured by a hard-wood pin. The pin should be three-quarters or seven-eighths inch in diameter. The connection is shown in Fig. 64.

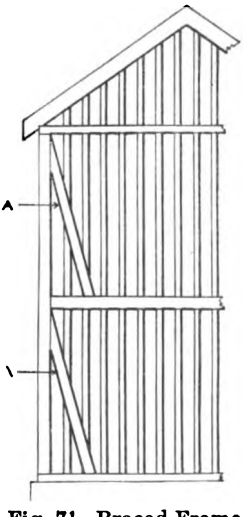


Fig. 71. Braced Frame.

In a balloon frame, there are no permanent braces, but light strips are nailed across the corners while the framework is being erected, and before the boarding has been put on, to keep the frame in place. As soon as the outside boarding is in place these are removed. This practice is also modified, and sometimes light braces are used as permanent parts of even a balloon frame. They are not framed into the other members, however, but are merely notched into them and spiked as shown in Fig. 72. A is the brace, B the sill, C the corner post, and D D are studs. In such a case every stud must be notched to receive the brace, which is really the same as the temporary brace mentioned above, except that it is notched into the studs instead of being merely nailed to them, and is not removed when the boarding is put on. These braces are usually made of one-by-three-inch stuff.

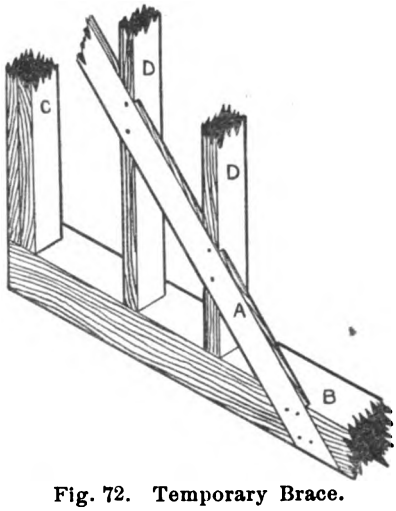


Fig. 72. Temporary Brace.

Studding. When the sill, posts, girts, plates, and braces are in place, the only step that remains to complete the rough framing of the wall is the filling in of this framework with studding. The studding is of two kinds, the heavy pieces which form the frames

Digitized by Google

for the door and window openings, and the stops for the partitions; and the lighter pieces which are merely "filling-in" studs, and which are known by that name, or as "intermediate" studding.

The frames for the door and window openings are usually made in a braced frame, from four-by-four-inch pieces. A vertical stud A A, Fig. 73, is placed on each side of the opening, the proper distance being left between them, and horizontal pieces B B are framed into them at the proper level to form the top and the bottom of the opening. In all good work a small truss is formed above each opening by setting up two pieces of studding C C over the opening, in the form of a triangle. This is to receive any weight which comes from the studding directly above the opening, and carry it to either side of the opening where it is received by the studding and in this way carried down to the sill. Such a truss is shown in Fig. 73. The pieces used are three by four or four by four, and may be either framed into the other members or merely spiked. There should be a space D of at least one inch between the piece B forming the top of the window frame and the piece E forming the bottom of the truss, so that if the truss sags at all it will not affect the window frame. This is a point that is not generally recognized. The piece B is usually made to serve both as the top of the window and the bottom of the truss.

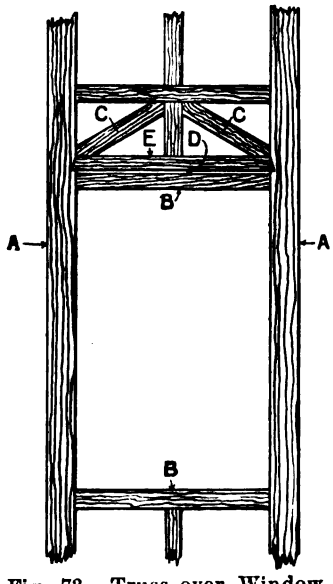


Fig. 73. Truss over Window.

Fig. 74 shows the framing for the top of a window opening in a balloon-framed building, where the ledger-board is partly supported by the studs directly over the opening. Since the floor joists rest on the ledger-board, there may be considerable weight carried onto these studs; and to prevent the bottom of the truss from sagging under this weight, a rod should be inserted as shown.

Digitized by Google

In the balloon frame, the door and window studs are almost always made of two two-by-four pieces placed close together, and in this case the connection of the pieces forming the top and

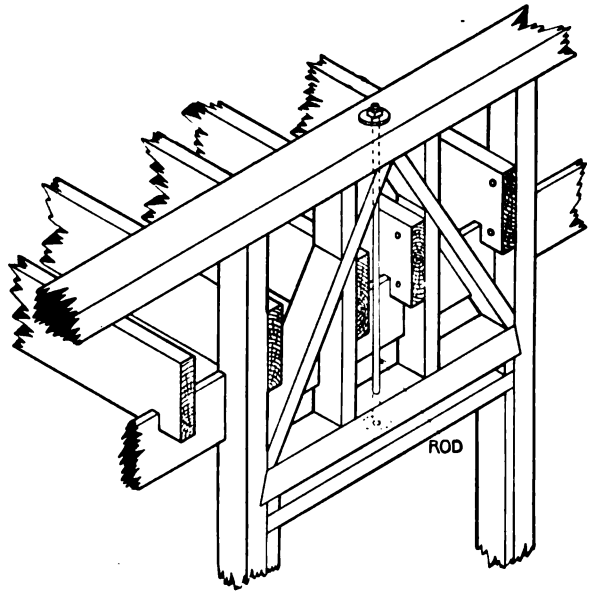


Fig. 74. Truss over Window. Balloon Frame.

bottom of the frame with those forming the sides is made as shown at A in Fig. 75. It should be noticed that in a balloon frame all studding is carried clear up from the sill to the plate, so that if there is an opening in the wall of the first story, and no corresponding openings in those of the second or third story, the door and window studding must still be carried double, clear up to the plate, and material is thus wasted. In designing for balloon frames, therefore, it is well to take care that the window openings in the second story come directly above those in the first story wherever this is possible. The same difficulty does not occur in the case of a braced frame, because in such a frame the studding in each story is independent of that in the story above or below it, and the openings may be arranged independently in the different stories.

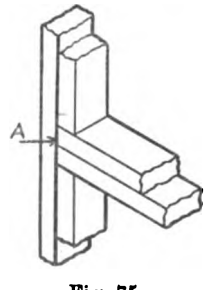


Fig. 75.

Digitized by Google

Nailing Surfaces. Wherever a partition meets an outside wall, a stud wide enough to extend beyond the partition on both sides and afford a solid nailing for the lathing must be inserted. A nailing surface must be provided for the lathing on both the outside wall and the partition, and the first stud in the partition wall is therefore set close up against the wall stud, forming a solid corner. This arrangement is shown in plan in Fig. 76. The large wall stud A is usually made of a four-by-eight piece set flatwise in the wall so that if the partition is, say, four inches wide, there is a clear nailing surface of two inches on each side of the partition. A four-by-six piece could also be used here, leaving a clear nailing surface of one inch on each side of the partition.

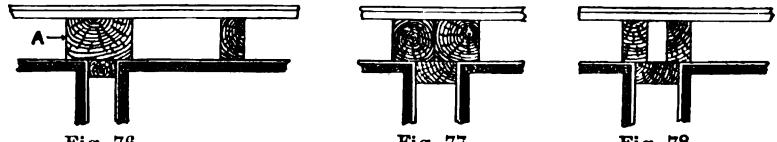


Fig. 76. Fig. 77. Fig. 78.

Arrangement of Studding for Nailing Surfaces.

Sometimes the same thing is accomplished by using two four-by-four pieces placed close together as shown in plan in Fig. 77, instead of one four-by-eight piece. Sometimes two pieces, two-by-four or three-by-four, are used, placed far enough apart so that they afford a space for nailing on each side of the partition, as shown in plan in Fig. 78. Whenever this is done, small blocks A, Fig. 79, should be cut in between the two studs at intervals of two to three feet throughout their height, to give them added stiffness and make them act together.

The end in view in every case is to obtain a solid corner on each side of the partition where it joins the wall, and any construction which accomplishes this is good. In the best work, however, the four-by-eight solid piece is used, and this construction can always be depended upon. It makes no difference what the angle between the wall and the partition may be, but usually this angle is a right angle.

Intermediate Studding. The pieces which make up the largest part of the wall frame are the "filling-in," or "intermediate" studs. These, as the name implies, are used merely to fill up the frame made by the other heavier pieces, and afford a nail-

Digitized by Google

ing surface for the boarding, which covers the frame on the outside, and the lathing, which covers it on the inside. The filling-in studs are usually placed sixteen inches apart, measured from the center of one stud to the center of the next. In especially good work they are sometimes placed only twelve inches apart on centers, but this is unusual. In no case should they be placed more than sixteen inches apart, even in the lightest work. The studs are made the full width of the wall, usually four inches, but sometimes in large buildings (such as churches) five or even six inches. They are almost always two inches thick, two by four being the ordinary dimensions for studding, and the lengths are cut to fit the rest of the frame.

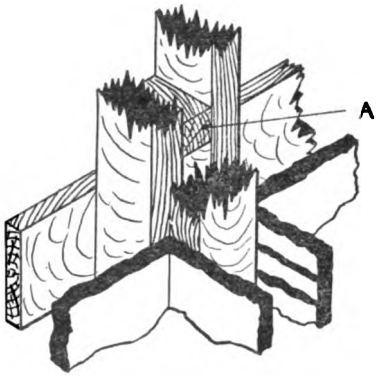


Fig. 79. Wall Studding.

In the braced frame, there must necessarily be a great deal of cutting of the intermediate studding, because all the large pieces are made the full width of the wall, and the intermediate studding must be cut to fit between them. In the balloon frame, however, the intermediate studding in all cases extends clear up from the sill to the plate, and no cutting is necessary except the notching to receive the other parts of the frame. (See Fig. 53.)

In a balloon frame it often happens that the studs are not long enough to reach from the sill to the plate and they must be pieced out with short pieces which are spliced onto the long stud. This splicing is called "fishing," and it is accomplished by nailing a short, thin strip of wood A A on each side of the stud as shown in Fig. 40 in order to join the two pieces firmly together. The strips should be well nailed to each piece.

All door and window studs should have a tenon cut at the foot of the piece to fit a mortise cut in the sill. Intermediate studs are merely spiked to the sill without being framed into it. The tenons are cut in two different ways, as shown in Figs. 80 and 81. They are always made the full thickness of the piece, and by the first method they are placed in the middle of the

Digitized by Google

piece, as shown. The width of the tenon is about one and one-half inches, leaving an inch and a-half on the outside and one inch on the inside of the stud. Another way is to make the tenon on the inside of the stud, as shown in Fig. 81, the tenon being an inch and a-half wide as before. There is no choice between these two methods, both being good.

Fig. 80. Tenons for Studs. Fig. 81.

Partitions. The studding used in partition walls is usually of two-by-four stuff, although two-by-three studding may sometimes be used to advantage if the partition does not support any floor joists.

The partition walls are made four inches wide, the same as in the outer walls, except in the case of so-called "furring" partitions. These are built around chimney breasts and serve to conceal the brickwork and furnish a surface for plastering. They are formed by placing the studding flatwise, in order to make a thin wall; and as it is usually specified that no woodwork shall come within one inch of any chimney, a one-inch space is left between the brickwork and the furring wall. It is possible to apply the plaster directly to the brickwork, and this is sometimes done, but there is always danger that cracks will appear in the plastering at the corner A, Fig. 82, between the chimney breast and the outside wall. This cracking is due to the unequal settlement of the brickwork and the woodwork, since the plastering goes with the wall to which it is applied. The method of constructing the furring wall is shown in plan in Fig. 83. A A are the furring studs, B is the plastering, and C C the studding in the outside wall. The arrangement without the furring wall is shown in plan in Fig. 82. If there are any openings in the furring wall such as fireplaces, or "thimbles" for stove pipes, it is necessary to frame around them in the same way as was explained for door and window openings in the outside walls.

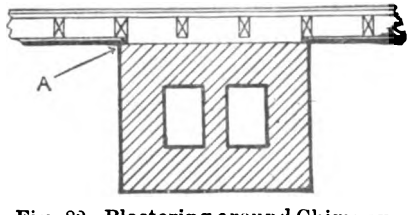


Fig. 82. Plastering around Chimney.

Digitized by Google

See Fig. 84. A A are furring studs, B B are pieces forming the top and bottom of the opening.

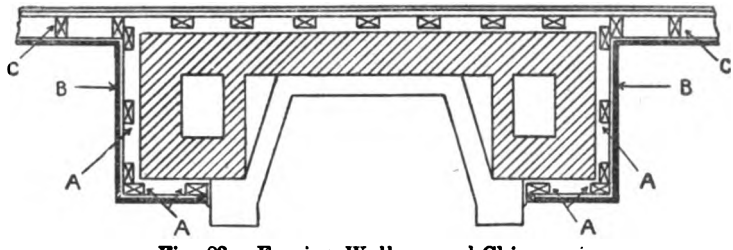


Fig. 88. Furring Wall around Chimney.

Masonry Walls. If the outside walls of the building are of brick or stone, a wooden "furring" wall is usually built just inside of the outer wall; this furnishes a surface for plastering and for nailing the inside finish. The studding for these walls is two-by-four or two-by-three set close up against the masonry wall

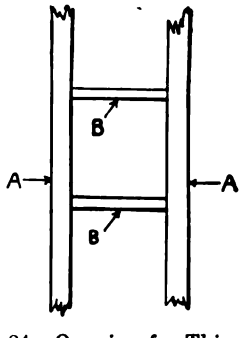


Fig. 84. Opening for Thimble.

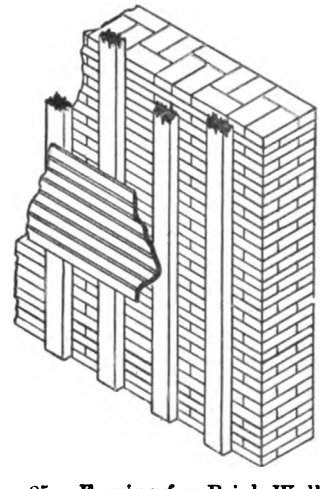


Fig. 85. Furring for Brick Wall.

and preferably spiked to it (see Fig. 85). Spikes are usually driven directly into the mortar between the bricks or stones of the wall, but sometimes wooden blocks or wedges are inserted in the masonry wall to afford a nailing.

Wherever a wooden partition wall meets a masonry exterior wall at an angle, the last stud of the partition wall should be

Digitized by Google

securely spiked to the masonry wall, to prevent cracks in the plastering.

Cap and Sole. All partition walls are finished at the top and bottom by horizontal pieces, called respectively the cap and the sole. The sole rests directly on the rough flooring whenever there is no partition under the one which is being built; but if there is a partition in the story below, the cap of the lower partition is used as the sole for the one above. The sole is made wider than the studding forming the partition wall, so that it projects somewhat on each side and gives a nailing for the plasterer's

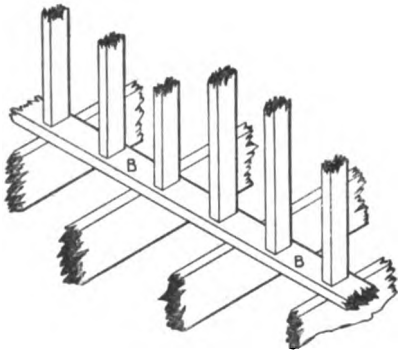


Fig. 86. Sole Piece.

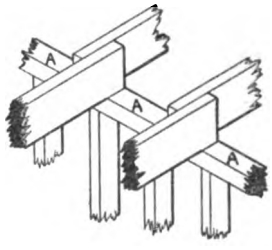


Fig. 87. Partition Cap.

grounds and for the inside finish. It is usually made about two inches thick and five and a-half inches wide, when the partition is composed of four-inch studding, and this leaves a nailing surface of three-quarters of an inch on each side. The sole is shown at B in Fig. 86. The cap is usually made the same width as the studding, and two inches thick, so that a two-by-four piece may be used in most cases; but if the partition is called upon to support the floor beams of the floor above, the cap may have to be made three or even four inches thick, and some architects favor the use of hardwood such as Georgia pine for the partition caps. The cap is shown at A, Fig. 87.

Bridging. In order to stiffen the partitions, short pieces of studding are cut in between the regular studding in such a way as to connect each piece with the pieces on each side of it. Thus, if one piece of studding is for any reason excessively loaded, it will

Digitized by Google

not have to carry the whole load alone but will be assisted by the other pieces. This operation is called "bridging," and there are two kinds, which may be called "horizontal bridging" and "diagonal bridging." The horizontal bridging consists of pieces set in horizontally between the vertical studding to form a continuous horizontal line across the wall, every other piece, however, being a little above or below the next piece as shown in Fig. 88. The pieces are two inches thick and the full width of the studding; and in addition to strengthening the wall, they prevent fire or vermin from passing through, and also may be utilized as a nailing surface for any inside finish such as wainscoting or chair rails.

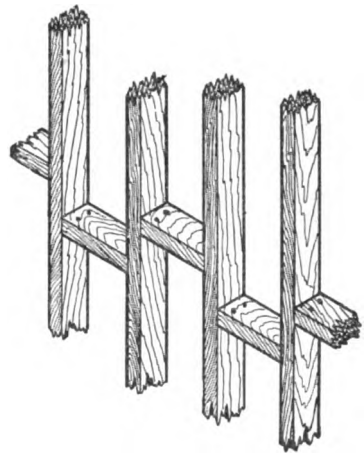


Fig. 88. Horizontal Bridging.

The second method, which we have called diagonal bridging, is more effective in preventing the partition from sagging than is the straight bridging, but both methods may be used with equal propriety. In the diagonal bridging the short pieces are set in diagonally as is shown in Fig. 89, instead of horizontally, between the vertical studding. This method is certainly more scientific than the other, since a continuous truss is formed across the wall.

All partitions should be bridged by one of these methods, at least once in the height of each story, and the bridging pieces should be securely nailed to the vertical studding at both ends. It is customary to specify two tenpenny nails in each end of each piece. Bridging should be placed in the exterior walls as well as in the partition walls; and as a further precaution against fire, it is good practice to lay three or four courses of brickwork, in mortar, on top of the bridging in all walls, to prevent the fire from gaining headway in the wall before burning through and being discovered. This construction is shown in Fig. 90.

Special Partitions. A partition in which there is a sliding door must be made double to provide a space into which the door

Digitized by Google

may slide when it is open. This is done by building two walls far enough apart to allow the door to slide between them, the studding being of two-by-four or two-by-three stuff, and placed either flatwise or edgewise in the wall. If the studding is placed flatwise in the wall, a thinner wall is possible, but the construction is not so good as in the case where the studs are placed edgewise. If the partition is to support a floor, one wall must be made at least four inches thick to support it, and the studs in the other wall

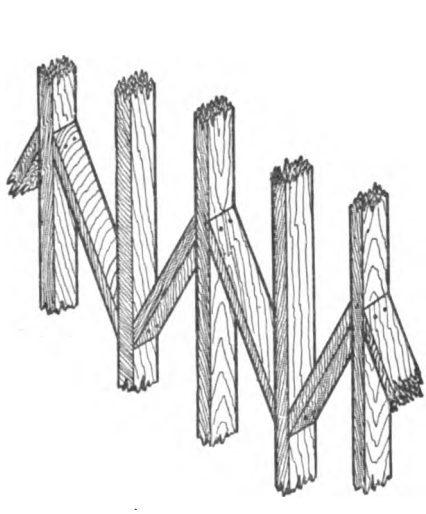


Fig. 89. Diagonal Bridging.

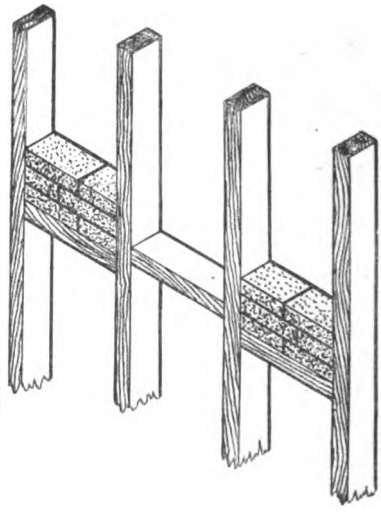


Fig. 90. Brick Work on Bridging.

may then be placed flatwise if desired, and the floor supported entirely on the thick wall. The general arrangement is shown in plan in Fig. 91. It is better to use two-by-three studding set edgewise in each wall so as to make two three-inch walls with space enough between to allow the door to slide freely after the pocket has been lined with sheathing.

A piece of studding A, Fig. 92, should be cut in horizontally between each pair of studs B, eight or ten inches above the top of the door, in order to keep the pocket true and square. The pocket should be lined on the inside with matched sheathing C.

It is well known that ordinary partitions are very good conductors of sound; and in certain cases, as in tenement houses, this is objectionable, so that special construction is required. If two

Digitized by Google

walls are built entirely separate from each other, and not touching at any place, the transmission of sound is much retarded; and if heavy felt paper or other material is put in between the walls, the partition is made still more nearly sound-proof. In order to decrease the thickness of such a wall as much as possible, the "staggered" partition is used, in which there are two sets of studding, one for each side of the wall, but arranged alternately instead of in pairs as in the double partition. The arrangement is shown in plan in Fig. 93. The two walls are entirely separate from each other and the felt paper may be worked in between the studs as shown, or the whole space may be packed full of some sound-proof and fireproof material such as mineral wool. There is a so-called "quilting paper" or "sheathing quilt" manufactured from seaweed, which is much used for this purpose. The inside edges of the two

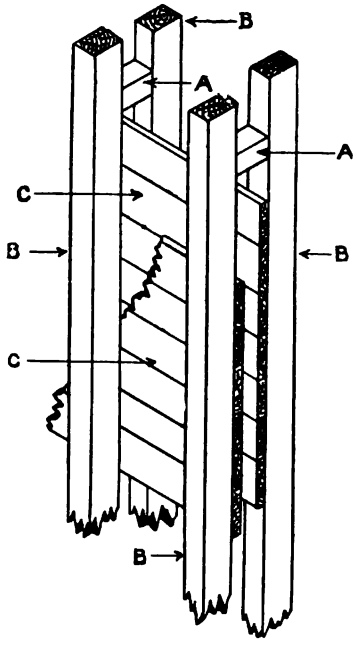


Fig. 92. Double Partition.

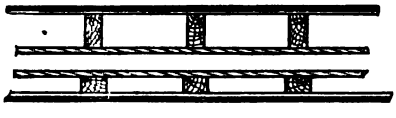


Fig. 91. Double Partition for Sliding Door.

Fig. 93. Sound-proof Partition.

sets of studs are usually placed on a line, making the whole wall eight inches thick where four-inch studding is used, and the studs may be placed about sixteen inches on centers in each wall. Each set of studding should be bridged separately.

Another case where a double wall may be necessary, is where pipes from heaters or from plumbing fixtures are to be carried in the wall. In case of hot pipes, care must be taken to have the space large enough so that the woodwork will not come dangerously near the pipes.

Digitized by Google

An important matter in connection with the framing of the partitions is the way in which they are supported; but this involves knowledge of the framing of the floor, and therefore it will be left for the present. It will be taken up after we have considered the floor framing.

Shrinkage and Settlement. An important point which must be considered in connection with the framing of the walls and partitions, is the settlement due to the shrinkage of timber as it seasons after being put in place. Timber always shrinks considerably *across* the grain, but very little in the direction of the grain; so it is the horizontal members such as the sills, girts, and joists which cause trouble, and not the vertical members such as the posts and studding. Every inch of horizontal timber between the foundation wall or interior pier and the plate is sure to contract a certain amount, and as the walls and partitions are supported on these horizontal members, they too must settle somewhat. If the exterior and interior walls settle by exactly the same amount, no harm will be done, since the floors and ceilings will remain level and true as at first; but if they settle unequally, all the levels in the building will be disturbed, and the result will be cracking of the plastering, binding of doors and windows, and a general distortion of the whole frame. This must be avoided if possible.

It is evident that one way to prevent unequal settlement, so far at least as it is due to the shrinkage of the timber, is to make the amount of horizontal timber in the exterior and interior walls, equal. Thus, starting at the bottom, we have from the masonry of the foundation wall to the top of the first-floor joists in the outside walls, ten inches, or the depth of the joists themselves, since these rest directly on the top of the wall. In the interior we have, if the joints are framed flush into a girder of equal depth, the same amount, so that here the settlement will be equal. But the studding in the exterior wall rests, not on the top of the joists, but on the top of the six-inch sill, while the interior studding rests on top of the ten-inch girder. Here is an inequality of four inches which must be equalized before the second floor level is reached. If the outer ends of the second-floor joists rest on the top of an eight-inch girt, and the inner ends on a four-inch par-

Digitized by Google

tition cap, this equalizes the horizontal timber inside and outside, and the second floor is safe against settlement. The same process of equalization may be continued to the top of the building, and if this is done it will go far toward preventing the evils resulting from settlement and shrinkage.

With a balloon frame this cannot be done, because there are no girts in the outside walls, but only ledger-boards which are so fastened that they cannot shrink, while in the interior walls we have still the partition caps. All that can be done in this case is to make the depths of the sills and interior girders as nearly equal as possible, and to make the partition caps as shallow as will be consistent with safety.

THE FLOORS.

After the wall, the next important part of the house frame to be considered is the floors, which are usually framed while the wall is being put up and before it is finished. They must be made not only strong enough to carry any load which may come upon them, but also stiff enough so that they will not vibrate when a person walks across the floor, as is the case in some cheaply-built houses. The floors are formed of girders and beams, or "joists," the girders being large, heavy timbers which support the lighter joists when it is impossible to allow these to span the whole distance between the outside walls.

Girders are generally needed only in the first floor, since in all the other floors the inner ends of the joists may be supported by the partitions in the floor below. They are usually of wood, though it may sometimes be found economical to use steel beams in large buildings. Wrought iron was once used, but steel is now cheaper and has taken the place of wrought iron. It is rarely, however, that this will be found expedient, and hard pine girders will answer very well in most cases. The connections used in the case of steel girders will be explained later. The girders may be of spruce or even of hemlock, but it is hard to get the hemlock in such large sizes as would be required for such girders, and spruce, too, is hardly strong enough for the purpose. Southern pine, therefore, is usually employed for girders in the best work.

Digitized by Google

The size of the girder depends on the span, or the distance between the supporting walls, and upon the loads which the floor is expected to carry. In general, the size of a beam or girder varies directly as the length of the span, so that if we have two spans, one of which is *twice* as great as the other, the girder for the longer span should be *twice* as strong as the girder for the smaller span. In ordinary houses, however, all the girders are made about eight by twelve inches in section, although sometimes an eight-by-eight timber would suffice, and sometimes perhaps a twelve-inch piece would be required.

It should be remembered in deciding upon the size of this piece, that any girder is increased in strength in direct proportion to the *width* of the timber (that is, a girder 12 inches wide is twice as strong as one 6 inches wide), but in direct proportion also to the *square of the depth* (that is, a girder 12 inches deep is four times as strong as one 6 inches deep). Hence the most economical girder is one which is deeper than it is wide, such as an eight-by-twelve stick; and the width may be decreased by any amount so long as it is wide enough to provide sufficient stiffness, and the depth is sufficient to enable the piece to carry the load placed upon it. If the piece is made too narrow in proportion to its depth, however, it is likely to fail by "buckling," that is, it would bend as shown in Fig. 94. The width should be at least equal to one-sixth of the depth.

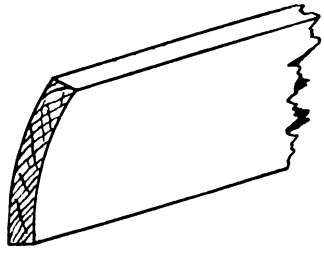


Fig. 94.

There are at least three ways in which the joists may be supported by the girder. The best but most expensive method is to support the ends of the joists in patent hangers or stirrup irons which connect with the girder. This method is the same as was described for the sill, except that with the girder a double stirrup iron, such as that shown in Fig. 95, may be used. These stirrup-iron hangers are made of wrought iron, two and one-half or three inches wide, and about three-eighths of an inch thick, bent into the required shape. They usually fail by the crushing of the wood of the girders, especially when a single hanger, like that

Digitized by Google

shown in Fig. 96, is used. Fig. 97 shows a double stirrup-iron hanger in use. Patent hangers as shown in Fig. 98 are by far the best.

If hangers of any kind are used, there will be no cutting of the girder except at the ends where it frames into the sill, and even there a hanger may be used. The girder may be placed so that the joists will be flush with it on top, or so that it is flush

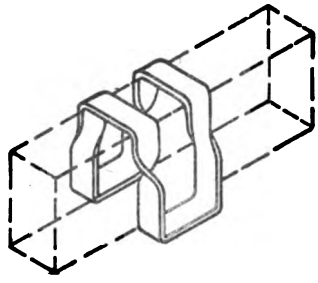


Fig. 95.

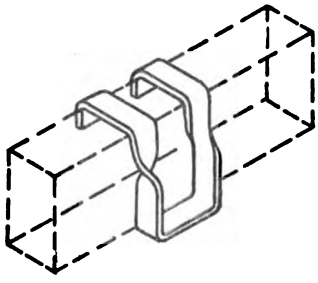


Fig. 96.

with the sill on top. If the joists are flush with the girder on top, and are framed into the sill in the ordinary way, as shown in Fig. 99, the girder cannot be flush on top with the sill; while, on the other hand, if the girder is flush with the sill on top, it cannot at the same time be flush with the joists on top. If joist hangers are used on the girder to support the joists, they will probably be

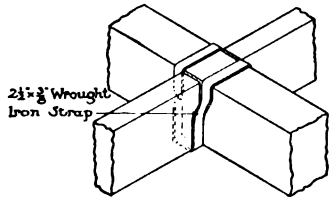


Fig. 97.

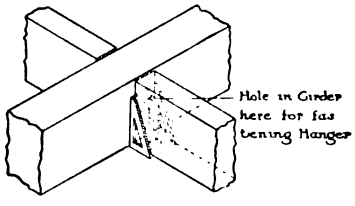


Fig. 98.

used on the sill as well, as explained in connection with the sill; and in this case the girder can be made flush with the sill on top and the joists hung from both girder and sill with hangers, thus bringing both ends of the joist at the same level, as shown in Fig. 100. If the girder is framed into the sill at all, it would almost

Digitized by Google

always be made flush with the sill on top, and the joists would be arranged so as to be level.

For framing the girder into the sill, a tenon-and-tusk joint, as shown in Fig. 101, would be used if the girder is to be flush with the sill on top. Since the girder would in most cases be deeper than the sill, the latter having a depth of only six inches, the wall would necessarily have to be cut away in order to make a place for the girder. This condition is clearly shown in Fig. 102. The girder itself should not be cut over the wall as shown in Fig. 103, because this greatly weakens the girder. If this method is used, the joists should be framed into

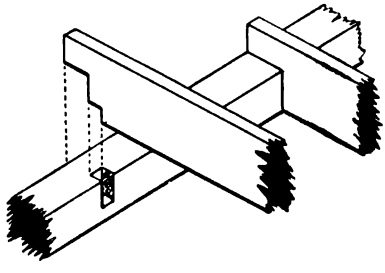


Fig. 99. Framing of Joist into Sill.

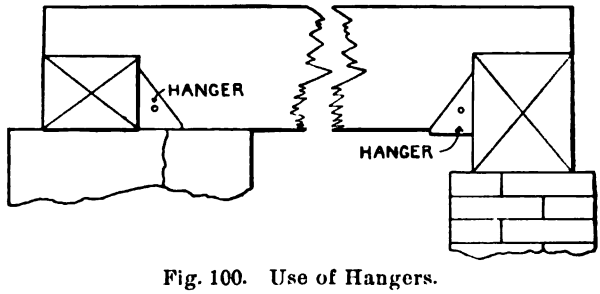


Fig. 100. Use of Hangers.

the girder in the same way as they are framed into the sill, a mortise being cut in the girder and a tenon on the joist. This is called "gaining" and is shown in Fig. 99. The top of the girder thus comes several inches below the top of the floor.

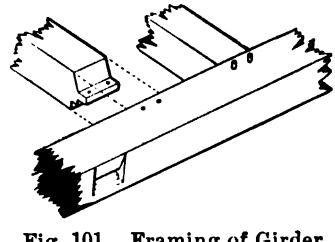


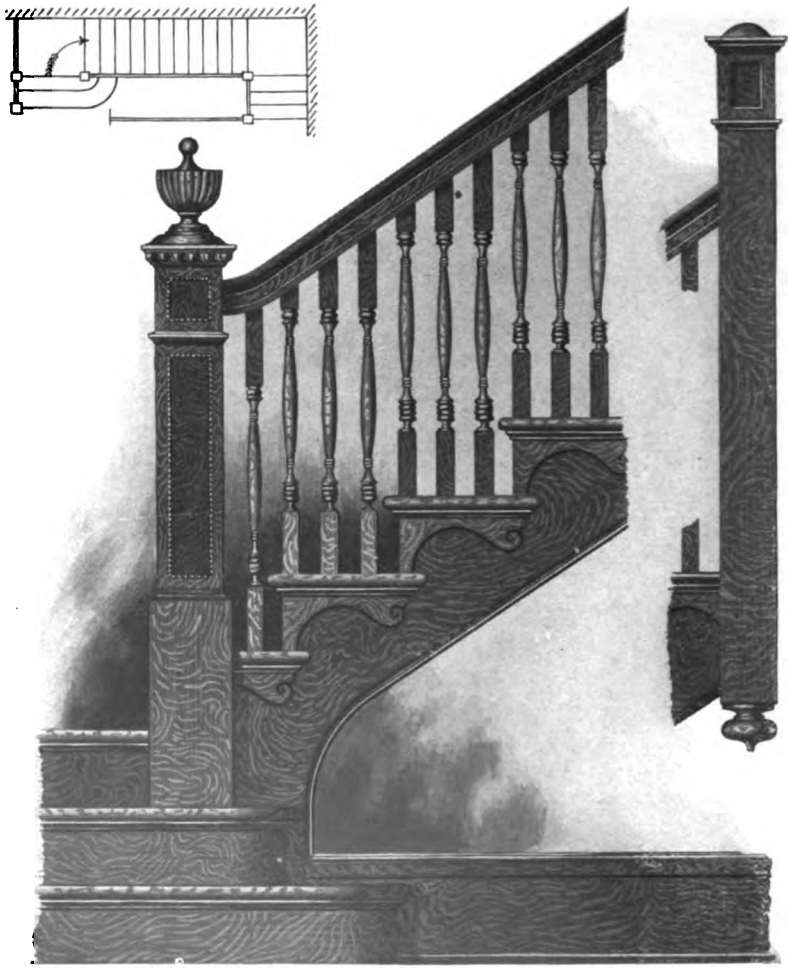
Fig. 101. Framing of Girder into Sill.

Another method is to make the top of the girder flush with the top of the joists. The joists are then framed into the girder with a tenon-and-tusk joint, as shown in Fig. 101, and the girder is "gained" into the sill as shown in Fig. 99.

Still another method in common use is simply to "size

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google



SPECIAL STAIRWAY AND RAILING.
The Foster-Munger Co.

Digitized by Google

down" the joists on the girder about one inch, as shown in Fig. 104. In this case, of course, the girder is much lower than the sill, usually so low that it cannot be framed into the sill at all, but

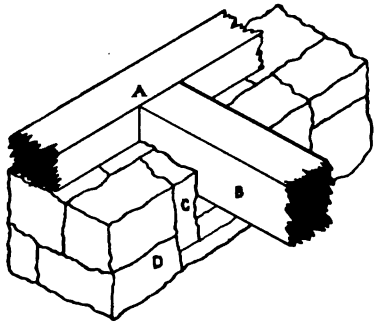


Fig. 102. Framing of Girder into Sill.

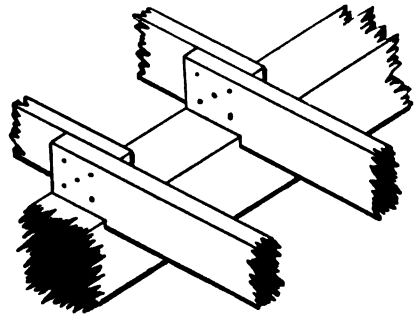


Fig. 104. Joists "Sized Down."

must be supported by the wall independently. Holes are left in the wall where the girders come, the latter being run into the holes, and their ends resting directly on the wall, independent of the sill.

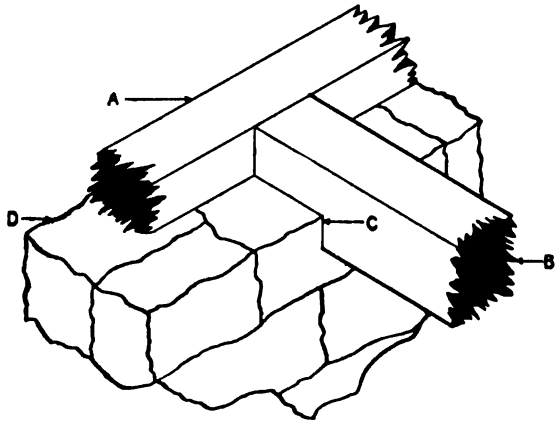


Fig. 103. Framing of Girder into Sill.

This is not very good construction, however, because the floor is not tied together as it is when the girder frames into the sill. The first method is the best and is the one in most common use.

The girders serve to support the partitions as well as to support the floors, and should therefore be designed to come under

Digitized by Google

the partitions whenever this is possible. When the distance between the outside walls is too great to be spanned by the girder, it is supported on brick piers or posts of hardwood or cast iron in the cellar. Such piers or posts should always be placed wherever girders running in different directions intersect each other. Girders are often supported also on brick partitions built in the cellar.

Joists are the light pieces which make up the body of the floor frame and to which the flooring is nailed. They are almost always made of spruce, although other woods may be used, and may be found more economical in some localities. They are usually two inches thick, but the depth is varied to suit the conditions. Joists as small as two-by-six are sometimes used in very light buildings, but these are too small for any floor. They may sometimes be used for a ceiling where there are no rooms above, and therefore no weight on the floor. A very common size for joists is two-by-eight, and these are probably large enough for any ordinary construction, but joists two-by-ten make a stiffer floor, and are used in all the best work. Occasionally joists as large as two by twelve are used, especially in large city houses, and they make a very stiff floor, but this size is unusual. If a joist deeper than twelve inches is used, the thickness should be increased to two and one-half or three inches, in order to prevent it from failing by buckling as explained in connection with the girders. The size of the joists depends in general upon the span and the spacing.

The usual spacing is sixteen or twenty inches between centers, and sixteen inches makes a better spacing than twenty inches because the joists can then be placed close against the studding in the outside walls and spiked to this studding. It is generally better to use light joists spaced sixteen inches on centers than to use heavier ones spaced twenty inches on centers. The spacing is seldom less than sixteen inches and never more than twenty inches.

Supports for Partitions. In certain parts of the floor frame it may be necessary to double the joists or place two of them very close together in order to support some very heavy concentrated load. This is the case whenever a partition runs parallel with

Digitized by Google

the floor joists, unless it has another partition under it. Such partitions may be supported in several different ways: A very heavy joist, or two joists spiked together, may be placed under the partition, as shown at A in Fig. 105. In this figure, C is the sole, B the under or rough flooring, and D, D, D the studding. This method is objectionable for two reasons: It is often found convenient to run pipes up in the partition, and if the single joist is placed directly under the partition this cannot be done except

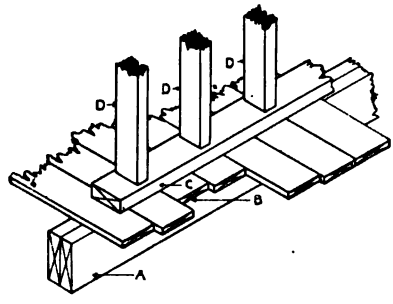


Fig. 105. Joists Supporting Partition.

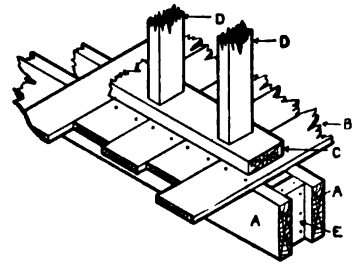


Fig. 106.

by cutting the joist and thus weakening it. Moreover, if the single joist is used, there is no solid nailing for the finished upper flooring, unless the joist is large enough to project beyond the partition studding on each side. The joist is seldom, if ever, large enough for this, and the finished flooring must therefore be nailed only to the under flooring at the end where it butts against the partition, so that a weak, insecure piece of work is the result. This may be seen by referring to the figure.

A much better way is to use two joists far enough apart to project a little on each side of the partition, as shown at A, A in Fig. 106, and thus afford a nailing for the finished flooring. These joists must be large enough to support the weight of the partition without sagging any more than do the other joists of the floor, and therefore joists three or even four inches thick should be used. They should be placed about six or seven inches apart on centers, and plank bridging should be cut in between them at intervals of from fourteen to twenty inches (as shown at E in Fig. 106), in order to stiffen them and make them act together. This plank bridging should be made of pieces of joist two inches

Digitized by Google

thick and of the same depth as the floor joists, and should be so placed that the grain will in every case be horizontal.

A partition supported as described above is bound to settle somewhat as the ten or more inches of joist beneath it shrinks in seasoning, and the settlement may cause cracks in the plastering at the corner between the partition and an outside wall. In order to prevent this settlement, partitions running parallel with the floor joists are often supported on strips which are nailed to the under side of the floor joists, as shown at A in Fig. 107. These strips cannot be allowed to project into the room below, and so they must be made as thin as possible consistent with safety. Strips of iron plate about one-half inch thick, and wide enough to support the partition studs, are therefore used for this purpose, and are fastened to the joists by means of bolts or lag screws. Partitions which run at right angles to the floor joists can also be supported in this way. If a partition runs at right angles to the joists near the center of their span, the tendency for the joists to sag under it will be very great, and they must be strengthened either by using larger joists, or by placing them closer together. If the span of the floor joists is large and the partition is a heavy one, it may be necessary to put in a girder running at right angles to the joists to carry the partition. In this case the partition studs will set directly on the girder, which may be a large timber, or in some cases, a steel I-beam.

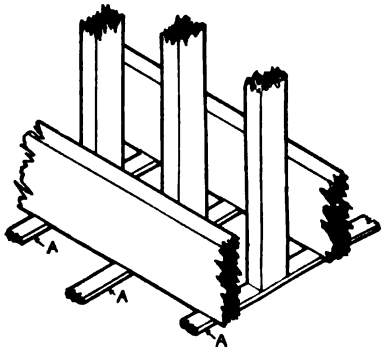


Fig. 107. Partition Supported by Strips.

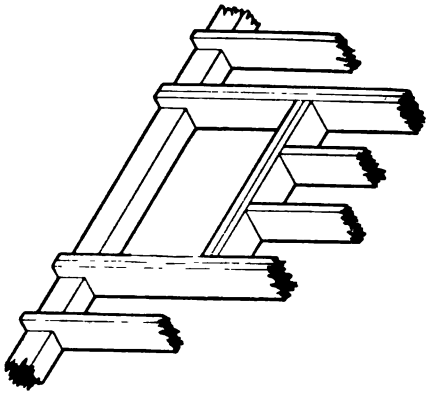


Fig. 108. Headers and Trimmers.

Digitized by Google

Headers and Trimmers. Another case where a girder may be necessary in a floor above the first, is where an opening is to be left in the floor for a chimney or for a stair well. The timbers on each side of such an opening are called "trimmers," and must be made heavier than the ordinary joists; while a piece called a "header" must be framed in between them to receive the ends of the joists, as shown in Fig. 108. The trimmers may be made by simply doubling up the floor joists on each side of the opening, or, if necessary, I-beams or heavy wooden girders may be used. In most cases these trimmers may be built up by spiking together two or three joists, and the header may be made in the same way.

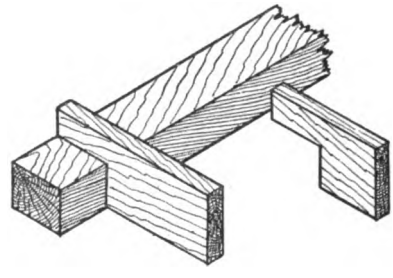


Fig. 109. Connection of Joist to Sill.

Joist Connections. Joists are also "gained" into the sill as shown in Fig. 56, in which case a mortise is cut in the sill and a corresponding tenon is cut in the end of the joist. The mortise was illustrated and described in connection with the sill, while the end of the joist is cut as shown in Fig. 56, the tenon being about four inches deep and gained into the sill about two inches. This brings the bottom of the joist flush with the bottom of the sill, and the top of the joist somewhat above the top of the sill, according to the depth of the joist. The top of a ten-inch joist would come four inches above the top of a six-inch sill, and the joist would rest partly on the masonry wall as shown in Fig. 100, thus relieving the connection of a part of the stress due to the weight of the loaded joist. A common but very bad method of framing the joist to the sill is simply to "cut it over" the sill without mortising the latter, as shown in Fig. 109. This does not make a strong connection even when the joist rests partly on the masonry wall; and if it is not so supported it is almost sure to fail by splitting, as shown in Fig. 110, under a very small loading. In fact, it would be much stronger if the joist were turned upside

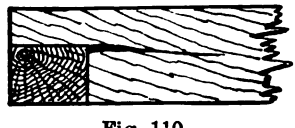


Fig. 110.

Digitized by Google

down. Frequently the joist is cut as shown in Fig. 111, where the tenon is sunk into a mortise cut in the sill, thus bringing the top of the joist flush with the top of the sill; but in this case the bottom of the joist will almost invariably drop below the bottom of the sill, and the wall must be cut away to make room for it, as shown in Fig. 102. It is also weak in the same way as is the connection shown in Fig. 110.

The framing of the joists into the girders may be accomplished in several different ways, according to the position of the girder. This placing of the girder is quite an important point. The top of the floor, on which rest the sole-pieces of the cross-partitions, must remain always true and level, that is, the outside ends of the joists must be at the same level as the inside ends. Otherwise the doors in the cross-partitions will not fit their frames, and cannot be opened or shut, and the plastering is almost sure to crack. Both ends of the joists will sink somewhat, on account of the shrinkage of the timber in seasoning, and the only way to make sure that the shrinkage at the two ends will be the same is to see that there is the same amount of *horizontal* timber at each end between the top of the floor and the solid masonry. This is because timber shrinks very much *across* the grain, but almost not at all *along* the grain. If the joist is framed properly into the sill, so that it is flush on the bottom with the sill, we have at the outer end of the joist a depth of horizontal timber equal to the depth of the joist itself, as shown in Fig. 100; and in order to have the same depth of timber at the inside, the bottom of the joist must be flush with the bottom of the girder, which usually rests on brick piers. Of course the top of the girder must not in any case come above the tops of the floor joists; therefore, in general, the

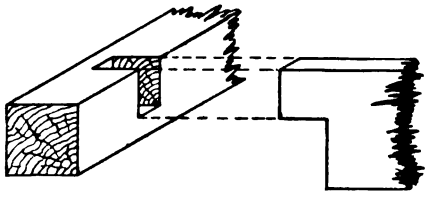


Fig. 111. Joist Mortised into Sill.

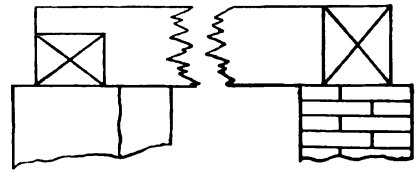


Fig. 112. Joist Framed into Girder.

Digitized by Google

girder must be equal in depth to the floor joists and flush with these joists on top and bottom, as shown in Fig. 112. This method is not always followed, however, in spite of its evident superiority; and the girder is often sunk several inches below the tops of the floor joists, as shown in Fig. 100, or even in some cases very much below, as shown in Fig. 113. Both of these methods cause an unsightly projection below the ceiling of the cellar. Where the joists are brought flush with the girder top and bottom, they may be framed into it with a tenon-and-tusk joint, the joists being cut as shown in Fig. 101, with a tenon as there shown, and a hole bored through the tenon to receive a pin to hold the joist in place.

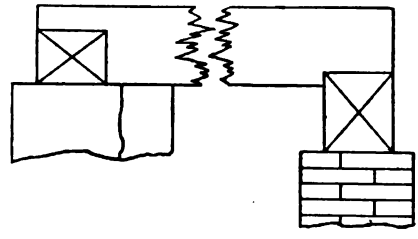
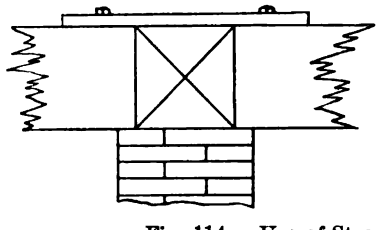


Fig. 113. Joist Sized Down on Girder.

Other methods of framing tenon-and-tusk joints are shown in Figs. 33, 34, and 35, and also a double-tenon joint in Fig. 36, which might be used in this case, although it is much inferior to the tenon-and-tusk joint. Two joists framing into a girder from opposite sides should be fastened strongly together, either by an iron strip passing over the top of the girder and secured to each joist, as shown in Fig. 114, or by means of a "dog" of round bar iron, which is bent at



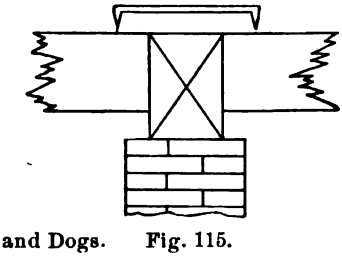


Fig. 114. Use of Straps and Dogs. Fig. 115.

the ends and sharpened so that it may be driven down into the abutting ends of the joists, as shown in Fig. 115. These bars should be used at every fifth or sixth joist, to form a series of continuous lines across the building from sill to sill.

If the girder is sunk a little below the tops of the joists, these may be gained into it in the same way as they are gained

Digitized by Google

into the sill. In this case joists should be arranged as shown in Fig. 116, so that they will not conflict with one another; and the two adjacent joists may be spiked together, thus giving additional stiffness to the floor. If the tenon-and-tusk connection is used, the joists may be arranged exactly opposite each other, provided that the girder is sufficiently wide, but it is always much better to arrange them as shown in Fig. 117, even in this case. The tenon may then be carried clear through the girder and fastened by a dowel, as shown. Very rarely a simple double-tenon joint, such as that shown in Fig. 36, might be used, but it is much inferior to either the gaining or the tenon-and-tusk joint.

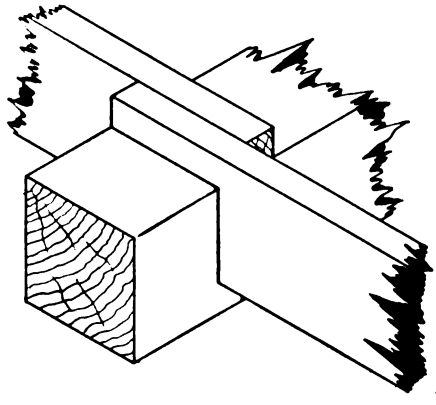


Fig. 116. Joists Framing over Girder.

If the girder is sunk very much below the tops of the joists, as in Fig. 113, these will usually rest on top of it and be fastened by spikes only, or will be "sized down" upon it about one inch, as shown. There is no mortising of the girder in either case. Joists are also thus sized down upon the girts and partition caps, and are notched over the ledger-boards as shown in Fig. 67. In cutting the joists for sizing and notching, the measurements should be taken in every case from the *top* of the joists, since they may not all be of exactly the same depth, and the tops must all be on a level after they are in place. This is really the only reason why the joists should be sized down at all, because otherwise they might simply rest upon the top of the girder, or girt, and be fastened by nailing.

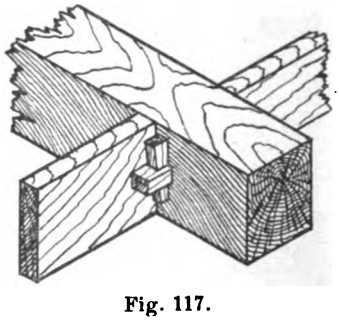


Fig. 117.

Connection to Brick Wall. When a joist or girder is supported at either end on a brick wall, there will either be a hole

Digitized by Google

left in the wall to receive it, or the wall will be corbeled out to form a seat for the beam. If the beam enters the wall the end should be cut as shown in Fig. 118, so that in case of the failure of the beam from overloading or from fire, it may fall out without injuring the wall. Every fifth or sixth joist is held in place by an

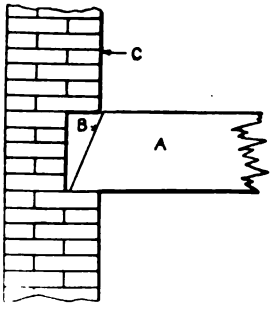


Fig. 118. Joist Supported by Brick Wall.

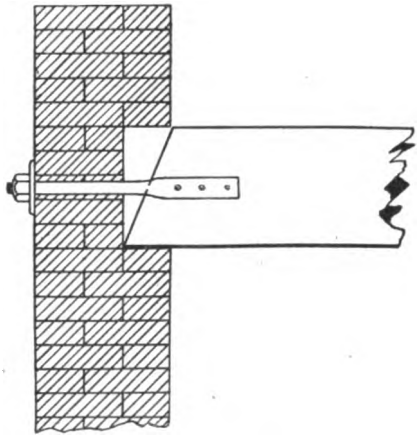


Fig. 119. Use of Anchor.

anchor (as shown in Fig. 119), of which there are several kinds on the market. Fig. 120 shows the result when a beam which is cut off square on the end, falls out of the wall.

There must always be left around the end of a beam which is in the wall a sufficient space to allow for proper ventilation to prevent dry rot, and the end should always be well painted to keep out the moisture. Patent wall-hangers and box anchors are often used to support the ends of joists in brick buildings, but only in case of heavy floors.

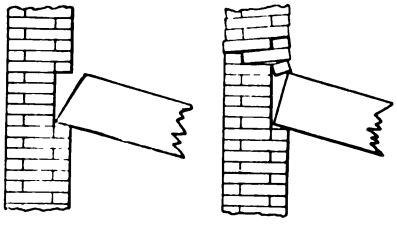


Fig. 120.

The floor framing in a brick building is the same as that in a building of wood except that there is no girt to receive the ends of the floor boards, so that a joist must be placed close against the inside of the wall all around the building to give a firm nailing for the flooring.

Crowning. In any floor, whether in a wood or a brick building, if the span of the floor joists is very considerable so that

Digitized by Google

there is any chance for deflection they must be "crowned" in order to offset the effect of such deflection. The operation called "crowning" consists in shaping the top of each joist to a slight curve, as shown in Fig. 121 B, so that it is an inch or so higher in the middle than it is at the ends. As the joist sags or deflects, the top becomes level while the convexity will show itself in the bottom as shown in Fig. 121 A. Joists need not be crowned unless the span is quite large and the loads heavy enough to cause a deflection of an inch or more at the center of the joist.

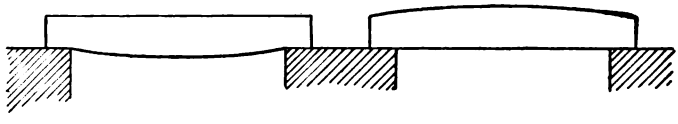


Fig. 121B. Crowning. Fig. 121A.

Bridging. Floor frames are "bridged" in much the same way as was described for the walls, and for much the same purpose, namely, to stiffen the floor frame, to prevent unequal deflection of the joists, and to enable an overloaded joist to get some assistance from the pieces on either side of it. Bridging is of two kinds, "plank bridging" and "cross bridging," of which the first has already been shown in connection with the partition supports. Plank bridging is not very effective for stiffening the floor, and cross bridging is always preferred. This bridging is somewhat like the diagonal bridging used in the walls, and consists of pieces of scantling, usually one-by-three or two-by-three in size, cut in diagonally between the floor joists. Each piece is nailed to the top of one joist and to the bottom of the next; and two pieces which cross each other are set close together between the same two joists, forming a sort of St. Andrew's cross, whence we get the name "cross bridging," or "herring-bone bridging" as it is sometimes called. The arrangement is shown in Fig. 122, and the bridging should be placed in straight lines at intervals of eight or

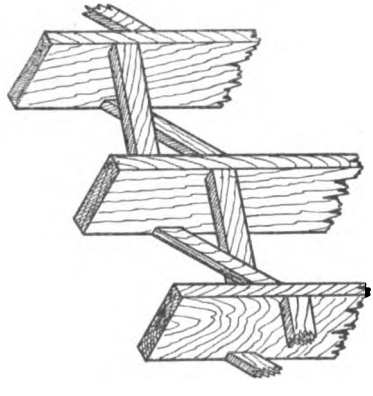


Fig. 122. Diagonal Bridging.

Digitized by Google

ten feet across the whole length of the floor. Each piece should be well nailed with two eightpenny or tenpenny nails in each end. If this is well done there will be formed a kind of continuous truss across the whole length of the floor which will prevent any overloaded joist from sagging below the others, and which will greatly stiffen the whole floor so as to prevent any vibration. The bridging, however, adds nothing to the strength of the floor.

Porch Floors. A word might appropriately be inserted at this point in regard to the floors of piazzas and porches. These may be supported either on brick piers or on wooden posts, but preferably on piers, as these are much more durable than posts. If piers are used, a sill, usually four by six in size, should be laid on the piers all around, and light girders should be inserted between the piers and the wall of the house in order to divide the floor area into two or three panels. The joists may then be framed parallel to the walls of the house, and the floor boards laid at right angles to these walls. The whole frame should be so constructed that it will pitch outward, away from the house at the rate of one inch in five or six feet, thus bringing the outside edge lower than the inside edge and giving an opportunity for the water to drain off.

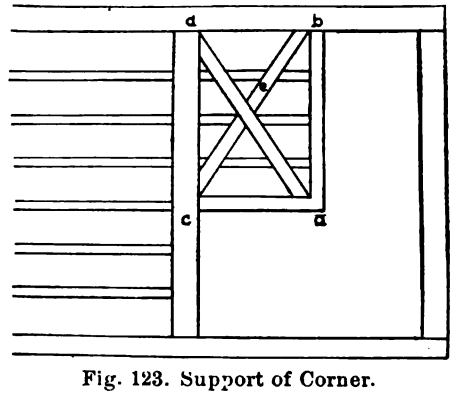


Fig. 123. Support of Corner.

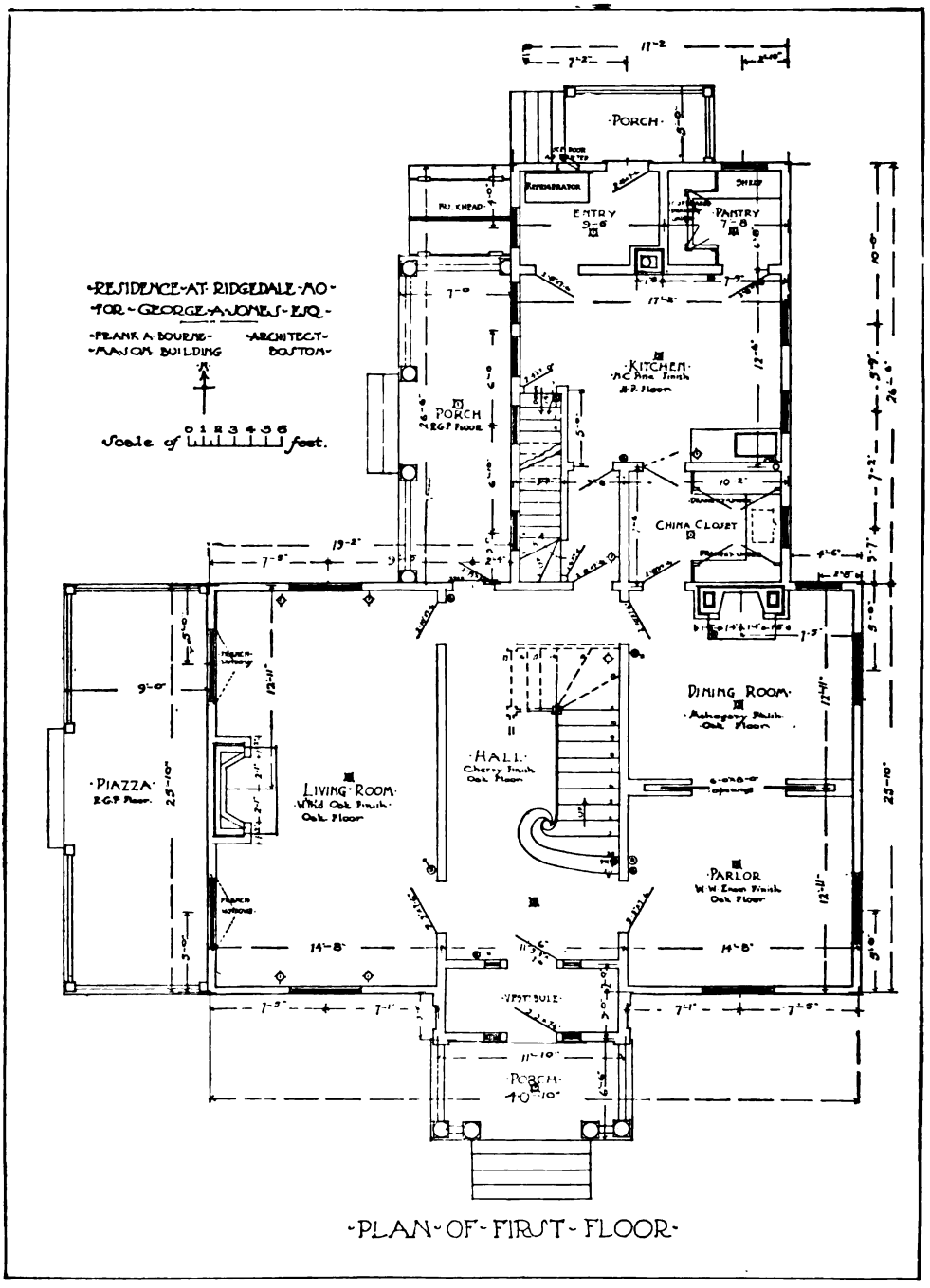
Stairs. The stairs are built on frames called "stringers" or "carriages," which may be considered as a part of the floor framing. They consist of pieces of plank two or three inches thick and twelve or more inches wide, which are cut to form the steps of the stairs and which are then set up in place. There are usually three of these stringers under each flight of stairs, one at each side and a third in the center, and they are fastened at the bottom to the floor and at the top to the joists which form the stair well. This subject will be taken up more fully under "Stair Building."

Digitized by Google

Unsupported Corners. An interesting place in a floor framing plan is where we have a corner without any support beneath it, as at the corner *a* in Fig. 123. This corner must be supported from the three points *b*, *c*, and *d*, and the figure shows how this is accomplished. A piece of timber *e* is placed across from *b* to *c*, and another piece starts from *d* and rests on the piece *b c*, projecting beyond it to the corner *a*. This furnishes a sufficiently strong support for the corner.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google



A TYPICAL ARCHITECT'S DRAWING.

This shows the conventional manner of indicating the over-all dimensions of the house, the size and shape of the rooms, the finish, the location of light and other fixtures, the swing of the doors, etc.; also the conventional style of lettering.

Digitized by Google

CARPENTRY.

PART II.

THE ROOF.

In Part I we saw that the subject of framing could be considered under three distinct headings; the framing of the wall, the framing of the floor, and the framing of the roof. So far we have discussed only the framing for the wall and that for the floor, so we will now take up the framing for the roof.

The roof framing is one of the most difficult problems with which the carpenter has to deal, not because of the number of complicated details, for there are few of these involved, but on account of the many different bevels which must be cut in order to make the rafters frame into one another correctly.

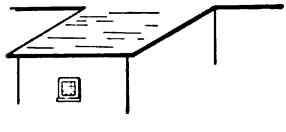


Fig. 124. Lean-to Roof.

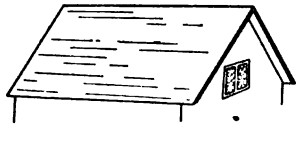


Fig. 125. Pitch or Gable Roof.

Varieties of Roofs. There are many varieties of roofs, ranging all the way from the simple pitch roof to the most complicated combination of hips and valleys; but they are all developments of a few simple forms.

The *lean-to* roof is the simplest of all and is usually employed for small sheds, piazzas, porches, ells, and in many other situations. It is shown in Fig. 124. Its characteristic is that it has but one slope, which renders it unsightly and unfit for use on any important structure.

The *pitch*, or *gable*, roof is very common, and is also quite simple in form. It has two slopes, meeting at the center, or "ridge," and forming a "gable" at each end of the building. This form of roof is shown in Fig. 125. It is popular on account of the ease with which it can be constructed. It may be used in combination with roofs of other kinds.

Digitized by Google

The *gambrel* roof is somewhat like the gable roof, and is probably a development of it; but the gable is not triangular in shape, as is shown in Fig. 126. Gambrel roofs may be seen on many old houses, built in Colonial days, and they have lately come again into use.

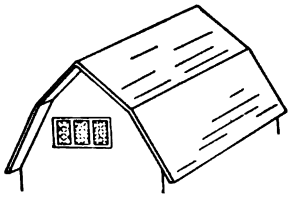


Fig. 126. Gambrel Roof.

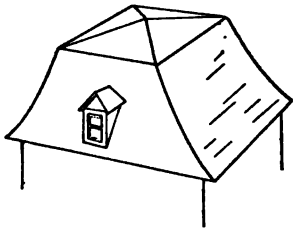


Fig. 127. Mansard Roof.

The *mansard* roof, called by the name of the architect who introduced it, is like the gable roof except that it slopes very steeply from *each* wall toward the center, instead of from two opposite walls only, and it has a nearly flat "deck" on top. It bears a close relation to the so-called *hip* roof. It is shown in Fig. 127.

The *hip* roof mentioned above also slopes from all four walls toward the center, but not so steeply as does the mansard roof.

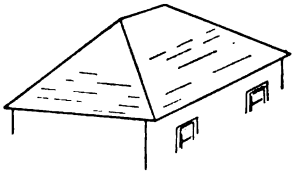


Fig. 128. Hip Roof.

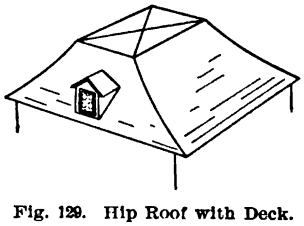


Fig. 129. Hip Roof with Deck.

It is usually brought to a point or a ridge at the top, as in Fig. 128, but sometimes it is finished with a small flat deck, as in Fig. 129.

In Fig. 130 is shown a very simple form of what is known as the *hip-and-valley* roof. It is a combination of two simple pitch roofs which intersect each other at right angles. In the figure both ridges are shown at the same height, but they are not always built in this way. Either ridge may rise above the other, and the two roofs may have the same pitch, or different pitches.

Digitized by Google

HARDWOOD MANTEL, MISSION DESIGN.
The Foster-Munger Co.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

If the ridge of the secondary roof rises above the ridge of the main roof, the end which projects above the main ridge is usually finished with a small gable, as shown in Fig. 131. This arrangement does not make a pleasing appearance, however, and should be avoided if possible.

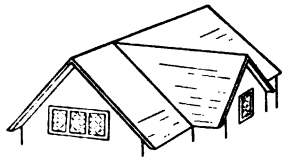


Fig. 130. Hip and Valley Roof.

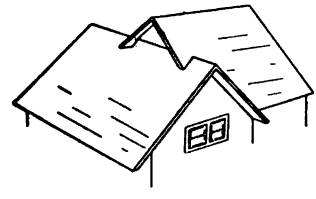


Fig. 131. Hip and Valley Roof.

The Rafters. In all roofs the pieces which make up the main body of the frame are the rafters. They are for the roof what the joists are for the floor and what the studs are for the wall. They are inclined members, spaced from sixteen to twenty inches apart on centers, which rest at the bottom on the plate, and are fastened at the top in various ways according to the form of the roof. The plate, therefore, forms the connecting link between the wall and the roof, and is really a part of both. Rafters are sometimes made as small as two by six, but this is allowable only in the very lightest work. The size of rafters for common dwelling houses is usually two by eight. In some cases it may be found necessary to use rafters as large as two by ten for heavy work.

The connection of the rafters to the wall is the same in all the types of roofs described. They are not framed into the plate, but

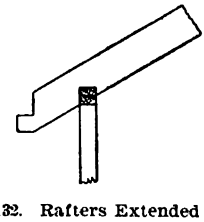


Fig. 132. Rafters Extended over Plate.

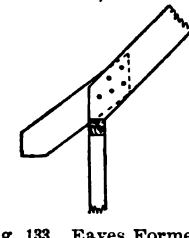


Fig. 133. Eaves Formed with Separate Piece.

are simply spiked to it. Usually they extend out beyond the wall so as to form the eaves, as shown in Fig. 132, and they are then cut over the plate and allowed to continue beyond. Sometimes

Digitized by Google

the rafter itself is not extended beyond the plate, but is cut off at that point, and a separate piece is nailed against it to form the eaves, as shown in Fig. 133. This piece does not always continue in the same line with the rafter, but may make an angle with it, as shown in the figure, so as to give a break in the roof line.

There are four different kinds of rafters used in framing roofs, all of which may sometimes be found in a single roof, if it is of complicated design, while ordinary roofs may be framed with only the more simple forms. In Fig. 134 is shown the framing plan of a roof in which all four kinds of rafters are to be found. *a a a* are *common* rafters which extend clear up from the plate to the ridge and which are not connected with any of the other rafters. *b b b* are *jack* rafters which are shorter than the common rafters and which do not extend from the plate to the ridge, but

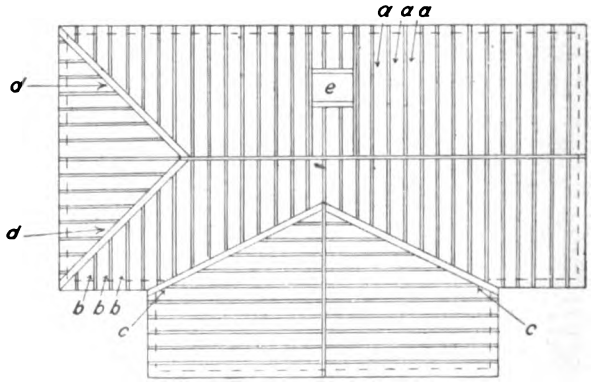


Fig. 134. Framing Plan of Roof.

are connected at one end to a *hip* or *valley* rafter. *c c* are the valley rafters, which are needed at every corner between the main building and an ell or other projection, while the *hip* rafters are found at every outside corner. At the points where the valley rafters are situated there are troughs or valleys formed by the roof surfaces—as these pitch downwards on both sides toward the valley rafter—while at the outside corners, where the hip rafters are found, the roof surfaces pitch upward on each side to the hip rafter. This may be seen by looking at any hip and valley roof as actually constructed.

Digitized by Google

In pitch or gable roofs there are no hip rafters, but there may be valley rafters and jack rafters, while common rafters are to be found in all roofs.

The Ridge. In the lean-to roof the rafters rest at the top against the wall of the building of which the ell, or porch, is a part; and the framing of the roof consists simply in setting them up and securing them in place with spikes or nails. The pitch roof, however, is formed on the principle that two pieces which are inclined against each other will hold each other up, and so the rafters must rest against each other at the top in pairs, as shown in Fig. 135. It is customary to insert between the rafters, at the top, a piece of board about one inch in thickness and deep enough

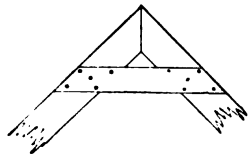


Fig. 135. Top of Rafters.

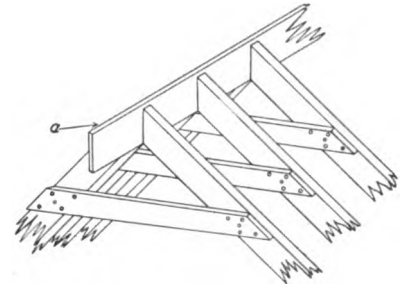


Fig. 136. Ridge Pole Between Tops of Rafters.

to receive the whole depth of the rafter, as shown at *a* in Fig. 136. This piece of board is called the *ridge* or the *ridge pole* and extends the whole length of the roof. It serves to keep the rafters from falling sideways, and keeps the roof frame in place until the roof boarding is on. It is sometimes extended above the rafters, and forms a center for some form of metal finish for the ridge, as shown in Fig. 137.

Interior Supports. In small roofs which have to cover only narrow buildings and in which the length of the rafters is small, there is no necessity for any interior support. When the rafters have been cut to the correct length, set up against the ridge, and secured in place, the framing is complete. In roofs of large span, however, the rafters would sag in the middle if they were not strengthened in some way, so it is customary to put a vertical support under them. This support may be formed by placing a piece

Digitized by Google

of studding under each rafter, somewhere between the plate and the ridge, and if this is done very much lighter rafters can be used than would otherwise be considered safe. It is claimed by some that it is cheaper to do this than to use the heavy rafters. A more common way of supporting the long rafters is to use fewer upright pieces and to place a horizontal piece *a* on top of them, running the whole length of the building and supporting each rafter. This is shown in Fig. 138. An upright piece *b* should be placed under every sixth or seventh rafter in order to give the necessary stiffness to the whole construction. For the uprights, pieces of ordinary studding, two by four inches or two by three inches in size, may be used. When there is to be a finished attic in the

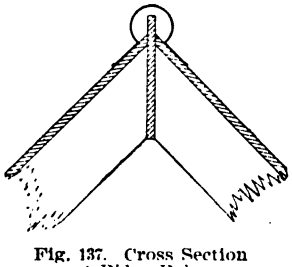


Fig. 137. Cross Section at Ridge Pole.

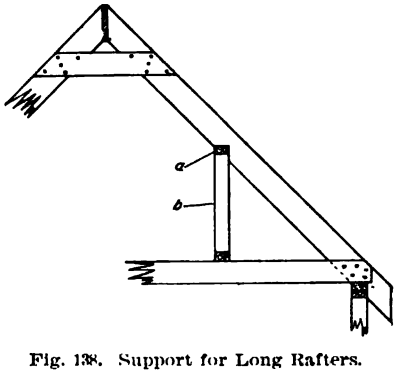


Fig. 138. Support for Long Rafters.

building these upright studs may be made to form the side walls of the attic rooms, and must then be spaced sixteen inches, or thereabouts, on centers. In this case a piece of studding could be placed under each rafter. Such walls are called *dwarf walls*.

Another form of interior support is the *collar beam* or *tie beam*. This is a piece of timber which extends between the rafters on opposite sides of the roof and ties them together, as shown at *a* in Fig. 139. It may be a piece of board about one inch thick and eight or ten inches wide, which is nailed onto the side of the rafter at each end. It is placed as near the center of the rafter as may be practicable, and in the case where a finished attic is required it forms the support for the ceiling. For this reason it must be at a considerable height from the attic floor, and

Digitized by Google

cannot always be placed very near the center of the rafter. The important point is to see that it is well nailed at each end.

A very interesting form of gable roof is that in which there is a double gable with a valley between, which forms the roof of

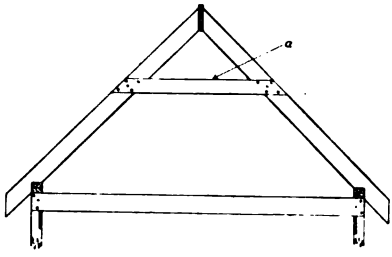


Fig. 139. Tie Beam Support for Rafters.

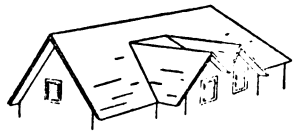


Fig. 140. Pitch Roof with Double Gable.

the ell, the main roof being a simple pitch roof. This is shown in Fig. 140. Fig. 141 shows how such a roof may be framed. The piece *a* is placed in the wall and supported by the studding and serves as a plate to receive the ends of the pieces *b*, which are val-

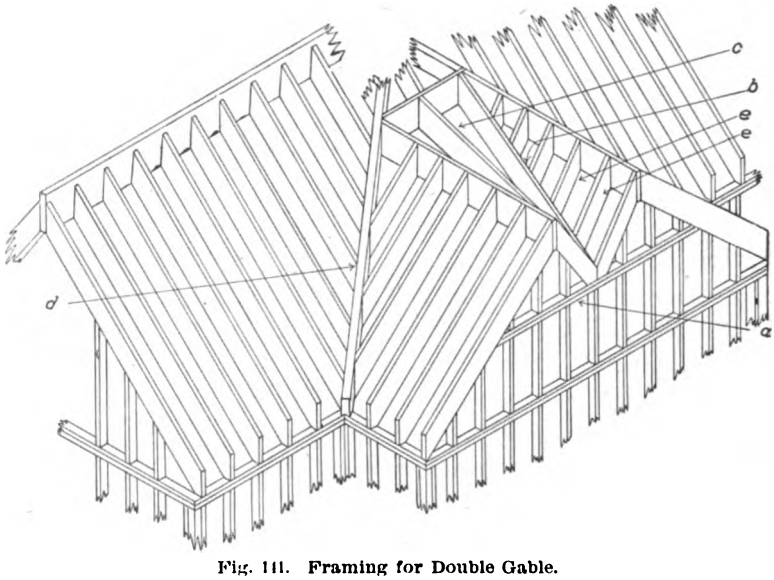


Fig. 141. Framing for Double Gable.

ley rafters. These, together with the piece *c*, form the framing for the shallow valley between the two gables. The valley rafters on the outside, marked *d* in the figure, are similar to those used

Digitized by Google

in the case of a single gable. The pieces *e e* are jack rafters and are very short. This form of roof is not common, but in some places it gives a good effect.

Framing of Gambrel Roof. A gambrel roof is framed in very much the same way as is a pitch or a hip roof. The slope of the roof, however, is broken at a point about midway between the plate and the ridge. The part of the roof above this break makes an angle with the horizontal plane of less than forty-five degrees, usually, while the portion below the break make an angle with the horizontal plane greater than forty-five degrees. This is shown in Fig. 126.

The lower slope may almost be considered a part of the wall, and at the point where the slope changes there is a secondary plate from which the upper slope starts, as shown at *a* in Fig. 142. The secondary plate may be utilized as a support for the ends of the ceiling joists *b*, which should also be securely spiked to the rafters, as shown in the figure. The rafters *c*, forming the upper slope, must be cut over the plate *a*, and firmly spiked to it, while at the top they rest against a ridge board *d*. The rafters *e*, forming the lower slope, are cut out at the top so as to form a seat for the plate *a*, and must be very securely fastened at the bottom to the main wall plate *f*. It is an excellent plan to have the floor joists *g* spiked to the lower rafters, so as to act like tie beams across the building and to counteract the outward thrust of the rafters. Sometimes these floor joists are dropped below the wall plate *f*, and are supported on a ledger-board notched into the wall studding *i*. This construction is not so good as that shown in the figure, because the joist is not so effective as a tie across the building. If it is employed, the floor joists must be securely nailed to the wall studding *i*, and they must not in any case be dropped more than two or three feet below the plate. The plate must always be firmly nailed to each stud to prevent it from being forced outward as it receives the thrust from the rafters *e*.

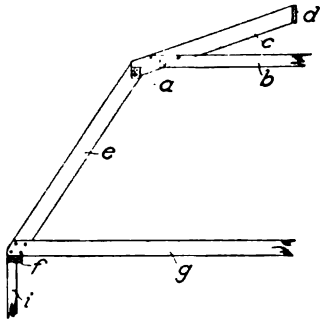


Fig. 142. Framing of Gambrel Roof.

Digitized by Google

A good rule for determining the point at which to place the secondary plate *a*, and for determining the general shape of the roof, is illustrated in Fig. 143. Let the points *a* and *b* represent the main plates on each side of the building. Draw a line *a b* between them and bisect this line at *c*. With *c* as a center and *c a* as a radius describe the semicircle *a d e f b*. At any distance *g* above *a b* draw a line *d f* parallel to *a b*, cutting the semicircle at the points *d* and *f*. Also bisect the arc at *e*. Then by joining the points *a d e f* and *b* by straight lines as shown, we will have the outline of a gambrel roof. The proportions of the roof may be varied by varying the distance *g*.

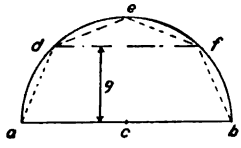


Fig. 143. Laying out Shape of Roof.

Gambrel roofs are not very strong unless they are stiffened by cross partitions in the attic stories, and these should be provided whenever it is possible. No gambrel roof, unless it is well braced, should be used on a building which is exposed to high winds, or which is likely to receive a heavy weight of snow.

Framing of Mansard Roof. A mansard roof is framed in very much the same way as is a gambrel roof, as may be seen in Fig. 144. Resting on the main wall plate *a* we have a piece *b* which is inclined slightly inward, and which supports at its upper end a secondary plate *c*. On the plate *c* rests the outer end of the deck rafter *d* which is nearly horizontal. The piece *b* is a piece of studding, two by four inches to four by six inches in size, depending upon the size of the roof. It supports the whole weight from the rafters, carrying it to the main wall plate and thence into the walls of the building. This member should always be straight, and the curved shape which is usual on mansard roofs is obtained by the use of the furring piece *e*. This piece is nailed to the upright member *b* at the top, and at the bottom it is secured to the *lookout f* which also forms a support for the projecting cornice. The floor joist *g* is supported on a ledger-board

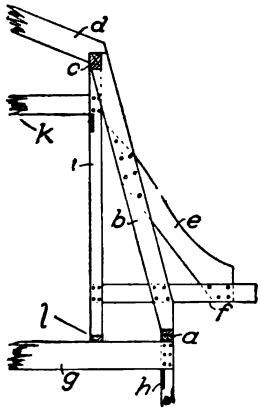


Fig. 144. Framing of Mansard Roof.

Digitized by Google

h, or it may rest directly on the plate *a*. The piece of studding *i* is merely a furring stud to form the wall of the attic room. It may be omitted entirely if desired, or if the attics are to be unfinished. The ceiling joist *k* may be supported on a ledger-board as shown, or may be simply spiked to the studding *i* or to the upright *b*. The studding *i* may rest directly on the floor joists *g* with a sole piece *l* at the bottom, as shown. The plate *c* should be of a good size, at least four by six inches, and should not be placed more than two or three feet above the ceiling joists *k*. The ceiling joists act as ties across the building and prevent the plates *c* from spreading apart, as they receive the thrust from the rafters *d*. For this reason it is better to have the ceiling joist *k* fastened to the upright *b* rather than to the furring stud *i*.

Dormer Windows. In Figs. 145 and 146 are shown what are known as *dormer* windows, this name being applied to all windows in the roofs of buildings, whatever may be their size or

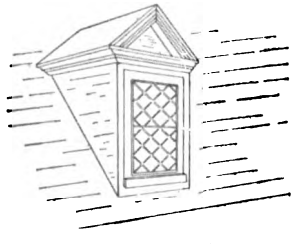


Fig. 145. Dormer Window.

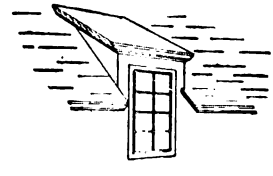


Fig. 146. Dormer Window.

shape. The figures show two different kinds of dormers which are in general use, the one shown in Fig. 145 resting entirely on the roof, while the one shown in Fig. 146 is merely a continuation of the wall of the building above the line of the eaves. The second type is often seen on low buildings, only one story in height, while the other kind is employed on larger structures.

In order to construct a dormer window an opening must be made in the roof surface, and the window must be built up over the opening. Headers are framed in between two of the rafters as shown at *a* and *b* in Fig. 147, and thus a rectangular opening is formed in the roof frame. The rafters *c* and *d*, which form the sides of the opening, are called *trimmers* and should be much stronger than the common rafters. Usually the trimmers are

Digitized by Google

made by doubling the ordinary rafters. The headers receive the ends of the rafters which are cut by the opening, and must be large enough to carry the weight which comes from them beside supporting the walls of the dormer. Timbers four by eight inches to six by ten inches, according to the size of the dormer, are usually large enough for the headers and often smaller timbers may be safely used.

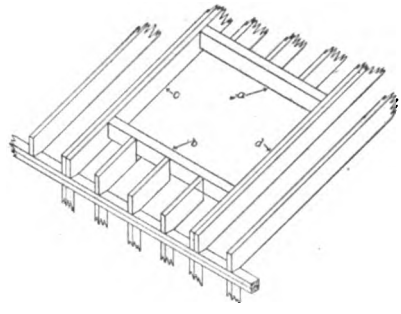


Fig. 147. Headers for Dormer Windows.

The headers are shown in section at *a* and *b* in Fig. 148, and it will be noticed that they are not put in in exactly the same way. The piece at the top *a* is so placed that its longer dimension is at right angles to the plane of the roof, while the piece at the bottom *b* has its longer dimension vertical. In the case shown in Fig. 146, where the front wall of the dormer is merely an extension of the main wall of the

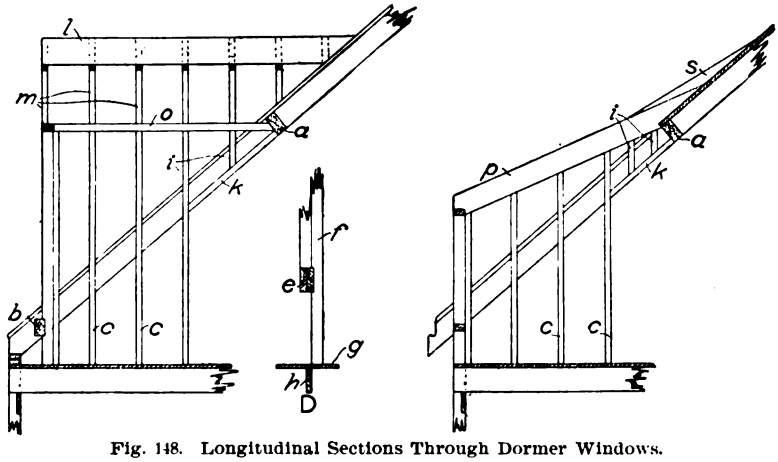


Fig. 148. Longitudinal Sections Through Dormer Windows.

building, there is no need of the lower header *b*, the main wall plate taking its place and supporting the studding for the front wall of the dormer, as shown at the right hand side of Fig. 148.

Fig. 148 shows sections taken through two dormers of the types mentioned above, parallel to the direction of the main rafters

Digitized by Google

and at right angles to the main wall plate of the building. At the left is a section taken through the type of dormer shown in Fig. 145, while at the right a section of the other type is shown. The studs *c c*, which form the side walls of the dormer, are notched over the trimmer rafters and roof boarding about one inch, and allowed to continue downward to the attic floor. This is shown at *D*. At *e* is a section of the trimmer rafter, *f* is the wall stud, *g* is the attic floor boarding, and *h* is a section of one of the attic floor joists. The studs *c* are in line with the studs forming the side walls of the attic room, so the studs *i* cannot be carried down to the attic floor. They are stopped, at the bottom, against a two by three-inch strip *k* which is nailed to the side of the trimmer rafter. At *l* is the ridge board, and *m m m* are the short rafters which form the pitch roof of the dormer. They may be very light, as they are short and carry little weight. They rest, at the foot, on a plate *o*, and at the top bear against the ridge board *l*. In the dormer shown on the right of the figure the rafters *p* are in planes parallel to the main rafters, and a furring piece *s* may be nailed to each of them so as to give the dormer roof any desired curve.

Beside the openings in the roof frame for dormer windows there must be other openings for chimneys and skylights. These are formed in the same way as explained for the dormer openings, with headers and trimmer rafters. A plan of such an opening is shown at *e* in the roof framing plan in Fig. 134.

RAFTER BEVELS.

At the points where the rafters intersect each other the ends must be cut on a bevel so that they will fit against one another accurately. The cutting of these bevels is the most difficult part of the roof framing. There is a different kind of bevel for each of the four kinds of rafters, so they will be considered separately.

Common Rafters. The common rafters are the most simple of all, and the bevels for them are easily cut when the pitch of the roof in which they are to be employed is known. Fig. 149 shows a plan and elevation of one common rafter *c*, with the ridge *a* at one end and the plate *b* at the other. It will be seen that the cuts may be made square across the piece since it is perpendicular to the plate *b* and to the ridge board *a*. There are two cuts to be

Digitized by Google

made; one at the top, where the rafter comes against the ridge board *a*, known as the *plumb cut;* one at the foot, where the rafter rests on the plate *b*, known as the *foot cut.*

The upper edges of the rafters in any roof surface must all lie in the same plane in order that the surface may be smooth and even throughout. It is therefore necessary to work from the upper surfaces of the rafters in laying out the bevels, so that any unevenness which may result from a variation in the depth of the rafters will appear on the under side where it may be corrected by furring. We must start with the point *d*, which is the point in which the line of the upper edge of the rafter intersects the line of the outside face of the wall plate. Then *d e*, which is the distance from the outside face of the wall plate to the face of the ridge board, is the *run* of the rafter, and *e f* is the *rise* of the rafter. The relation between this rise and run is called the *pitch* of the roof surface, and it determines the bevels, which may be easily marked off on the piece with the aid of the steel square.

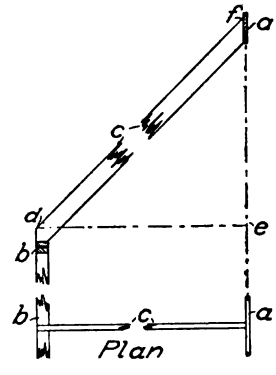


Fig. 149. Plan and Elevation of Rafter.

To obtain the length of the rafter we must find the distance *d e*. The pitch of the roof surface will tell us the number of inches the rafter rises for each foot of run, and from this we may find the distance *e f*. The square root of the sum of the squares of the distances *d e* and *e f* will be the distance *d f*, which is the length of the rafter between cuts.

Fig. 150 shows how the bevels for a common rafter can be cut very easily with the aid of the steel square. Suppose that we start with the rough piece *a b c e* before it has been cut at all. Let us choose some point, as the point *d*, on the edge of the piece near one end, which we will take as the point in which the upper edge of the rafter is to intersect the line of the outside face of the wall plate. This point corresponds to the point *d* in Fig. 149. Let us suppose that the pitch of the roof surface is to be eight inches to the foot. Then we will apply the square to the piece, as shown in the figure by the full lines, with the eight-inch mark on the

Digitized by Google

tongue at the point *d* and with the twelve-inch mark on the blade also on this same edge of the rafter. The line *d s k* along the tongue of the square is the line of the outside face of the wall plate, and if the rafter is not to project beyond the plate it should be cut on this line. If the rafter is to project beyond the plate so as to form eaves, we must measure off the required distance *k l* and draw the line *l m* parallel to *d s k*, cutting the piece on this line.

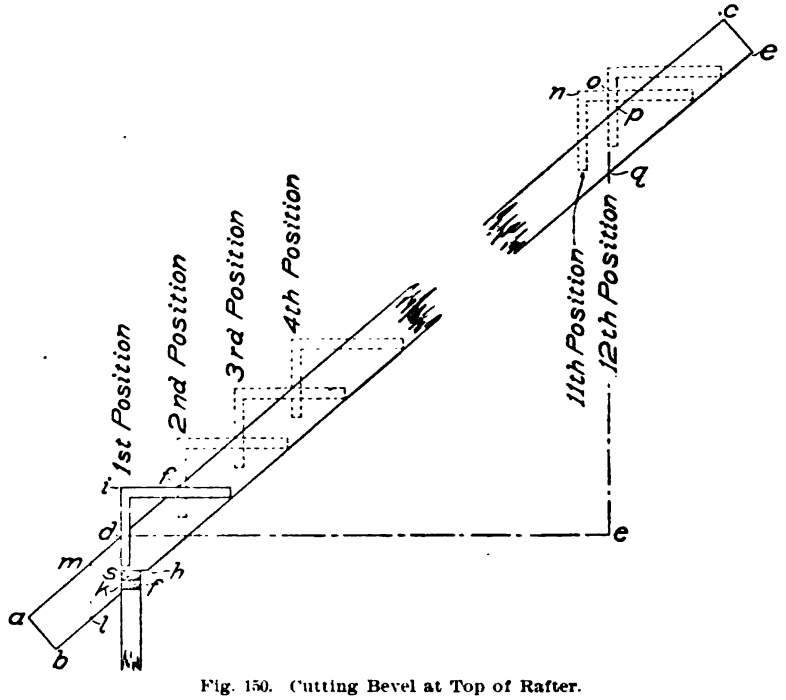


Fig. 150. Cutting Bevel at Top of Rafter.

Now to cut the bevel at the top of the rafter. Let us suppose that the run, the distance *d e* in Fig. 150, is ten feet and three inches. We will move the square along the edge of the rafter as indicated by the dotted lines eleven times, starting with the first position, shown by the full lines. When the square is in the eleventh position mark off three inches, *n* to *o*, on the blade, and slide the square along to the twelfth position. Then the line *p q* along the tongue of the square will be the line of the face of the ridge board, and the piece should be cut on this line.

Digitized by Google

A little study of the figure will suffice to reveal to anyone the reason for this method of procedure. Every time the square is moved into a new position it has advanced twelve inches or one foot along the run of the rafter, since the distance *i f* is twelve inches and is measured horizontally. After the square has been moved ten times it has advanced ten feet along the run of the rafter, and there is then left the three inches of the run which is accordingly measured off as explained above. This gives the position of the top bevel. It should be noticed that for a run of ten feet the square must be *moved along* ten times; for a run of eight feet, eight times; and so on. The run of the rafter may be easily obtained by subtracting one-half the thickness of the ridge board from one-half of the total span of the roof from outside to outside of wall plates. Sometimes the run is taken as exactly one-half the span of the roof, and then the rafter is *cut back* at the top by an amount equal to one-half the thickness of the ridge board. Another way to obtain the exact run of the rafter, from the outside face of the wall plate to the face of the ridge board, is to subtract the total thickness of the ridge board from the total span and divide the result by two.

The rafter must also be cut along the line *s h* at right angles to the line of the outside face of the plate, so as to rest on the plate, which is shown in the figure as *k s h f*. If it projects beyond the walls of the building to form the eaves, it must be cut on the line *k s* as well, leaving the notch *k s h* into which the plate fits. The distance *d s* may be varied to suit the conditions of each case, but must be made the same for all the rafters in any one roof surface.

The figure shows the rafter in the position which it would occupy in a building, the plate and a part of the wall studding being indicated.

Valley Rafters. We will next consider the valley rafters, and the bevels which must be cut for them. We have seen that in the case of the common rafters the bevels were determined by the pitch of the rafter, and since the same thing holds true for the valley rafters it is first of all necessary to be able to find the pitch of these members. By looking at the rafter *c*, in the plan in Fig. 134, it will be seen that it is a part of two different roof surfaces,

Digitized by Google

and that it forms a connecting link between them. Its pitch, however, is different from the pitch of either of these roof surfaces.

To show how this pitch may be found let us consider a special case. Suppose that we have a roof B, with a pitch of twelve inches to the foot which is intersected by another smaller roof A with a pitch of eight inches to the foot, as shown in outline in Fig. 151. In Fig. 152, which is a plan of a part of the same roof, let *a b* be the ridge of the larger roof and let the dotted line *c d* be the ridge of the smaller roof. This ridge *c d* intersects the surface of the larger roof B at some point, as *y* in Figs. 151 and 152, the location of which on the plan is as yet unknown. Let the line *a e f g h i j b* represent the line of the outside face of the plate and let the dotted line just inside of this represent the inside face of the plate. The figure also shows an elevation of a common rafter in each roof and of the valley rafter, with the plate and a portion of the wall studding at *k*, and the rafters at *l*. The ridge boards are shown at *m*. The points *g' f'* and *e'* show where the line of the upper surfaces of the rafters in each roof intersect the line of the outside face of the plate, and these points should all be at the same distance above the top of the plate, so that a line joining them would be horizontal. This may be accomplished when the rafters are cut by making the distance *g' n* or *e' o* the same for all of the rafters. It is evident also that the line of each ridge, *c d* or *a b*, must be horizontal, so that every point in either ridge is at the same level, or at the same distance above the top of the plate, as is every other point in the same ridge line. It may happen, in certain cases, that both ridge lines will be at the same elevation, but usually one ridge will be higher than the other, so that the roofs will intersect as shown in Fig. 151.

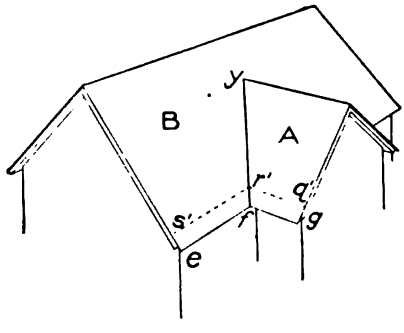


Fig. 151. Intersecting Roofs of Different Pitch.

We must now find the position and the pitch of the line in which the two roof surfaces A and B intersect. The point *f* must be one point in this line, and in order to determine the position of

Digitized by Google

the line we must find one other point in it. All lines in either roof surface which are parallel to the ridge lines, as q' r' and r' s', must be horizontal. Suppose that we draw the line q' r' in the roof surface A, making the distance g q or g' t just one foot. Then since this roof surface A has a pitch of eight inches to the foot, the point q' must be eight inches higher than the points g and f, or the distance t q' must be eight inches. This line q' r' is shown also in Fig. 151. It will be seen that it intersects the roof sur-

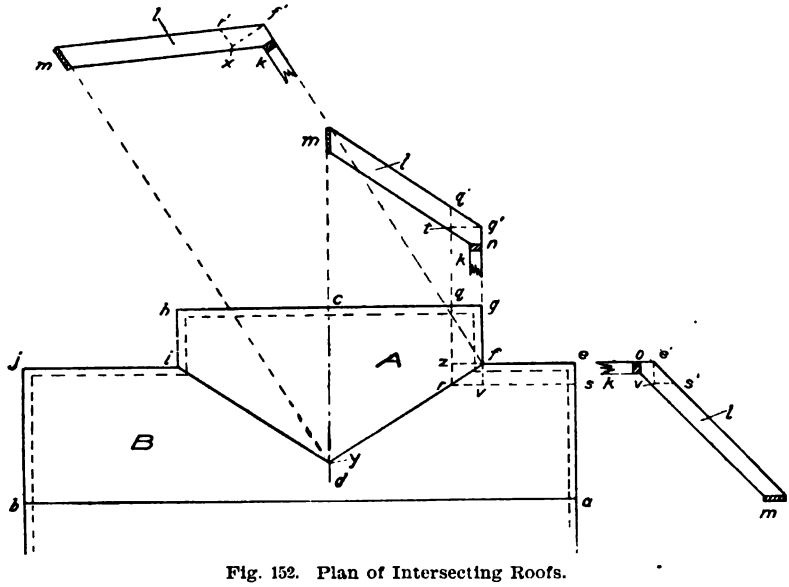


Fig. 152. Plan of Intersecting Roofs.

face B at the point r' and since it is a horizontal line, this point r' must be eight inches above the point e, which is on a level with the points g and f.

Now let us select the point s or s' in the roof surface B and let us suppose that it is also just eight inches above e f g. Since the pitch of the roof surface B is not eight inches to the foot like the surface A, but is twelve inches to the foot, the distance e s or e' v will not be twelve inches but will be $\frac{8}{12}$ of 12 inches, or eight inches. If then we draw the line s' r', in the roof surface B, making the distance e s or e' v eight inches, it will be at the same level as the line q' r' in the roof surface A and the point r' must lie in both lines, must be a point in the line of intersection of the

Digitized by Google

two roof surfaces, and must be eight inches above the point *f*. The distance *r' x*, then, will be eight inches. A line drawn through the points *f* and *r* will give the position of the valley rafter on the plan, and it will be seen that it strikes the ridge *c d* at the point *y*. Since *f y* lies on the roof surface B, the point *y* must be the point in which the ridge *c d* cuts the roof surface B, and the valley rafter *i y* may be drawn at once in plan.

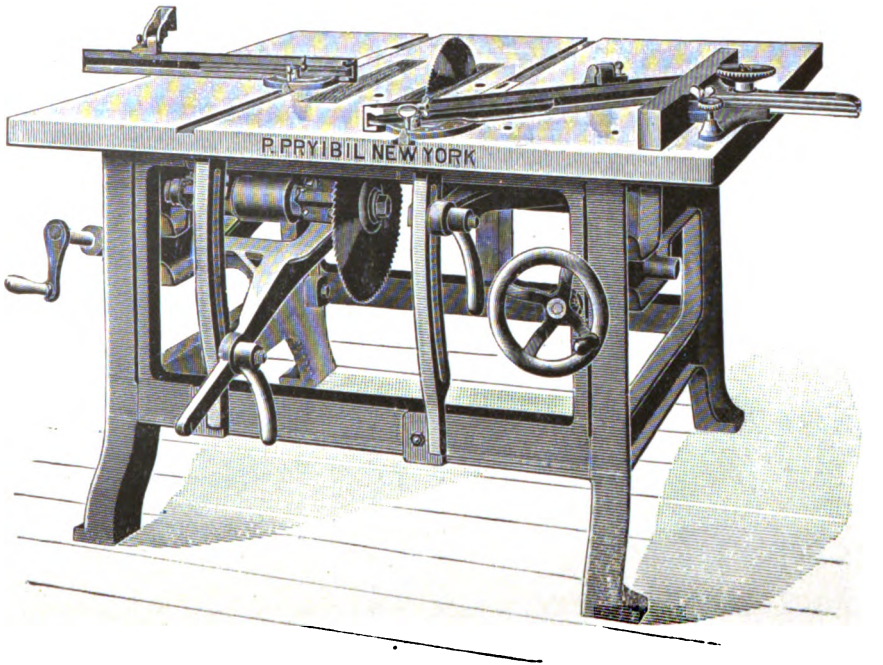
We have found that the distance *r z* is eight inches and we started with the assumption that the distance *f z* was twelve inches, so we see that the distance *f r* or *f'' x* is equal to the square root of the sum of the squares of twelve inches and eight inches which is very nearly fourteen and one-half inches. The distance *r' x*, which is the rise of the valley for the run of fourteen and one-half inches we have found to be eight inches, so we know that the pitch of the valley is eight inches in fourteen and one-half inches, or six and five-eighths inches in twelve inches.

It will be noticed that since the distance *f z* is twelve inches and the distance *r z* is, in this case, eight inches, the valley pitches horizontally toward the ridge *c y* with a pitch of eight inches to the foot. In the same way, since *f v* is eight inches, and *v r* is twelve inches, it may be seen that the valley pitches horizontally toward the ridge *a b* with a pitch of twelve inches in eight inches, or eighteen inches to the foot.

It will be noticed that the distance *f' r'* on the valley rafter is the length on that rafter which corresponds to a run of *f z*, or one foot, in the direction of the roof surface A. Also $(f' r')^2$ is equal to $(r' x)^2$ plus $(f' x)^2$. But *f'' x* is the same as *f r* in the plan so that $(f'' x)^2$ is equal to $(f z)^2$ plus $(r z)^2$. Then $(f' x')^2$ must be equal to $(f z)^2$ plus $(r z)^2$ plus $(r' x)^2$. In this particular case, we know that *f z* is twelve inches, *r z* eight inches, and *r' x* eight inches; so that the length on the valley rafter corresponding to a run of one foot toward the ridge *c y* is equal to the square root of $12^2 + 8^2 + 8^2$. Multiplying this result by the number of feet and fractions of a foot in the half span of the roof A will give us the total length of the valley rafter. The half span of the roof A is shown on the plan as the distance *c g*; *f z* may always be taken as twelve inches, and *r' x* will always be given by the pitch of the roof surface A, being the rise of this surface per foot of

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google



DOUBLE CIRCULAR SAW MACHINE.
P. Pryibil.

Digitized by Google

run. We have only to find, then, the distance $r\ z$, which is the run of the roof surface B, giving the same rise as occurs in the roof A for a run of one foot. As we have seen $r\ z$ is easily determined from the pitch of the roof surface B and we can find the length of the valley rafter.

Fig. 153 shows the plan of a roof in which there are a number of different kinds of valley rafters, and the same roof is shown in outline in Fig. 154. There is a main roof A, a small gable B, not so high as the main roof, and a larger gable C, the ridge of which is on the same level with the main ridge. The plan in Fig. 153 shows the method of framing the roof when a small gable intersects the main roof surface. One of the valley rafters $a\ b$ is car-

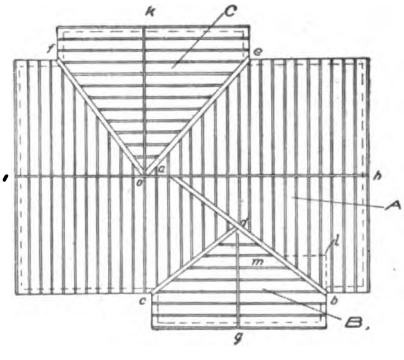


Fig. 153. Plan of Roof with Different Valley Rafters.

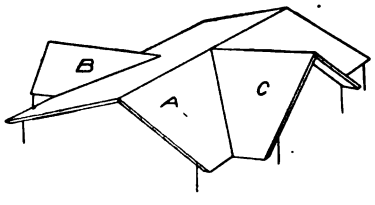


Fig. 154. Outline of Roof with Different Valley Rafters.

ried clear up to the main ridge and bears against it, while the other valley, $c\ d$, bears against $a\ b$. It will be seen that the lower part of the rafter $a\ b$ from b to d lies in both the roof surfaces A and B, but that the portion from d to a lies entirely in the surface A. This plan shows all the different bevels that will have to be cut on valley rafters. At the top of rafter $a\ b$, where it meets the ridge $i\ h$, is a single bevel which is determined by the pitch or inclination of the rafter toward this ridge. At the top of the rafter $c\ d$ is a single bevel which is determined by the angle between $c\ d$ and $a\ b$. It will be noticed that this angle is just double the angle between $c\ d$ and the ridge $d\ g$, so that it, too, is determined by the inclination of $c\ d$ toward this ridge. At the top of the rafter $o\ e$ there are two bevels; one determined by the pitch of the rafter

Digitized by Google

toward the ridge $o\ k$, and the other by the pitch of $o\ e$ toward the ridge $o\ h$. At the top of the rafter $o\ f$ are two bevels similar to those at the top of $o\ e$.

We will now consider how bevels may be cut on the pieces with the aid of the steel square. The cut at the foot of the rafter is simple, and is made in the same way as for a common rafter, as shown in Fig. 150. The distance $d\ s$ must be the same for every one of the rafters, whether they are valley rafters, common rafters, hip rafters, or jack rafters, and may be varied to suit the circumstances. The notch $k\ s\ h$ fits over the plate and the point s is at the upper outside corner of the plate.

We have seen that the length of the valley rafter may be obtained directly from the half span of one of the roof surfaces in which it lies, and this is shown in Fig. 155, which gives in isometric drawing the lines $b\ l$, $l\ m$, and $b\ m$ in Fig. 153. The distance $b\ l$ may be taken as just one foot of the half span of the roof A; the distance $m\ m'$ is the amount which the roof surface A rises in this run of one foot, and the distance $b\ m'$ is the actual distance from b to m measured along the line of intersection of the two roof surfaces. The point b corresponds to the point f'' in Fig. 152, and a portion of the plate is shown at c.

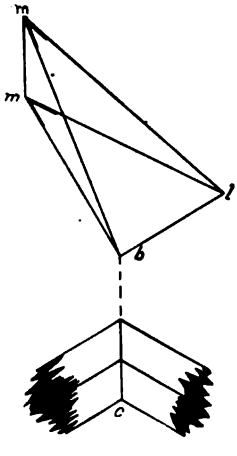


Fig. 155. Calculating Length of Valley Rafters.

Referring to the plan in Fig. 153, we see that the line $l\ m$ is parallel to the ridge $i\ h$, so that the angle $l\ m\ b$ determines the bevel at the top of the rafter $a\ b$ at a. In Fig. 155, $l\ m'\ b$ is the actual bevel and $l\ m\ b$ shows the bevel as it appears on the plan. It will be noticed that the angle $l\ m'\ b$ is much more acute than the angle $l\ m\ b$ on account of the rise of the valley. Note also that the angle $b\ l\ m'$ is a right angle, so that the square of $b\ m'$ is equal to the square of $b\ l$ plus the square of $l\ m'$, and that the square of $l\ m'$ is equal to the square of $l\ m$ plus the square of $m\ m'$. Remembering that $b\ l$ represents just one foot of the span of the roof A, that $m\ m'$ is the rise of the roof surface A per

Digitized by Google

foot of run, and that $l\ m$ is the run of the roof surface B which will give this same rise, it will be seen that the length $b\ m'$ may be easily obtained. By using the steel square we may avoid squaring all of these quantities.

In Fig. 156, let us suppose that we have a piece of timber from which we wish to cut the valley rafter. Suppose that we have selected the point m' as the starting point, corresponding to the point f' in Fig. 152, and that we have made the foot cut as shown, and as explained above for the common rafters. We now wish to get the length of the rafter so that we can make the plumb cut or *down bevel* at the top of the piece. If we place the square along the edge of the piece as shown by the light full lines with the distance $m'\ m$ on the tongue and the distance $l\ m$ on the blade, we

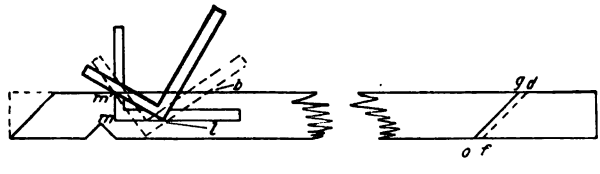


Fig. 156. Framing Valley Rafter.

can at once lay off the distance $l\ m'$ by marking the points m' and l on the wood.

Now let us place the square in the position shown by the heavier full lines, so that the heel will come at the point l and so that the edge of the tongue will pass through the point m'. We have now the distance $l\ m'$ laid off along the tongue of the square. Keeping the point m' always in the same position, so that we always have the distance $l\ m'$ on the tongue of the square, let us revolve the square about the point m', as shown by the dotted lines, until the twelve-inch mark on the blade coincides with the edge of the rafter at b. We then have the distance $b\ l$, or one foot, on the blade, $l\ m'$ on the tongue, and $b\ m'$ along the edge of the rafter. The distance $b\ m'$ may be laid off as many times as there are feet and fractions of a foot in the half span of the roof, giving the point d; then $d\ f$ is the plumb cut at the top of the rafter parallel to the foot cut, and $g\ o$ shows where we must cut back to allow for the thickness of the ridge board.

Digitized by Google

Fig. 157 shows how we may cut the bevel shown at a in the roof plan in Fig. 153. The actual bevel at this point is shown in Fig. 155 by the angle $b\ m'\ l$. Let $b\ m\ l$ be the center line of the top edge of the rafter. The point l has been found as explained above and corresponds to the point d in Fig. 156. It is the point in which the center line of the valley intersects the center line of the ridge. First place the square as shown by the dotted lines with the distances on the blade and tongue as shown. A mark may be made at m' which gives the distance $m'\ l$ and the square may be applied again, with this distance $m'\ l$ on the blade and $b\ m'$, equal to just twelve inches, on the tongue. The blade then gives the bevel. The rafter must be cut back, to allow for half the thickness of the ridge.

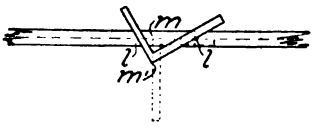


Fig. 157. Cutting Bevel.

For the cut at the point d in Fig. 153 where the valley $c\ d$ comes against the valley $a\ b$, we apply the square in the same way, as shown in Fig. 158, using different values for the distances $l\ m$ and $m\ m'$. The angle $b\ l\ m'$ must then be doubled, as shown, and the line $o\ p$ gives the cut.

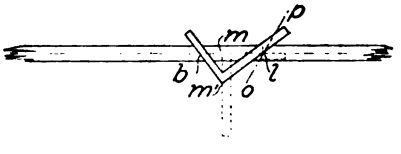


Fig. 158. Cutting Valley Rafters.

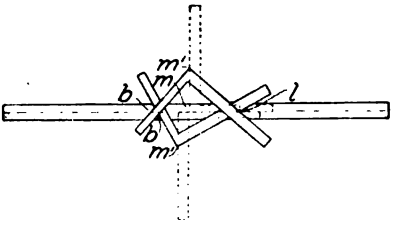


Fig. 159. Cutting Double Bevel.

The double bevel at the point o in Fig. 153 is obtained, as shown in Fig. 159, by applying the square on both sides of the center line of the top edge of the rafter, using different values for $m\ m'$ and $m\ l$, according to the pitch of the roof surfaces. This gives the two cuts along the blade of the square, in its two final positions, shown by the full lines.

It will be noticed that in making all of these cuts for valley rafters, there are two distances, $m\ m'$ and $m\ l$, which are used as starting points, and by which the position of the square on the piece is determined. $m\ m'$, as has already been explained, is the

Digitized by Google

rise of one of the two intersecting roof surfaces, corresponding to a run of one foot, while $m\ l$ is the run of the other roof surface which corresponds to a rise of $m\ m'$ in this roof. These distances are easily determined from the pitch of the two intersecting roof surfaces, which is always known, and from them any bevel on any valley rafter can be found, as well as the run, or *seat*, of the valley rafter, its rise, its length, etc.

Hip Rafters. Fig. 160 shows the plan of a roof in which there are some hip rafters. At one end we have a square hip A, and at the opposite end we have a skew hip B. The hip rafters are shown at $a\ b$, $a\ c$, $d\ e$, and $d\ f$. They rest on the plate at the foot, and bear against the ridge board $a\ d$ at the top. At $g\ h$ is shown also a valley rafter. It will be seen that the hip rafter is

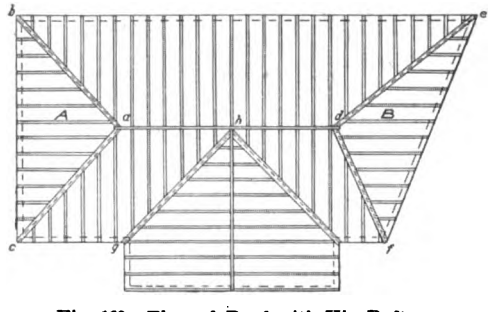


Fig. 160. Plan of Roof with Hip Rafters.

exactly the same as the valley rafter. It has the same pitch, or inclination, toward the ridge $a\ d$. Its pitch must be the same since it lies in the same roof surface, and is parallel to the valley. This similarity between hip and valley rafters is characteristic, and the same methods of cutting bevels which were explained in connection with valley rafters are eqally applicable in the case of hip rafters. The pitch of the hip roofs A and B may be varied to suit the design, but usually the hip roofs have the same pitch as the main roof. The position of the hip rafter on the plan is determined from the pitch of the two roof surfaces of which it is a part in the same way as was explained for valley rafters. All lines in the roof surfaces A and B which are parallel to the plates $b\ c$ and $e\ f$ are horizontal, and have the same elevation throughout their length. There is but one bevel at the top of the hip rafter where

Digitized by Google

it bears against the ridge, and this is similar to that at the top of the valley. It is cut in the same way as the valley rafter.

Curved Hip Rafters. A form of hip rafter which is sometimes a source of considerable trouble is one which occurs in a curved roof, such as an *ogee* roof over a bay window, or a curved tower roof. The shape of the curve to which the top edges of the common rafters must be cut, is determined from the shape of the section of the curved roof surface, but the curve at the top of the hip rafter is entirely different, and must be determined in another way. The principle used in finding this curve is the same as was employed in the case of the valley rafter, namely, that any line drawn in the roof surface parallel to the wall plate must be horizontal, or that it must be at exactly the same elevation throughout its entire length.

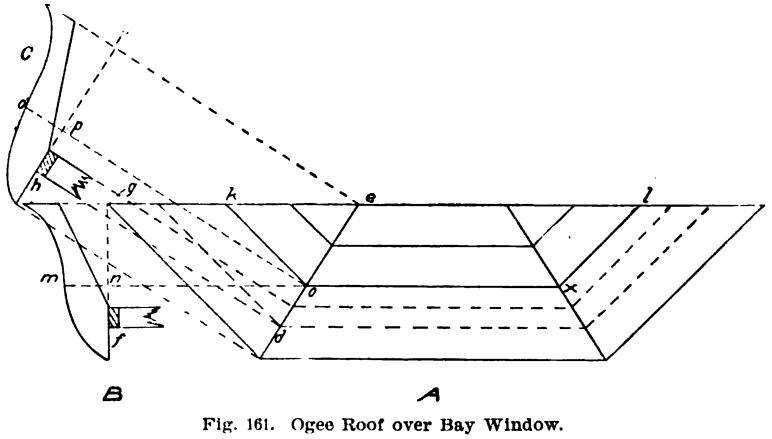


Fig. 161. Ogee Roof over Bay Window.

Fig. 161 shows how this principle may be applied. At A is shown a plan of an ogee roof over a bay window with a hip rafter, *d e* and common rafters. At B is shown an elevation of one of the common rafters cut to coincide with the curve of the roof surface. The shape of the curve may be varied to suit the fancy of the designer. At C is shown an elevation of the hip rafter *d e*, showing the curve to which it must be cut in order to fit into the roof.

To determine this curve we draw on the roof plan at A any number of lines, parallel to the wall plate. These must be horizontal, so that any point in either of the lines is at the same height

Digitized by Google

above the top of the plate as is every other point in the same line. The lines *f g* and *h i* in the elevation, shown at B and C, represent the level of the top of the plate. By projection we find that the line *k o x l*, for example, is at a distance *m n* above the top of the plate at the point where it crosses the common rafter shown at B. Every other point in this line is at the same elevation, including the point *o*, in which it intersects the center line of the hip rafter *d e*. By projection we can locate the point *o'* in the elevation shown at C, making the distance *o' p* equal to the distance *m n*.

In the same way we can obtain as many points in the curve of the hip rafter as we have lines drawn on the roof plan. The lines may be drawn as close together as we wish, and the number of points obtained may thus be increased indefinitely. When a sufficient number of points have been thus located, the curve can be drawn through them, and a pattern for the hip rafter is thus obtained. The shape of the curve for a valley rafter is found in the same way as explained for a hip rafter.

Jack Rafters. Fig. 162 shows the plan of a roof in which there are hip, valley, and jack rafters; *a b* and *b d* are hip rafters, *c e* is a valley rafter, and the rest of the framing is made up of common rafters and jack rafters. At *b f* and *e h* are shown the ridge boards. Of the jack rafters there are three different kinds; those like *i j*, which run from the valley rafter to the ridge board; those like *k l*, which run from the hip rafter to the plate; and those like *i t*, which run between the hip and valley rafters. These differ from each other only with respect to the bevels which have to be cut on them. The jack rafter *i j* has a simple plumb cut at the top, where it meets the ridge board, similar to that at the top of a common rafter; and at the bottom *i* where it meets the valley rafter, it has two cuts—a plumb cut and a cheek cut—which are similar to the cuts on a valley rafter where it comes against a ridge board, as explained above. The

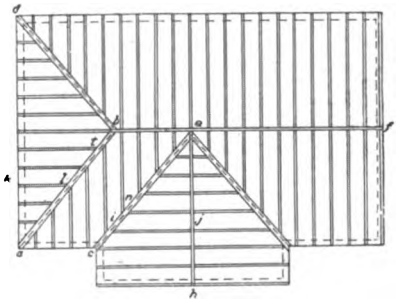


Fig. 162. Roof with Hip, Valley and Jack Rafters.

Digitized by Google

rafter *k l* has a simple foot cut at the bottom, like that for a common rafter, while at the top it has two cuts like those at the foot of *i j*. The rafter *i t* has two cuts at each end, a plumb cut and a cheek cut, where it comes in contact with the hip and valley rafters. All of these bevels can be obtained by the same methods as were employed for finding the bevels on the valley rafters. Everything depends upon the pitch of the roof in which the rafters lie, and the angle between them and the valley or hip rafters. The length of a jack rafter is proportional to its distance from the ridge or plate to which it is parallel, the longest one being equal in length to a common rafter, and the lengths decreasing steadily from this point to the point where the valley meets the ridge, or where the hip meets the plate, as the case may be.

BACKING OF RAFTERS.

Hip Rafters. In Fig. 163 we have a plan, in outline, of a part of a roof with a hip *g d* in which the two surfaces A and B come together. Let us suppose that the pitch of the roof surface A is eight inches to the foot, and that of the surface B is twelve inches to the foot. Let the lines *f e d* and *d b e* represent the outside faces of the two wall plates, which come together at the corner, and let the dotted lines just inside of these represent the inside faces of the plates. Suppose that the distance *a b* is just twelve inches, and we have the point *a* just eight inches above the points *b*, *d* and *e*, since the pitch of the surface A is eight inches to the foot. As the pitch of the surface B is twelve inches to the foot, the distance *c a* must be eight inches, in order to give a rise of eight inches at the point *a*, and the distance *d b* must also be eight inches, and *c d* must be the same as *a b*, which is twelve inches.

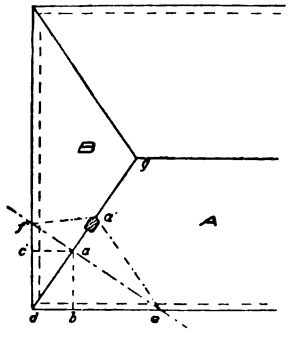


Fig. 163. Part Plan of Hip Roof.

Now suppose that the line *f a e* be drawn through the point *a* perpendicular to the hip line *d g*, and let it represent *a vertical* plane which is passed down through the roof surfaces, perpendicular to the plan of the hip line, cutting the hip rafter and plates.

Digitized by Google

Fig. 164 shows the section of the roof surfaces cut out by this plane. We have the point *a*, eight inches above the points *f* and *e*, making the distance *a h* eight inches. The dotted lines show the roof surfaces, and *a e* and *a f* are the lines which are cut out of these surfaces by the vertical plane. The section *m n o p* shows, much exaggerated in size, the section of the hip rafter cut out by the vertical plane, and it will be noticed that the upper corners of this rafter *a m j* and *a n i* project out into the roof surfaces on each side. These projecting corners must be cut off, so that the section of the rafter will be *a i p o j* and this is called

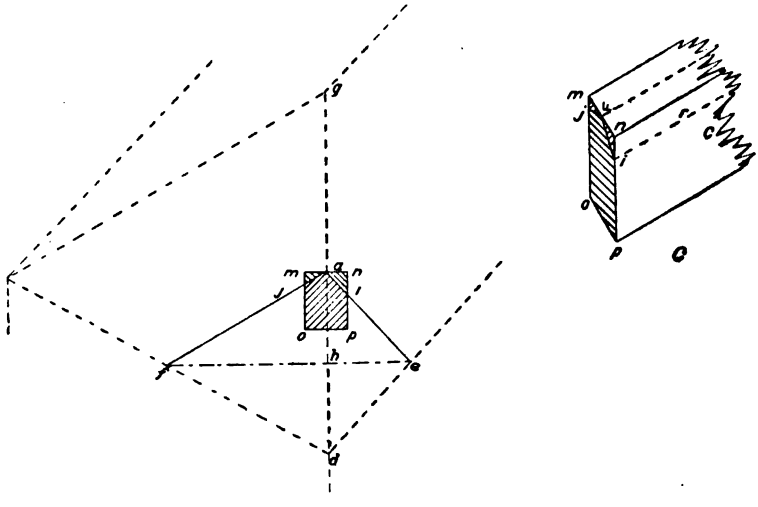


Fig. 164. Section through Roof Surfaces.

backing the rafter. At C is shown an isometric drawing of the rafter, lettered the same as in the section, so that it may be more easily understood just what the *backing* involves.

The question is "How do we know how much to cut off from the corners of the rafter in any particular case, and how can it be indicated on the piece of timber so that these cuts can be made?" This question will now be answered.

In making the foot cut on the rafter, we have to cut out just such a vertical section as is indicated in Fig. 164. We can find the point *a* on this section in the center of the top edge of the rafter and draw lines *a j* and *a i* directly on the section of the piece, and from the points *i* and *j* lines like *i r*, in the isometric

Digitized by Google

view at c, can be drawn on the sides of the rafter, which will show the amount to be cut off from the corners. In order to do this, however, we must know the bevel of the lines $a\ e$ and $a\ f$; that is, we must know the angles $n\ a\ i$ and $m\ a\ j$ for any particular case. In the case we are considering we know that the distance $a\ h$, Fig. 164, is eight inches, as explained above, and we need only to find the distances $h\ e$ and $h\ f$ in order to determine the two bevels. The distances $a\ e$ and $a\ f$ in the plan, Fig. 163, are the same as $h\ e$ and $h\ f$ in Fig. 164. Now let us find $a\ e$. The length of $a\ b$ was assumed at the start to be twelve inches, and $d\ b$ was found to be eight inches. On account of the similarity of triangles, $\frac{d\ b}{a\ b}$ is equal to $\frac{a\ b}{b\ e}$, so that $b\ e$ is $\frac{12}{8}$ of $a\ b$, or eighteen inches. Then $a\ e$ must be about twenty-one and one-half inches, and $h\ e$ in Fig. 164, is the same. We now know both $h\ e$ and $a\ h$ in Fig. 164, and these two distances determine the bevel of the line $a\ e$. In the same way, the distance $h\ f$ may be found and the bevel of the line $a\ f$ may be determined. It may sometimes be found more convenient to draw the roof plan accurately to scale and then to scale the distances, instead of calculating them, but this amounts to the same thing in the end. The bevels of the lines $a\ f$ and $a\ e$ may also be found graphically as shown in Fig. 165. Suppose this plan to be drawn accurately to a fairly large scale. Starting with the point a on the hip line $d\ g$, we draw the line $e\ a\ f$, perpendicular to the hip line, and the lines $a\ b$ and $a\ c$ perpendicular to the wall lines $d\ e$ and $d\ f$. From b we can draw the line $b\ a''$ making the same angle with $a\ b$ that the roof surface A makes with the horizontal plane. Then if $a\ a''$ be drawn from a perpendicular to $a\ b$ the distance $a\ a''$ will be equal to the actual elevation of the point a above the point b. Thus distance can be laid off along the hip line, $d\ g$ perpendicular to the line $f\ a\ e$, by swinging the point a'' around

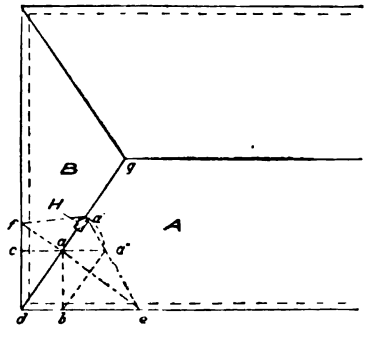


Fig. 165. Graphical Method of Finding Bevels.

Digitized by Google

to a'. Then the distance $a\ a'$ is equal to the elevation of the point a above the point b, and above the points e and f also. The lines $a'\ e$ and $a'\ f$ make the same angle with the line $f\ a\ e$ that the lines $a\ e$ and $a\ f$, in Fig. 164, make with the horizontal, and we can get the bevels from these lines. At H is shown a small section taken vertically through the hip rafter, similar to the section of the rafter shown in Fig. 164.

Valley Rafters. In Fig. 166 we have a plan in outline of a part of a roof with a valley $a\ b$ between the roof surfaces C and D and with ridges $h\ c$ and $b\ d$. Let us assume the pitches of the roof surfaces to be, as before, eight inches to the foot for C and twelve inches to the foot for D. Assume $a\ e$ to be twelve inches, and $e\ f$ will be eight inches and the point f must be eight inches

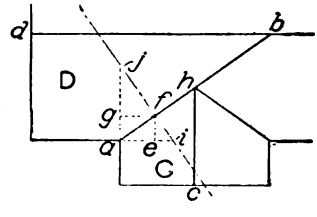


Fig. 166. Roof with Valley and Ridges.

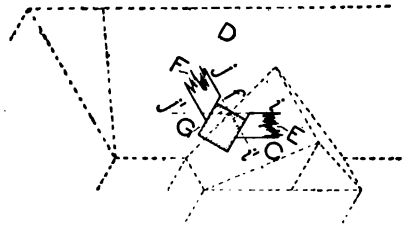


Fig. 167. Method of Finding Bevels.

above the point a, as explained in the case of the hip rafter. Since we know $a\ e$ and $e\ f$ in Fig. 166 we can find $e\ i$ from the similarity of the triangles, as in the case of the hip rafter, and then we can find both $a\ i$ and $f\ i$. Knowing $a\ i$, and knowing the pitch of the roof surface C, we can find the elevation of the point i above the point a. Since we know that the point f is eight inches above the point a we can find the elevation of the point i above the point f, and this with the distance $f\ i$ will give the bevel of the line $f\ i$ in Fig. 167. In the same way the bevel of the line $f\ j$ may be found. These bevels can be laid off on the vertical section of the valley rafter which is cut out when the foot cut is made, and the distances at which the tops of the jacks, E and F in Fig. 167, must be set above the top of the valley rafter g may be determined. In order that the lines $f\ i$ and $f\ j$ in Fig. 167 may come on the surface of the valley rafter section, they may be drawn

Digitized by Google

sloping downward instead of upward, as shown at $f'i'$ and $f'j'$. The point f' is always in the center of the top edge of the valley rafter.

Fig. 168 shows how the bevels for the valley rafter may be found graphically. Starting with the point f we can draw lines $o\,f\,p$, $a\,e\,i$, and $a\,g\,j$ perpendicular respectively to the valley line $a\,h$ and to the two outside wall lines. The lines $a\,i''$ and $a\,j''$ having been drawn corresponding to the pitches of the two roof surfaces, we have the distances $i\,i''$ and $j\,j''$ showing the elevation of the points i and j. These distances can now be swung around perpendicular to the line $o\,f\,p$, so as to give the points i' and j'. The distances $e\,f'''$ and $g\,f'''$, which should be the same, show the elevation of the point f, and this distance may be laid off perpendicular to $o\,f\,p$, as shown at $f\,f'$. Then the lines $f'\,i'$ and $f''\,j'$ correspond to the lines $f\,i$ and $f\,j$, in Fig. 167, and give the bevels which we need. At Q is shown a vertical section of the valley rafter and the jack rafters similar to Fig. 167.

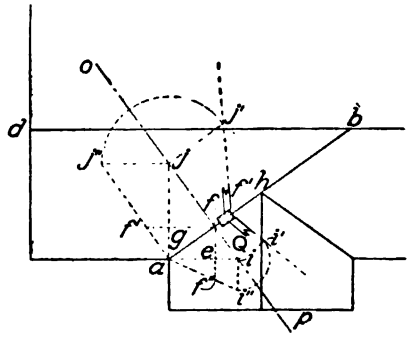


Fig. 168. Graphical Method of Finding Bevels.

ATTIC PARTITIONS.

It is often necessary to build partitions in the story directly beneath the roof, and such partitions must extend clear up to the under side of the rafters and connect with them in some way. This makes it necessary to cut the tops of the studs on a bevel to correspond with the pitch of the rafters, and the cutting of this bevel is not always an easy task. Fig. 169 shows the framing plan of the roof of a small simple building. $a\,b$ is the ridge. The plate extends around the outside from c to d to e to f, and back again to c; and $g\,h$, $i\,j$, $k\,l$ are the rafters. A partition is shown beneath the roof running diagonally across the building, making an angle with the direction of the rafters and an angle with the direction of the ridge. At $n\,o$ is shown another partition running parallel to the ridge, and at $p\,q$ still another, running

Digitized by Google

parallel to the rafters. Now since all the rafters slope upwards from the plate to the ridge, it is evident that the tops of all the studs must be cut on a bevel if they are to fit closely against the undersides of the rafters. This is illustrated in Fig. 170, where the stud A must fit against the rafter B.

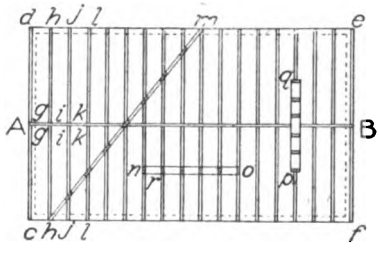


Fig. 169. Framing Plan of Small Roof.

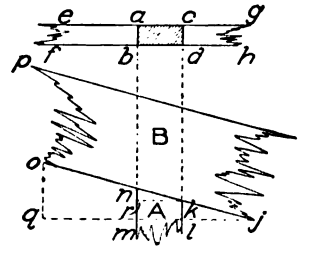


Fig. 170. Connection of Studs and Rafters.

To take the simplest case first, let us consider the stud marked *r*. Since all the rafters have the same pitch or slope, all the studs in the partition *n o* will have the same bevel at the top, and if we find the bevel for one we can cut the bevel for all. Fig. 170 shows this stud drawn to a larger scale and separated from the rest; *a b c d* is a plan of the stud, and the rafter is shown at *e f g h*. We will take the distance *f h*, or the run of the part of the rafter shown, as one foot exactly. Now if A and B represent a side elevation of the rafter and stud looking in the direction shown by the arrow, the *run* of the part of the rafter shown is the distance *j q*, and the distance *q o* should be equal to the *rise* of the rafter in one foot. Let the rise in this case be nine inches. Then *k n* shows the bevel of the top of the stud. If the stud is a two by four stick, the distance *k r* is just four inches, or one-third of the run of the rafter, and consequently the distance *r n* is just three inches, or one-third of the rise of the rafter.

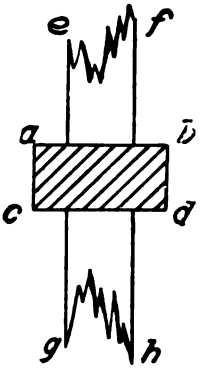


Fig. 171. Stud and Rafter.

In the case of the studs forming the partition *p q* in Fig. 169, the bevel is found in the same way, the only difference being that the rafter now crosses the stud, as shown in Fig. 171, where

Digitized by Google

a b c d is the stud and *e f g h* is the rafter, both shown in plan.

In the case of the partition *h m*, Fig. 169, we have to deal with a somewhat more difficult problem because the rafter crosses the studs diagonally and the studs must be beveled diagonally on top so that the bevel will run from corner to corner instead of straight across the stud from side to side. An enlarged plan of one stud with the rafter running across it is shown in Fig. 172. Let *a b c d* be the stud and *e f g h* the rafter; *i j k l* shows the rafter in elevation looking in the direction shown by the arrow, and *a' b' c' d'* shows the stud as seen from this same direction. The corner *d* of the stud cannot be seen from this side and is shown as a dotted line in the figure. The rafter cuts across the corners of the stud at the points *a' b' c'* and *d'*, giving the bevel shown in the figure. This bevel may be cut by drawing any line all the way around the stud, square with the edges, as shown at *m n*, and laying off from this line on the edges of the stud the distances *a' a''*, *b' b''*, *c' c''*, and *d' d''*. Lines drawn across the faces of the stud connecting the points so obtained will give the exact bevel.

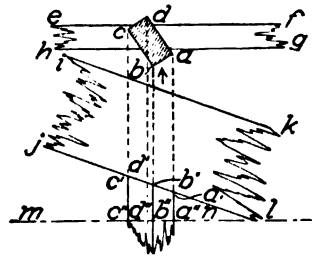


Fig. 172. Stud and Diagonal Rafter.

SPECIAL FRAMING.

We have, in the preceding pages, considered the framing which enters into a building of light construction, such as an ordinary dwelling house, but there are certain classes of structures which call for heavier framing, or framing of special character. Among these may be mentioned *battered* frames, or frames with inclined walls; *trussed* partitions; *inclined* and *bowed* floors; special forms of reinforced beams and girders; the framing for balconies and galleries; timber trusses; towers and spires; domes, pendentives and niches; and vaults and groins. These subjects will be now taken up and discussed, and the methods employed in framing such structures will be explained.

Battered Frames. Sometimes it is necessary to build a structure with the walls inclined inward, so that they approach

Digitized by Google

each other at the top, and so that the top is smaller than the bottom. This is the case with the frames which support water tanks or windmills. An elevation of one side of a frame of this kind is shown in Fig. 173 with a plan in outline at A. It will be seen that the corner posts *a a* are inclined and approach each other at the top, so that they are not perpendicular to the sill at the bottom. This means that the foot of the post, where it is tenoned into the sill, must be cut on a bevel, and the bevel must be cut diagonally across the post, from corner to corner, since the post pitches diagonally toward the center, and is set so that its outside faces coincide approximately with the planes of the sides of the structure as indicated in the plan shown in Fig. 174. The girts *b*, Fig. 173, will also have to have special bevels cut at their ends, where they are framed into the posts.

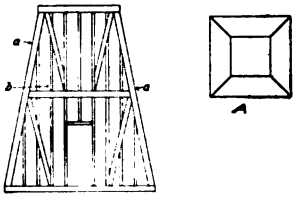


Fig. 173. Battered Frame.

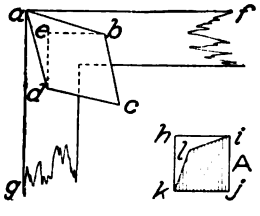


Fig. 174. Bevel of Corner Post.

After a corner post has been cut to the proper bevel to fit against the sill the section cut out at the foot will be diamond-shaped, as shown at *a b c d* in Fig. 174, which shows a plan of one corner of the sill. It will be noticed that the faces *a b* and *a d* of the post do not coincide with the edges of the sill *a f* and *a g*. If the structure is merely a frame and is not to be covered over with the boarding on the outside, it is not necessary that the outside faces of the post should coincide exactly with the planes of the sides of the structure, and in this case posts of square or rectangular section may be used, with no framing except the bevels and the mortises for the girts. If, however, the frame is to be covered in, the post must be *backed* so as to be able to receive the boarding.

The backing consists in cutting the post to such a shape that when the bevel is cut at the foot, the section cut out will be similar to that shown at *e b c d* in Fig. 174. The *backed* post must then

Digitized by Google

be set on the sills so that the point e will come at the corner a. The face of the post $e\ b$ will then coincide with the face of the sill $a\ f$. The post should be backed before the bevels are cut because setting it back the distance $a\ e$ may make a difference in the required length between bevels. If the post was of square section before backing it will have, after backing, a peculiar rhombus-shaped section, as is shown at A in Fig. 174. Here $h\ i\ j\ k$ shows the original square section, and $l\ i\ j\ k$ shows the section after backing. These sections are taken square across the post perpendicular to the edges.

Fig. 175 shows how the amount of backing necessary in any particular case may be determined. Suppose that we have a case where the frame is not square in plan, as shown in Fig. 173, but

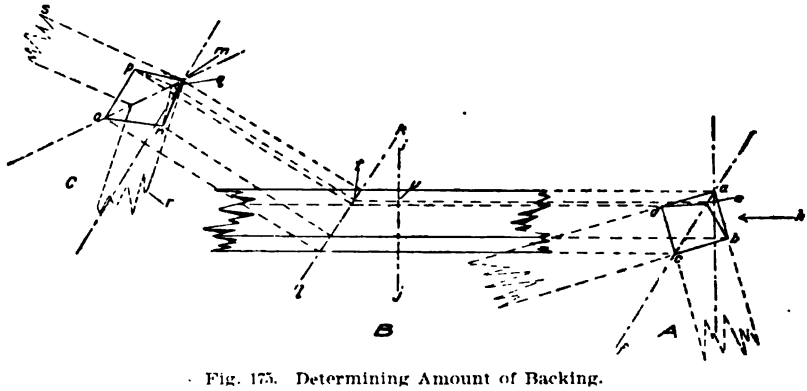
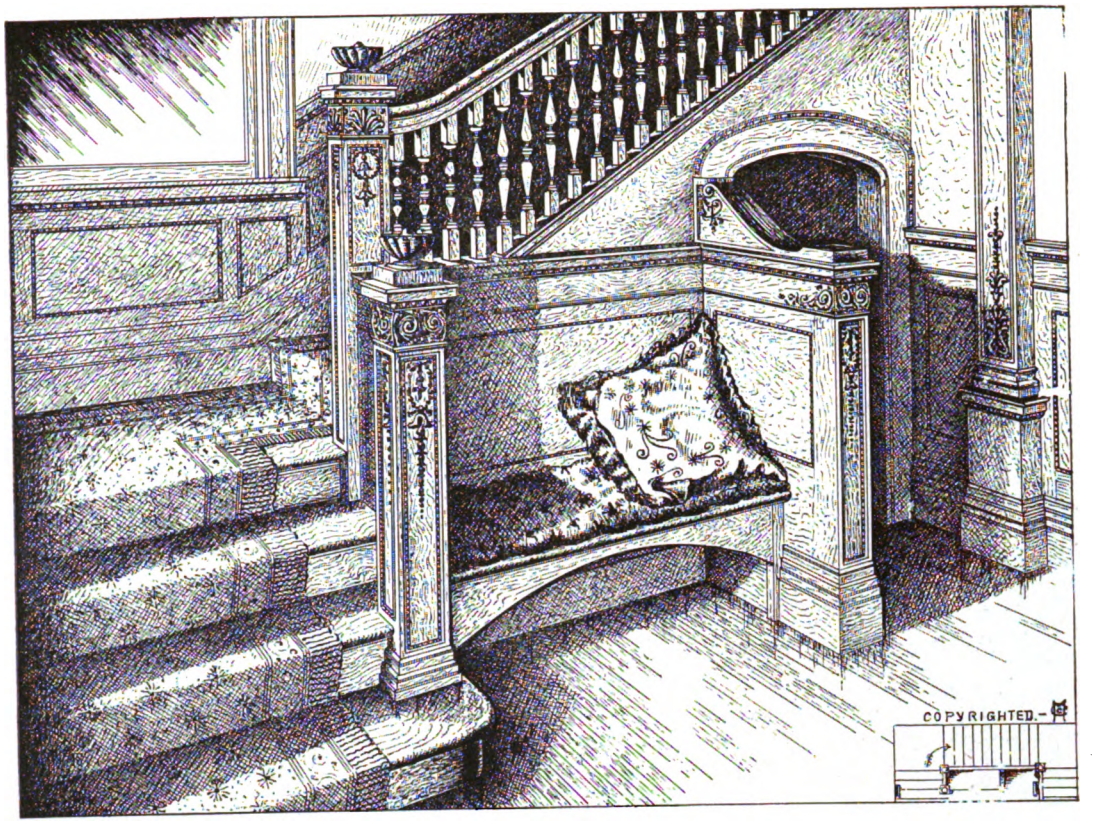


Fig. 175. Determining Amount of Backing.

is rectangular, one side being much longer than the other. In this case the diagonal of the frame formed by the sills will not coincide with the diagonal of the section of the post. Fig. 175 shows at A a plan of the post as it would appear if it were set up perpendicular to the sills. The sills are shown by the dotted lines. At B is shown an elevation of the post looking in the direction shown by the arrow h. The section shown at A is taken on the line $i\ j$. In the frame, however, the post is inclined toward the center, so that the section cut out at the foot of the post by the plane of the top of the sill will not be square with the edges of the post as is the section $i\ j$, but will be at an angle with them. Such a section is taken on the line $k\ l$ and is shown at C.

Digitized by Google



SPECIAL STAIRWAY AND RAILING.
The Foster-Munger Co.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

The section of the post is shown by *m n o p* and the sill is indicated by the dotted lines. The post must now be backed so that this section will take the form shown by *q n o p*, the sides *p q* and *n q* being parallel to the sides of the sill *m r* and *m s*. This point *q* determines the position of the outside corner of the post after it has been backed and corresponds to the point *t* on the line *k l*. Then the line *t u* is the elevation of the outside corner of the post after backing, and the section *i j* cuts this line at *u*. The corner shown by the line *t u* must be diagonally opposite the inside corner of the post, so it must be indicated on the section shown at A by the point *e*. Then *e b c d* is the shape to which the post must be trimmed. This can be laid out on the square end of the rough post and it can then be trimmed to the correct shape. The backing will then be complete.

Fig. 176 shows how the foot cut for the inclined post may be obtained by using the steel square. In Fig. 173 it will be seen that the post *a* slopes toward the center in the elevation there shown, and it likewise slopes toward the center in the other elevations, either with the same pitch or with a different pitch. The result of the two slopes is to cause the post to slope diagonally. It is an easy matter to find the pitch in each elevation since it depends upon the size of the base and top, and the height between them. We then have the two pitches, the combination of which gives the true pitch, diagonally. They can, however, be treated separately. The square may be applied to the post, as shown in Fig. 176, with the rise on the blade and the run on the tongue, and a line may be drawn along the tongue. The post can then be turned over and the pitch shown in the other elevation may be laid off on the adjacent side in the same way with the rise on the blade and the run on the tongue of the square. Thus a continuous line *a b c d* may be drawn around the post and it can be cut to this line.

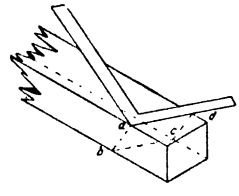


Fig. 176. Marking Foot Cut.

Trussed Partitions. It is very often necessary to construct a partition in some story of a building above the first, and in such a position that there can be no support—as, for instance, a partition in the story below—beneath it. In this case the partition

Digitized by Google

must be made self supporting in some way. The usual method is to build what is known as a trussed partition. This consists of a timber truss, light or heavy, according as the distance to be spanned is small or great, which is built into the partition and covered over with lathing and plastering or with sheathing.

Fig. 177 and 178 show two forms of trussed partitions which are in common use. The one shown in Fig. 177 may be employed for a solid partition, or a partition with a door opening in the middle, while the one shown in Fig. 178 is applicable where the wall must be pierced by door openings in the sides. The truss must be so designed that it will occupy as little space as possible in a lateral direction, so that the partition need not be abnormally

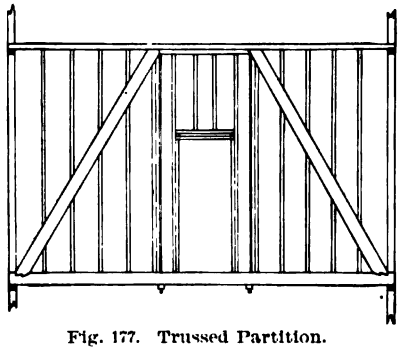


Fig. 177. Trussed Partition.

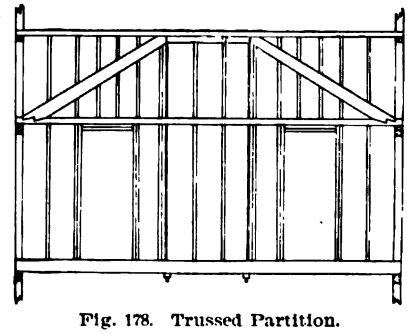


Fig. 178. Trussed Partition.

thick. If possible it is best to make the truss so that it will go into a four-inch partition, but if necessary five or six-inch studding may be used and the truss members may be increased in size accordingly. The faces of the truss members should be flush with the faces of the partition studding, so as to receive lathing or sheathing.

The size of the truss members depends entirely upon the weight which the partition is called upon to carry. Besides its own weight a partition is often called upon to carry one end of a set of floor joists, and sometimes it supports columns which receive the whole weight of a story above. In any case the pieces must be very strongly framed or spiked together, and sound material, free from shakes and knot holes, must be used.

Inclined and Bowled Floors. In any large room which is to be used as a lecture hall, the floor should not be perfectly level

Digitized by Google

throughout, but should be so constructed as to be higher at the back of the room than it is at the front. The fall of such a floor from back to front should be not more than three quarters of an inch in one foot, and a fall of one-half an inch in one foot is much better. If the floor has a greater slope than this it becomes very noticeable when anyone attempts to walk over it.

The simplest way to arrange for the slope is to construct what is known as an *inclined* floor, which rises steadily from front to back so that a line drawn across it from side to side, parallel to the front or rear wall of the room, will be level from end to end. There are two methods of building an inclined floor, the difference between them being in the arrangement of the girders and floor joists. The two methods are shown in Figs. 179 and 180.

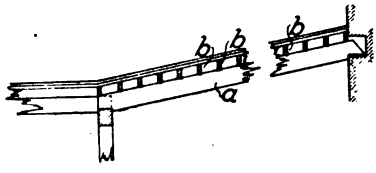


Fig. 179. Inclined Floor.

Fig. 179 shows the arrangement when it is necessary to have the girders run from the back to the front of the room, parallel to the slope of the floor. In this case the girders *a* are set up on an incline, and the joists *b* resting on top of them, are level from end to end. Each line of joists is at a different elevation from the lines of joists on each side of it. The floor laid on top of the joists will then have the required inclination. The slope of the girders must be the same as the slope required for the finished floor.

Fig. 180 shows the arrangement when it is desired that the girders shall run from side to side of the room, at right angles to the direction of the slope of the floor. The joists *a* will then be parallel to the direction of the slope, and are inclined to the horizontal, while the girders *b* are level from end to end. Each line of girders is at a different elevation from every other line of girders, and these elevations must be so adjusted that the joists

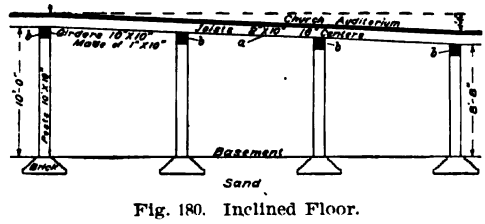


Fig. 180. Inclined Floor.

Digitized by Google

resting on top of the girders will slope steadily from end to end.

When a simple inclined floor is employed, the seats must be arranged in straight rows, extending across the room from side to side, so that each line of seats may be level from end to end. This arrangement is not always desirable, however, and it is often much better to have the seats arranged in concentric rings all facing the speaker's platform. In this case a *bowled* floor must be built. A bowled floor is so constructed that a segment of a circle, drawn on the floor from a center in the front of the room, on, or near, the speaker's platform, will be perfectly level throughout its

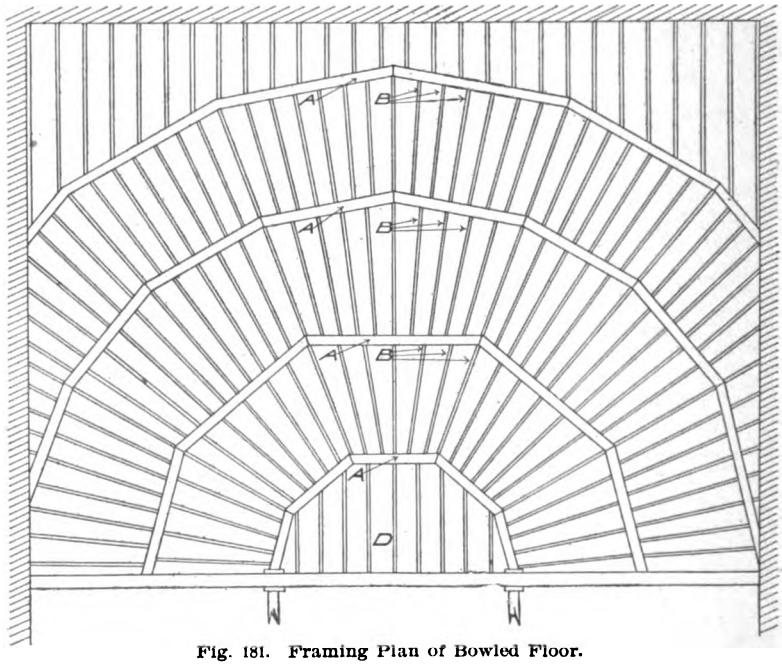


Fig. 181. Framing Plan of Bowled Floor.

length. This means that the floor must pitch upward in all directions from the speaker's platform or, in other words, it must be *bowled*. There are two methods of constructing a floor of this kind. The simplest way is to build first an ordinary inclined floor, which slopes from the front to the back of the room, and then to build up the bowled floor with furring pieces. This method should always be followed when it is necessary to keep the space beneath the lecture hall free from posts or columns.

Digitized by Google

The second method is to arrange girders, as shown in the framing plan of a bowled floor in Fig. 181. These girders A A are tangent to concentric circles which have their center at the speaker's platform, and each line of girders is at a different elevation. The elevations of the different lines of girders are so adjusted that the floor joists B B which rest on them will slope steadily upward as they recede from the platform. The girders may be supported on posts beneath the floor of the hall, and if the space under the floor is not to be used for another room, this is a very good method to employ.

Immediately around the platform there will be a space D, the floor of which will be level, and the slope will start several feet away from the platform.

Heavy Beams and Girders. For ordinary frame buildings, there will be no difficulty in obtaining timbers large enough for every purpose, but in large structures, or in any building where heavy loads must be carried, it is often impossible to get a single stick which is strong enough to do the work. In this case it becomes necessary to use either a steel beam or a trussed girder of wood, or to build up a compound wooden girder out of a number of single sticks, fastened together in such a way that they will act like a single piece.

Steel beams are very often employed for girders when a single timber will not suffice, and although they are expensive, the saving in labor helps to offset the extra cost of the material.

Wherever wooden joists or girders come in contact with a steel beam they must be cut to fit against it. The steel shape most commonly employed is the I-beam, and the wooden members must be cut at the ends so as to fit between its flanges. This is shown in Fig. 182. The joist *b* is supported on the lower flange of the I-beam *c* and the strap *a* prevents it from falling away from the steel member. The strap is bolted or spiked to the wooden beam and is bent over the top flange of the steel beam as shown. If two wooden beams frame into the steel beam opposite each other, a straight strap may be used, passing over the top of the steel beam and fastened to both the wooden beams, thus holding them together. If a better support is desired for the end of the wooden beam, an angle may be riveted to the web of the steel I-beam, as

Digitized by Google

shown in Fig. 183, and the end of the wooden joist may be supported on the angle. This is an expensive detail, however, and it is seldom necessary.

If a timber is not strong enough to carry its load, and if it is not desirable to replace it with a steel beam, it may be strengthened by trussing. There are two methods of trussing beams; by the

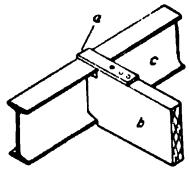


Fig. 182. I-Beam and Wooden Joist.

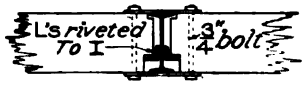


Fig. 183. I-Beam Construction.

addition of compression members above the beam, and by the addition of tension members below it. The first method should be employed whenever, for any reason, it is required that there be no projection below the bottom of the beam itself. The second method is the one most commonly used, especially in warehouses, stables, and other buildings where the appearance is not an important consideration.

In Fig. 184 is shown a beam which is trussed by the first method, with compression pieces *a a a* above the beam. All the parts are of timber excepting the rods *b b* which may be of wrought iron or steel. The beam itself is best made in two parts *e e* placed

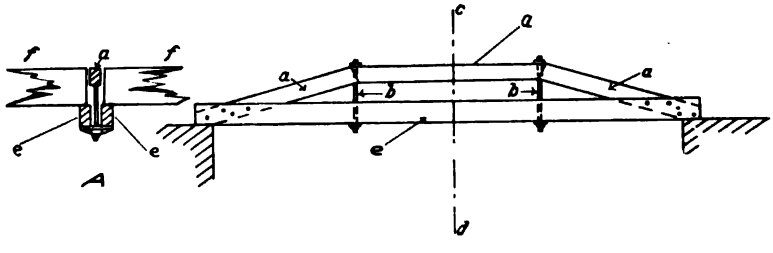


Fig. 184. Trussed Beam.

side by side, as shown in the section at A, with the parts *a a* fitting in between them. The section shown at A is taken on the line *c d*. The depth of the girder may be varied to suit the conditions of each case. In general the deeper it is made the stronger it becomes, provided that the joists are made sufficiently strong.

Digitized by Google

Usually girders of this kind are made shallow enough so that they will be contained in the thickness of the floor and will not project above it. A slight projection below the ceiling is not a serious disadvantage. The floor joists *f f* may be supported on the pieces *e e*, as shown at A.

In Figs. 185 and 186 are shown examples of girders which are trussed by the second method, with tension rods *d d* below the

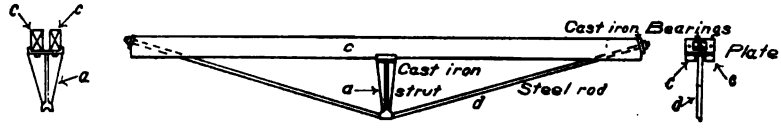


Fig. 185. King Post Trussed Beam.

beam. These rods are of wrought iron or steel, and the struts *a a* are of cast iron. The struts may be made of wood if they are short, or if the loads to be carried are not heavy. Sometimes the girders are made very shallow, and the struts *a a* are then merely wooden blocks placed between the beam *c* and the rod *d* to keep them apart. The girder shown in Fig. 185 is known as a *king-post* trussed beam, while the one shown in Fig. 186, with two struts instead of one, is known as a *queen-post* trussed beam. The beam itself *c* may be made in two pieces side by side with the rods and the struts fitting in between them, or it may be a single

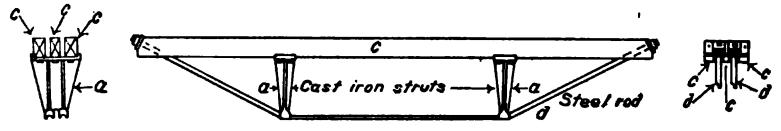


Fig. 186. Queen Post Trussed Beam.

stick, and the rods may be made in pairs, passing one on each side of the beam. In the latter case the struts would simply bear against the bottom of the beam, as shown in the illustrations, being fastened to it by bolts or spikes, so that they will not slip sideways.

It sometimes happens that a heavy girder is required in a situation where trussing cannot be resorted to, and where steel beams cannot readily be obtained. In this case the only resource is to build up a compound beam from two or more single pieces. A girder of this kind can be constructed without much difficulty, and can be so put together as to be able to carry from eighty to

Digitized by Google

ninety per cent of the load which a solid piece of the same dimensions will bear. There are many ways of combining the single timbers to form compound beams, some of the most common of which will be described.

The most simple combination is that shown in Fig. 187. The two single timbers are bolted together side by side, with sometimes a small space between them. The bolts should be spaced about two feet apart and *staggered*, as shown, so that two will not come side by side. Usually bolts three-quarters of an inch in diameter are used.

In Fig. 188 is shown a modification of this girder known as a *flitch-plate girder*. It has a plate of wrought iron or steel, inserted between the two timbers, and the whole is held firmly together by bolts. The size of the plate should be in proportion to the size of the timbers, so as to make the most economical combination.

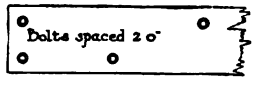
If we have two pieces of timber out of which we wish to make a compound girder, it is almost always possible to get a stronger combination by placing them one on top of the other, than by placing them side by side. This is because the strength of a beam varies as the *square of its depth*, but only *directly as its width*. For this reason most compound girders are composed of single sticks placed one above the other. The tendency is for each piece to bend independently, and for the two parts to slide by each other, as shown in Fig. 189. This tendency must be overcome and the parts so fastened together that they will act like a single piece. There are several methods in common use by which this object is accomplished.

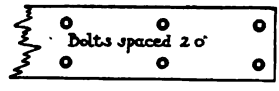
Fig. 190 shows the most common method of building up a compound girder. The timbers are placed together, as shown, and narrow strips of wood are nailed firmly to both parts. The strips are placed close against each other and have a slope of about forty-five degrees, sloping in opposite directions, however, on opposite sides of the girder. It has been claimed that a built up girder of this kind has a strength ninety-five per cent as great as the strength of a solid piece of the same size, but it is very doubtful whether this is true in most cases. Actual tests seem to indicate that such girders have an efficiency of only about seventy-five

Digitized by Google

per cent. They usually fail by the splitting of the side strips, or the pulling out and bending of the nails, but seldom by the breaking of the main pieces. It is, therefore, essential that the strips should be very securely nailed to each of the parts which make up the girder, and that they should also be carefully selected so that only those pieces which are free from all defects may be used.

Fig. 187. Compound Beams.





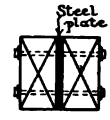


Fig. 188. Flitch-Plate Girders.

These girders are liable to considerable deflection, and should not be used in situations where such deflections would be harmful.

In Fig. 191 is shown another form of girder with the parts notched, as shown, so as to lock together. This prevents them from slipping by each other. Bolts are employed to hold the parts

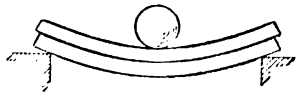


Fig. 189. Flexure of Compound Beams.

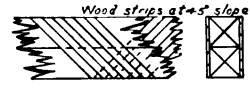


Fig. 190. Compound Girder.

together, so that the surfaces will always be in close contact. While this form of girder is very easily constructed, it has many disadvantages. A great deal of timber is wasted in cutting out the notches, as these must be deep enough to prevent crushing of the wood at the bearing surfaces, and thus the full strength of the sticks is not utilized. Moreover, it is apt to deflect a good deal,

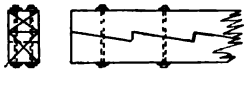


Fig. 191. Notched Beam.

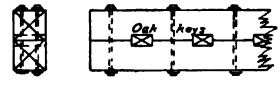


Fig. 192. Keyed Beam.

and its efficiency is not so great as that of other forms. On the whole it is considered to be greatly inferior to the form of girder previously described.

The form of compound beam which is almost universally considered the best is that shown in Fig. 192. This is known as the

Digitized by Google

keyed beam, its characteristic feature being the use of *keys* to keep the parts from sliding on each other. The strength of a keyed beam has been found by actual experiment to be nearly ninety-five per cent of the strength of the solid timber, while the deflection when oak keys were used was only about one-quarter more than the deflection of the solid beam. By using keys of cast iron instead of wood this excess of deflection in the built-up girder can be reduced to a very small percentage. The keys should be made in two parts, each shaped like a wedge, as explained in connection with the keys for tension splices, and should be driven from opposite sides into the holes made to receive them, so as to fit tightly. They should be spaced from eight to sixteen inches apart, center to center, according to the size of the timbers, and should be spaced more closely near the ends of the beam than near the middle. In the center of the span there should be left a space of four or five feet without any keys.

Balconies and Galleries. In churches and lecture halls it is almost always customary to have one or more balconies or galleries, extending sometimes around three sides of the main auditorium, but more often in the rear of the room only. These galleries are supported by the wall at the back and by posts or columns in front, and the framing for them is usually a simple matter.

Fig. 193 shows a sectional view of a gallery frame, as they are commonly constructed. There is a girder *a* in front, which rests on top of the columns *t*, and supports the lower ends of the joists *b*, forming the gallery floor. The size of these pieces will depend upon the dimensions of the gallery, the spacing of the columns which support the girders in front, and various other considerations. Usually joists two by ten or three by twelve, and girders eight by ten or ten by twelve will be found to be sufficiently strong. The joists should be spaced from fourteen to twenty inches, center to center. Very often cast iron columns are employed to support the girders. At the top, where the joists rest on the wall, they should be cut, as shown in the figure, so that they may have a horizontal bearing on the masonry, and at least every second joist must be securely anchored to the wall, as is the one shown. Usually galleries are made with straight fronts, but if it is desired that the seats should be arranged in concentric

Digitized by Google

rings, all facing the speaker, the joists may be placed so as to radiate from the center from which the seats are to be laid out.

The seats are arranged in steps, one above the other, and the framing for the steps must be built up on top of the joists, as shown in the figure. Horizontal pieces, *c c c* usually two by four or three by four in size, are nailed to the joists at one end, and at the other end are supported by upright pieces *d d d*. The uprights are either two by four pieces resting on top of the joists or strips of board, one inch to one and one-half inches thick, which are nailed to the sides of the joists and to the sides of the horizontal pieces. Both methods are shown in the figure. If boards are used, they should be placed on both sides of the joists. Great

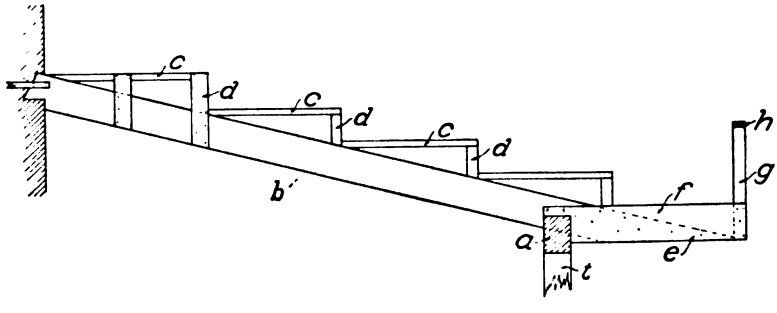


Fig. 193. Section of Gallery Frame.

care should be taken to see that the horizontal pieces are truly horizontal.

Balconies and galleries almost always project a considerable distance beyond the line of columns which support the lower ends of the joists. This projection varies from three feet to ten or twelve feet. If the overhang is not more than five feet, it can be supported by extending the joists beyond the girder, as is shown in Fig. 193. A strip of board, *e*, about one and one-half inches thick, is nailed to the side of the joist, and a furring piece *f* is nailed on top of the joist at its lower end to make it horizontal. The railing at the front of the gallery should be about two feet high, and may be framed with two by four posts, *g* having a cap *h* of the same size on top.

If the overhang of a gallery is more than about five feet it must usually be supported by a brace, as shown in Fig. 194.

Digitized by Google

The brace *a* is nailed to the post *b* and to the overhanging joist *c*, or may be framed into these pieces. If the construction is very light, the brace may consist of strips of board nailed to the sides of the joists, but in heavy work it must be a timber of a good size, well framed into both the post and the joists. These braces can

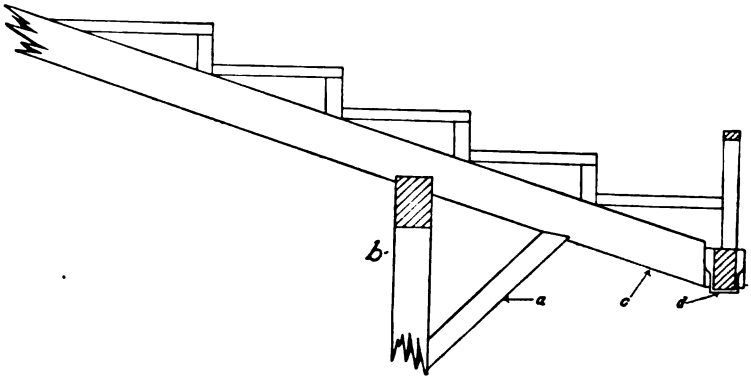


Fig. 194. Support for Extension Beyond Girder.

only be placed at points where there are posts, and to support the ends of the joists which come between the posts there must be a girder *d* running along the front of the gallery and supported by the braced cantilevers at the points where posts are placed.

Timber Trusses. In the discussion of roofs and roof framing, only those were considered which could be framed with ordinary rafters, spaced from one foot to two feet apart, between centers, but it is very often necessary to build roofs of larger span, for which ordinary rafters, even if supported by dwarf walls and collar beams, are not sufficiently strong. In this case a different method of framing is employed. Instead of a number of rafters spaced fairly close together, and all of equal strength, we have a few heavy *trusses*, placed at intervals of ten feet or more, and spanning the entire distance between the side walls. On top of the trusses are laid *purlins* running parallel to the side walls, which

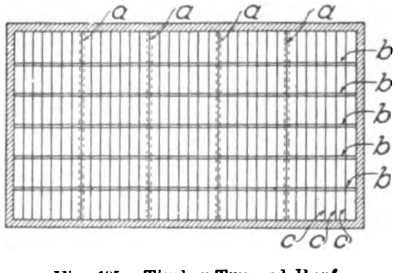


Fig. 195. Timber-Trussed Roof.

Digitized by Google

in their turn support the common rafters. There may be one or more purlins in each slope of the roof, depending upon the size of the span. This arrangement is shown in plan in Fig. 195, in which *a a* are the trusses, *b b* are the purlins, and *c c c* are the common rafters.

There are many different kinds of trusses which are in common use, for various kinds of buildings, differing from each other chiefly in the arrangement of the tension and compression pieces of which they are composed. Some are built entirely of timber, while in others timber is employed only for the compression pieces, and wrought iron or steel for the tension pieces. Fig. 196 shows what is known as a *king post* truss. Its distinguishing feature in the member *a*, called the *king post; b b b* are the purlins, and *e e* the rafters resting on them. Two different methods of placing

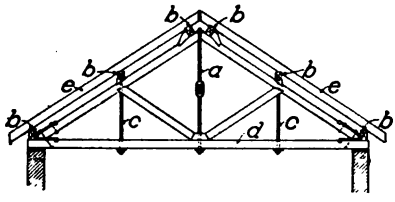


Fig. 196. King-Post Truss.

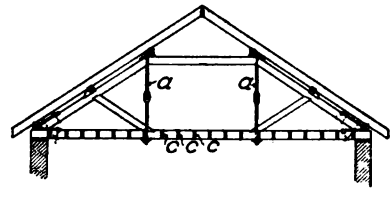


Fig. 197. Queen-Post Truss.

the purlins are illustrated in this figure. As will be readily seen, some of them are set so that their longer dimension, in cross section, is vertical, while others are set so that the longer dimension is at right angles to the rafters. Both of these methods are commonly employed. The tension members *c c* are merely for the support of the lower chord or *tie beam d*.

Fig. 197 shows a modification of the king post truss which is called the *queen post* truss. Here there are two *queen posts a a* in place of the single king post. This figure also shows how a floor or ceiling may be supported on the lower chord or *tie beam* of the truss. The joists *c c c* are hung from the chord by means of stirrup irons or patent hangers. The queen post truss is somewhat more popular in building work than is the king post truss, but both are frequently employed in halls, warehouses, and stables where an ornamental truss is not required, and also in churches and audience rooms where they are to be concealed by other finish.

Digitized by Google

In Fig. 198 is shown a *Fink* truss, which is a very popular form, especially for trusses built of steel. It has neither king post or queen posts, and the *tie beam a* is of iron instead of timber. It is a simple and cheap form of truss for any situation where there is no floor or ceiling to be carried by the lower chord. The struts *b b* may be of wood or of cast iron. It will be seen that the truss consists essentially of two trussed rafters set up against each other, with a tie rod *a* to take up the horizontal thrust.

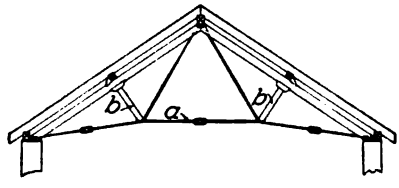


Fig. 198. Fink Truss.

Beside the forms of trusses described above, there are other forms which are used in churches and chapels where *open timber* work is required, and where they will not be concealed by other finish, but will be made ornamental in themselves. Among these the most common forms are the so-called *scissors* truss and the *hammer beam* truss.

The *scissors* truss is shown in Fig. 199. It has no tie beam, and therefore it may exert considerable thrust on the walls of the building, which must be taken care of by buttresses built up on the outside of the wall. This is perhaps the most simple form of truss which can be used when an open timber truss is required. All the parts are of wood. If desired, an iron tie rod may be inserted between the two wall bearings of the truss, so as to diminish the thrust on the walls, and this need not detract seriously from the appearance of the open timber work.

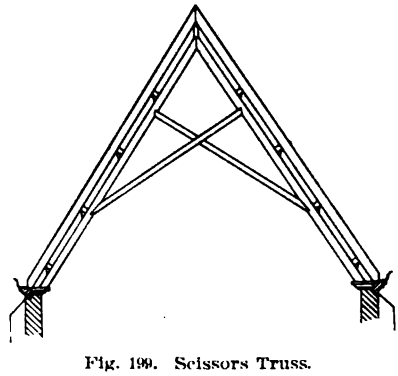


Fig. 199. Scissors Truss.

A very popular form of truss for use in churches is the hammer beam truss mentioned above. This is shown in Fig. 200. On the left is shown the framework for the truss, while on the right is shown the way in which it may be finished. Its characteristic feature is the hammer beam *a*.

Digitized by Google

The sizes of the pieces can only be determined by calculation or experience, and depend entirely upon the span of the truss and the loads to be carried, which are different for different parts of the country. It is common practice to insert a tie rod between the points *b* and *c* to take up some of the thrust which would otherwise come on the walls. All parts of the framework must be securely bolted or spiked together so as to give a strong, rigid foundation for the decoration, and this should be regarded merely as decoration and should not be considered as strengthening the truss in any way.

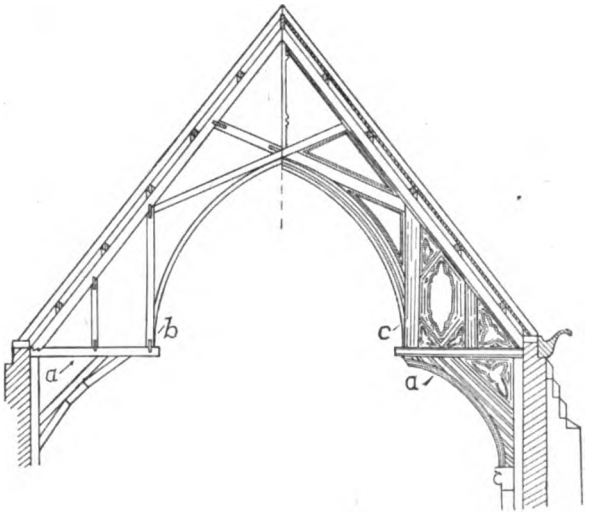


Fig. 200. Hammer Beam Truss.

Truss Details. There are several ways of supporting the purlins on wooden trusses, but the method illustrated in Fig. 201 is one of the best as well as the most frequently employed. A block of wood *a* is set up against the lower side of the purlin, and prevents it from turning about the corner *b*, which it has a tendency to do. The block is set into the chord of the truss to a depth sufficient to keep the purlin from sliding downward as it receives the weight from the rafters *e*. This figure also shows the most simple method of framing a strut into the chord of a truss. The strut *c* is set into the chord *d* far enough to hold it in place. If it is perpendicular to the chord, it need not be so set into it, if

Digitized by Google

the pieces are well nailed together, because in this case there is no tendency for the strut to slide along the chord. Care should be taken not to weaken the chord too much in cutting these mortises.

In Fig. 202 are shown the two most common methods of forming the joint between the top chord and the tie beam of a truss. The connection shown at A depends upon the bolts for its strength, while that shown at B depends upon the wrought iron straps *a*, which are bent so as to engage notches cut in the tie beam *b*. The piece *c* is very often added beneath the tie beam, at the bearing, to strengthen it at this point, where it is subject to considerable bending stress. The block *d* is merely for filling and to protect the bolts when they pass between the chord and the tie beam. It may be omitted in many cases. The plate *f* is placed between the nuts or bolt heads and the wood to prevent the crushing of the latter. Washers should be used with all bolts for this purpose.

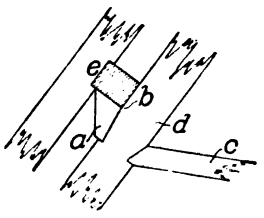


Fig. 201. Support for Purlins.

Fig. 203 shows how the joint at the center of the tie beam of a king post truss, or any joint between two struts, may be formed. The tie beam is shown at *a*, and *b b* are the struts. The blocks *c*,

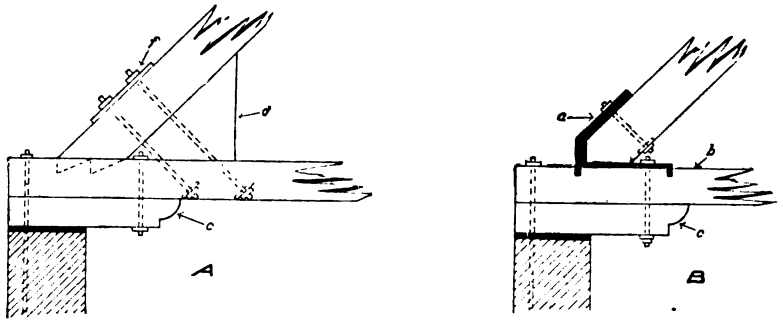
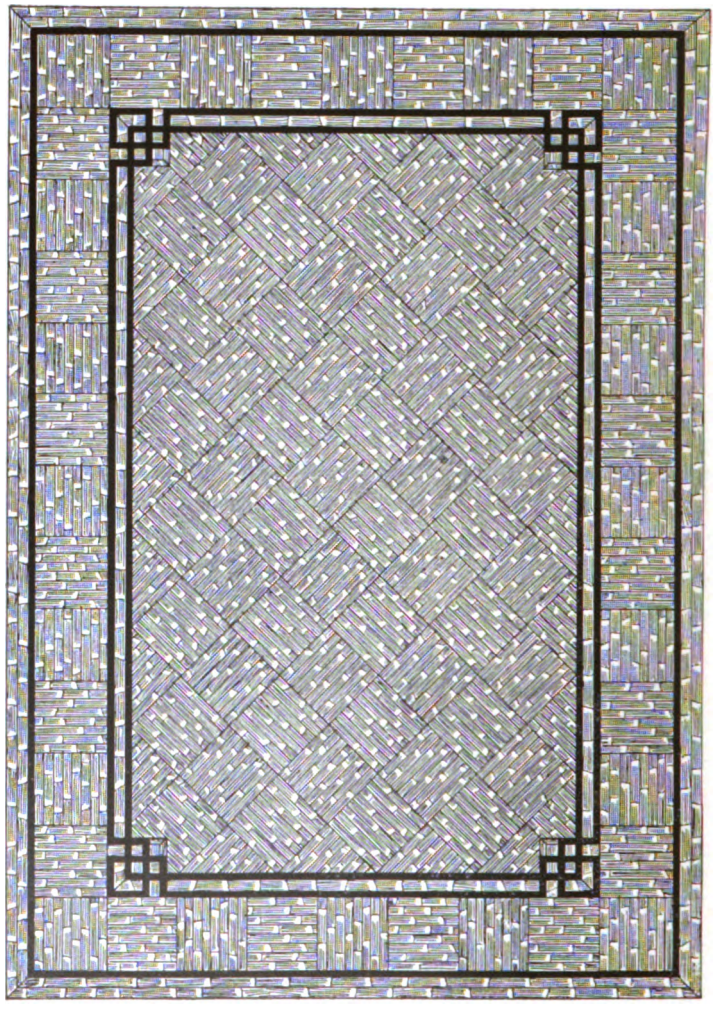


Fig. 202. Joints at Top Chord and Tie Beams.

set between the struts, receive the thrust from them. They should be notched into the tie beam *a*, deep enough to take care of any inequality between the thrusts from the two struts, which have a tendency to balance each other. This block is often made of cast

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google



WOOD CARPET ADAPTED TO ANY SHAPED ROOM.
The Foster-Munger Company.

Digitized by Google

iron. It may be omitted altogether, in which case the struts will come close together and bear against each other. The rod *d* is the king post which supports the tie beam *a* at this point. It is often made of wood, and sometimes the struts *b b* are framed into it instead of being framed into the tie beam *a*.

Fig. 204 shows a form of connection for the peak of a truss, where the two top chords or *principal rafters* come together. The plate *a* acts as a tie to keep these members in place, as does the bent plate *b*, also. The plate *b*, moreover, prevents the crushing of the timber by the nut of the king post tie rod. The purlin *c* supports the rafters and is hollowed out at the bottom to admit the nut *d*. The two principal rafters bear against each other and must

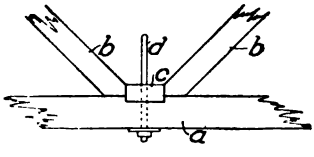


Fig. 203. Joint at Center of Tie Beam.

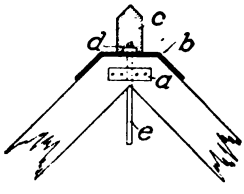


Fig. 204. Peak of Truss.

be cut so that the bearing area between them will be sufficient to prevent the crushing of the timber. In light trusses the king post *e* is often made of wood and is carried up between the principal rafters so that these members bear against it on each side. If this construction is adopted it must be remembered that the post is a tension member, and is held up by the principal rafters, and these pieces must be mortised into it in such a way as to accomplish this result.

There are a great many different ways of arranging the details for wooden trusses, each case usually requiring details peculiar to itself and unlike those for any other case. There are, therefore, no hard and fast rules which can be laid down to govern the design of these connections. A perfect understanding of the action of each piece and its relation to all the other pieces is the only thing which will insure an economical and appropriate design. The aim should always be to arrange the details so that there will be as little cutting of the pieces as possible, and so that the stresses may pass from one to the other without over-straining any part of the work.

Digitized by Google

Towers and Steeples. Towers are a very common feature in building construction, ranging in size from the small cupola seen almost invariably on barns and stables, to the high tapering spire which is the distinguishing mark of the country church.

They have roofs of various shapes, some in the form of pyramids, with four, eight, or twelve sides, some of conical form, and others bell-shaped or having a slightly concave surface.

The construction of all these forms of towers is much the same, consisting of an arrangement of posts and braces which becomes more elaborate as the tower or steeple becomes larger. The bracing is the most important consideration, because the towers will be exposed to the full force of the wind and must be able to stand the great strain to which they are subjected.

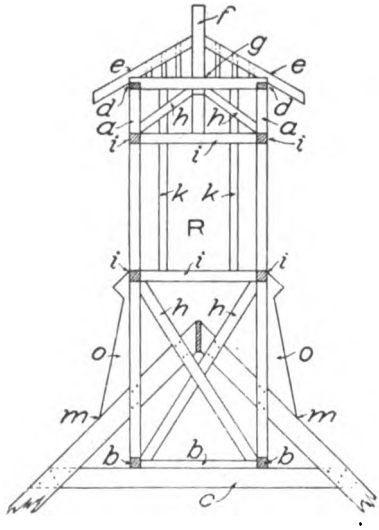


Fig 205. Frame for Cupola.

Fig. 205 shows a section through the frame of a simple cupola. It has posts *a a* at each corner, which rest at the bottom on the sills *b b*. The sills are supported on extra heavy collar beams *c*, which are very securely spiked to the rafters of the main roof *m m*. The corner posts extend clear up to the main plate *d d*, which supports the rafters *e e* of the cupola. There are hip rafters at the corner of the roof, which bear at the top against a piece of scantling *f* placed in the center of the roof. This scantling extends above the roof surface far enough to receive some kind of metal finial which forms the finish at the extreme top of the cupola; and at the bottom it is firmly fastened to the tie *g* which is cut in between the plates. The braces *h h h h* stiffen the frames against the wind. Girts *i i* are cut in between the corner posts and form the top and bottom of the slat frame opening R, besides tieing the posts together. The sides of the opening for the slat frame are formed by the vertical studs *k k*. The rafters of the

Digitized by Google

main roof *m m* are placed close up against the corner posts on the outside, and the posts may be spiked to them. The pieces *o o* are of plank two inches thick, and are simply furring pieces placed at intervals of a foot and a half to two feet all around the cupola to give the desired shape to the bottom part. The size of the pieces will depend upon the size of the cupola. The posts may be four by four inches or six by six inches, and the braces, girts and intermediate studding may be three by four inches or four by six inches.

Other towers are framed in a manner similar to that described for cupolas. There is always a base or drum, with posts at the corners and with the walls filled in with studding, which supports a plate at the top. The rafters forming the tower roof rest at the foot on this plate, and at the top they bear against a piece of scantling which is carried down into the body of the tower for a considerable distance and is there fastened to a tie passing between rafters on opposite sides. This is shown in Fig. 206. The tie *a* is securely nailed to the rafters at each end, and to the scantling in the middle. The scantling is cut so as to have as many faces as the roof has sides, four for a square hip roof, eight for an octagon roof, and so on. Each face receives one of the hip rafters and the intermediate rafters are framed in between them. If the roof is conical or bell-shaped, as shown in the figure, the scantling at the top may be cylindrical in form. Although the roof shown is bell-shaped, the rafters are not cut to fit the curve. They are made straight and are filled out by furring pieces *b b*. Pieces of plank *c c* are cut in between the furring pieces, as shown, so as to give a nailing for the boarding, and they are cut to the shape of segments of circles, so as to form complete circles around the tower when they have been put in place. If a tower of this shape is to be built, leaving a number of

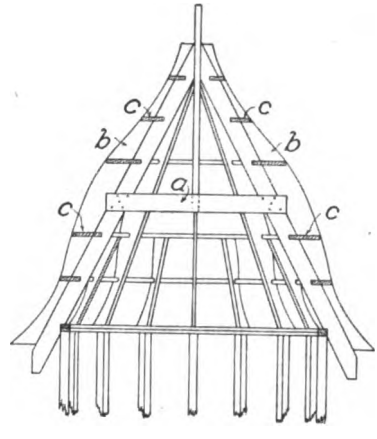


Fig. 206. Frame for Tower.

Digitized by Google

faces and hips, the curve of the hip rafters will not be the same as the curve shown by a section through one of the faces of the tower. In order to find the true curve for the hip rafters the same method is followed as was explained for the hip rafter in an ogee roof over a bay window, using the principle that any line drawn in the roof surface parallel to the plate is horizontal throughout its length. By this means any number of points in the curve of the hip rafter may be obtained and the curve for the hip may be drawn through them. Thus a pattern for the hip rafter may be obtained.

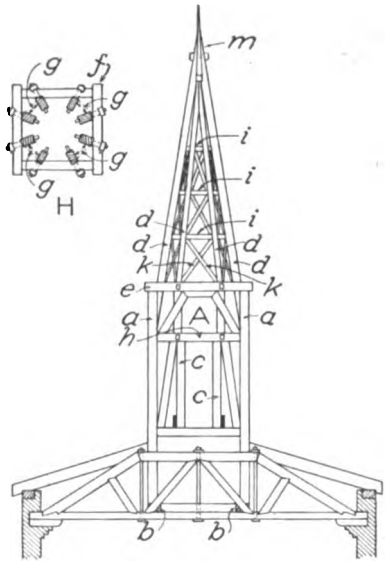


Fig. 207. Frame for Church Spire.

Fig. 207 shows the method of framing a church spire, or other high tapering tower. The drum A is square and is supported by the posts *a a*, one at each corner, which rest on the sills *b b*. The sills are supported by the roof trusses of the main roof. The corner posts extend the full height of the drum and are strongly braced in all four faces, with intermediate vertical studding *c c* between them to form the framework for these faces. The spire itself may rest on top of this square drum or there may be another eight- or twelve-sided drum constructed on top of the first on which the spire may rest. This depends upon the design of the spire. The hip rafters *d d d d* do not rest directly on top of the drum, however, as this arrangement would not give sufficient anchorage for the spire. They are made so as to pass close inside the plate *e* at the top of the drum and are securely bolted to this plate with strong bolts. This is shown at H which is a plan of the top of the drum, showing the hip rafters in place. The plate is shown at *f* and the hip rafters at *g*. The rafters extend down into the body of the drum as far as the girt *h* (shown in the elevation) to which they are again securely spiked or bolted, being cut out at the foot so

Digitized by Google

as to fit against the girt. In this way a strong anchorage for the spire is obtained.

Horizontal pieces *i i i i* are cut in between the hip rafters at intervals throughout the height of the spire, and braces *k k* halved together at the center where they cross each other are firmly nailed to the rafters at each end. These braces are needed only in lofty spires, which are likely to be exposed to high winds. At the top the hip rafters bear against a piece of scantling *m* the same as in the other towers. If a conical spire is called for in the design, the horizontal pieces *i i i* must be cut to the shape of segments of circles, and in this case the rafters are no longer hip rafters. The horizontal pieces *i i* will receive the boarding which will form a smooth conical surface.

The spire above the drum is usually framed on the ground before being raised to its final position. It may then be raised part way and supported by temporary staging while the top is finished and painted, after which it may be placed in position on top of the drum.

Domes. Timber domes have been built over many famous buildings, among which may be mentioned St. Paul's Cathedral at London, and the Hotel des Invalides at Paris. While these structures are domical in shape they are not, strictly speaking, domes, because they do not depend for support upon the same principle which is employed in the construction of masonry domes. They are, correctly speaking, arrangements of trusses of such a shape as to give the required domical form to the exterior of the roof.

Fig. 208 shows such a truss supported at either end on a masonry wall as shown. Fig. 209, which is a plan of the framing of this roof, shows how the trusses or *bents* may be arranged. There are two complete bents, *a b* and *c d*, like the one shown in the elevation, Fig. 208, which intersect each other at the center. The king post *a*, in the elevation, is common to both bents, and the tie beams *b* are halved together where they cross. These two bents divide the roof surface into four quarters which are filled in by shorter ribs, as indicated in the plan, Fig. 209. The posts *c* in Fig. 208 carry all the weight of the roof to the walls and are braced by means of the pieces *d*. The rounded shape is given to the exterior and interior of the bent by pieces of plank bent into posi-

Digitized by Google

tion as shown. The whole is covered with boarding which is cut to a special shape so that it can be bent into place. The methods of applying the boarding to domical roofs will be explained in connection with other rough boarding.

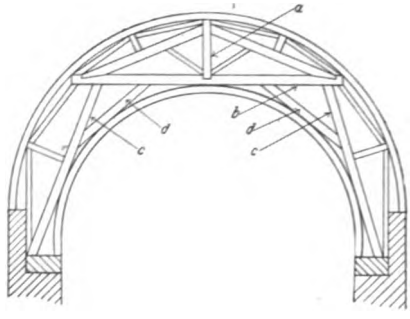


Fig. 208. Frame for Dome.

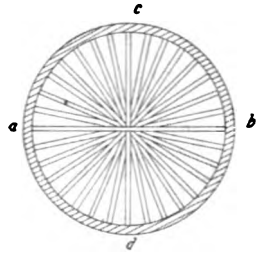


Fig. 209. Plan of Dome Framing.

The arrangement of trusses or bents described above is suitable for a plain domical roof without a lantern or cupola on top, but very frequently this feature is present in the design, and the roof must be framed to allow for it. There are several different ways of arranging the trusses so as to leave an opening in the center of the roof for the lantern. Fig. 210 shows a very good

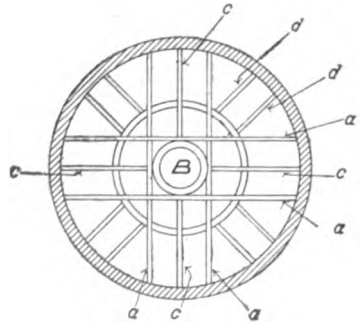


Fig. 210. Plan of Dome Framing with Central Opening.

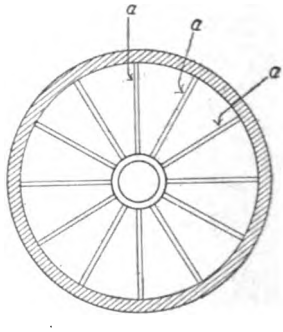


Fig. 211. Plan of Dome Framing with Opening.

arrangement. Four trusses, *a a a a*, span the entire distance between the walls, and are placed as shown in the figure, so as to leave the opening B in the center. Four half trusses *c c c c* are

Digitized by Google

inserted between them, as shown, and eight shorter ribs *d d* are employed to fill in the rest of the space.

Fig. 211 shows another arrangement, providing for a lantern at the center. There are a number of ribs, *a a a*, twelve in the figure, all radiating from the center where there is a circular opening for the lantern or cupola. In Fig. 212 is shown a section through a domical roof framed in this way, showing an elevation of one of the ribs. The rib is so constructed as to be entirely contained in the restricted space between the lines of the exterior and interior of the roof.

Fig. 212. Section of Dome Framing.

Pendentives. In the preceding paragraphs we have considered the subject of domical roofs covering buildings of circular plan, which is the simplest possible case, but unfortunately not the most usual one. It very often happens that a domical roof must be erected over a building which is square or rectangular in plan, in which case a new and difficult problem must be considered, namely, that of the pendentives. A horizontal section taken through a dome must in every case show a circle or possibly an ellipse. If, then, we consider the horizontal section cut from a domical roof by the plane of the top of the wall, it must usually be a circle and cannot exactly coincide with the section cut from the wall of the building by the same plane, unless the building is circular in plan. This is shown in Fig. 213 in which A B C D represents the section cut from the wall of the building by a horizontal plane, and the circle E F G H represents the section which would be cut from a domical roof covering the building if the framing for the dome were carried down to meet this plane all the way around.

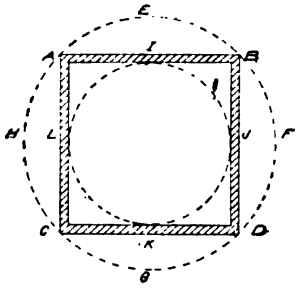


Fig. 213. Dome on Rectangular Walls.

In order to cover every part of the building, the dome must be large enough to include the corners, and if made sufficiently large for this it must overhang the side walls of the building, by an amount A E B on each side, if the framing is carried down to

Digitized by Google

the same horizontal plane all the way around. Horizontal sections taken through the dome at intervals throughout its height, however, show smaller and smaller circles as they are taken nearer and nearer to the top of the dome. Some one of these sections will cut out from the dome a circle, which will appear in plan as though it were inscribed in the square formed by the walls of the building. Such a circle is shown at I J K L in Fig. 213. A dome built up with this circle as a base would not cover the corners of the building, so that the triangular spaces like A I L would be kept open. These triangular spaces, or rather the coverings over them, are called the pendentives. Fig. 214 shows in perspective the outline of four pendentives E D H, H C G, etc.

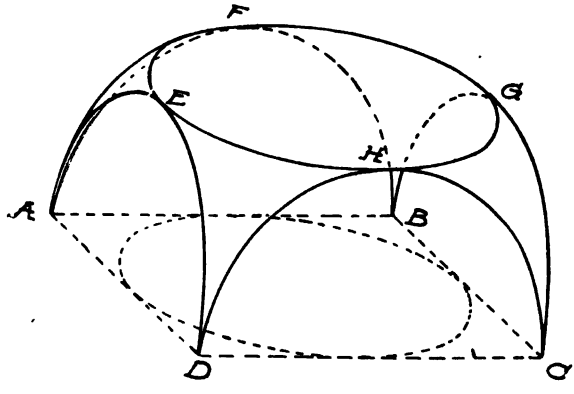


Fig. 214. Pendentives.

We have seen that a dome built up on the circumscribed circle as a base is too large, while a dome built up on the inscribed circle is too small and will not completely cover the building. To overcome this difficulty it is customary to erect a dome on the smaller or inscribed circle as a base, and to extend the ribs so as to fill up the corners and form a framework for the pendentives. This is shown in Fig. 215 which is a plan of the framework for a domical roof. The ribs will be of different lengths and will intersect the inside face of the wall at different heights, because as they are extended outward they must also be extended downward. Each one will be curved if the dome is spherical, and straight if the dome is conical. The upper ends of the ribs bear against the curb A leaving a circular opening for a lantern or cupola. The

Digitized by Google

lower ends may be supported on a masonry wall, or may rest on curved wooden plates, as shown in Fig. 216. This is an elevation of a conical dome and shows the straight ribs *a b*, *c d*, etc.

Fig. 217 shows an elevation of a spherical dome which has curved ribs, *a b*, *c d*, etc., as shown. Each of these ribs must be

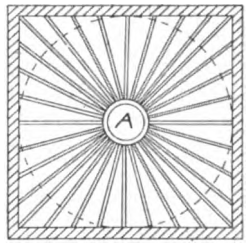


Fig. 215. Plan of Frame for Domical Roof.

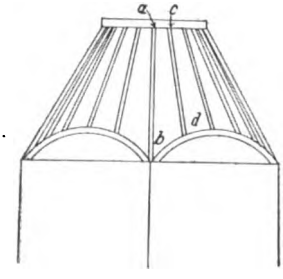


Fig. 216. Elevation of Conical Dome.

bent or shaped to the segment of a circle, in order that their edges may lie in a spherical surface.

If the design calls only for a domical *ceiling* and the exterior may be of some other form, then only the inside edges of the ribs need be dressed to correspond with a spherical or conical surface, in order that they may receive the lathing or furring, and the outside may be left rough and a false roof of any desired shape may be built. If the *exterior* must be of domical form while on the interior there is a suspended or false ceiling of some kind, then only the outside edges of the ribs must lie in the conical or spherical surface, so as to receive the roof boarding, while the inside edges may be left rough or shaped to any other form. If both the exterior and interior must be domical, then both the inside and outside edges of the ribs must be dressed so as to lie in the domical surface.

Fig. 217. Elevation of Spherical Dome.

Conical domes are very uncommon, but they are sometimes used. A conical dome is much easier to frame than a spherical dome because the ribs are straight. The shape of the curved plate

Digitized by Google

which supports the lower ends of the ribs may be easily determined, since it must conform to the line of intersection between the conical or spherical surface of the dome, and the plane of the face of the wall.

Niches. Niches are of common occurrence in building work, especially in churches, halls and other important structures. Sometimes they are simply recesses in the wall with straight corners and a square head, but more often they are semicircular in form, with spherical heads in which case the framing becomes a matter of some difficulty. The framing of the wall for a semicircular niche is the easiest part of the work, since all the pieces may be straight, but for the framing of the head the ribs must be bent or shaped to conform to the surface of a sphere.

Fig. 218 shows in plan the way in which the vertical studding of the walls must be placed. The inside edges must lie in a cylindrical surface, and will receive the lathing and plastering. There must be a curved sole piece for them to rest upon at the bottom and a cap at the top. The cap is shown at A B in Fig. 219, which is an elevation of the *cradling* or framing for the niche. This figure shows how the ribs for the head of the niche must be bent. The ribs and vertical studs must be spaced not farther than twelve inches apart, center to center.

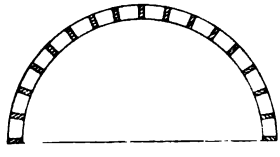


Fig. 218. Plan of Vertical Studding for Niche.

The form of niche described above is the most common one for large niches intended to hold full size casts or other pieces of statuary, but smaller ones for holding busts and vases are quite common. These are often made in the form of a quarter sphere or some smaller segment of a sphere, with a flat base or floor and a spherical head, as is shown in section in Fig. 220. They are framed with curved ribs in the same way as described above, and finished with lathing and plastering.

Vaults and Groins. Although vaulted roofs are an outgrowth of masonry construction, and are almost always built of brick or stone, they are occasionally of timber, and in any case a timber centering must be built for them. A vault may be described as the surface generated by a curved line as the line moves through

Digitized by Google

space, and in accordance with this definition there are vaults of all kinds, semicircular or *barrel* vaults, elliptical vaults, conical vaults, and many others.

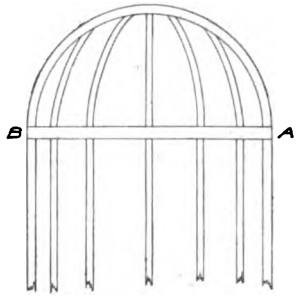


Fig. 219. Elevation of Cradling for Niche.

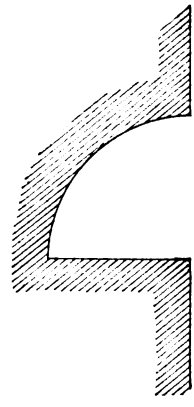


Fig. 220. Section of Quarter-Sphere Niche.

In Fig. 221 is shown in outline a simple semicircular or *barrel* vault, known as well by the name *cylindrical vault*. The point A where the straight vertical wall ends and the curved surface begins is called the *springing point*. The point B is the crown of the vault. The distance between the springing points on opposite sides of the vault is the *span*, and the vertical distance between the springing point and the crown B is the *rise*.

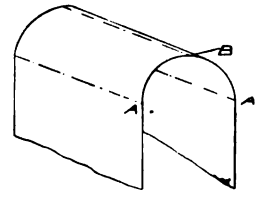


Fig. 221. Barrel Vault.

It may easily be seen how a barrel vault, or a vault of any kind, may be framed, with curved ribs spaced from one foot to eighteen inches apart on centers, and following the outline of a section of the vault. If the framework is intended to be permanent and to form the body of the vault itself, then the inner edges of the ribs must lie in the surface of the vault and must be covered with lathing and plastering. If only a centering is being built, on which it is intended that a masonry vault shall be supported temporarily, then the outer edges of the ribs must conform to the vaulted surface and must be covered with rough boarding to receive the masonry.

Digitized by Google

When two vaults intersect each other, as in the case of a main vault, and the vault over a transept, the ceiling at the place where vaults come together is said to be *groined*. The two vaults may be of the same height or of different heights. If they are of different heights the intersection is known as a *Welsh* groin. Welsh groins are of common occurrence in masonry construction, but in carpentry work the vaults are almost always made equal in height and often they are of equal span as well.

The framework for each vault is composed of ribs spaced comparatively close together, and resting on the side walls at the springing line. When, however, the two vaults intersect each other, the side walls must stop at the points where they meet, and a square or rectangular area is left which has no vertical walls

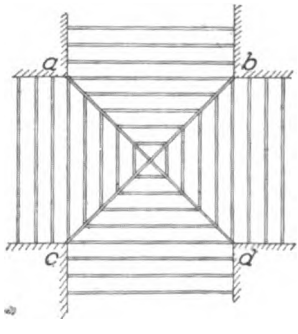


Fig. 222. Plan of Cradling for Groined Ceiling.

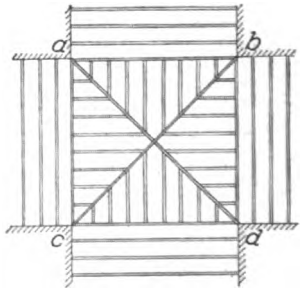


Fig. 223. Cradling for Groined Ceiling.

around it. The covering for this area must be supported at the four corner points in which the side walls intersect. This is shown in plan in Fig. 222 where *a b c d* are the points of intersection of the walls of the vaults. The method of covering the area common to both vaults is also shown in the figure. Diagonal ribs *a d* and *c b* are put in place so as to span the distance from corner to corner and these form the basis for the rest of the framing. They must be bent to such a shape that they will coincide exactly with the line of intersection of the two vaulted services. The ribs which form the framing for the groined ceiling over the area are supported on the diagonal ribs as shown in the figure. They are arranged symmetrically with respect to the center, and are bent or shaped to the form of segments of circles or ellipses.

Digitized by Google

Fig. 222 shows one method of forming the cradling for a groined ceiling, but there is another which is also in common use. This is shown in Fig. 223. There are four curved ribs *a b*, *b d*, *c d*, and *c a* which span the distances from corner to corner around the space to be covered. The diagonal ribs *a d* and *c b* are also employed as in the first method. Straight horizontal purlins are supported on these ribs, running parallel to the direction of the vaults, as shown in the figure. They are spaced about sixteen inches apart and form the framework for the ceiling.

The only difficult problem in connection with groined ceilings is to find the shape of the diagonal rib. This rib, as has been explained above, must coincide with the line of intersection of the vaults. The problem, then, is to find the true shape of the diagonal rib.

Let us consider the two vaults shown in plan in Fig. 224. They are not of the same span, but they will be of the same height if we wish to have a common groin and not a Welsh groin; so if one is semicircular the other must be elliptical. Elevations of ribs in each vault are shown at A and B and the diagonal ribs are shown in plan at *a c* and *b d*. It is easy to find the plan of these ribs because they must pass from corner to corner diagonally. To find the elevation we must use the same principle that was employed in finding the position of the valley rafter and the shape of the curved hip rafter for an ogee roof, namely, any line drawn in the roof or ceiling surface parallel to the plate or side walls, must be horizontal, and all points in it must be at the same elevation.

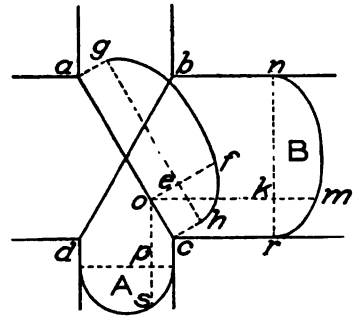


Fig. 224. Plan of Intersecting Vaults.

We start with the assumption that one of the vaults is semicircular, as shown in elevation at A, Fig. 224. Taking any line in the vaulted surface, shown in plan, as the line *s p o*, we produce it until it intersects the plan of the diagonal rib *a c* at the point *o*. This point must be the plan of one point in the line of intersection of the vaulted surfaces.

Digitized by Google

The elevation of the point *o* above the springing line of the vaults is shown by the distance *p s*, since the line *s p o* is exactly horizontal throughout. This distance is laid off at *e f* with the line *g e h* representing the horizontal plane which contains the springing lines of the vaults. The point *h* is the point from which the diagonal rib starts. The point *f*, as we have seen is another point in the curve, and we can by a similar process locate as many points as we need. This will enable us to draw the complete curve *g f h* of the line in which the vaults intersect, and to which the diagonal rib must conform.

By continuing the line from the point *o* at right angles to its former direction and parallel to the wall line we may obtain the point *k* which is a plan of one point in the surface of the elliptical vault. The elevation of this point also above the springing lines must be the same as for the point *s* and may be laid off, as shown at *k m*. By finding other points in a similar way the curve *n m r* of the elliptical vault may be readily determined.

Digitized by Google

REVIEW QUESTIONS.

PRACTICAL TEST QUESTIONS.

In the foregoing sections of this Cyclopedia numerous illustrative examples are worked out in detail in order to show the application of the various methods and principles. Accompanying these are examples for practice which will aid the reader in fixing the principles in mind.

In the following pages are given a large number of test questions and problems which afford a valuable means of testing the reader's knowledge of the subjects treated. They will be found excellent practice for those preparing for College, Civil Service, or Engineer's License. In some cases numerical answers are given as a further aid in this work.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

REVIEW QUESTIONS

ON THE SUBJECT OF

HEATING AND VENTILATION.

PART I.

---

1. What advantage does indirect steam heating have over direct heating? What advantages over furnace heating?

2. What are the causes of heat loss from the building?

3. Why is hot water especially adapted to the warming of dwellings?

4. What proportion of carbonic-acid gas is found in out-door air under ordinary conditions?

5. A room in the N. E. corner of a building is 18′ square and 10′ high; there are 5 single windows, each 3′ × 10′ in size; the walls are of brick 12″ in thickness. With an inside temperature of 70 degrees, what will be the heat loss per hour in zero weather? Ans. 21,447 B. T. U.

6. State four important points to be noted in the care of a furnace.

7. A grammar school building has 4 rooms, one in each corner, each being 30′ × 30′ and 14′ high and seating 50 pupils. The walls are of wooden construction, and the windows make up $\frac{1}{3}$ of the total exposed surface. The basement and attic are warm. How many pounds of coal will be required per hour for both heating and ventilation in zero weather, if 8,000 B. T. U. are utilized from each pound of coal? Ans. 96.3 lbs.

8. What two distinct types of furnaces are used? What are the distinguishing features?

9. What is meant by the efficiency of a furnace? What efficiencies are obtained in ordinary practice?

10. What are the principal parts of a furnace? State briefly the use of each.

Digitized by Google

REVIEW QUESTIONS

ON THE SUBJECT OF

HEATING AND VENTILATION.

PART II.

---

1. How would you obtain the sizes of the cold and warm air pipes connecting with indirect heaters in dwelling-house work?

2. What is an aspirating coil and what is its use?

3. What efficiencies may be allowed for indirect heaters in schoolhouse work? How would you compute the size of an indirect heater for a room in a dwelling house?

4. How is the size of a direct-indirect radiator computed?

5. A schoolroom on the fourth floor is to be supplied with 2,400 cubic feet of air per minute. What should be the area of the warm-air supply flue?

Ans. 6 square feet.

6. What is the chief objection to a mixing damper, and how may this be overcome?

7. How many square feet of indirect radiation will be required to warm and ventilate a schoolroom when it is 10 degrees below zero, if the heat loss through walls and windows is 42,000 B. T. U. and the air supply 120,000 cubic feet per hour?

Ans. 349 square feet.

8. What is the difference in construction between a steam radiator and one designed for hot water? Can the steam radiator be used for hot water? State reasons for answer.

Digitized by Google

REVIEW QUESTIONS

ON THE SUBJECT OF

HEATING AND VENTILATION.

PART III.

---

1. A main heater contains 1,040 square feet of heating surface made up of wrought iron pipe, and is used in connection with a fan which delivers 528,000 cubic feet of air per hour. The heater is 20 pipes deep and has a free area between the pipes of 11 square feet. If air is taken at zero, to what temperature will it be raised with steam at 5 pounds pressure?

Ans. 140°.

2. A nine-foot fan running at 130 revolutions delivers 40,000 cubic feet of air per minute. If the fan is speeded up to 169 revolutions, and an electric motor substituted for the engine, what will be the rating of the required motor?

3. What precaution must be taken in connecting the radiators in tall buildings.

4. Give the size of heater from Table II, which will be required to raise 672,000 cubic feet of air per hour, from 10° below zero to 90°, with a steam pressure of 20 pounds. If the air quantity is raised to 840,000 cubic feet per hour through the same heater, what will be the resulting temperature with all other conditions the same?

Ans. 85.5°.

5. A fan running at 150 revolutions produces a pressure of $\frac{1}{2}$ ounce. If the speed is increased to 210 revolutions, what will be the resulting pressure?

6. A certain fan is delivering 12,000 cubic feet of air per minute, at a speed of 200 revolutions. It is desired to increase the amount to 18,000 cubic feet. What will be the required

Digitized by Google

REVIEW QUESTIONS

ON THE SUBJECT OF

PLUMBING.

PART I.

---

1. What causes a trap to "siphon," and in what three ways may it be prevented?

2. What size of soil pipe should be used for an ordinary-sized dwelling, and what pitch should be given to the horizontal portion?

3. What quantity of water per capita should be allowed in designing a sewerage system?

4. What form of cross-section of conduit gives a maximum velocity of flow to small quantities of sewage?

5. Describe the manner of making house connections with the main sewer.

6. Show by sketch the general method of running the waste and vent pipes in a dwelling house, and indicate the proper location of traps.

7. What are the two principal methods of sewage purification?

8. Describe the method of making up the joints in cast iron soil pipe.

9. In what way may the seal of a trap be broken besides siphonage?

10. What two tests are usually given to a system of plumbing? State the use of each.

Digitized by Google

REVIEW QUESTIONS

ON THE SUBJECT OF

PLUMBING.

PART II.

---

1. A hotel requires a water supply of 200 gallons of water per minute during a certain part of the day. It receives its supply from a reservoir 1,000 feet distant, and located 116 feet above the house tank, in the attic of the building. What size of wrought-iron pipe will be required to bring the water from the reservoir?

Ans. 3 inch.

2. What is the best kind of pipe for domestic water supply under ordinary conditions? When may it be objectionable?

3. A 1-inch pipe is to discharge 40 gallons of water per minute from a cistern placed directly above it. What must be the elevation if we assume the friction in the pipe and bends to be equivalent to 100 feet?

Ans. 111 feet.

4. A house tank is situated 15 feet above a faucet upon the fifth floor of the building. If the stories are 8 feet high, what will be the difference in pressure in pounds per square inch between this faucet and one in the basement?

Ans. 17.3 pounds.

5. Describe the action of an hydraulic ram.

6. A pump has a steam cylinder 6 inches in diameter and a water cylinder 5 inches in diameter. What steam pressure will be required to raise water to an elevation of 135 feet, neglecting friction in the pipe?

Ans. 40.3 pounds.

Digitized by Google

REVIEW QUESTIONS

ON THE SUBJECT OF

CARPENTRY.

PART I.

---

1. Give a rule for squaring a log to get the strongest possible timber out of it.

2. What is the "three-four-five rule," and how is it used?

3. Describe (and illustrate by a sketch) a splice suitable for a piece subjected to a bending stress.

4. Why is a "ledger-board" not as good as a "girt" for supporting the ends of floor joists?

5. What are partition caps and soles? What takes the place of the sole when there is a partition directly beneath the one which is being built?

6. Show by a sketch what is meant by "sizing down" a joist onto a girder or sill.

7. What is the method employed for supporting a corner which has no direct support beneath it? Make a sketch of the framing for such a corner.

8. From what two classes of trees is most building lumber obtained?

9. Give a brief description of the following varieties of timber:

a. Cypress	*d.* Spruce
b. Ash	*e.* Pine
c. Poplar	*f.* Oak

10. Name, and show by sketch, five kinds of joints used in carpentry.

11. What must take place before a "fished" splice for tension can be pulled apart?

12. What is a "raised girt?" a "dropped girt?"

Digitized by Google

REVIEW QUESTIONS

ON THE SUBJECT OF

CARPENTRY.

PART II.

---

1. Give full description of the various forms of roofs, with sketches.

2. Give a rule for obtaining the rise of the rafter in a roof, the span of which is known.

3. Describe the method employed in framing a gambrel roof.

4. What is the "run of a rafter"? What is the rise? What is meant by the pitch?

5. What important property is characteristic of all lines in a roof surface which are parallel to the ridge line? Tell in a general way how this fact is made use of in laying out the valley line.

6. What are the two distances which determine the position of the steel square in laying out valley rafters?

7. What is the principle used in finding the slope of the hip rafter in an "ogee" roof?

8. What is the usual size of rafters for ordinary frame dwellings?

9. Describe a hip rafter. What relation does it bear to a parallel valley rafter in the same roof surface?

10. What is the method of framing adopted for the valley when a small gable intersects a large roof?

11. Describe the different kinds of jack rafters.

12. What must be done to studs forming the framework of an attic partition in order to make them fit the under side of the roof framing?

13. In what does "backing" consist?

Digitized by Google

14. Describe two methods of forming the eaves on frame buildings

15. Describe the framing of a mansard roof.

16. What is the purpose of the ridge-pole and how is it usually made.

17. Describe two different kinds of dormer windows.

18. How are openings made in a roof frame for dormer windows, skylights, etc.?

19. When are trussed partitions used? Describe in a general way their construction.

20. Describe two methods of constructing an "inclined floor".

21. What is the difference between a "king-post trussed beam" and a "queen-post trussed beam"?

22. Describe the construction of a "flitch plate girder".

23. What are the different kinds of rafters used in a roof frame? Describe each.

24. Give a rule for determining the general proportions of a gambrel roof. Illustrate by a sketch.

25. How are rafters of long span strengthened? What are "dwarf walls"? What is a collar beam? Make sketches of same.

26. Describe the construction of a "notched" beam. A "keyed" beam.

27. Explain the difference between a "king-post truss" and a "queen-post truss".

28. How is the curved form given to a bell-shaped or concave tower roof?

29. Is the stress in the king-post of a common king-post truss tension or compression? Of what material is it ordinarily made?

30. Describe or show by a sketch a method of framing a domical roof with provision for a lantern at the top.

31. What is a "groined" ceiling?

32. How far may a balcony or gallery be allowed to project beyond the line of supporting columns without the introduction of a brace?

33. What is the difference between the two connections shown in Fig. 202? What does each depend upon for its strength?

Digitized by Google

GENERAL INDEX

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

GENERAL INDEX.

In this Index the Volume number appears in Roman numerals thus I, II, III, IV, etc., and the Page number in Arabic numerals thus 1, 2, 3, 4, etc. For example, Volume IV, Page 327, is written IV, 327.

The page number of each Volume will be found at the *bottom* of the page; the numbers at the top refer only to the section.

	Part	Page
Abbreviated telegraphy	I,	266
Abbreviations for drawings	XI,	327
Abnormal operation of transformer	IV,	247
Absolute electrical units	I,	108
Absolute units, C. G. S.	I,	105
Absorber	VII,	395
Absorption refrigeration	VII,	389
absorber	VII,	395
ammonia condensers	VII,	393
automatic gauge cocks	VII,	396
foreign gas	VII,	397
freezing	VII,	394
freezing tank	VII,	393
gauges, pressure	VII,	395
glass gauges	VII,	396
low pressure side	VII,	394
pressure gauges	VII,	395
weak water, circuit of	VII,	395
Acceleration, C. G. S. unit of	I,	107
Accessories, boiler	VI,	247
Accumulators	I,	45
depreciation of	II,	377
Waddell-Entz	II,	363
"Acid" converter lining	IX,	358
Acid process of steel	IX,	365
Acids		
hydrochloric	VI,	112
nitric	VI,	112
sulphuric	VI,	111
table	VI,	113
Acid spray, troubles from	II,	380
Acme thread	X,	113
Adiabatic expansion	VI,	42
Adjustable dies	X,	284
Adjustable eccentrics	VII,	192
Adjustable reamers	X,	245
Adjustable snap gauge	X,	401
Adjustable taps	X,	272
Adjustments, electric welders	I,	405
Aerial cables, stringing of	V,	132
Air, analysis of	XII,	28
Air, chemistry of	VI,	86
Air, distribution in rooms	XII,	31
Air, liquefaction of	VI,	51
Air, pumping by compressed	VI,	448
Air, velocity in flues, tables	XII,	97
Air, for ventilation	XII,	29
Air-blast transformers	IV,	264
Air brake	III, 372; VIII,	387-452
angle cocks	VIII,	419
brake hose	VIII,	419
brake rigging	VIII,	429
car drain cup	VIII,	420
cut-out cock	VIII,	420
cylinder	VIII,	417
driver brakes	VIII,	440
dummy coupling	VIII,	421
emergencies	VIII,	444
burst hose	VIII,	444
conductor's valve	VIII,	444
couplings frozen	VIII,	447
cutting out brakes	VIII,	444
detaching engine or cars	VIII,	447
double headers	VIII,	447
miscellaneous items	VIII,	447
pressure retaining valve	VIII,	447
train breaking in two	VIII,	447
engineer's valve	VIII,	405

Note.—For page numbers see foot of pages.

Digitized by Google

	Part	Page
Air brake		
F-6 valve	VIII,	405
handling of	VIII,	443
high-speed	VIII,	402
hose couplings	VIII,	420
inspection	VIII,	443
New York engineer's valve	VIII,	426
operating pump	VIII,	422
pressure gauge	VIII,	411
pressure retaining valve	VIII,	421
pump	VIII,	392
shoe pressure	VIII,	434
slack adjuster	VIII,	438
train line governor	VIII,	408
triple valve	VIII,	412
Air chamber of pump	VI,	385
Air gaps	II,	154
Air pipe for heating, table	XII,	49
Air pressure, effect of on water	VIII,	227
Air pump VI, 406;	VIII,	131
Air pump governor	VIII,	402
Air pump, operating	VIII,	422
Air refrigeration	VII,	379
Air signal system	VIII,	449
Air supply per person, table	XII,	30
Air valves, radiator	XII,	73
Air valves, water radiator	XII,	119
Alchemists	VI,	55
Alkalies	VI,	102
Alkaline substances, table	VI,	113
All-day efficiency	IV,	245
Allowable sag, table of	V,	117
Alloys	IX,	384
Alloys, table	IX,	385
Almanac, nautical	VIII,	216
Alternating current	V,	34
advantages of	IV,	14
disadvantages of	IV,	14
plants	III,	33
problems	IV,	17
switchboard	III,	428
systems III,	211,	431
distribution of	IV,	437
testing	IV,	163
transformers	IV,	16
transmission	III,	417
Alternating-current circuits		
fundamental equation of	IV,	41
impedance of	IV,	45
Joule's law	IV,	19
Kirchhoff's laws for	IV,	19
measurement of power in	IV,	75
Ohm's law for	IV,	18
power law for	IV,	18
reactance of	IV,	44
resistance of	IV,	44
Alternating-current curve	IV,	24
Alternating-current generator	III,	423
simple form of	II,	20
Alternating-current lines, calculation of	IV,	445
Alternating-current machinery IV,	11-	417
Alternating-current motor	III,	54
advantages of	III,	432
Alternating E. M. F. and currents IV,	11,	22
Alternators	IV,	85
average power delivered by	IV,	26
commercial types of	IV,	135
comparison of types	IV,	156
cost of	IV,	155
definition of	IV,	11
efficiency of IV,	159,	190
fundamental equation of	IV,	85
heat test of	IV,	182
inductor	IV,	153
power losses of	IV,	158
regulation of IV,	96,	176
revolving-armature	IV,	135
revolving-field	IV,	139
simple	IV,	11
single-phase	IV,	106
three-phase	IV,	110
two-phase	IV,	107
Alternators in parallel	III,	42
cutting in	IV,	392
cutting out	IV,	393
Alternators in series	III,	47
Aluminum	IX,	381
Aluminum and copper, table of	V,	114
Aluminum steel	IX,	367
Aluminum wire, table of	V,	115
American DeForest wireless telegraphy	I,	362
American Institute rules	IV,	161
American Morse code	I,	47
American Thompson indicator	VII,	92
American wire gauge, table of	I,	74
Ammeter	I,	120
calibration of	I,	149
electromagnetic	I,	121
hot-wire	IV,	62
plunger-type	IV,	73
Ammonia	VI,	82
loss of	VII,	363
saturated, table	VII,	368
Ammonia compressor	VII,	308
size of	VII,	365
Ammonia condenser	VII,	325
Ammonia receiver	VII,	339
Ammonia valves	VII,	343
Amorphous carbon	VI,	87
Ampere	I,	64, 109
Ampere-turns	II,	35

Note.—For page numbers see foot of pages.

Digitized by Google

	Part	Page
Amperes per motor, table of	I,	170
Amyl acetate lamp	III,	289
Angle valve	VI,	260
Angles	XI,	56
bisecting	XI,	77
measurement of	XI,	60
Animal charcoal	VI,	87
Annealing	IX, 503; X,	494
Annular gears	XI,	281
Annunciator wire	IV,	425
Anthracite coal	VI,	88
Apartment houses, heating of	XII,	189
Apparatus		
approved electrical	I,	219
electric telegraph	I,	233
special switchboard	IV,	399
transmitter	I,	344
Approved "rubber-covered" wire	I,	187
Arbors	X,	252
eccentric	X,	259
face milling cutter	X,	340
mandrel	X,	252
milling machine	X,	260
Arc, electric	III,	242
Arc lamps	I, 217; III,	242
alternating current	III,	249
Bremer	III,	259
carbons for	III,	251
constant potential	III,	249
efficiency of	III,	251
interchangeable	III,	250
low-potential circuit	I,	218
mechanism of	III,	243
rating of	III,	250
Arc light		
photometry	III,	299
table of	III,	282
wiring	I, 195,	218
Arc-lighting generators	II,	208
Argon	VI,	84
Architectural lettering	XI,	477-522
classic Renaissance letters	XI,	478
classic Roman letters	XI,	503
Dürer letter	XI,	493
inscription	XI,	501
Italic letters	XI,	489
letter forms	XI,	478
minuscule letters	XI,	500
office lettering	XI,	477
plates	XI,	521, 522
single-line letter	XI,	485
"skeleton" letter	XI,	484
small letters	XI,	500
spacing	XI,	499
Armature	II,	97
calculation of	II,	135
coils	III,	318
Armature		
definition of	IV,	11
drum	IV,	124
energy losses in	II,	146
heating of	III,	105
inductance	IV,	94
leads and brushes	III,	319
open coil	II,	104
reactions	II, 40, 45, 157; IV,	92
resistance of	IV,	174
smooth-core	IV,	124
temperature increase in	II,	146
toothed-core	IV,	125
Armature conductor		
length of	II,	135
resistance of	II,	141
sectional area of	II,	137
selection of wire for	II,	137
total length of	II,	141
weight of	II,	141
Armature core	II, 98, 155; IV,	12
average magnetic density of	II,	142
cross section of	II,	142
diameter of	II,	139
length of	II,	140
radial depth of	II,	142
Armature windings		
II, 25, 100; III, 315; IV, 12,	106,	123
arrangement of	II,	141
Armor plate, Harvey process	IX,	368
Artificial lighting	III,	305
Artificial magnets	I,	11
Ashpans, locomotive	VIII,	255
Ashton pop safety valve	VI,	267
Assembling of the machine	III,	23
Assembly drawing	XI,	205
Astatic galvanometer	I,	114
Astronomical and civil time	VIII,	216
Astronomy, nautical	VIII,	202
Atomic weight	VI,	61
Atoms	VI,	56
Attic partitions	XII,	422
Atlas water-tube boiler	VI,	225
Atkinson repeater	I,	293
Atmosphere	VI, 83; XII,	25
carbonic acid gas in	XII,	27
nitrogen in	XII,	26
oxygen in	XII,	26
Automatic action of transformer	IV,	216
Automatic appliances	IX, 531-	541
Automatic brake	VIII,	390
Automatic cut-outs	I,	204
Automatic return pumps	XII,	132
Automatic-sounder method of telegraph	I,	248
Automobiles	II, 411-	508
air cooling	II,	440
air fans	II,	494

Note.—For page numbers see foot of pages.

Digitized by Google

	Part	Page
Automobiles		
American conditions	II,	418
auxiliary exhaust	II,	430
balance gear	II,	465
bearings	II,	502
bodies of	II,	495
brakes	II,	477
change-speed devices	II,	442
clutches	II,	455
connecting rods	II,	425
control of wheels	II,	472
crank case	II,	428
crank shaft	II,	426
cylinder of engine for	II,	421
emergency seats	II,	495
excess cooling	II,	435
faulty compression	II,	423
fittings	II,	500
fly-wheel	II,	427
foreign influence	II,	417
friction gear	II,	450
front axle	II,	469
galvanic cells	II,	490
gimbal joints	II,	464
history of	II,	412
ignition	II,	483
individual clutch	II,	446
lamps	II,	504
location of mechanism	II,	497
lubrication	II,	436
mechanical generators	II,	491
motor, gasolene	II,	421
muffler	II,	430
occasional experiments in	II,	413
operation of	II,	504
pioneers in electric	II,	414
planetary gear	II,	445
premature ignition	II,	435
present types	II,	418
pumps	II,	492
radius rods	II,	464
rear axle	II,	468
shock absorbers	II,	501
sliding gear	II,	447
springs	II,	501
steady growth of	II,	415
steam decadence	II,	416
steam vehicles	II,	419
steering heads	II,	470
tires	II,	480
tops	II,	497
transmission	II,	457
valve action	II,	429
valve ports	II,	422
vaporization	II,	434
vaporizers	II,	431
variations in	II,	420
vehicle control	II,	454
water cooling	II,	437
wheels	II,	479
Auto-transformer	IV,	232
current relations in	IV,	233
Auxiliary marine machinery	VIII,	140
Average generator efficiencies, table of	III,	162
Average value of alternating E. M. F.	IV,	24
Axioms of perspective	XI,	369
"Babbitt" metal	IX,	334
Babcock and Wilcox boiler	VI,	217
Back-firing gas engine	VII,	4
Backlash	XI,	276
Back pressure valve	XII,	130
Back saw	IX,	21
exercise for	IX,	21
Back venting	XII,	229
Balanced systems	IV,	117
Balanced valves	VII,	179
Balconies, construction of	XII,	436
Ball pump-valves	VI,	380
Ballast	III,	403
Ballistic galvanometer	I,	115
Balloon frame for wall	XII,	355
Band saws	IX,	59
Banking of transformers	IV,	228
Bar windings	IV,	130
Barometer heights, table	VI,	354
Barrel core, making	IX,	453
Basic process of steel, management of	IX,	365
Bath room pipe connections	XII,	233
Bath tubs	XII,	201
Battered frames	XII,	424
Batteries		
dry	V,	24
gravity	V,	19
resistance of	I,	143
secondary	V,	26
storage	I, 159; V,	26
telegraph	I,	48
telephone	I,	57
Battery circuits	I,	87
Battery room	II,	365
Bandelot cooler	VII,	352
Beam compasses	XI,	29
Beam engine	VIII,	97
Beams and girders	XII,	431
Bearings		
heating of	III,	107
hot	VIII,	164
machine	IX,	324
marine	VIII,	119
knocking of	VIII,	166
lubrication of	VIII,	164
materials for	IX,	334
problems on	IX,	334

Note.—For page numbers see foot of pages.

Digitized by Google

	Part	Page
Bearings		
railway motor	III,	323
re'tting	VIII,	167
Bearings, brackets, and stands	IX,	324
Bell-cord signals	VIII,	366
Belpaire boiler VI, 206;	VIII,	236
Belt holes	XI,	270
Belting, X, 204;	XI,	251
horsepower transmitted by	IX,	235
material of	IX,	237
speed of	IX,	237
strength of leather	IX,	235
Belts	IX,	229
analysis of	IX,	229
connecting non-parallel shafts	XI,	269
initial tension in	IX,	232
practical modification of	IX,	234
problems on	IX,	239
quarter-turn	XI,	255
theory of	IX,	231
width of, for hoists	IX,	183
Bench, machinist's	X,	38
Bench miller	X,	161
Bending die	X,	383
Bending machines	X,	439
Benzine	VII,	465
Berliner transmitter	V,	45
Bessemer converter, blowing	IX,	356
Bessemer steel	IX,	354
Bevel gears IX, 280; X, 183;	XI,	286
patterns for	IX,	149
Bevels	IX,	37
Bichromate cell	I,	31
Bilge suction	VIII,	158
Bilges	VIII,	166
Bits	IX,	44
Bituminous coal	VI,	88
Black prints, formula for	XI,	206
Blacking for moulds	IX,	433
Blake transmitter	V,	44
Blast for cupola	IX,	485
Blast for forge	X,	414
Blast furnace	IX,	339
banking of	IX,	342
chemistry of	IX,	343
materials used in	IX,	341
operation of	IX,	341
Blast furnace gas, use of	VII,	461
Block lettering	XI,	147
Blowers	VI,	258
Blowers and fans for heating	XII,	159
Blowing Bessemer converter	IX,	356
Blow-off tank	XII,	82
Blow-out apparatus	VI,	269
Blue printing	XI,	204
Blue prints, formula for	XI,	206
Boiler accessories VI,	247-350	

	Part	Page
Boiler connections for heating	XII,	82
Boiler construction VI, 115-171;	VIII,	28
materials for	VI,	115
riveting	VIII,	28
shell	VIII,	28
Boiler corrosion, table	VI,	313
Boiler coverings	VI,	297
Boiler design	VI,	148
Boiler explosions	VI,	319
causes of	VI,	321
Boiler feed-pump	VI,	394
Boiler horse-power for ventilation	XII,	58
Boiler materials, strength of	VI,	119
Boiler sections	VI,	164
Boiler setting	VI,	305
Boiler tests		
alternate method	VI,	337
analysis of gases	VI,	339
log of	VI,	340
priming test	VI,	338
standard method	VI,	336
starting and stopping	VI,	336
Boiler trials	VI,	334
data of	III,	455
Boiler tubes VI,	143,	151
table VI, 152;	VIII,	40
Boilers		
area of grate	VI,	149
blow-out apparatus	VI,	316
brass for	VI,	116
cast iron for	VI,	115
classification of	VI,	175
copper for	VI,	116
corrosion of	VI,	310
defective design	VI,	321
defects of workmanship	VI,	322
deterioration	VI,	321
dimensions of	VI,	154
energy stored in	VI,	320
feed apparatus for	VI,	286
firing III, 147;	VI,	345
foundations for	III,	146
fracture of	VI,	318
grate surface of	VI,	155
heating surface of	VI,	154
horse-power of VI,	148,	303
incrustation of	VI,	313
materials for	VIII,	21
mismanagement of	VI,	322
plates and joints	VI,	130
shell, staying of	VI,	136
for steam-plant	III,	134
steam space for	VI,	153
steel for	VI,	116
strength of	VI,	157
supports for	VI,	283

Note.—For page numbers see foot of pages.

Digitized by Google

	Part	Page
Boilers		
table of	XII,	59
test for efficiency	VI,	332
test for strength	VI,	332
testing of	VI,	332
types of	III, 134; VI,	173-245
Atlas	VI,	225
Babcock and Wilcox	VI,	217
Belpaire	VI, 206; VIII,	236
Cahall	VI,	239
Cochrane vertical	VI,	208
Cornish	III, 135; VI,	180
cylindrical	VI, 178; VIII,	13
"Directurn"	VI,	211
double-ended	VIII,	17
double-tube	VI,	174
externally-fired	VI,	174
fire-box	VI, 174,	202
fire-tube	VI, 174,	184
flue	VI,	179
Galloway	VI,	183
gunboat	VIII,	19
Harrison	VI,	244
haystack	VI,	176
Hazelton	VI,	243
Heine	VI,	223
internally-fired	VI,	174
Lancashire	VI,	181
launch	VIII,	92
laundry	XII,	283
Lentz	VI, 207; VIII,	237
locomotive	VI, 202; VIII, 20,	231
Manning	VI,	191
marine	III, 135; VIII, 11,	78
Milne	VI,	240
Mosher	VI,	227
multitubular	III, 135; VI,	184
Niclausse	VI,	233
non-sectional	VI,	174
return-tube	VI,	193
radial stay	VIII,	234
return-tube as stationary	VI,	208
Robb-Mumford	VI,	209
Root	VI,	219
Shapley	VI,	208
sectional	VI,	174
single-ended	VIII,	13
single-flue	VI,	184
single-tube	VI,	174
steam-heating	XII,	54
Stirling	VI,	239
through tube	VI, 200; VIII,	19
upright	VI,	189
wagon	VI,	177
Boilers, types of		
water-tube	VI, 174; VI,	212
Wickes	VI,	236
Wootten	VI,	206
Worthington	VI,	221
water space of	VI,	152
wrought iron for	VI,	116
Boilers, care of	VI,	344
air leaks	VI,	350
ash pit	VI,	348
blowing off	VI,	350
cleaning	VI,	349
condition of water	VI,	348
dampness	VI,	350
feed apparatus	VI,	349
foaming	VI,	350
fusible plugs	VI,	348
galvanic action	VI,	350
gauge cocks	VI,	348
low water	VI,	349
pressure gauge	VI,	348
safety valve	VI,	348
starting the fire	VI,	344
water glasses	VI,	348
Boilers, heating, care of	XII,	103
Boilers for hot water	XII,	285
Boiling point of water, table	VI,	25
Boiling points, table	VI,	26
Bolt cutter	X,	68
Bolt headers	X,	506
Bolt heads, table of	XI,	195
Bolts	IX, 303; X,	446
conventional drawing of	XI,	190
problems on	IX,	313
table for strength of	IX,	308
tap	IX,	312
through	IX,	312
Bond testing	III,	437
Bonding and return circuits	III,	406
Booster feeding	III,	416
Boosters	II,	270
compound	II,	406
constant-current	II,	408
differential	II,	407
methods of regulation of	II,	404
series	II,	406
shunt	II,	404
Boring	X,	119
Boring tools	X, 98,	478
Bow pencil	XI,	24
Bow pen	XI,	24
Box annealing	X,	215
Box jig	X,	362
Boyle's law	VI,	40
Braced frame for wall	XII,	354
Braces for buildings	XII,	362

Note.—For page numbers see foot of pages.

Digitized by Google

	Part	Page
Brackets	III,	393
for boilers	VI,	167
gas	XII,	301
machine	IX,	324
Brake		
air	VIII,	387
automatic	VIII,	390
friction	VII,	269
G. E. electric	III,	377
handling of	VIII,	443
for hoist	IX,	203
momentum	III,	375
Prony	VII,	110
rope for	VII,	111
storage air	III,	374
track	III,	379
Westinghouse electromagnetic	III,	378
Brake cylinder	VIII,	417
Brake horse-power	VII,	110
Brake-relief spring	IX,	209
Brake rigging	III, 369; VIII,	429
Brake slack adjuster	VIII,	438
Brake-strap bracket	IX,	209
Brake valve reservoir	VIII,	411
Branly-Popp wireless telegraphy	I,	363
Brass		
for boilers	VI,	116
hardening and annealing	X,	494
Brass moulding	IX,	510
Brass pipe	XII,	266
for plumbing	XII,	222
Brass work	IX,	503
Brasses, fitting	X,	199
Braun-Siemens and Halske telegraphy	I,	358
Brazing	X,	492
Break-down test	IV,	166
induction motor	IV,	366
synchronous motor	IV,	211
Bremer arc lamp	III,	259
Brick arches	VIII,	247
Brick wall, connection to	XII,	386
Bridge		
of slide valve	VII,	169
slide wire	I,	134
Wheatstone	I, 128,	134
Bridge measuring capacity	I,	153
Bridge tramways	IX,	533
Bridging in carpentry	XII,	370
Bridging floors	XII,	388
Bridging telephone	V,	57
Brine cooler	VII,	304
double-pipe type	VII,	308
enclosed shell type	VII,	304
Brine in refrigeration	VII,	346
Brine systems	VII,	348
Brine tank	VII,	299
circular	VII,	302
rectangular	VII,	300
size of	VII,	364
British thermal unit	VI, 27; XII,	32
Bronze	IX,	504
Brown releasing gear	XII,	206
Brown & Sharpe standard taper	X,	52
Brush arc system	III,	204
Brushes	II,	107
Brush-holders	II,	103
Bucket trap	VI,	280
Buckets		
clam-shell	IX,	536
grab	IX,	535
Buckeye engine governor	VII,	68
Buckling	II,	379
Buildings, power station	III,	189
Buildings, wall of	XII,	354
Bull wireless telegraphy	I,	367
Bullock		
belted generator	II,	201
direct-driven generator	II,	185
electric locomotive	II,	258
multipolar motor	II,	243
Bunsen cell	I,	33
Burnley cell	V,	24
Burn-outs	III,	441
Bushing holes, location of	X,	356
Bushings	I, 204; X,	358
removable	X,	360
Butt joint in carpentry	XII,	343
Butt joints, efficiency of	VIII,	30
Butt welding	X,	428
By-pass valves	VIII,	155
Cables		
drawing in	V,	145
submarine	V,	152
types of	V,	125
underground	V,	137
Cable hangers	V,	136
Cable message	I,	264
Cahall boiler	VI,	239
Calcium	VI,	106
compounds of	VI,	107
occurrence of	VI,	107
preparation	VI,	107
properties of	VI,	107
Calcium brine solution, table	VII,	369
Calcium carbonate	VI,	108
Calcium chloride	VI,	109
Calcium hydroxide	VI,	108
Calcium phosphate	VI,	110
Calcium silicate	VI,	110
Calcium sulphate	VI,	110
Calculation of		
alternating-current lines	IV,	445
armature	II,	135

Note.—For page numbers see foot of pages.

Digitized by Google

	Part	Page
Calculation of		
customer's bills	IV,	84
E. M. F.	II,	31
illumination	III,	270
magnet winding	II,	157
magnetizing forces	II,	154
resistance	I,	67
Calculation of efficiency	IV,	245, 280
of alternator	IV,	190
of dynamo	II,	160
of induction motor	IV,	374
Calibration of		
ammeter	I,	149
voltmeter	I,	146
Caliper square	X,	23
Clippers	IX, 40, X,	21
Calking boiler joints	VI,	143
Calorie	VI,	27
Calorimeter, steam	VI, 297; VII,	269
Cameron pump valves	VI,	413
Cams	XI,	236
cutting of	X,	160
kinds of	XI,	238
cylindrical	XI,	240
plate	XI,	239
laying out	XI,	248
safety	VII,	206
Candle		
English	III,	287
German	III,	289
Candle-power and voltage	III,	236
Canopy switch	III,	353
Cap of walls	XII,	370
Capacity	IV,	22
C. G. S. unit	I,	109
conductors	IV,	440
measurement of	I,	151
table of	IV,	441
Capacity of conderser	IV,	40
in parallel	IV,	41
in series	IV,	41
Capacity of oval pipes, table	XII,	51
Capacity ratios, table of	III,	187
Cape chisel	X,	40
Caps and brackets for hoist	IX,	199
Car		
bodies	III,	383
circuit breaker	III,	353
equipment	III,	313
heaters	III,	348
wheels	III,	365
wiring	III,	351
Carbon		
amorphous	VI,	87
compounds of	VI,	91
discovery of	VI,	86
effect on iron	IX,	345
Carbon		
occurrence of	VI,	86
uses of	VI,	90
Carbon dioxide	VI,	95
Carbon feed	III,	247
Carbon monoxide	VI,	97
Carbon rheostats	I,	126
Carbonic acid gas	XII,	27
Carbonic acid gas, table	VII,	373
Carbonic anhydride gas refrigeration	VII,	373
Carbons of arc lamps	III,	251
Carburetor	VII,	466
Carcel lamp	III,	289
Cardew voltmeter	I,	123
Cards, area of	VI,	113
Car-dumping machines	IX,	539
Care of dynamos	I,	159
Carnot cycle	VI,	44
Carpentry	XII,	317-456
balconies and galleries	XII,	436
braces	XII,	362
corner posts	XII,	358
domes	XII,	447
floors	XII,	375
framing, special	XII,	424
groins and vaults	XII,	452
heavy beams and girders	XII,	431
interior supports for roofs	XII,	397
joints	XII,	342
laying out work	XII,	337
light framing	XII,	341
niches	XII,	452
pendentives	XII,	449
roof	XII,	393
sills	XII,	355
splices	XII,	349
stairs	XII,	389
towers and steeples	XII,	444
trussed beam	XII,	432
vaults and groins	XII,	452
walls of buildings	XII,	354
Carre's first ice plant	VII,	390
Carriage bolts	V,	88
Case-hardening	IX, 368; X,	495
Casings for indirect heating	XII,	86
Cassner cell	V,	25
Cast iron	IX,	344
for boilers	VI,	115
malleable	IX,	346
table of grades	IX,	345
Cast-iron pipe for plumbing	XII,	219
Cast-iron pole pieces	II,	156
Cast-iron radiators	XII,	60
Casting ladle	IX,	359
Cast welded joints	III,	405

Note.—For page numbers see foot of pages.

Digitized by Google

	Part	Page
Castings	IX,	346
cleaning of	IX, 490,	512
defects on	IX,	414
duplicating	IX,	443
steel	IX,	495
Catch-basin for sewer	XII,	251
C. & C.		
generator	II, 189,	199
motors	II,	248
Cedar	XII,	326
Cedar poles, table of	I,	185
Cells		
arrangement in batteries	V,	30
Bichromate	I,	31
Bunsen	I,	33
Burnley	V,	24
Cassner	V,	25
Daniell	I,	32
dry	I,	33
Edison-Lalande	V,	23
Fuller	V,	22
gravity	I,	33
Grove	I,	33
Leclanche	I, 31; V,	21
setting up	II,	366
Smee's	I,	31
voltaic	I,	28
Cementation steel	IX,	350
Center chisels	X,	40
Center punch	X,	12
Center square	X,	17
Centering engine	VII,	174
Centering finished work	X,	90
Centering work in lathe	X,	85
Centigrade	VII,	294
Centimeter	I,	105
Central station	I, 100; III,	203-229
design of	III,	463
Centrifugal oiling device	VII,	73
Centrifugal pumps	VI,	366
Centrifugal whirling of shafts	IX,	263
Cesspools	XII,	225
C. G. S. unit		
absolute	I,	105
absolute electrical	I,	103
acceleration	I,	107
of capacity	I,	109
derived	I,	105
of energy	I,	107
of field intensity	I,	108
of force	I,	107
fundamental	I,	105
of inductance	I,	109
of intensity of current	I,	108
magnetic	I,	108
of power	I,	107
practical electrical	I,	109

	Part	Page
C. G. S. unit		
of reluctance	I,	108
of resistance	I,	109
of surface	I,	107
of velocity	I,	107
of volume	I,	107
of work	I,	107
Chandeliers, gas	XII,	301
Characteristic curves	IV,	167
of dynamos	II,	61
of synchronous motors	IV,	209
Charcoal	VI,	87
Charge of electricity		
distribution of	I,	19
free and bound	I,	22
Charging current	IV,	22
Charging for power, methods of	III,	201
Charging of storage battery	II,	370
Charles and Boyle's law	VI,	40
Charts, navigation	VIII,	185
Chasing tools	X,	121
Check valves	VI,	261
Chemical action	VI,	71
Chemical action in the cell	I,	30
Chemical affinity	VI,	64
Chemical changes	VI,	56
Chemical effects of currents	I,	43
Chemistry	VI,	55-118
of air	VI	86
Chimney	VI,	168
table of dimensions	VI,	169
Chimney draft	VI,	150
Chimney flues	XII,	46
Chipping	X,	42
Chisel		
cape	X,	40
center	X,	40
diamond point	X,	40
flat	X,	39
small round-nosed	X,	40
Chisels and gouges	IX,	31
Chloride battery data, table of	II,	359
Chloride of lime	VI,	110
Chloride of sodium brine, table	VII,	370
Chloride type of storage battery	II,	357
Chrome steel	IX,	367
Chronometer	VIII,	214
Chuck-drills	X,	51
Chucks	X,	81
independent	X,	82
lathe	X,	82
universal	X,	81
Churches, heating of	XII,	186
Cinder trap	VIII,	264
Cipher message	I,	263
Circles	XI,	59
to inscribe in Δ	XI,	80
Circuit breakers and fuses	I,	156

Note.—For page numbers see foot of pages.

Digitized by Google

	Part	Page
Circuits		
battery	I,	87
divided	I,	82
grounding of low-potential	I,	177
main-line	I,	253
non-inductive	IV,	46
non-reactive	IV,	46
resistance and condenser in	IV,	49
resistance and inductance in	IV,	47
series I, 79;	IV,	58
telephone	I,	59
various kinds of	III,	31
Circular forming tools	X,	305
Circulating pump	VIII,	129
Circulation coils	XII,	61
Circulation pipes	XII,	281
Cistern capacity, table	XII,	271
Cisterns and tanks	XII,	269
Clam-shell buckets	IX,	536
Clamp coupling	IX,	302
Class of conductors, table of	IV,	424
Classic Renaissance letters	XI,	478
Classic Roman letters	XI,	503
Claw coupling	IX,	302
Clark standard cell	I,	148
Clearance of pump	VI,	386
Clearance holes for dies	X,	283
"Clermont" steamboat	VIII,	96
Clock diagram	IV,	27
Closed coil		
armatures	II,	101
drum windings	II,	28
ring windings	II,	25
Closed heaters	VI,	288
Clutches, friction	IX,	293
"C. N. D." message	I,	265
Coal		
heating value of, table	VI,	328
Coal appliances	IX,	531
grab buckets	IX,	535
Coal gas VI, 92;	VII,	455
Coal-loading machines	IX,	540
Cochrane heater	VI,	289
Cochrane steam separator	VI,	279
Cochrane vertical boiler	VI,	208
Coefficient of friction	III,	381
Coil test data, table of	V,	49
Coils		
armature	III,	318
circulation	XII,	61
induction	I,	88
Coke	VI,	88
Cold-air box	XII,	47
Cold-air ducts	XII,	94
Cold chisels, steel for	X,	474
Cold-water supply	XII,	270
Collecting rings, definition of	IV,	11
Column cores, patterns for	IX,	153
Columns, pattern for	IX,	152
Combination system for heating XII,	52,	116
Combined indicator diagrams	VII,	126
Combustion	VI,	94
air necessary for	VI,	98
rate of locomotive	VIII,	257
Combustion chambers of marine boilers	VIII,	38
Commercial efficiency I, 101;	II,	127
Commercial electric motor	II,	247
Commercial types		
of alternators	IV,	125
of transformers	IV,	251
Commercial use of storage battery	II,	283
Commutator II,	21,	105
Commutator and brushes, heating of	III,	103
Compass	VIII,	177
Compass deviation by azimuth of sun	VIII,	227
Compass saw	IX,	22
Compasses, mechanical drawing	XI,	20
Compensated field excitation	IV,	102
Compensated wattmeter	IV,	78
Compensators, starting of	III,	53
Composite field excitation	IV,	98
Compound bending die	X,	334
Compound booster	II,	406
Compound dynamos II, 39,	78,	123
direct-current	III,	33
in parallel	III,	40
Compound engines VI, 48; VII, 25;	VIII,	103
cards for	VII,	122
Hornblower's	VII,	17
horse-power of	VII,	129
receiver of	VIII,	105
Woolf's	VII,	17
Compound motors II, 310;	III,	52
constant-potential-circuit	II,	310
cumulative	II,	310
differential	II,	310
Compound pumps	VI,	421
Compounding, effect on steam engines	VII,	262
Compounds, chemical	VI,	65
Compressed air		
pumping by	VI,	448
refrigeration by	VII,	379
Compressor for air refrigeration	VII,	383
Compressors	III,	373
Compressors, ammonia	VII,	308
losses in	VII,	322
lubrication of	VII,	320
piston	VII,	315

Note.—For page numbers see foot of pages.

Digitized by Google

	Part	Page
Compressors, ammonia		
size of	VII,	365
stuffing box	VII,	316
valves, discharge	VII,	312
valves, inlet	VII,	312
valves, suction	VII,	313
water jacket	VII,	319
Concealed wiring	I,	197
Concentrated winding	IV,	85, 128
Condenser pump	VI,	405
Condensers	VII,	45
ammonia	VII,	325, 393
atmospheric	VII,	329
double-pipe	VII,	335
as compensator	IV,	55
capacity of	IV,	40
electrical	I,	25
formula of	IV,	41
jet	VII,	48
keel	VIII,	137
for marine engines	VIII,	127
measurement of E. M. F.	I,	145
for steam engines	VII,	246
for steam turbine	VII,	276
submerged	VII,	327
surface	VII,	45
vacuum in	VII, 251; VIII,	135
Condensing, advantages of	VII,	247
Condensing engine, table of	III,	150
Condensing water required	VII,	249
Conductance	I,	65
Conducting wire, magnetic field of	II,	11
Conduction of heat	VI,	35
Conductors, electrical	IV,	419
capacity of	IV,	440
numbering of	V,	170
resistance of	I,	141
table of	IV,	423
Conductors and insulators	I,	18
Conductivity	I,	67
steel rail	III,	398
wireless telegraphy	I,	332
Conduits		
installation	I,	199
insulated metal	I,	198
system	III,	399
uninsulated metal	I,	199
wiring	I,	200
Cones	XI,	63
Conic sections	XI,	65
Conifers	XII,	326
Connecting rods	VII,	21
Connections, electrical	II,	296
motor	III,	47
multi-coil transformer	IV,	225
parallel	IV,	224
series (current transformer)	IV,	228
series motors	II,	305
for testing insulation	I,	138
Conservation of matter, law of	VI,	65
Consolidation of plants	III,	219
Constant-current booster	II,	408
Constant-current dynamos	II, 60, 165; III,	62
Constant-current transformers	IV,	267
regulation of	IV,	271
table of	IV,	268
Constant-potential D. C. circuits	III,	48
Constant-potential dynamos	II,	60
Constant-potential motor	III,	63
Constant speed of motors	II, 287,	305
Construction of boilers	VI,	115-171
Constructive mechanics	IX,	168
Contact shoes	III,	359
Contact plow	III,	400
Control		
multiple-unit	III,	343
rheostat	III,	329
series-parallel	III,	329
voltage of rotary	IV,	310
Controllers	III,	326
construction of	III,	331
notches on	III,	339
wiring of	III,	332
Convection of heat	II,	36
Conversion of timber	XII,	323
Converter		
Cooper Hewitt	IV,	461
four-ring	IV,	286
multipolar	IV,	288
rotary	IV,	286
six-phase	IV,	316
six-ring	IV,	287
three-ring	IV,	286
Cooling surface for condenser	VII,	250
Cooling towers	VII,	51
Cooling transformers	IV,	259
Cooper Hewitt converter	IV,	461
applications of	IV,	468
Cooper Hewitt light	III,	310
Copper	IX, 371,	504
for boilers	VI,	116
as a conductor	V,	108
extraction of	IX,	371
properties of	IX,	375
refining of	IX,	373
Copper loss	IV,	243
Copper ores	IX,	371
Copper wire, table of	II, 161; IV,	420
Core-box plane	IX,	29
Core loss and friction test	IV,	186

Note.—For page numbers see foot of pages.

Digitized by Google

	Part	Page
Core loss test	IV,	278
induction motor	IV,	371
Core sand	IX,	433
Core-type transformers	IV,	251
Cores		
armature	IV,	12
binders for	IX,	429
making	IX, 388,	428
setting of	IX,	439
Corliss engines	VII,	42
Corliss valve gears	VII,	203
Corliss valves		
setting	VII,	210
thermal advantage of	VII,	253
Corner posts for buildings	XII,	358
Corners, unsupported	XII,	390
Cornish boiler	VI,	180
Cornish and Lancashire boilers	III,	135
Cornish pumping engine	VII,	19
Corrosion of boiler	VI,	310
Cost of		
conduit system	III,	400
third-rail system	III,	398
Cotters, machine	IX,	320
Coulomb	I, 95,	110
Counter-balancing, locomotive	VIII,	296
Counter E. M. F.	II,	276
Counterbores	X,	290
combination	X,	297
facing tool	X,	293
with inserted pilots	X,	295
Couplings	IX,	299
clamp	IX,	302
claw	IX,	302
problems on	IX,	303
Courses, correction of	VIII,	183
Crank	VII,	21
turning moment of	VII,	258
Crank action	VII,	257
Crank pin	VII,	21
Crocker-Wheeler		
belt-driven generator	II,	199
direct-driven motor	II,	239
engine-type generator	II,	177
Crompton-Howell storage battery	II,	352
Crosby indicator	VII,	94
Crosby Pop safety valve	VI,	265
Cross arms	I,	185
bolts	V,	87
braces	V,	88
telephone pole	V,	82
Crosshead	VII,	21
Cross-sections, working drawing	XI,	175
Crown bar	VIII,	45
Crowning floors	XII,	387
Crucible steel	IX,	353
Cumulative compound motor	II,	310
Cup joint	XII,	223
Cupola smelting for copper	IX,	372
Cupolas		
fuel for	IX,	485
mixtures for	IX,	480
operating of	IX,	476
Current balance, Kelvin	I,	121
Current relations in		
auto-transformers	IV,	223
Δ-connected armatures	IV,	113
rotary converter	IV,	296
transformer	IV,	215
Y-connected armatures	IV,	113
Current transformer	IV,	230
Currents		
electric	I,	63
induced	II,	13
induction by	I,	38
leakage of	III,	400
measurement of	I, 149; III,	80
Curtis steam turbine	VII,	273
application of	VII,	278
Curved hip rafters	XII,	416
Curves		
drawing irregular	XI,	28
laying out	III,	455
Cut-off		
compensation of	VII,	152
point of	VII,	169
Cut-off and expansion	VII,	262
Cut-out cabinets	I,	215
Cutters		
angular	X,	322
end mill	X,	335
face milling	X,	338
formed	X,	325
fly	X,	333
milling	X,	309
solid	X,	310
spiral milling	X,	315
T-slot	X,	337
Cutting edges for reamers, table	X,	235
Cutting-off tool	X,	97
Cutting pipe threads	X,	66
Cutting speed of tools	X,	100
Cutting tools	X,	39-49
cooling of	X,	101
Cycle, electric	IV,	12
Cycloid	XI,	67
to construct	XI,	91
Cylinder head	VII,	19
plate	XI,	212
Cylinder ratios, steam engine	VII,	27
Cylinder relief valves	VIII,	154

Note.—For page numbers see foot of pages.

Digitized by Google

	Part	Page
Cylinders	XI,	63
design of	VI,	382
development of	XI,	122
pattern for	IX,	126
work done in	VII,	255
Cylindrical boiler VI, 178;	VIII,	13
double-ended	VIII,	50
Cypress	XII,	327
Dampers		
indirect heating	XII,	87
locomotive	VIII,	255
Damper regulators	XII,	136
Daniell cell	I,	32
D'Arsonval galvanometer	I,	116
Data for dynamo efficiency	II,	66
Deane pump valve	VI,	415
De-coherer	I,	350
Deep well pump	XII,	267
Definite weight, law of	VI,	65
Deflection of magnetic needle	I,	34
Deflection of shafts	IX,	261
DeLaval steam turbine VII,	78,	287
Delivery valves	VIII,	159
Depreciation of accumulators	II,	377
Derived units, C. G. S.	I,	105
Design		
dynamo	II,	134
method of	IX,	162
original	IX,	222
theoretical	IX,	164
Detail drawing	XI,	201
Detectors, ground	I,	181
Development and intersection	XI,	111
Development of water powers	III,	215
Developments	XI,	116
cylinder	XI,	122
elbow joints	XI,	121
frustum of a cone	XI,	119
rectangular prism	XI,	117
right prism	XI,	117
triangular pyramid	XI,	120
Deviation of compass	VIII,	181
Diagonal engine	VIII,	98
Diagrams of machine connections	III,	32
Diametrical pitch	XI,	276
Diamond	VI,	89
Diamond point chisel	X,	40
Diamond point tool	X,	96
Diaphragm, locomotive	VIII,	264
Die block	X,	364
Die holders	X,	288
Die and punch, fit of	X,	375
Dielectric, inductivity of	IV,	40
Dielectric strength test	IV,	164

	Part	Page
Dies	X,	65
adjustable	X,	284
bending	X,	383
clearance holes for	X,	283
compound bending	X,	384
forming	X,	384
gang	X,	379
punching	X,	364
hardening	X,	371
laying out	X,	366
multiple	X,	382
pack hardening	X,	373
sectional	X,	370
shearing	X,	369
rake of cutting edges	X,	282
spring-die proportions, table	X,	287
spring screw-threading	X,	287
thread cutting	X,	281
Diesel cycle	VII,	472
Diesel engine	VII,	473
Difference of magnetic potential	I,	103
Differential booster	II,	407
Differential compound motor	II,	310
Differential galvanometer	I,	116
Differential lamp	III,	246
Differential steam trap	VI,	281
Differentially-wound motor	III,	52
Dimensions, working drawing	XI,	180
Dimensions of		
copper wire, table of	I,	194
fuses, table of	I,	216
magnet frame	II,	151
Dimensions and letters on drawings	XI,	317
Dip of needle	VIII,	180
Direct-acting steam pumps	VII,	39
Direct-current dynamos II, 59-162; III, 38;	IV,	284
Direct-current feeder panels	III,	174
Direct-current motors II, 234,	273-314	
Direct-deflection method		
for locating faults	III,	75
for measuring capacity	I,	152
Direct-driven generators	II,	166
advantages of	II,	171
Direct expansion refrigeration	VII,	350
Direct furnace	XII,	38
Direct hot water heating XII,	18,	109
overhead distribution	XII,	114
pipe connections	XII,	114
piping system	XII,	111
radiating surface, types of	XII,	109
Direct-indirect heating	XII,	102
Direct-indirect radiators	XII,	17
Direct steam heating XII,	14,	60

Note.—For page numbers see foot of pages.

Digitized by Google

	Part	Page
Directing-box	VIII,	159
Direction of induced current	II,	16
Direction of motion	II,	274
Direction of rotation	III,	34
Directions		
for reading wattmeters	IV,	82
for running generators	III,	61
"Directurn" boiler	VI,	211
Disc crank, pattern for	IX,	112
Discharge pipe sizes	XII,	238
Discharging of storage battery	II,	374
Disintegration of storage batteries	II,	379
Disruptive discharge	I,	339
Dissimilar circuits (unbalanced system)	IV,	114
Distillation	VI,	26
of water	VI,	81
Distortion of fields	II, 46,	277
Distributed or multi-coil windings	IV,	129
Distributing board		
Ford-Lenfest	V,	175
Hibbard	V,	173
main	V,	171
Distributing points	V,	165
Distribution		
of air	XII,	31
of charge	I,	19
of light	I, 211; III,	243
of power	III,	262
of sunlight	III,	303
Distribution systems	IV,	427
Divided charge, measuring capacity by	I,	152
Divided circuits	I,	82
joint resistance of	I,	83
Dividers	X,	20
mechanical drawing	XI,	23
Dividers and trammels	IX,	39
Domes, construction of	XII,	447
Domestic water supply	XII,	259
Dormer windows	XII,	402
Double beat valves	VI,	380
Double carbon lamps	III,	247
Double commutator	II,	335
Double-current generators	III,	423
Double duct system of heating	XII,	168
Double-ended boiler	VIII,	17
Double kitchen boiler connections	XII,	280
Double-ported valves	VII,	177
Double tenon joint	XII,	348
Double-tube boiler	VI,	174
Double valve gears	VII,	196
Double water-back connections	XII,	280
Dowel pins	IX,	85
Down-draft furnaces	VI,	251
Draft		
allowance for in patterns	IX,	72
forced	VI,	257
induced system	VI, 257; VIII,	74
marine boiler	VIII,	70
mechanical	III,	147
natural	III, 147; VI,	255
Draft, forced		
closed ashpit system	VIII,	73
closed stoke-hold	VIII,	74
Kafer's method	VIII,	73
Drain cocks	VIII,	155
Drawfiling	X,	47
Drawing		
mechanical	XI,	11
perspective	XI,	363-433
Drawing in cables	V,	145
Drawing board	XI,	13
Drawing paper	XI,	11
Drawing pen	XI,	24
Drawings		
abbreviations for	XI,	327
accuracy of	XI,	320
character of	XI,	321
clearness of	XI,	320
completeness of	XI,	321
cost of producing	XI,	302
principal titles of	XI,	322
tracing and inking of	XI,	323
Drill jigs	X, 342,	357
box	X,	362
fastening devices for	X,	357
slab	X,	344
Drill press	X,	123
Drill spindle	X,	125
Drilling		
hard metals	X,	197
holding work for	X,	131
in lathe	X,	122
Drills	X, 50,	222
flat	X, 51	222
grinding of	X,	54
location of bushing holes	X,	344-354
lubrication of	X,	53
milling flutes	X,	229
radial	X,	127
speed of	X,	54
single lip	X,	225
straightway	X,	225
table of	X,	63
table of speed	X,	57
taper-shank twist	X,	52
transfer	X,	224
twist	X, 51, 130,	228

Note.—For page numbers see foot of pages.

Digitized by Google

	Part	Page
Driver brake triple	VIII,	417
Driving gears for hoists	IX,	178
Driving wheel brakes	VIII,	440
Drop cut-off valve gears	VII,	202
Drop forges	X,	499
Drop method for locating faults	III,	73
Drum armature	IV,	124
Drum for hoists	IX,	203
Drum shaft	IX,	189
Drum windings, closed coil	II,	28
Dry battery	V,	24
Dry cell	I,	33
Ducts and flues, area of	XII,	165
Ducts, cold-air	XII,	94
Duct, return	XII,	48
Duplex		
polar	I,	305
repeater	I,	322
Stearns	I,	298
Duplex air pumps	VIII,	399
Duplex milling machine	X,	167
Duplex pump	VI, 399,	420
foundation	XI,	351
general drawing	XI,	351
order sheets	XI,	355
piston rod and valve stem	XI,	327
plunger and valve details	XI,	349
steam end layout	XI,	307
water cylinder	XI,	345
Duplex pump plates	XI,	305
steam chest and valve	XI,	329
steam cylinder	XI,	313
valve motion details	XI,	337
valve motion layout	XI,	333
water end layout	XI,	341
yoke, stuffing-boxes, etc.	XI,	339
Duplex steam pump	VII,	42
Dürer letter	XI,	493
Duty of pump	VI,	440
Dynamic electricity	I,	28
Dynamo construction		
armature	II,	97
core	II,	98
windings	II,	100
brushes	II,	107
brush-holders	II,	108
closed-coil armatures	II,	101
commutators	II,	106
field coils	II,	111
field magnets	II,	110
open-coil armatures	II,	104
Dynamo-electric machinery	III,	11-125
application of principles to	II,	19
definition of	II,	11
direction of rotation of	III,	34
foundation for	III,	12
Dynamo-electric machinery		
location of	III,	12
management of	III,	11
selection of	III,	11
theory of	II,	11-58
types of	II,	165-270
Dynamo frames, grounding of	I,	155
Dynamometers	VII,	110
Dynamos		
care of	I,	150
characteristic curves of	II,	61
commercial efficiency of	II,	127
data for efficiency of	II,	66
design of	II,	134
energy required to drive	II,	25
external characteristic of	II,	63
failure to generate	III,	118
field of	II,	34
formulas for	II,	123
installing of	I,	155
internal characteristic of	II,	63
name-plates for	I,	156
operation of	II,	113
over compounding of	II,	80
self-excitation of	II,	40
sparking of	II,	111
starting of	I,	161
testing of	II,	117
total characteristic of	II,	63
types of		
compound	II, 39,	78, 128
constant-current	II,	60
constant-potential	II,	60
separately-excited	II,	37
series	II,	38, 62
shunt	II,	38, 70
three-wire system	III,	47
waterproof covers for	I,	156
wiring from	I,	156
Dynamotors	III, 54; IV, 16; V,	34
Ebullition	VI,	25
Eccentric	VII, 21,	142
Eccentric arbors	X,	259
Eccentric turning	X,	107
Eccentrics, adjustable	VII,	192
Economizers, fuel	VI,	254
Economy coils	I,	219
Economy in power	III,	435
Economy of steam engine	VII,	260
Edison Companies	III,	207
Edison constant-potential system	III,	204
Edison-Lalande cell	V,	23
Edison storage battery	II,	363
Edison three-wire system	II, 335; IV,	226

Note.—For page numbers see foot of pages.

Digitized by Google

	Part	Page
Edison tube	III,	205
Eddy currents	II,	149
in armatures and pole pieces	II,	58
loss due to	II,	57
Effective value of alternating E. M. F.	IV,	24
Effective value of harmonic E. M. F.	IV,	35
Efficiency		
all-day	IV,	245
calculation of	IV, 190,	245, 280
mechanical, of engine	VII,	113
Efficiency of		
alternator	IV,	159
arc lamps	III,	251
boilers, table of	III,	137, 144
furnace	XII,	43
generator	III,	85
heaters	XII,	152
incandescent lamp	III,	236
induction motor	IV,	374
motor	II,	278
radiators	XII,	63
shunt motor	II,	300
Siemens' law	II,	280
steam engine	VII,	234
storage battery	II,	375
transformer	IV,	243
Elastic limit	VIII,	26
Elbow, pattern for	IX,	121
Elbow joints, development of	XI,	121
Electric arc	III,	242
Electric bell		
outfit		
batteries	I,	225
bell	I,	226
bell push	I,	225
wire for	I,	221
Electric bell wiring	I,	221-230
circuits	I,	227
joints	I,	223
methods of	I,	222
Electric car accessories	III,	353
Electric current	I,	63-102
magnetic effects of	I,	34
Electric cycle	IV,	13
Electric heat and energy	XII,	174
Electric heaters	I, 219; III,	348
connections for	XII,	176
construction of	XII,	175
Electric heating	XII, 24,	174
cost of	XII,	177
Electric lighting	III,	231-300
classification of	III,	232
history and development of	III,	231
for shop	III,	307
Electric locomotives	II,	256
Electric machines	I,	24
Electric motors		
calculation of	II,	312
machine-shop	II,	315
Electric oscillations	I,	339
Electric railways	III,	311-452
Electric resonance	IV,	50
Electric telegraph	I,	233, 329
apparatus for	I,	233
examples of messages of	I,	247
switchboard	I,	257
Electric waves	I,	338
Electric welders	I,	400
adjustments of	I,	405
application of	I,	401
Electric-welding development	I,	399-408
Electric wiring	I,	155-220
Electrical efficiency of dynamo	II,	125, 160
Electrical energy, supply of	I,	100
Electrical inspection	I,	220
Electrical losses	II,	47
Electrical measurements	I,	105-154
Electrical measuring instruments	I,	111
Electrical plant	III,	160
Electrically welded joints	III,	405
Electricity	I,	11
dynamic	I,	28
flow of	I,	29
nature of	V,	18
positive and negative	I,	16
Electrodynamometer	I,	122
as ammeter	IV,	63
as voltmeter	IV,	66
Electrolysis	I, 43; III,	413
prevention of	III,	415
Electromagnetic ammeter	I,	121
Electromagnetic circuit-breakers	III,	219
Electromagnetic induction	V,	153
Electromagnets	I, 35; II,	12
application of	I,	36
Electromotive force	I,	63, 108
alternating-current	I,	145
calculation of	II,	31
inclosed coil	II,	17
induced by rotating conductor	II,	19
loss in alternator armatures	IV,	61
loss in transmission lines	IV,	58
lost in armature drop	IV,	95
measurement of	I,	144

Note.—For page numbers see foot of pages.

Digitized by Google

	Part	Page
Electromotive force		
multiplied by resonance	IV,	52
value of	II,	15
Electromotive force relations		
in Δ-connected armatures	IV,	113
in rotary converter	IV,	288
in transformer	IV,	214
in Y-connected armatures	IV,	112
Electrophorus	I,	23
Electroscope	I,	22
Electrostatic ground detector	IV,	68
Electrostatic induction	V,	154
Electrostatic voltmeter I, 123;	IV,	67
Electrostatic wireless telegraphy	I,	333
Elements		
chemical	VI,	57
of electricity	I,	11-61
symbols of	VI,	58
table	VI,	59
Ellipse	XI,	65
actual size of	XI,	115
to draw	XI,	84
Elongation	VIII,	26
Emergencies of marine engines	VIII,	169
Emery cloth	X,	48
Enclosed direct-current arc lamp	III,	249
Enclosed fuse	I,	215
End milling of cast iron, table	X,	173
End plate of boilers	VI,	157
End plates	VIII,	33
Energy	I,	96
C. G. S. unit of	I,	107
losses in	I,	101
losses in armature	II,	146
measurement of	I,	150
required to drive a dynamo	II,	25
English candle	III,	287
Engine constants, table of	VII,	109
Engine lathe	X,	74
Engine room fittings, marine	VIII,	154
Engines		
Diesel	VII,	473
gas	VII,	401
gasoline	VII,	466
kerosene	VII,	469
oil	VII,	401
Engines, steam VI, 46; VII,	11,	215
action of heat in	VI,	46
action of steam in	VII,	231
arrangement of cylinders	VII,	241
compound, introduction of	VII,	17
cylinder pattern	IX,	129
mechanical efficiency of	VII,	113
to put on center	VII,	171

	Part	Page
Engines, steam		
types of	VII,	23
beam	VIII,	97
compound VI, 48;	VII,	25
Corliss	VII,	42
fan	XII,	163
gas	VI,	49
high-speed	VII,	29
horizontal direct-acting	VII,	32
hot-air	VI,	48
locomotive VII, 36;	VIII,	231
marine VII, 35;	VIII,	95
oscillating	VIII,	98
pumping	VII,	38
quadruple expansion	VII,	27
simple expansion	VII,	24
steam VI, 46; VII,	11,	215
triple expansion	VII,	27
vertical	VII,	32
Epicycloid	XI,	68
to construct	XI,	91
Epicycloidal spur gears	XI,	277
E. P. S. battery	II,	353
Equations, chemical	VI,	68
Equivalent of electrical energy	I,	99
Erasers	XI,	14
Erection of refrigerating machinery	VII,	316
Ether	I,	337
Evaporation	VI,	24
Evaporators	VIII,	66
ammonia	VII,	298
Evergreens or conifers		
cedar	XII,	326
cypress	XII,	327
hemlock	XII,	327
pines	XII,	327
spruce	XII,	327
Excessive heating in generator	III,	102
Exciters	III,	163
definition of	IV,	12
panels for	III,	174
table of	III,	163
Exciting current test	IV,	278
Exhaust fans, table	XII,	173
Exhaust head	XII,	132
Exhaust nozzles, locomotive	VIII,	260
Exhaust port, width of	VII,	169
Exhaust steam heating XII,	20,	126
Exhaust ventilation	XII,	171
Exide cell data, table of	II,	356
Exide storage battery	II,	354
Expanding mandrels X,	85,	257
Expansion		
multiple	VII,	238
work done in	VI,	43
Expansion of gases VI,	21; VII,	219

Note.—For page numbers see foot of pages.

Digitized by Google

	Part	Page
Expansion of liquids	VI,	20
Expansion of pipes	XII,	71
Expansion of solids	VI,	15
Expansion in steam engine, ratio of	VII,	251
Expansion tank	XII,	112
Explosive mixture, gas engine	VII,	448
Exposure factors, table	XII,	31
External characteristic of dynamo	II,	63
External combustion motor	VII,	401
Externally-fired boiler	VI,	174
Face milling cutters, table	X,	340
Face milling of soft steel, table	X,	173
Face plate	IX,	117
Facing tool	X,	96
with inserted cutter	X,	293
Factor K of E. M. F.	IV,	87
Factor of safety, steam boilers	VIII,	33
Factors of evaporation, table	VI,	304
Factory heating	XII,	166
Fahrenheit	VII,	294
Failure of car to start	III,	445
Failure of dynamo to generate	III,	118
Failure of motor		
to start	III,	115
to stop	III,	115
Fall of potential	I,	80
Fan blower	VIII,	72
Fan capacity	XII,	161
Fan engines	XII,	163
Fans		
electric motor	XII,	164
horse-power of	XII,	162
Fans and blowers for heating	XII,	159
Farad	I,	110
Fastening devices for drill jigs	X,	357
Faucets	XII,	218
Faure storage battery	II,	352
Feed apparatus for boiler	VI,	286
Feed-pumps, marine	VIII,	138
Feed water heaters VI, 288;	VII,	264
Feeders	III,	393
panels for III, 428;	IV,	397
regulators for	IV,	408
Feeding point of mains	IV,	431
Fessenden wireless telegraphy	I,	360
Fetter drive-screws	V,	89
Field		
dynamo	II,	34
intensity of	I,	108
magnetic	II,	11
Field coils	II,	111
Field excitation	IV,	97
compensated	IV,	102
composite	IV,	98
of rotary converters	IV,	311
separate	IV,	98

	Part	Page
Field excitation		
of synchronous motor	IV,	206
Field magnets	II,	110
definition of	IV,	11
forms of	II,	91
heating of	III,	106
Field windings, types of	II,	37
Filament		
mounting	III,	234
preparation of	III,	233
Files	X,	43
convexity of	X,	44
handles for	X,	45
types of	X,	43
Filing		
correct position for	X,	45
drawfiling	X,	47
Fillets	IX,	114
Finish, allowance for in pattern	IX,	74
Fire-box, Wootten	VIII,	237
Fire-box boiler VI,	174,	202
Fire pot	XII,	41
diameter of, table	XII,	44
Fire pumps	VI,	394
Fire pump capacities, table	VI,	396
Fire-tube boiler VI,	174,	184
Firing		
boilers III, 147;	VI,	344
core ovens	IX,	171
Fitting, in assembling machinery	X,	196
Fitting brasses	X,	199
Fixed gauges	X,	33
Fixture wiring	I,	201
Fixtures, plumbing	XII,	201
Flanges, pattern for	IX,	125
Flanging boiler plates	VI,	129
Flanging marine boilers	VIII,	30
Flashing	III,	234
Flat chisel	X,	39
Flat drill	X,	51
Flexible cord	I,	202
Flexible pump valve	VI,	376
Flitch-plate girder	XII,	434
Float trap	VI,	280
Floor space for boilers, table of	III,	136
Floors		
for porch	XII,	389
for dwelling	XII,	375
Flow of electricity	I,	29
Flow of water in pipes, table	XII,	262
Flue boiler	VI,	179
Flues	VI,	164
vent	XII,	95
warm-air	XII,	93
Flues and ducts, area of	XII,	165
Flush switches	I,	207
Fluted chucking reamers	X,	239
Fluted hand-reamer	X,	235

Note.—For page numbers see foot of pages.

Digitized by Google

	Part	Page
Flutes for taps	X,	267
Fluting of taps and reamers	X,	176
Fluting rollers	X,	201
Fly cutters	X,	333
Fly-ball governor	VII,	64
Fly wheel	VII,	53
Follow boards	IX,	153
Follower rest	X,	80
Foot lever	IX,	209
Foot-pound second	I,	105
Force		
C. G. S. unit of	I,	107
electromotive	I,	103
magnetomotive	I,	108
Forced blast heating	XII, 22,	148
blowers and fans for	XII,	159
exhaust method of heating	XII,	149
heating surface, form of	XII,	150
Forced draft	VI,	150
Forcing pump	VI, 357,	372
Ford-Lenfest distributing board	V,	175
Foreign gas in refrigeration	VII, 363,	397
Forge	X,	412
blast for	X,	414
Forge tools	X,	412
anvils	X,	415
chisels	X,	417
flatter	X,	418
fullers	X,	419
hammers	X,	414
punches	X,	438
sledges	X,	415
swages	X,	419
tongs	X,	416
welds	X,	426
Forging	X, 411-	506
bending machines	X,	439
bolts	X,	446
eye bolt	X,	443
fagotting	X,	424
finishing of metal	X,	435
fuel	X,	420
fluxes	X,	423
hammer heads	X,	482
hooks	X,	444
ladles	X,	451
materials	X,	411
punching	X,	438
rings and chains	X,	427
shafts	X,	458
shaping metal	X,	434
tongs	X,	449
welding	X,	422
wrenches	X,	464
Form factor of wave	IV,	25
Formula		
for calculating capacity	IV,	41
for calculating induction	II,	38
for general wiring	IV,	446

	Part	Page
Formed cutters	X,	325
Formed reamers	X,	250
Forming dies	X,	384
Forming tools	X,	303
holders for	X,	308
Fort Wayne		
belt-driven generator	II,	199
belted motor	II,	247
multipolar generator	II,	184
Foundry ladles	IX,	477
Foundry work	IX, 387-	529
Four-cycle gas engine	VII,	406
Four-ring converter	IV,	286
Four-wire voltage system	II,	336
Fractures of boilers	VI,	318
Frame	VII,	21
of pump	VI,	387
Framing		
light	XII,	341
special	XII,	424
Free and bound charge	I,	22
French curves	XI,	28
Frequency	IV,	13
Frequency charges	IV,	349
Fresh air inlets	XII,	231
Friction and lubrication of machines	IX,	171
Friction brake	VII,	269
Friction clutches	IX,	293
problems on	IX,	299
Friction losses	II,	52
Frictional electricity	I,	16
Frustum of a cone, development of	XI,	119
Fuel economizers	VI,	254
Fuels for		
boiler furnaces	VI,	325
forge work	X,	420
gas engines	VII,	455
locomotives	VIII,	257
Full load ratios, table of	III,	187
Fuller cell	V,	22
Fulton, Robert	VIII,	96
Fundamental C. G. S. units	I,	105
Furnace connections	VIII,	37
Furnace doors of marine boilers	VIII,	52
Furnace flues	VI,	145
Furnace heating	XII,	38
Furnace hoists	IX,	538
Furnaces	VI,	247
blast	IX,	339
bridge for	VI,	250
care of	XII,	52
combustion chamber of	XII,	42
doors for	VI,	248
efficiency of	VIII, 53; XII,	43
grate bars for	VI,	248

Note.—For page numbers see foot of pages.

Digitized by Google

	Part	Page
Furnaces		
grates for VI, 248;	XII,	40
heating by	XII,	11
heating surface of	XII,	42
for lead smelting	IX,	376
location of	XII,	46
for marine boilers	VIII,	34
radiator for	XII,	42
rocking grates for	VI,	249
special	VI,	254
types of	XII,	38
direct draft	XII,	38
down-draft	VI,	251
indirect draft	XII,	39
natural draft	IX,	514
reverberatory	X,	503
Fuses I, 213; III, 355;	IV,	400
enclosed	I,	215
terminals of	I,	213
wire for	I,	214
Fusible plugs	VI,	276
Gable roof	XII,	393
Gained joint	XII,	345
Galleries, construction of	XII,	436
Galloway boiler	VI,	183
Galvanometer	I,	113
astatic	I,	114
ballistic	I,	116
D'Arsonval	I,	116
differential	I,	116
sine	I,	114
tangent	I,	113
Thomson	I,	115
Gambrel roof	XII,	394
Gang die	X,	379
Gas		
blast furnace	VII,	461
carbon	VI,	88
coal	VI,	92
cooking by	XII,	303
heating by	XII,	304
illuminating	VI,	92
water	VI,	92
Gas cocks	XII,	300
Gas engines III, 158; VI, 49;	VII,	401-475
adiabatic compression	VII,	418
back-firing	VII,	453
care of	VII,	461
clearance effect on efficiency	VII,	427
compounding	VII,	451
cycle	VII,	406
Diesel	VII,	473
efficiency, real	VII,	430
efficiency of cycle	VII,	425
exhaust of	VII,	449
explosive mixture	VII,	448
fuel consumption	VII,	464

	Part	Page
Gas engines		
fuels VII,	455,	460
gas producer for	VII,	456
governing	VII,	437
hit and miss	VII,	438
varying time of ignition	VII,	442
variable impulse	VII,	439
history of	VII,	404
ideal cycle	VII,	428
ignition	VII,	431
large	VII,	463
modern	VII,	407
operation of	VII,	461
Otto cycle	VII,	450
pressure, theoretical	VII,	419
producer plants	VII,	458
real cycle	VII,	428
scavenging	VII,	450
starting	VII,	443
temperatures, theoretical	VII,	419
thermodynamics of	VII,	417
timing valve	VII,	433
types of		
four-cycle	VII,	406
Lenoir	VII,	404
two-cycle	VII,	452
valve	VII,	413
valve gearing	VII,	416
water jacket	VII,	447
work done, theoretical	VII,	424
Gas fitting	XII,	290
distributing pipes	XII,	291
joints	XII,	292
pipe sizes for risers	XII,	294
pipes, distributing	XII,	291
risers	XII,	293
running pipes	XII,	293
Gas fixtures	XII,	296
burners	XII,	296
Gas foreign to ammonia	VII,	397
Gas machines	XII,	310
Gas meters	XII,	308
Gas pipes, testing of	XII,	295
Gas producer VII, 456;	IX,	365
Gas producer plants	VII,	458
Gaseous products	VI,	94
Gases, expansion of VI, 21;	VII,	218
Gasoline	VII,	465
Gasoline engines	VII,	466
Gate valve	VI,	260
Gating	IX,	407
Gauge		
Birmingham wire, table of	I,	74
B. & S. wire, table of	I,	74
Gauge cocks	VI,	271
Gauge glasses	VI,	271
Gauge making	X,	386

Note.—For page numbers see foot of pages.

Digitized by Google

	Part	Page
Gauges	VII,	269
ammonia pressure	VII,	343
adjustable snap	X,	401
fixed	X,	33
grinding snap	X,	398
lapping	X,	393
limit	X,	35, 403
locating	X,	408
plug and ring	X,	388
receiving	X,	404
ring	X,	391
snap	X,	395
steam	VI, 273; VIII,	63
vacuum	VI, 274; VIII,	63
water	VI, 270; VIII,	62
G. E.		
D. C. arc-lighting generator	II,	212
electric brake	III,	377
moderate-speed generators	II,	197
mine locomotives	II,	257
railway generator	II,	173
railway motor	II,	253
train control	III,	343
Gear design data	IX,	280
Gear guard	IX,	209
Gearing	III,	322
Gearing, toothed	XI,	275
Gears		
annular	XI,	281
bevel	IX, 280; XI,	286
cutting of	X,	183
hook teeth	IX,	278
for hoists	IX,	195
involute	XI,	284
mortise teeth	IX,	277
problems on	IX,	291
rack and pinion	XI,	284
radial valve	VII,	187
shrouding tooth	IX,	277
spur	IX,	268
valve	VII,	141
worm	IX,	286
Generating station, location of	III,	128
Generators		
directions for running	III,	61
electrical-plant	III,	160
losses in	II,	46
methods of driving	II,	166
panels for	III,	424
in parallel	III,	38
parts of	II,	23
run as motors	II,	275
in series	III,	45
starting up	III,	36, 426
stopping of	III,	63
theory of	II,	11
types of		
alternating-current	III,	423
Generators, types of		
arc-lighting	II,	203
Bullock	II,	185
C. & C.	II,	189
constant-current	II,	165
constant-potential	II,	165
Crocker-Wheeler	II,	177
direct-driven	II,	171
direct- and belt-driven	II,	170
double-current	III,	423
electrolytic	II,	206
Fort Wayne	II,	184
General Electric	II,	173
indirect-driven	II,	169, 193
Lundell	II,	182
Northern Electric	II,	190
steam-driven	II,	166
steam- and gas-driven	II,	170
steam-turbine-driven	II,	169
Thresher	II,	191
Triumph Electric	II,	183
water-turbine-driven	II,	169, 172
Westinghouse	II,	178, 193
voltage of	III,	124
Geometrical definitions	XI,	55
angles	XI,	56
circles	XI,	59
cones	XI,	63
conic sections	XI,	65
cylinders	XI,	63
lines	XI,	55
odontoidal curves	XI,	67
polygons	XI,	58
pyramids	XI,	62
quadrilaterals	XI,	57
solids	XI,	61
spheres	XI,	64
surfaces	XI,	56
triangles	XI,	56
Geometrical problems	XI,	69
German candle	III,	289
Gilbert	II,	88
Girder rail	III,	401
Girders, floor	XII,	375
Girders and heavy beams	XII,	431
Girders for combustion chambers	VIII,	45
Girts	XII,	360
Globe valve	VI,	259
pattern for	IX,	133
stuffing box pattern	IX,	138
template for	IX,	134
Globes and shades for gas	XII,	302
Glue, preparation of	IX,	88
Gluing	IX,	88
Gooch link	VII,	186
Gothic lettering	XI,	147
Gouges and chisels	IX,	31

Note.—For page numbers see foot of pages.

Digitized by Google

	Part	Page
Gould storage battery	II.	352
Governing gas engines	VII.	437
Governing steam turbine	VII.	276
Governors, steam engine	VII.	60
Buckeye	VII.	68
fly-ball	VII.	64
pendulum	VII.	62
Porter	VII.	65
shaft	VII.	67
spring	VII.	67
straight-line	VII.	69
weighted	VII.	65
Grab buckets	IX.	535
Grain of wood	XII.	320
Gramme	I.	105
Graphical representation of E. M. F.	IV.	22
Graphite	VI, 89; VII.	72
Grate bars	VIII.	52
Grate surface of boilers	VI.	155
Grates		
area of	VI.	149
furnace for	XII.	40
locomotive	VIII.	250
Gravity cell	I, 33; V.	19
Grease extractor	XII.	129
Greenhouses, heating of	XII.	190
Greene valve gear	VII.	203
Grinding		
drills	X.	54
milling cutters	X.	312
snap gauges	X.	398
twist drills	X.	234
valves	X.	197
Grinding machine	X.	184
Grinding wheels, speed of	X.	187
Grindstones	IX.	50
Groins and vaults, construction of	XII.	452
Grooving of boilers	VI.	312
Grounding of dynamo frames	I.	155
Grounds	III.	441
Grove cell	I.	33
Guard arms	I.	175
Guard irons	I.	185
Gunboat boilers	VIII.	19
Gutta-percha	IV.	426
Guy clamps	V.	90
Guy rods	V.	89
Guying	V.	119
Guys	I.	187
Hackworth valve gear	VII.	188
Hall signal	VIII.	359
Halls, heating of	XII.	187
Halved joint	XII.	345
Hammer	IX, 42; X, 11,	482
ball pene	X.	483
power	X.	500
riveting	X.	482
Hancock inspirator, table	VI.	293
Handbooks for machine design	IX.	159
Hand operated tools		
bevel	X.	16
center punch	X.	12
center square	X.	17
crosscut saw	IX.	17
hammers	X.	11
key seat rule	X.	14
prick punch	X.	12
protractor	X.	17
reamer	X.	59
rip saw	IX.	17
saws	IX.	17
scratch awl	X.	13
scriber	X.	12
straight edge	X.	14
surface gauge	X.	13
taps	X.	63
try square	X.	15
Hand starting of induction motor	IV.	344
Hand wheel, pattern for	IX.	95
Handhole	VI.	285
Handling of fuel	III.	147
Hanger-boards	I.	219
Hard water	VI.	80
Hardening		
reamers	X.	237
steel	X.	217
citric acid bath	X.	218
cooling	X.	217
heating	X.	217
pack	X.	219
taps	X.	269
tool steel	X.	213
twist drills	X.	232
Harmonic electromotive current	IV.	27
Harmonic electromotive force	IV.	27
effective value of	IV.	35
expressions for power of	IV.	36
maximum value of	IV.	35
Harmonic motion	XI.	237
Harrison boiler	VI.	244
Harvey process for making armor	IX.	368
Haystack boiler	VI.	176
Hazelton boiler	VI.	243
Headers and trimmers	XII.	383
Heat	VI,	11-52
action of in engines	VII.	215
electric	XII.	174
of gas combustion	VII.	460
latent	VI, 27; VII.	293
measurement of	VI.	27
specific	VI, 29; VII.	293
transfer of	VI.	35

Note.—For page numbers see foot of pages.

Digitized by Google

	Part	Page
Heat loss		
from buildings	XII,	32
approximate method for computing	XII,	36
by scale	VI,	315
table	XII,	34
by ventilation	XII,	37
Heat test		
of alternator	IV,	182
of induction motor	IV,	364
of transformer	IV,	276
Heat units	VI,	27
Heaters		
dimensions of, table	XII,	155
efficiency of	XII,	152
electric, construction of	XII,	175
feed water	VII,	264
hot water	XII, 105,	126
pipe connections of	XII,	157
pipe sizes	XII,	158
table of	XII,	153
Heaters, indirect		
efficiency of	XII,	91
size of	XII,	91
types of	XII,	85
Heating		
of armature	III,	105
of bearings	III,	107
of commutator and brushes	III,	103
of factory	XII,	166
of field magnets	III,	106
heat loss from buildings	XII,	32
piping systems for	XII,	66
sizes of pipe for	XII,	74
steam boilers for	XII,	54
steam flow tables for	XII,	76
Heating and ventilation	XII, 11-	198
apartment houses	XII,	189
churches	XII,	186
factories	XII,	166
greenhouses	XII,	190
halls	XII,	187
office buildings	XII,	189
school buildings	XII,	181
theaters	XII,	188
tools for	XII,	194
Heating capacity of furnace	XII,	43
Heating effects of current	I,	41
Heating-surface		
of boiler	VI,	154
forms of	XII,	150
for furnace	XII,	42
supplied by pipes, table	XII,	79
Heating systems		
care and management of	XII,	192
combination	XII, 52,	116
direct hot water	XII, 18,	109
direct-indirect	XII,	102
Heating systems		
direct steam	XII, 14,	60
double duct system	XII,	168
electric	XII, 24,	174
exhaust steam	XII,	126
forced blast	XII, 22,	148
furnace	XII, 11,	38
indirect hot water	XII, 20,	124
indirect steam	XII, 15,	85
low pressure system	XII,	143
stoves	XII,	11
vacuum	XII,	143
Heeling of ship	VIII,	182
Heine water-tube boiler	VI,	223
Helix	XI,	219
Helical springs	XI,	222
Hematite	IX,	339
Hemlock	XII,	327
Henry	I, 110; IV,	87
Hibbard distributing board	V,	173
High resistance measurement	I,	135
High-speed brake	VIII,	442
High-speed engine	VII,	29
double-acting	VII,	31
single-acting	VII,	31
High-tension lines	III,	395
High-tension oil switches	III,	429
High-voltage polyphase system	III,	221
High-voltage switchboard panels	IV,	398
Hinged pump valves	VI,	378
Hip rafters	XII,	415, 418
History of the telephone	V,	36
Hoists, design of		
bearings, length of	IX,	184
brackets and caps	IX,	199
brake-relief spring	IX,	209
driving gears	IX,	178
drum and brake	IX,	203
foot lever	IX,	209
gear guard	IX,	209
gears	IX,	195
preliminary layout	IX,	191
preliminary sketch	IX,	178
pulleys	IX,	181, 193
rope and drum	IX,	178
shafts for	IX,	184
width of belt for	IX,	183
Hoists, furnace	IX,	538
Holding work for drilling	X,	131
Holding work on planer	X,	137
Hollow mills	X,	299
adjustable	X,	300
inserted blades	X,	301
with pilot	X,	302
Hollow shafts	IX,	267
Holtzer-Cabot multipolar generator	II,	203

Note.—For page numbers see foot of pages.

Digitized by Google

	Part	Page
Hook teeth gears	IX,	278
Horizontal direct-acting engine	VII,	32
Horizontal milling machine	X,	162
Hornblower's compound engine	VII,	17
Horse-power		
of belting	IX,	235
of boiler	VI, 148,	303
of shafts	IX,	264
table of hydraulic	III,	158
Hot-air engine	VI,	48
Hot bearings	VIII,	164
Hot box	I,	165
Hot rods	VIII,	165
Hot water heaters	XII, 105,	305
care of	XII,	126
for cars	III,	350
regulators for	XII,	107
types	XII,	105
Hot water heating		
direct	XII,	18
fittings	XII,	119
indirect	XII,	20
pipe sizes for	XII,	119
valves for	XII,	118
Hot-water radiation, table	XII,	121
Hot water radiators		
air valves for	XII,	119
efficiency of	XII,	111
Hot-water supply	XII,	275
Hot-wire ammeter	IV,	62
Hot-wire voltmeter	IV,	62
Hubs	IX,	109
Hughes transmitter	V,	44
Hulett unloader	IX,	537
Hunnings transmitter	V,	46
Hunting action of motors	IV,	204
Hydraulic plants	III,	153
Hydraudic propulsion	VIII,	95
Hydraulic ram	VI, 358; XII,	268
Hydraulics of plumbing	XII,	259
Hydrochloric acid	VI,	112
Hydrogen		
chemical properties of	VI,	77
compounds of	VI,	78
discovery of	VI,	77
occurrence	VI,	76
physical properties of	VI,	77
preparation of	VI,	78
Hydrokineter	VIII,	68
Hyperbola	XI, 66,	88
Hyperbolic logarithms, table	VII,	257
Hypocycloid	XI, 68,	92
Ice tank for refrigeration	VII,	386
Ignition in gas engines	VII,	431
Illuminating data for meridian lamps	III,	274
Illuminating gas	VI,	92
coal gas	VI,	92
composition	VI,	93
Illuminating gas		
products of	VI,	93
water gas	VI,	92
Illumination	III,	268
calculation of	III,	270
plan of	III,	270
unit of	III,	268
Impedance of A. C. circuit	IV,	45
Impedance test of induction motor	IV,	373
Impedance voltage	IV,	279
Incandescent lamps	I, 208; III,	232
efficiency of	III,	236
manufacture of	III,	233
in series circuits	I,	215
table of	I,	209
Inclined and bowled floors	XII,	428
Incrustation of boilers	VI,	313
carbonate of lime	VI,	313
carbonate of magnesia	VI,	314
removal of	VI,	317
sulphate of lime	VI,	314
India ink	XI,	26
India rubber	IV,	426
Indicator cards		
actual	VII,	118
area of	VII,	113
atmospheric line of	VII,	98
defects of	VII,	130
Indicator diagram	VII,	86
actual	VII,	118
area of	VII,	88
to take	VII,	104
theoretical	VII,	117
Watt's diagram of work	VII,	90
Indicator for electric bells	I,	230
Indicators, steam engine	VII, 85, 91,	267
attaching to engine	VII,	99
care of	VII, 94,	99
changing springs	VII,	93
inserting spring	VII,	96
pantograph for	VII,	101
pencil mechanism	VII,	97
reducing motion	VII,	100
steam consumption by	VII,	134
three way cock	VII,	100
types of		
Crosby	VII,	94
Tabor	VII,	97
Thompson	VII,	92
Watt	VII,	16
Indirect-driven generators	II, 169,	193
Indirect furnace	XII,	39
Indirect heaters		
efficiency of	XII,	91
size of	XII,	91
Indirect heating		
pipe connections	XII,	100
pipe sizes	XII,	101

Note.—For page numbers see foot of pages.

Digitized by Google

	Part	Page
Indirect hot water heating	XII,	20, 124
casings	XII,	125
flues	XII,	125
heaters, size of	XII,	124
heaters, types of	XII,	124
pipe connections	XII,	125
pipe sizes	XII,	125
table	XII,	126
Indirect radiation, table	XII,	103
Indirect steam heating	XII,	15, 85
Induced currents	II,	13
direction of	II,	16
Inductance	IV,	22
armature	IV,	94
C. G. S. unit of	I,	109
of electric current	IV,	37
formulae for calculating	IV,	38
of lines	IV,	443
table of	IV,	442
Inductance coils	I,	353
Inductances		
in parallel	IV,	39
in series	IV,	39
Induction		
by currents	I,	38
electromagnetic	V,	153
electrostatic	V,	154
by magnets	I,	37
mutual and self	I,	40
production of currents by	I,	37
Induction coils	I, 38, 345; V,	35, 48
table of	V,	50
Induction generator	IV,	349
Induction motor	IV,	323
action of	IV,	328
behavior of	IV,	337
core loss test	IV,	371
efficiency of	IV,	374
impedance test	IV,	373
installations of	IV,	342
performance curves	IV,	376
single-phase	II, 60; IV,	344
slip test	IV,	375
speed regulation of	III,	59
starting of	III,	57
tests	IV,	364
Induction regulator	IV,	412
Inductivities, table of	IV,	41
Inductivity of dielectric	IV,	40
Inductivity wireless telegraphy	I,	333
Inductor alternators	IV,	153
Ingots	IX,	359
pouring, methods of	IX,	359
shape of	IX,	360
Injectors		
boiler feed	VI,	291
locomotive	VIII,	270
Injectors		
table of	VI,	293
Ink, India	XI,	26
Inking dimensions and letters	XI,	326
Inking in mechanical drawing	XI,	41
Inking and tracing	XI,	323
Inlets, fresh air	XII,	231
Inscription lettering	XI,	501
Inserted blade reamers	X,	244
Inserted blade taps	X,	273
Inside wiring	I,	187
Inspecting dynamo-electric machines	III,	64
Installation of		
dynamo	I, 155; II,	113
inductor motor	IV,	342
motor	I,	166
wires	I,	191
Instruments, electrical measuring	I,	111
Instruments, mechanical drawing	XI,	11
Insulated metal conduits	I,	198
wire for	I,	199
Insulated wire, table of	II,	162
Insulating joints	I,	206
Insulation	IV,	424
Insulation resistance	I,	207
measurement of	I,	138
test of	I, 159; IV,	164
voltmeter test for	III,	76
of wire	I,	169
Insulation tests	IV,	164
Insulators	V,	86
petticoat	I,	175
for third rail	III,	397
for transmission lines	I,	381-396
Insulators and conductors	I,	18
Intensity of current, C. G. S. unit of	I,	108
Intensity of illumination	I,	210
Interchangeable arc lamps	III,	250
Interchangeability of motors and dynamos	II,	274
Interior conduit installation	I,	199
Interior supports for roofs	XII,	397
Internal characteristic curve of dynamo	II,	63
Internal and external resistance	I,	29
Internal combustion motor	VII,	402
Internally-fired boiler	VI,	174
Intersection and development	XI,	111
Intersection of planes with solids	XI,	112
Intersection of prism and pyramid	XI,	125
Invention—relation to machine design	IX,	159
Inverted rotaries	IV,	306
Involute	XI,	68
to draw	XI,	92

Note.—For page numbers see foot of pages.

Digitized by Google

	Part	Page
Involute gears	XI,	284
Iron	IX,	337
chemistry of	IX,	481
melting of	IX,	485
moulding of	IX,	387
ores of	IX,	337
Iron losses, transformer	IV,	242
Iron ore	IX,	337
hematite	IX,	339
limonite	IX,	339
magnetite	IX,	339
siderite	IX,	341
Iron plate, testing of	VIII,	23
Iron welding	X,	422
Irregular curves	XI,	28
Irregular reflection	III,	269
Isometric of		
block	XI,	134
box	XI,	136
circle	XI,	132
cylinder	XI,	132
house	XI,	134
rectangle	XI,	138
Isometric axes	XI,	131
Isometric projection	XI,	129
Isolated plants	I,	100
Isothermal expansion	VI,	42
Italic letters	XI,	489
Jack rafters	XII,	417
Jacketing, steam engine	VII,	242
Jackets	VIII,	166
Jacking gear	VIII,	156
Jacobi's law of maximum output	II,	281
Jamb die	X,	66
Jarno standard taper	X,	52
Jet condenser	VII,	48
Jet pump	VI,	361
Jigs, drill	X,	342
Joint resistance of divided circuits	I,	83
Joints	III, 404; X,	199
cast-welded	III,	405
of electric welders	I,	407
electrically welded	III,	405
gas	XII,	292
lead pipe	XII,	223
plumbing	XII,	220
welded	III, 404; VI,	129
Joints in carpentry	XII,	342
bridge	XII,	344
butt	XII,	343
double tenon	XII,	348
gained	XII,	345
halved	XII,	348
mortise-and-tenon	XII,	344
tenon-and-tusk joint	XII,	346
Joist connections	XII,	383
Joists	XII,	380
Joule	I, 96,	110
Joule's law	IV,	17
Joy valve gear	VII,	190
Keel condenser	VIII,	137
Kelvin current balance	I,	121
Kerosene	VII,	465
Kerosene engine	VII,	469
Kerosene oil in boilers	VI,	317
Key, Morse	I,	46
Key-ways for cutters, table	X,	326
Keys		
machine	IX,	314
wireless telegraphy	I,	347
King-post trussed girder	XII,	433
Kingston valve	VIII,	157
Kirchhoff's laws	IV,	18
for alternating-current circuits	IV,	19
Kitchen sink connections	XII,	235
Knife switches	I,	207
Knots, nautical	VIII,	176
Knots, in wood	XII,	323
Knowles steam valves	VI,	412
Ladles for casting	IX, 359,	477
Lagging marine boilers	VIII,	70
Lamination	II,	57
Lamp-black	VI,	88
Lamp circuits	III,	357
Lamp rheostats	I,	127
Lamp sockets		
special	I,	203
standard	I,	203
Lamps, electric		
arrangement of	I, 211; III,	272
selection of	III,	238
types of	III,	270
amyl acetate	III,	289
arc	III,	242
carcel	III,	289
differential	III,	246
double-carbon	III,	247
incandescent	III,	232
mercury vapor	III,	260
Nernst	III,	253
osmium	III,	259
pentane	III,	289
shunt	III,	244
special	III,	251
Lancashire boiler	VI,	181
Lap joints		
efficiency of	VIII,	29
table	VI,	163
Lap on locomotive valves	VIII,	294
Lapping	X,	188
Lapping a gauge to size	X,	400
Laps for flat surfaces	X,	188
Latent heat	VI, 27; VII,	293

Note.—For page numbers see foot of pages.

Digitized by Google

	Part	Page
Lathe, engine	X,	74
adjusting pieces to center	X,	88
centering work	X,	85
chucks	X,	81
independent	X,	82
universal	X,	81
follower rest	X,	80
size of	X,	78
steady rest	X,	79
Lathe chuck, pattern for	IX,	123
Lathe dogs	X,	83
Lathe tools	IX, 54; X,	91-100
cutting-off	X,	97
diamond point	X,	96
facing	X,	96
round nose	X,	97
side	X,	96
Lathes	IX, 51; X,	71
drilling in	X,	122
speed of	X,	72
Latitude	VIII,	175
Latitude and distance, scale of	VIII,	185
Launch boilers	VIII,	92
Laundry boilers	XII,	283
Lavatories	XII,	208
Laying out curves	III,	455
Laying out work	X,	192
Lead	IX,	375
desilverized, refining	IX,	377
properties of	IX,	379
smelting	IX,	376
Lead pipe	XII,	223
Lead pipe, tables	XII,	264
Lead of valves		
angle of	VII,	149
on stationary engines	VII,	170
Leads and brushes, armature	III,	319
Lean-to roof	XII,	393
Leather belting		
sizes of, table	IX,	238
strength of	IX,	235
Leather pump valves	VI,	378
Leclanche cell	I, 31; V,	21
Ledger board	XII,	360
Leeway of the ship	VIII,	183
Lenoir engine	VII,	404
Lentz boiler	VI, 207; VIII,	237
Lettering, architectural	XI,	477-522
Lettering, mechanical	XI,	146
block	XI,	147
inclined Gothic	XI,	147
lower-case	XI,	149
Roman	XI,	147
spacing of	XI,	151
vertical Gothic	XI,	147
Letters on drawings	XI,	317
Leyden jar	I,	27
Lift pump	VI, 356, 369; XII,	267

	Part	Page
Light		
distribution of	III,	240
direction of in rendering	XI,	454
Light standards	III,	287
Lighting		
artificial	III,	305
public halls	III,	276
shops	III,	301
Lighting data, table of	III,	278
Lightning arresters	I, 158; III,	355
Limit gauges	X,	35
Limit switches	III,	29
Limonite	IX,	339
Lincoln synchronizer	IV,	399
Line, electric		
construction	V,	77
protection, telephone	V,	387
Line shading	XI,	144
cylinder	XI,	145
cone	XI,	145
Linear expansion, table	VI,	16
Linemen's tools	V,	168
climbers	V,	168
come alongs	V,	169
pliers	V,	169
wrenches	V,	169
Lines, electric		
inductance of	IV,	443
mutual-inductance of	IV,	444
telephone	V, 71,	131
terminals for	V,	181
transmission	IV,	440
Lining shafting	X,	202
Link motion		
design of	VIII,	287
Stephenson	VII,	180
Linking up marine engines	VIII,	166
Links		
Gooch	VII,	186
locomotive	VIII,	282
Stephenson	VII,	180
Lipe tool post	X,	95
Liquefaction	VI,	23
of air	VI,	51
Liquid thermometers	VI,	13
Liquids, expansion of	VI,	20
Lithanode	II,	361
Load on engine, variation of	VII,	263
Loam	IX,	453
Loam cores	IX,	453
Loam moulds	IX,	457
Loam work	IX,	388
Local vents	XII,	230
Localization of troubles	III,	92
Locating faults		
direct-deflection method	III,	75
drop method	III,	73
in telegraph lines	I,	142

Note.—For page numbers see foot of pages.

Digitized by Google

	Part	Page
Locating gauge	X,	408
Location of		
generating station	III,	128
third rail	III,	397
power house	III,	419
Lock nuts	IX,	311
Locomotive		
accidents	VIII,	374
blower	VIII,	267
connecting rods	VIII,	277
counter-balancing	VIII,	296
crosshead and guides	VIII,	275
cylinder	VIII,	270
dry pipe	VIII,	268
fuel for	VIII,	257
injectors	VIII,	270
inspection of	VIII,	374
lifting shaft	VIII,	282
link	VIII,	282
link hanger	VIII,	282
link motion, design of	VIII,	287
parallel rods	VIII,	279
piston and piston-rod	VIII,	273
piston valve	VIII,	293
placing crank on dead center	VIII,	285
reach rod	VIII,	281
reciprocating parts	VIII,	297
reversing lever	VIII,	281
reversing rod	VIII,	281
revolving parts	VIII,	297
rocker arm	VIII,	282
running gear	VIII,	294
safety valves for	VIII,	264
slide valve	VIII,	292
steam gauges	VIII,	267
tanks for	VIII,	349
tender for	VIII,	343
tender, frame of	VIII,	347
throttle valve	VIII,	267
tractive power of	VIII,	336
trucks	VIII,	299
trucks for	VIII,	343
types of	VIII,	301
Atlantic	VIII,	304
Columbia	VIII,	303
compound	VIII,	308
consolidation	VIII,	306
decapod	VIII,	307
eight-wheeled	VIII,	302
Forney	VIII,	303
four-wheeled switching	VIII,	301
logging	VIII,	334
Mastodon	VIII,	307
Mogul	VIII,	305
rack	VIII,	335
single driver	VIII,	304
six-wheeled switcher	VIII,	305
Locomotive, types of		
ten-wheeled	VIII,	306
valve motion	VIII,	281
valves, setting of	VIII,	282
water gauges	VIII,	267
whistle	VIII,	267
whistle signals	VIII,	365
Locomotive, compound	VIII,	308
Brook's two-cylinder	VIII,	324
four-cylinder	VIII,	328
Pittsburg	VIII,	317
Richmond	VIII,	309
Schenectady	VIII,	319
three-cylinder	VIII,	326
Locomotive boilers	VI, 202; VIII,	20, 231
combustion chambers	VIII,	244
firebox for	VIII,	241
firebox, side sheets of	VIII,	244
fittings for	VIII,	264
materials for construction of	VIII,	238
Locomotive boilers and engines	VIII,	231-384
Locomotive brick arches	VIII,	247
Locomotive emergencies	VIII,	374
broken connecting-rod	VIII,	374
broken driving springs	VIII,	375
broken side-rod	VIII,	374
broken steam chest	VIII,	376
foaming	VIII,	375
low water	VIII,	375
Locomotive engine	VII,	36
Locomotive rating	VIII,	339
Locomotive running	VIII,	367
boiler, feeding	VIII,	369
end of run	VIII,	373
firing	VIII,	367
fuel for	VIII,	367
grades	VIII,	370
making ready	VIII,	372
road, learning the	VIII,	370
steam, use of	VIII,	369
trains, handling of	VIII,	371
Locomotive specifications	VIII,	379
Locomotive taper	X,	60
Lodge-Muirhead wireless telegraphy	I,	365
Lodge wireless telegraphy	I,	354
Log of test, table of	III,	456
Long shunt	II,	79
Longitude	VIII,	175
scale of	VIII,	186
Losses		
alternator	IV,	158
electrical	II,	47
frictional	II,	52
generator	II,	46

Note.—For page numbers see foot of pages.

Digitized by Google

	Part	Page
Low pressure heating system	XII,	143
Low water in boilers	VI,	349
Lower-case letters	XI,	149
Lubricants		
liquid	VII,	72
solid	VII,	72
Lubrication of		
ammonia compressor	VII,	320
bearings	VIII,	164
drills	X,	53
railway motors	III,	323
steam engine	VII,	70
Lubrication, internal	VIII,	161
Lubricators, sight feed	VII,	74
Lummer-Brodhun photometer	III,	291
Lundell		
generator	II,	182-205
motor	II,	244
Machine design	IX,	155-335
bearings	IX,	324
belts	IX,	329
bevel gears	IX,	280
bolts, etc.	IX,	303
brackets	IX,	324
brackets and caps	IX,	199
calculations and notes	IX,	160
commercial aspect	IX,	158
cotters	IX,	320
couplings	IX,	299
definition of	IX,	155
delineation and specification	IX,	166
drum and brake	IX,	203
empirical data for	IX,	159
foot lever	IX,	209
formulas, general	IX,	169
friction clutches	IX,	293
friction and lubrication	IX,	171
handbooks for	IX,	159
keys, pins, etc.	IX,	314
method of	IX,	162
modification	IX,	165
practical care	IX,	175
practical modification	IX,	165
problem	IX,	177
pulleys	IX,	240
shafts	IX,	254
split pulleys	IX,	248
spur gears	IX,	268
stresses and strains	IX,	172
summary	IX,	226
theoretical	IX,	164
theory	IX,	157
torsional moments	IX,	183
worm gears	IX,	286
Machine drawing	XI,	219
plates	XI,	290-296
Machine screws	IX,	313
Machine setting	X,	203
Machine shop, motors in	II,	315
Machine shop work	X,	11-205
belting	X,	204
cold chisels, steel for	X,	201
drilling hard metals	X,	197
fitting, in assembling machinery	X,	196
fitting brasses	X,	199
grinding valves	X,	197
joints	X,	199
laying out of	X,	192
lining shafting	X,	202
machine setting	X,	203
pening	X,	196
pickling	X,	201
shop suggestions	X,	196
surface plate, generating of	X,	198
Machine tapping	X,	64
Machine taps	X,	270
screw die hobs	X,	271
taper	X,	270
Machine tools	IX,	215
Machinery, classification of	IX,	214
mill and plant	IX,	221
motive-power	IX,	217
structural	IX,	218
Machinery of steam cylinder	XI,	312
Machines		
gas	XII,	310
general drawing of	IX,	210
refrigerating	VI,	49
testing	VI, 118; VIII,	23
Magnet frame		
dimensions of	II,	151
sectional area of	II,	152
total flux of	II,	151
Magnet winding	II,	157
Magnetic		
induction	I,	14
substances	I,	15
Magnetic blow-out	III,	338
Magnetic circuit	II,	85
Magnetic effects of electric current	I,	34
Magnetic field	I, 13; II, 11,	42
Magnetic flux, C. G. S. unit of	I,	108
Magnetic leakage	II,	46
Magnetic needle, deflection of	I,	34
Magnetic pole, strength of	I,	108
Magnetic potential	I,	108
Magnetic units, C. G. S.	I,	108
Magnetic voltage regulator	IV,	411
Magnetism	I, 11; V, 31; VIII,	180
Magnetite	IX,	339
Magnetizing forces	II, 90,	154
Magneto-dynamo	I, 58; II,	34
Magnetomotive force	I,	108
Magnets		
induction by	I,	37
saturation of	II,	35

Note.—For page numbers see foot of pages.

Digitized by Google

	Part	Page
Magnets		
types of		
artificial	I,	11
natural	I,	11
Main distributing board	V,	171
Main injection valve	VIII,	157
Main-line circuit	I,	253
Main vent	XII,	231
Management of storage batteries	II,	365
Mandrels	X, 84,	252
dimensions of, table	X,	256
expanding	X, 85,	257
hardened ends	X,	255
machinery steel	X,	256
Manganese	IX,	346
Manholes	VI, 167, 284; XII,	249
Manning boiler	VI,	191
Mansard roof	XII,	394
framing of	XII,	401
Manufacture of incandescent lamps	III,	233
Marconi wireless telegraphy	I,	353
Marine boilers	III, 135; VIII,	11-92
blow-off valve	VIII,	61
care of	VIII,	78
banking the fire	VIII,	84
building the fire	VIII,	80
circumferential seams	VIII,	87
cleaning boiler	VIII,	84
cleaning the fire	VIII,	82
furnaces	VIII,	86
getting up steam	VIII,	78
repairs	VIII,	85
replacing fire bars	VIII,	85
screw stays	VIII,	88
seams and rivets	VIII,	86
shell plates	VIII,	87
smoke consumption	VIII,	83
stoking	VIII,	81
thickness of fire	VIII,	81
tubes	VIII,	88
combustion chambers	VIII,	38
crown bar	VIII,	45
cylindrical	VIII,	13
dimensions of	VIII,	45
area of grate	VIII,	45
area through tubes	VIII,	46
area of uptake and funnel	VIII,	48
diameter	VIII,	45
heating surface	VIII,	46
manholes	VIII,	48
size of boiler	VIII,	47
steam space	VIII,	47
water space	VIII,	47
double-ended	VIII,	17
draft	VIII,	70
end plate	VIII,	33
Marine boilers		
evaporators	VIII,	66
feed arrangements	VIII,	68
feed valves	VIII,	61
flanging	VIII,	30
fuels	VIII,	77
furnace doors of	VIII,	52
furnaces	VIII,	34
grate bars	VIII,	52
hydrokineter	VIII,	68
lagging	VIII,	70
mechanical stokers	VIII,	76
rectangular	VIII,	11
safety valves	VIII,	55
salinometer	VIII,	63
scum cock	VIII,	62
shell, strength of	VIII,	31
single ended	VIII,	13
smoke box	VIII,	54
stay tubes	VIII,	41
stays	VIII,	41
steam and vacuum gauges	VIII,	63
stop valve	VIII,	58
tubes	VIII,	39
water gauges	VIII,	62
water tube	VIII,	89
Marine engines	VII, 35; VIII,	95-171
auxiliary machinery	VIII,	140
bearings	VIII,	119
bilge suction	VIII,	158
compound	VIII,	103
condensers	VIII,	127
connecting-rod	VIII,	117
crank-shafts	VIII,	118
crosshead	VIII,	116
details of		
cylinder	VIII,	109
piston-rod	VIII,	114
pistons	VIII,	113
stuffing boxes	VIII,	111
directing-box	VIII,	159
drains for	VIII,	139
early	VIII,	96-99
economical speed of	VIII,	143
emergencies	VIII,	169
air-pump broken	VIII,	170
bent piston-rod	VIII,	171
crank shaft fracture	VIII,	170
cylinder head broken	VIII,	170
eccentric broken	VIII,	171
piston broken	VIII,	170
failure to start	VIII,	162
feed tanks	VIII,	137
fittings	VIII,	154
jackets	VIII,	166
keel condenser	VIII,	137
lubrication of bearings	VIII,	164
management of	VIII,	160

Note.—For page numbers see foot of pages.

Digitized by Google

	Part	Page
Marine engines		
multi cylinder	VIII,	103
propellers	VIII,	144
propulsion	VIII,	141
quadruple expansion	VIII,	107
rotary motion	VIII,	115
starting of	VIII,	160
starting gear	VIII,	124
stopping	VIII,	168
thrust bearing	VIII,	120
triple expansion	VIII,	105
water service	VIII,	159
Marine message	I,	266
Marking gauges	IX,	38
Marshall valve gear	VII,	190
Masonry walls	XII,	369
Materials for		
blast furnace	IX,	341
boilers VI, 115;	VIII,	21
mechanical drawing	XI,	11
pattern making	IX,	12
Materials, testing	VI,	117
Matthews' integrating photometer	III,	295
Maximum value of harmonic E. M. F	IV,	35
Mean effective pressure	VII,	105
Mean spherical candle-power	III,	241
Measurement of		
A. C. power III, 88; IV,	75,	116
capacity	I,	151
current	I,	149
electromotive force	I,	144
energy	I,	150
high resistance	I,	135
quantity	I,	150
resistance	I,	127
torque	II,	283
Measurements for tools	X,	209
Measuring instruments, electrical	IV,	62
Measuring tools	X,	18-38
Mechanical draft III, 147;	VIII,	75
Mechanical drawing	XI,	11-361
development	XI,	111, 116
instruments	XI,	11
intersection	XI,	111
isometric projection	XI,	129
lettering	XI,	146
line shading	XI,	144
machine	XI,	219
materials	XI,	11
oblique projection	XI,	141
plates	XI,	154-166
projections	XI,	95
shade lines	XI,	107
student drawing	XI,	300
Mechanical drawing		
toothed gearing	XI,	275
utility of	XI,	299
working drawings	XI,	171
working shop drawings	XI,	299
Mechanical stokers VI, 253;	VIII,	76
Mechanics, constructive	IX,	168
Mechanism of		
arc lamps	III,	243
series lamps	III,	245
Melting iron	IX,	485
Melting points, table	VI,	23
Melting steel	IX,	500
M. E. P. calculation of by formula	VII,	255
Mercator's chart	VIII,	185
Mercury vapor converter	IV,	461-476
Mercury vapor lamp	III,	260
Messages		
cable	I,	264
cipher	I,	263
"C. N. D."	I,	265
examples of	I,	247
marine	I,	266
practice	I,	268
Metal		
melting of	IX,	470
pouring of	IX,	479
Metal patterns	IX,	110
Metalline	VII,	72
Metallurgy	IX,	337-385
alloys	IX,	384
aluminum	IX,	381
copper, properties of	IX, 371,	504
desilverized lead, refining	IX,	377
lead	IX,	375
lead smelting	IX,	376
lead softening and desilver-		
lead softening and desilverizing	IX,	377
silver and gold, from lead	IX,	378
table of alloys	IX,	385
table of metals	IX,	383
tin	IX, 379,	504
zinc	IX, 380,	505
Metals VI, 101;	IX,	383
Meters	VII,	267
gas	XII, 290,	308
recording	I,	125
Thomson inclined-coil	IV,	73
Meyer valve	VII,	197
design of	VII,	198
Micrometer, reading	X,	26
Micrometer caliper	X,	24
Microphone	V,	42
Mill and plant machinery	IX,	221
Milliken repeater	I,	291
Milling drill-flutes, table	X,	230

Note.—For page numbers see foot of pages.

Digitized by Google

	Part	Page
Milling machine	X.	149
backlash of	X.	163
bench miller	X.	161
cams, cutting of	X.	180
cutters	X.	309
cutting speed of	X.	172
duplex	X.	167
fluting taps and reamers by	X.	176
gears, cutting of	X.	182
horizontal	X.	162
lost motion on	X.	163
micrometer graduations	X.	162
slabbing miller	X.	165
speeds of	X.	168
spirals, cutting of	X.	180
splining shafts by	X.	175
universal	X.	164
vertical head for	X.	167
Milling machine arbors	X.	260
Milling machine cutters	X.	309
angle	X.	154
angular cutters	X.	322
arbors for the face	X.	340
backing off	X.	327
cutting edges for, table	X.	310
end mill	X.	157, 335
end mills with center cut	X.	337
face milling, table	X.	340
face milling cutters	X.	338
fly cutters	X.	333
formed	X.	155, 325
grinding hole to size	X.	312
grinding teeth	X.	314
inserted-tooth	X.	155, 323
interlocking teeth	X.	318
key ways for, table	X.	326
milling	X.	152
nicked teeth	X.	321
plain	X.	152, 157
screw slotting	X.	152
shank mill	X.	335
shell end mills	X.	160
side milling	X.	153
slitting saws	X.	152
speed of	X.	172
spiral	X.	315
spiral end mills	X.	336
spiral teeth	X.	152
solid	X.	310
standard key ways	X.	325
T-slot cutters	X.	337
threaded holes	X.	332
Mills, hollow	X.	299
Milne boiler	VI.	240
Mineral coal	VI.	88
Minerals	IX.	339
Minuscule letter	XI.	500
Mitre valve	VI.	379
Molecular weight	VI.	63
Molecules	VI.	56
Momentum brakes	III.	375
Moon's declination, effect of changes in	VIII.	226
Moon's distance, effect of	VIII.	226
Morse		
code	I.	47-239
key	I.	48
sounder	I.	46
standard taper	X.	52
Mortise teeth gears	IX.	277
Mortise-and-tenon joint	XII.	344
Mosher water-tube boiler	VI.	227
Motion		
harmonic	XI.	237
uniform	XI.	236
uniformly accelerated and retarded	XI.	238
varying	XI.	237
Motion of armature	II.	274
Motive-power machinery	IX.	217
Motor coil, testing of	III.	439
Motor-drive systems	II.	329
Motor-driven pump	VI.	403
Motor-generators II. 268, 311; IV. 277,		359
Motors	III. 313; V.	33
armature wires of	II.	293
connections of	II. 296; III.	47
constant speed of	II.	287
direction of motion of	II.	274
direction for running	III.	61
equation for	II.	277
field strength of	II.	292
fundamental principles of	II.	273
installation of	I.	166
position of brushes of	II.	295
reversing of	II.	297
speed of	II.	284
starting of	II. 297; III.	47
starting resistance of	II.	296
stopping of	II. 297; III.	63
suspension of	III.	324
types of	III.	47
alternating-current	III.	54
compound-wound	III.	52
constant-current	II.	311
differentially-wound	III.	52
direct-current	II.	234
machine shop	II.	315-345
railway	II.	251
series	II. 311, III.	50
shunt-wound	III.	48
single-phase	III.	432
three-phase	III.	432
windings of	II.	286
wiring, formulae for	I.	169
Moulding		
materials for	IX.	507

Note.—For page numbers see foot of pages.

Digitized by Google

	Part	Page
Moulding		
methods of	IX,	63
principles of	IX,	402
problems of	IX,	414
tools for	IX,	395
Moulding machines	IX,	445
Moulding steam cylinder	XI,	312
Moulding work, wire for	I,	196
Moulds	IX,	359
building	IX,	465
packing of	IX,	498
pressure in	IX,	411
Mounting the filament	III,	234
Mounting outdoor transformers	IV,	276
Multi-cylinder marine engines	VIII,	103
Multiple die	X,	382
Multiple expansion	VII,	238
Multiple system of power	III,	266
Multiple-unit control	III,	343
Multiple-wire systems	IV,	434
Multiplex telegraphy	I,	298
Multipolar rotary converter	IV,	288
Multitubular boiler	III, 135; VI,	184
Murdoch's slide valve	VII,	17
Musical sound	V,	16
Mutual-inductance of lines	IV,	444
Mutual-and-self-induction	I,	40
Nailing surfaces	XII,	366
Name-plate for dynamos	I,	156
Naphtha	VII,	465
Napierian logarithms, table	VII,	257
Natural draft	III,	147
Natural magnets	I,	11
Nautical almanac	VIII,	216
Nautical astronomy	VIII,	202
Nautical miles	VIII,	176
Nautical terms	VIII,	108
Navigating the ship	VIII,	192
day's work	VIII,	193
departure	VIII,	192
horn protractor	VIII,	198
making the land	VIII,	194
method of sounding	VIII,	195
parallel rule	VIII,	198
shaping the course	VIII,	193
Navigation	VIII,	173-228
definitions	VIII,	173
Nernst lamp	III,	253
New York engineer's valve	VIII,	426
Newcomen's steam engine	VII,	13
Niches, construction of	XII,	452
Nickel steel	IX,	366
Niclausse water-tube boiler	VI,	233
Nitric acid	VI,	112
Nitrogen	XII,	26
chemical properties of	VI,	82
compounds of	VI,	82
discovery of	VI,	81
Nitrogen		
occurrence	VI,	81
physical properties of	VI,	82
preparation of	VI,	83
uses of	VI,	82
Noisy operation of machinery	III,	110
Non-inductive circuit	IV,	46
Non-reactive circuit	IV,	46
Non-sectional boiler	VI,	174
Northern electric		
generator	II, 190,	205
motors	II,	250
Nuts	IX,	303
conventional drawing of	XI,	190
lock	IX,	311
marking off	VIII,	167
problems on	IX,	313
table	XI,	195
Oblique projections	XI,	141
crank arm	XI,	143
cube	XI,	142
planes	XI,	375
Office buildings, heating of	XII,	189
Office letterings	XI,	477
Ohm	I, 64,	109
B. A.	I,	111
international	I,	111
legal	I,	111
value of	I,	110
Ohm's law	I, 77; IV,	17
Oil cup	VII,	73
Oil engines	VII, 401,	465
care of	VII,	474
oil consumption	VII,	475
Oil separator for ammonia	VII,	339
Oil stones	IX,	48
Oil switches	III,	176
Oil traps for refrigeration	VII,	386
One-pipe circuit system	XII,	39
One-pipe relief system	XII,	68
Open arcs, D. C. system	III,	248
Open-circuit system	I,	289
Open-coil armatures	II,	104
Open-coil windings	II,	30
Open heaters	VI,	288
Operation of electric railway	III,	433
Order sheets, duplex pump	XI,	357-360
Ores, preparation of	IX,	339
Ores of iron	IX, 337,	371
Orthographic projection	XI,	95
Oscillating engine	VIII,	98
Oscillation transformers	I,	352
Osmium lamp	III,	259
Otto cycle	VI, 49; VII,	403
ideal	VII,	428
objections to	VII,	451
real	VII,	428
thermodynamics of	VII,	417

Note.—For page numbers see foot of pages.

Digitized by Google

	Part	Page
Outside wiring	I,	172
Overcompounding	II,	80
Overhead construction	III,	391
Overhung crank, plate	XI,	212
Overload rating of transformer	IV,	247
Oxygen	XII,	26
chemical properties of	VI,	74
compounds of	VI,	75
discovery of	VI,	74
occurrence	VI,	74
physical properties of	VI,	74
preparation of	VI,	76
use of	VI,	75
Paddle wheels	VIII,	95
Painting of poles	I,	185
Panels		
D. C. feeder	III,	174
exciter	III,	174
feeder	III, 428; IV,	397
high-voltage	IV,	398
total output	III,	175
typical	IV,	393
Pantograph	VII,	101
Paper, drawing	XI,	11
Paper for rendering	XI,	448
Parabola	XI,	66
to draw	XI,	87
Parallel shafts	XI,	253
Parallel systems	IV, 429,	437
Parsons steam turbine	VII, 81,	282
Partitions		
for attics	XII,	422
in buildings	XII,	368
special	XII,	371
supports for	XII,	380
Pattern maker, qualifications of	IX,	11
Pattern making	IX, 11-	154
bevel gears	IX,	149
column	IX,	152
dowel pins	IX,	85
draft	IX,	72
engine cylinder	IX,	129
face plate	IX,	117
fillets	IX,	114
finish	IX,	74
follow boards	IX,	153
gear wheel	IX,	139
globe valve	IX,	133
glue for	IX,	88
gluing	IX,	88
hand screws	IX,	90
hubs	IX,	109
moulding, methods of	IX,	63
pipe connections	IX,	119
planes	IX,	23
rapping plates,	IX,	110
shrinkage	IX,	72
tools for	IX,	17

	Part	Page
Pattern making		
wood for	IX,	12
Patterns		
built up	IX, 91-	108
cylinders	IX,	126
disc crank	IX,	112
from drawings	IX,	71
elbow	IX,	121
flanges	IX,	125
finishing of	IX,	81
of hand wheel	IX,	95
lathe chuck	IX,	123
metal	IX,	110
materials for	IX,	12
return bend	IX,	123
of sheave pulley	IX,	91
simple	IX,	77
tee	IX,	119
Paul heating system	XII,	146
Pen and ink rendering	XI,	447
Pencils	XI,	14
Pencil mechanism of indicators	VII,	97
Pencilling in mechanical drawing	XI,	35
Pendentives, construction of	XII,	449
Pendulum governor	VII,	62
Pening	X,	196
Penn's trunk engine	VIII,	98
Pens for rendering	XI,	445
Pentane lamp	III,	289
Period, defined	IV,	13
Perspective of		
block	XI,	436
cube	XI,	436
house	XI,	399
line	XI, 386,	435
point	XI, 385,	435
rectangular block	XI,	388
vanishing point	XI, 387,	435
Perspective drawing	XI, 363-	432
apparent distortion	XI,	430
axioms for	XI,	369
curves	XI,	427
definitions and general theory	XI,	363
elementary problems	XI,	385
lines of measures	XI,	393
parallel or one-point	XI,	412
notation	XI,	383
planes of projection	XI,	373
problems	XI, 435-	443
projection	XI,	364
station point	XI,	364
vanishing point	XI,	366
vanishing points of oblique lines	XI,	403
vanishing point diagram	XI,	411
visual rays	XI,	363

Note.—For page numbers see foot of pages.

Digitized by Google

	Part	Page
Perspective plan, method of	XI,	417
Perspective projection		
house	XI,	436
rectangular block	XI,	435
Petroleum, crude	VII,	465
Petticoat pipes	VIII,	262
Phase characteristic of motor	IV,	209
Phase difference	IV,	29
Phase transformation	IV,	237
Phlogiston	VI,	55
Phonoplex	I,	325
Phosphorus, effect on iron	IX,	345, 506
Photometer	III,	290
Lummer-Brodhun	III,	291
Matthews' integrating	III,	295
Weber	III,	294
Photometry	III,	287
arc light	III,	299
incandescent lamp	III,	296
Physical changes	VI,	56
Pickling	X,	201
Pillow block, plate	XI,	211
Pin taper	X,	61
Pines	XII,	327
Pinion bore for hoists	IX,	189
Pinion shaft outer bearing	IX,	189
Pins, machine	IX,	314
Pipe connections	XII,	70
bath room	XII,	233
for heating	XII,	137
kitchen sink	XII,	235
pattern for	IX,	119
for plumbing	XII,	233
urinal	XII,	235
for water back	XII,	282
Pipe coupling, plate	XI,	211
Pipe coverings	VI,	293
table	VI,	296
Pipe joints for plumbing	XII,	220
Pipe radiators	XII,	61
Pipe risers for hot water, table	XII,	124
Pipe sizes		
discharge	XII,	238
for heating	XII,	74
single pipe system, table	XII,	80
Pipe threads, cutting of	X,	66
Pipes		
brass	XII,	222
cast-iron	XII,	219
circulation	XII,	281
expansion of	XII,	71
for gas burners, table	XII,	295
for heating	XII,	81
lead	XII,	223
for pump	VI,	432
for refrigerating system	VII,	341
smoke	XII,	46
soil and waste	XII,	219, 235
Pipes		
for steam plant	VI,	293
tank overflow	XII,	273
tile	XII,	224
warm-air	XII,	48
wrought iron	XII,	222
Piping for heating system	XII,	66
Piping hot water system	XII,	111
Piston	VII,	21
Piston for pump, size of	VI,	388
Piston rod	VII,	21
design of	VI,	383
Piston speed	VII,	253
Piston valve	VII,	176
for locomotive	VIII,	293
Pitch for propeller		
alteration of	VIII,	146
determination of	VIII,	149
finding of	VIII,	147
Pitting in boilers	VI,	311
Plan of illumination	III,	270
Plain triple valve	VIII,	412
Planer	X,	133
holding work on	X,	137
plate	X,	139
shaping	X,	141
tools for	X,	137
Planes		
core-box	IX,	29
iron	IX,	23
pattern maker	IX,	23
rabbet	IX,	27
router	IX,	30
wound and hollow	IX,	28
Planes, intersection of	XI,	112
Planes of projection	XI,	373
Planimeter	VII,	115
Planing machines, wood	IX,	60
Planté storage battery	II,	349
Plants		
consolidation of	III,	219
electrical	III,	160
hydraulic	III,	153
size of	III,	132
Plastic rail bond	III,	409
Plate for building	XII,	361
Plate planer	X,	139
Plates, mechanical drawing	XI,	29
Plenum method of heating	XII,	149
Pliers	IX,	44
Plotting curves	III,	456
Plug and ring gauge	X,	388
Plumbing	XII,	201-314
apartment houses	XII,	239
cold-water supply	XII,	270
dwelling houses	XII,	239
fixtures for	XII,	201
hot-water supply	XII,	275

Note.—For page numbers see foot of pages.

Digitized by Google

	Part	Page
Plumbing		
hotels	XII,	240
hydraulics of	XII,	259
inspection	XII,	242
pumps	XII,	267
railroad stations	XII,	241
schoolhouses	XII,	241
shops and factories	XII,	242
testing	XII,	242
Plunger-type ammeters	IV,	73
Plunger-type voltmeters	IV,	73
Polar duplex	I,	305
Polarity test	I, 162; IV,	281
Polarization	I, 31; V,	20
Pole fittings	V,	87
cross arms	I,	185
guard irons	I,	185
guys	I,	187
steps	I,	185
Pole line data, table of	I,	186
Poles		
classes of	I,	182
cull	I,	183
dimensions of	V,	80
holes for	I,	183
painting of	I,	185
setting of	I, 183; V,	98
telephone	V,	78
weight of	V,	81
Polygons	XI,	58
Polyphase alternators	IV,	106
Polyphase systems	IX,	304
Polyphase transformers	IV,	236
Poppet valve	VI	378
Porch floors	XII,	389
Portable storage battery	II,	385
Portable testing set	I,	131
Porter governor	VII,	65
Ports, pump	VI,	386
Positive electricity	I,	16
Pot-head cable	V,	152
Potential, magnetic	I,	108
Potential regulators	IV,	408
Potentiometer measurement of E. M. F.	I,	141
Power	I,	97
C. G. S, unit of	I,	107
measurement of	III, 84; IV,	116
supply of	III,	416
Power of engine, calculation of	VII,	85
Power distribution	III, 262-	266
Power economy	III,	435
Power factor		
of circuit	IV,	37
of synchronous motor	IV,	206
Power hammer	X,	500
Power law	IV,	17
Power ratings of rotary converters	IV,	284
Power stations	III 127-	202
general plan of	III,	423
location of	III,	419
Power transmission	IV, 419-	458
Practical electrical units, C. G. S.	I,	109
Pressure of water, table of	III,	155
Pressure gas producer	VII,	458
Pressure gauges for ammonia	VII,	343
Pressure retaining valve	VIII,	421
Prick punch	X,	12
Primary cell	II,	347
Primary wires	I,	187
Profile plane	XI,	101
Projections	XI,	95
isometric	XI,	129
oblique	XI,	141
orthographic	XI,	95
perspective	XI,	364
planes of	XI,	373
profile plane	XI,	101
third plane of	XI,	101
Projectors	XI,	363
Prony brake	VII,	110
Propeller, screw	VIII, 95,	145
Propeller blades, number of	VIII,	146
Propulsion	VIII,	141
indicated thrust	VIII,	142
Protractor	X, 17; XI,	27
Puddling process	IX,	347
Pulley arm	IX, 109,	243
Pulley bores for hoists	IX,	185
Pulley hubs	IX, 109,	245
Pulley rim	IX,	241
Pulleys		
analysis of	IX,	240
design of	IX,	240
for hoists	IX,	193
moulding	IX,	446
practical modification of	IX,	246
problems on	IX,	253
special forms of	IX,	252
split	IX,	248
theory of	IX,	241
Pulsation test of synchronous motor	IV,	210
Pump capacity, table	VI,	390
Pump design	VI,	381
Pump logs	V,	138
Pump pipes, table	VI,	434
Pump piston rod, table	VI,	383
Pump slip, table	VI,	391
Pump testing		
for efficiency	VI,	440
for slip	VI,	441
Pump valves	VI,	376
area of	VI,	391

Note.—For page numbers see foot of pages.

Digitized by Google

	Part	Page
Pump valves		
ball	VI,	380
double beat	VI,	380
flexible	VI,	376
hinged	VI,	378
Knowles	VI,	412
leather	VI,	378
mitre	VI,	379
poppet	VI,	378
Pumping by compressed air	VI,	448
Pumping engines	VII,	19, 38
Pumping stations for sewers	XII,	252
Pumps		
air	VI,	406
air brake	VIII,	392
arrangement of parts	VI,	387
automatic return	XII,	132
boiler feed	VI,	290
care of	VI,	436
centrifugal	VI,	366
compound, table	VI,	426
condenser	VI,	405
construction of	VI,	381
Corliss	VI,	429
duplex	VI,	399
plates for	XI,	305-361
duty of	VI,	440
erection of	VI,	430
fire	VI,	394
forcing	VI,	357, 372
jet	VI,	361
kinds of	VI,	361
lifting	VI,	356, 369
methods of driving	VI,	400
motor-driven	VI,	403
piping of	VI,	430
principles of action	VI,	353
rating of	XI,	307
Riedler system of	VI,	407
rotary	VI,	363
setting valves of	VI,	426
Blake	VI,	427
Davidson	VI,	427
Dean	VI,	427
Knowles	VI,	427
single	VI,	398
steam	VI,	353-452
testing of	VI,	440
triplex	VI,	399
types	VI,	397
Punch	X,	374
hardening of	X,	376
Punch and die		
fit of	X,	375
stripper for	X,	364
Punch and die work	X,	364
Purity of electrolyte	II,	381
Pyramids	XI,	62
Quadrilaterals	XI,	57
Quadruple expansion engine	VII,	27
marine	VIII,	107
Quadruplex	I,	315
how to balance	I,	319
troubles of	I,	320
Quantity, measurement of	I,	150
Quantity of current	I,	94
Quantity of electricity, C. G. S. unit	I,	109
Quarter-turn belt	XI,	255
Queen post trussed beam	XII,	423
Rabbet plane	IX,	27
Rack and pinion gear	XI,	284
Radial depth of armature core	II,	142
Radial drill	X,	127
Radial stay boiler	VIII,	234
Radial valve gears	VII,	187
Radiating surface, types of	XII,	60
Radiation of heat	VI,	36
Radiators		
direct-indirect	XII,	17
for furnace	XII,	42
location of	XII,	65
efficiency of	XII,	63, 111
cast iron	XII,	60
pipe	XII,	61
Rafter bevels	XII,	404
Rafters	XII,	395
backing of	XII,	418
hip rafters	XII,	418
valley rafters	XII,	421
common	XII,	404
curved hip	XII,	416
hip	XII,	415, 418
jack	XII,	417
valley	XII,	407
Rail		
girder	III,	401
trilby groove	III,	402
Rail making	IX,	361
Railroad signals	VIII,	356
bell-cord	VIII,	366
flags	VIII,	365
Hall	VIII,	359
semaphores	VIII,	357
targets	VIII,	356
train signals	VIII,	362
whistle signals	VIII,	365
Railroad trains		
air signal systems for	VIII,	449
handling of	VIII,	371
Railway, electric	III,	311
Railway generator, G. E.	II,	173
Railway motors	II,	251
bearings of	III,	323
Railway telegraphy	I,	272
Railway time tables	VIII,	379
Rake of cutting edges	X,	282
Ram, hydraulic	XII,	268

Note.—For page numbers see foot of pages.

Digitized by Google

	Part	Page
Ramming	IX,	404
Rapping plates	IX,	110
Rate of flow of water, table of	III,	146
Rating of		
arc lamps	III,	250
transformers	IV,	247
voltage regulators	IV,	414
Ratio of expansion	VII,	254
Reabsorbing	VII,	391
Reactance of A. C. circuit	IV,	44
Reaction, armature	IV,	92
Reamers	X, 58,	234
adjustable	X,	245
adjustable blades	X,	60
cutters for, table	X,	236
cutting edges, table	X,	235
cylindrical chuck	X,	60
fluted chucking	X,	239
fluted hand	X,	235
formed	X,	250
hand	X,	59
hardening of	X,	237
holders for	X,	252
inserted blade	X,	244
rose	X,	240
roughing	X,	243
shell	X,	248
single lip	X,	242
straight	X,	235
straightening of	X,	238
taper	X, 61,	247
Receiver safety valves	VIII,	156
Receiving gauge	X,	404
Receivers		
ammonia	VII,	339
telephone	I,	52
Recording meters	I,	125
Recording wattmeter	IV, 79	82
Rectangular boiler	VIII,	11
Rectangular prism, development of	XI,	117
Reducing motion, for indicators	VII,	100
Reducing valves	VI, 268; VIII, 157; XII,	129
Reduction of area	VIII,	26
Reflection	III,	269
Refrigerating machinery, erecting	VII,	316
Refrigerating machines	VI,	49
Refrigeration	VIII,	293-398
absorption system	VII,	389
air compressor	VII,	383
air expansion	VII,	381
ammonia condenser	VII,	325
atmospheric condenser	VII,	329
brine	VII,	346
brine tank, size of	VII,	364
carbonic anhydride gas	VII,	373

	Part	Page
Refrigeration		
compressed air	VII,	379
compressor, size of	VII,	365
condenser, size of	VII,	365
direct expansion system	VII,	350
double-pipe condenser	VII,	335
evaporators	VII,	298
gasket fitting	VII,	342
interceptor	VII,	339
oil and water traps	VII,	386
oil separator	VII,	339
pipes for	VII,	341
purging connection	VII,	353
submerged condenser	VII,	327
testing and charging	VII,	357
unbalanced valve pressure	VII,	385
unit of	VII,	293
valves, relief of	VII,	385
water "butt" or cooler	VII,	387
Refrigeration agents	VII,	295
Refrigeration plant		
foreign gases	VII,	363
management of	VII,	360
operation of	VII,	360
proportions of	VII,	364
Refrigerator box	VII,	387
Register, wireless telegraphy	I,	350
Registers	XII,	98
sizes of, table	XII,	52
warm air	XII,	52
Regulation of		
alternators	IV, 96,	176
constant-current motors	II,	311
constant-current transformers	IV,	271
storage batteries	II,	401
storage-battery generators	II,	403
Regulators		
damper	XII,	136
feeder	IV,	408
hot water heater	XII,	107
induction	IV,	412
magnetic-voltage	IV,	411
potential	IV,	408
Stillwell	IV,	409
temperature	XII, 178,	288
Relays	I, 49,	349
Releasing tap holders	X,	277
Relief valves, air refrigeration	VII,	385
Reluctance, C. G. S. unit of	I,	108
Remedy of troubles in D. E. M.	III,	92
Removable bushings	X,	360
Renaissance letters	XI,	478
Rendering in pen and ink	XI,	447
color of material	XI,	455
free lines	XI,	451
kind of drawing	XI,	447
light and shade	XI,	452

Note.—For page numbers see foot of pages.

Digitized by Google

	Part	Page
Rendering in pen and ink		
lighting	XI,	454
line work	XI,	448
materials	XI,	448
method	XI,	450
pencil work	XI,	459
plates	XI,	465-475
principality or accent	XI,	457
quality of line	XI,	448
shadows	XI,	456
summary	XI,	460
vertical lines	XI,	451
Repeaters		
Atkinson	I,	293
Milliken	I,	291
single-line	I,	291
Weiny-Phillips	I,	295
Repeating sounder	I,	322
Repulsion motor starting	IV,	347
Reservoir, main air	VIII,	402
Residence lighting	III,	270
table of	III,	276
Resistance I, 29, 64, 69,		109
affected by heating	I,	71
calculation of	I,	67
insulation	I,	138
measurement of I, 127;	IV,	279
Resistance, train	VIII,	338
Resistance, wave making	VIII,	141
Resistance of		
A. C. circuit	IV,	44
aluminum wire	IV,	421
armature conductor	II,	141
batteries	I,	143
conductors	I,	141
electrical conductors IV,	420,	423
Resistance factors, table of	V,	113
Resistances	III,	352
Resonance I, 344;	IV,	50
Rest		
follower	X,	80
steady	X,	79
Resultant field	II,	43
Retentivity	I,	15
Retrograde vernier	X,	32
Return bend, pattern for	IX,	123
Return connecting-rod engine	VIII,	99
Return duct	XII,	48
Return pipes for heating	XII,	81
Return pumps, automatic	XII,	132
Return traps VI, 282;	XII,	133
Return-tube boilers	VI,	193
double-ended	VI,	197
internal furnace	VI,	199
number of furnaces	VI,	196
single-ended	VI,	194
Reumer	VII,	294
Reverberatory furnaces	X,	503
Reversible quarter turn belt	XI,	259
Reversing		
connections	II,	299
handle	III,	338
motors	II,	297
rotation	II,	275
while running	II,	298
Revolving armature alternators	IV,	135
Revolving field alternators	IV,	139
Reynolds-Corliss valve gear	VII,	203
Rheostat control	III,	329
Rheostats	II,	74
carbon	I,	126
lamp	I,	127
water	I,	126
wire	I,	126
Rhumb line	VIII,	176
Riedler system pumps	VI,	407
Ridge	XII,	397
Right prism, development of	XI,	117
Ring gauge	X,	391
Ring round stock	X,	427
Ring winding, closed coil	II,	25
Riveted joints	VI,	160
table of	VI,	128
Riveted pipe, table of	III,	156
Riveting	VIII,	28
Rivets and riveting	VI,	124
Robb-Mumford boiler	VI,	209
Rock eye-bolts	V,	90
Rocker for valve	VII,	153
Rod feed	III,	246
Roman lettering	XI,	147
Roman letters	XI,	503
Roof	XII,	393
varieties of	XII,	393
Root water-tube boiler	VI,	219
Rope and drum for hoists	IX,	178
Rope brake	VII,	111
Rose reamers	X,	240
Rosettes	I,	201
Rotary converter IV,	282,	286
behavior of	IV,	299
control of voltage of	IV,	310
current relations of	IV,	296
Edison three-wire system	IV,	314
field excitation of	IV,	311
hunting of	IV,	304
inverted	IV,	306
separate excitation of	IV,	313
testing of	IV,	319
transformer connections for	IV,	316
uses of	IV,	298
Rotary pump	VI,	363
Roughing reamers	X,	243
Round and hollow planes	IX,	28
Round-nose chisel	X,	40
Router plane	IX,	30
Rubber covering, table of	I,	188

Note.—For page numbers see foot of pages.

Digitized by Google

	Part	Page
Rule, pattern maker	IX,	46
Safe capacity of wires, table of	I, 189; III,	25
Safety cam, Corliss engine	VII,	206
Safety devices	III,	183
Safety fuses	III,	28
Safety valves	VI,	261
for marine boilers	VIII,	55
for receiver	VIII,	156
Sailings	VIII,	187
current or oblique	VIII,	191
great circle	VIII,	190
Mercator's	VIII,	189
parallel	VIII,	188
plain	VIII,	188
traverse	VIII,	189
Salinometer	VIII,	63
Salomon de Caus' vessel	VII,	11
Salts, table	VI,	113
Sand and borax	X,	423
Sand for moulding	IX,	487
Saturated steam properties, table	VI,	33
Saturated steam tables	VII,	226, 227
Saturated vapor	VII,	222
Saturation curve	II, 69; IV,	167
Saturation of magnets	II,	35
Savery, steam engine	VII,	11
Sawing machines	IX,	56
Saws	IX,	59
back	IX,	21
band	IX,	59
compass	IX,	22
crosscut	IX,	17
rip	IX,	17
scroll	IX,	59
Scale	X,	201
Scales		
mechanical drawing	XI,	27
weighing	VII,	267
Scavenging gas engine	VII,	450
School buildings	XII,	181
Scott transformer	IV,	239
Scraping	X,	49
Scratch-awl	IX,	43
Screw cutting	X,	112
Screw die hobs	X,	271
Screw-driver	IX,	43
Screw propeller	VIII,	95
action of	VIII,	150
details of	VIII,	149
diameter of	VIII,	149
material for	VIII,	145
pitch of	VIII,	146
speed of	VIII,	150
Screw propeller blades, shape of	VIII,	145
Screw thread	XI,	225
Acme	X,	113
square	X,	113
standard	X,	114
tables	X, 115; XI,	189, 190
V	X,	112
Whitworth	X,	113
working drawing	XI,	185
Screws	IX,	303
machine	IX,	313
set	IX,	312
Scriber	X,	13
Scum cock	VIII,	62
Second, unit of time	I,	105
Secondary batteries	V,	26
Secondary members, types of	IV,	334
Section insulators	III,	394
Sectional area of magnet frame	II,	152
Sectional area of armature conductor	II,	137
Sectional boiler	VI, 174; XII,	55
Sectional dies	X,	370
Selection of		
armature wire	II,	137
distribution system	III,	130
dynamo-electric machinery	III,	11
lamps	III,	238
Self-cooling transformers	IV,	261
Self-excitation of dynamo	II,	40
Self-starting test of motor	IV,	211
Sellers thread	XI,	232
Semaphores	VIII,	357
Separate excitation of rotary	IV,	313
Separate field excitation	IV,	98
Separately excited dynamo	II,	37
Separation of generator losses	III,	86
Separator		
steam	VI,	278
thermal advantage of	VII,	253
Separator calorimeter	VI,	299
Series booster	II,	406
Series circuits	I,	79
Series connections (transformer)	IV,	228
Series dynamo	II, 38, 62; III,	33, 46
Series lamp mechanism	III,	245
Series motors	II,	311
advantage of	II,	306
connections of	II,	305
constant-potential	II,	302
reversing of	II,	306
speed of	II,	303
starting of	II,	305
torque of	II,	302
uses of	II,	309
variation of E. M. F.	II,	304
variation of field	II,	304
Series-multiple system	III, 266; IV,	433
Series-parallel control	III,	329
Series systems	III, 262; IV,	427, 437

Note.– For page numbers see foot of pages.

Digitized by Google

	Part	Page
Series transformers	IV,	265
Service blocks	I,	175
Service pipe connections	XII,	273
Service pipe for gas	XII,	290
Set screws	IX,	312
Setting up cells	II,	366
Setting Corliss valve	VII,	210
Setting poles	V,	97
Setting valve	VII,	173
for equal cut-off	VII,	175
for equal lead	VII,	175
Setting valves of locomotives	VIII,	282
Settlement and shrinkage of walls	XII,	374
Sewage, disposal of	XII,	233
Sewage farming	XII,	255
Sewage purification	XII,	244, 252
broad irrigation	XII,	255
chemical precipitation	XII,	253
intermittent filtration	XII,	255
mechanical straining	XII,	253
sedimentation	XII,	253
sub-surface irrigation	XII,	255
Sewer grades	XII,	249
Sewers		
combined systems	XII,	244, 251
depth of below surface	XII,	250
design and construction	XII,	248
flushing devices	XII,	249
house connections	XII,	250
manholes	XII,	249
pumping station	XII,	252
separate systems	XII,	244
shape of	XII,	251
size and material	XII,	251
storm overflows	XII,	252
tidal chambers	XII,	252
under drains	XII,	249
ventilation of	XII,	250
Sextant	VIII,	206
Shade lines	XI,	107
Shades and globes for gas	XII,	302
Shades and reflectors	III,	283
Shaft governors	VII,	67
Shaft outside of pinion	IX,	189
Shafting	III,	22
Shafts	VII, 21; IX,	254
analysis of	IX,	254
centrifugal whirling	IX,	263
deflection	IX,	261
hollow	IX,	267
horse-power of	IX,	264
lining	X,	202
material for	IX,	267
non-parallel	XI,	254
parallel	XI,	253
practical modification	IX,	265
problems on	IX,	268
size of	IX,	184
Shafts		
theory of	IX,	257
Shanghai T-rail	III,	402
Shaper	X,	141
Shapley boiler	VI,	208
Sheave pulley, pattern for	IX,	91
Shell, strength of, for marine boilers	VIII,	31
Shell reamers	X,	248
arbors for	X,	250
Shell-type transformers	IV,	255
Shifting of brushes	II,	45
Ship		
heeling of	VIII,	182
navigating	VIII,	192
Ship resistance	VIII,	141
Ship's position on chart	VIII,	186
Shop drawing		
advanced work	XI,	299
essentials of	XI,	301
method of procedure	XI,	304
Shop lighting	III,	301-310
Shop requirements	II,	317
Shop suggestions	X,	196
Short circuiting of storage battery	II,	379
Short shunt	II,	79
Shrink heads or risers	IX,	410
Shrinkage, allowance for in patterns	IX,	72
Shrinkage and settlement of walls	XII,	374
Shrouding tooth gears	IX,	277
Shunt	I,	117
long	II,	79
short	II,	79
Shunt booster	II,	404
Shunt dynamo	II, 38,	70
constant-potential	III,	32
in series	III,	46
Shunt lamps	III,	244
Shunt motor	III,	48
advantage of	II,	302
constant-potential	II,	286
efficiency of	II,	300
maximum output of	II,	299
uses of	II,	302
Side-lever engine	VIII,	97
Side tool	X,	96
Siderial time, definition of	VIII,	216
Siderite	IX,	341
Siemens' law of efficiency	II,	280
Sight feed lubricator	VII,	74
Signal system by air	VIII,	449
Signals, railroad	VIII,	356
Silicon, effect on iron	IX,	345
Sills for buildings	XII,	355
Simple alternator	II, 20; IV,	11
Simple expansion engine	VII,	24

Note.—For page numbers see foot of pages.

Digitized by Google

	Part	Page
Sine galvanometer	I,	114
Single-ended boilers	VIII,	13
combustion chamber	VIII,	13
furnace doors	VIII,	14
furnaces, number of	VIII,	16
grate surface	VIII,	14
heating surface	VIII,	15
manholes	VIII,	16
stays	VIII,	15
Single-line letter	XI,	485
Single-line repeaters	I,	291
Single lip reamers	X,	242
Single-phase alternator	IV,	106
Single-phase motors III, 60, 432;	IV,	344
Single-phase system, limitations of	IV,	106
Single-phase windings	IV,	130
Single pump	VI,	398
Single trucks	III,	362
Single-tube boiler	VI,	174
Sinks	XII,	209
Siphonage	XII,	227
Six-phase converter	IV,	316
Six-ring converter	IV,	287
Sizes of lead cables, table of	V,	127
Sizes of plant	III,	132
"Skeleton" letter	XI,	484
Sketches, working drawing	XI,	200
Slabbing miller	X,	165
Slaby-Arco wireless telegraphy	I,	356
Slag	IX,	343
Slide valve	VII,	22
design of	VII,	168
designing of	VII,	160
dimensioning	VII,	168
for locomotive	VIII,	292
modifications of	VII,	176
Murdoch's	VII,	17
problems	VII,	160
Slide wire bridge	I,	134
Sliding and spinning wheels	III,	437
Slip of propeller	VIII,	150
negative	VIII,	153
Slip test of induction motor	IV,	375
Slotter	X,	143
Slow burning insulation, table of	I,	188
Small letters	XI,	500
Smee's cell	I,	31
Smelting, cupola	IX,	372
Smelting lead	IX,	376
Smoke box, locomotive	VIII,	259
Smoke pipes	XII,	46
Smoke prevention	VI,	251
Smooth-core armature	IV,	124
Snap flasks	IX,	508
Snap gauges	X,	395
adjustable	X,	401
for cylindrical work	X,	396
grinding of	X,	398
Snap switches	I,	208
Snifting valve	VIII,	130
Soapstone	VII,	72
Sodium	VI,	102
discovery and preparation	VI,	102
important compounds	VI,	103
occurrence	VI,	102
properties of	VI,	102
Soil and waste pipes	XII,	219, 235
Soil pipes, vent for	XII,	231
Solarday apparent, definition of	VIII,	215
Solar time, definition of	VIII,	215
Sole of walls	XII,	370
Solenoid	I,	35
magnetic field of	II,	12
Solid-back transmitter	V,	46
Solids	XI,	61
expansion of	VI,	15
Sound		
musical	V,	16
nature of	V,	11
Sounder, Morse	I,	46
Spacing of letters	XI,	499
Span wires	III,	392
Spark gauge	IV,	71
Sparking	II,	111
Sparking at commutator	III,	94, 445
Sparking distances, table of	IV,	167
Specific conductivity	V,	105
Specific heat	VI, 29;	VII, 293
table	VI,	30
Specific resistance	I, 67;	V, 105
Speed of		
drills	X,	54, 57
generator	III,	114
motors	II, 284;	III, 114
series motors	II,	303
Speed control of series motors	II,	304
Speed of engine, effect of	VII,	264
Speed lathe	X,	72
Speed measurement	III,	82
Speed regulation, induction motors	III,	59
Spheres	XI,	64
Spiral gears	X,	183
Spiral milling cutters	X,	315
Spirals		
drawing of	XI,	87
cutting of	X,	180
Splices in carpentry		
for bending	XII,	353
for compression	XII,	349
with fish plates	XII,	353
for tension	XII,	351
Splicing	I, 175, 189;	V, 148
Spline	IX,	315
Splining shafts	X,	175
Split-phase starting	IV,	344

Note.—For page numbers see foot of pages.

Digitized by Google

	Part	Page
Split pulley design	IX,	248
analysis and theory of	IX,	248
practical modification	IX,	252
Spoke-shave	IX,	30
Sprague multiple-unit system	III,	343
Spring governors	VII,	67
Spring screw-threading dies	X,	287
Spring tempering	X,	222
Spruce	XII,	327
Sprue cutter	IX,	512
Spur gears	IX,	268
analysis	IX,	269
arms	IX,	275
epicycloidal	XI,	277
hub	IX,	275
rim	IX,	275
theory	IX,	272
working stress for	IX,	274
Square, carpenters'	XII,	334
Square thread XI, 229;	X,	113
Square thread taps	X,	275
Squares	IX,	34
Stack, locomotive	VIII,	262
Stacks for indirect heating	XII,	86
Stairs	XII,	389
Standard lamp sockets	I,	203
Standard screw threads	X,	114
Standard steel scale	X,	19
Standard taper		
Brown & Sharpe	X,	52
for drill shanks	X,	52
Jarno	X,	52
Morse	X,	52
Standard wire, table of	III,	171
Stands, machine	IX,	324
Stanley electrostatic voltmeter	IV,	68
Star marine pop safety valve	VI,	267
Starting		
dynamo I, 161;	III,	36
induction motors	III,	57
motor	III,	47
series motor	II,	305
shunt motors	II,	297
synchronous motor	IV,	199
Starting boxes	III,	30
Starting coil	IV,	80
Starting compensators	III,	58
Starting gear for marine engines	VIII,	124
Starting resistance	II,	296
Starting torque test	IV,	367
Static electricity	I,	16
Static influence	I,	10
Station, central		
appliances	IV,	380
arrangement of	III,	194
design	III,	463
records	III,	196
Station point	XI,	364
Stationary engines, lead of	VII,	170
Stator windings	IV,	324
Stay bolts	VIII,	42
locomotive	VIII,	246
Stay tubes	VIII,	41
Staying boilers VI, 136,	165	
Stays for boilers VIII, 41,	43	
Steady rest	X,	79
Steam		
action of in engines	VII,	231
properties of	VI,	32
superheated VI, 34; VII, 230,	261	
Steam boiler trials	VI,	334
Steam boilers, testing of	VI,	332
Steam boilers for heating XII, 54,	103	
sectional	XII,	55
tubular	XII,	57
Steam calorimeter	VII,	269
Steam chest	VII,	21
Steam consumption of engines	VII,	265
Steam consumption by indicator card	VII,	134
Steam cylinder, machinery of	XI,	312
Steam cylinder, moulding of	XI,	312
Steam distribution, inequality of	VII,	150
Steam domes	VI,	282
Steam engine III, 149; VII, 11-	271	
arrangement of cylinders of	VII,	241
calculation of power of	VII,	85
condensers for VII, 45,	246	
connecting rod	VII,	21
consumption of steam	VII,	265
cooling towers	VII,	51
crank	VII,	21
crank action of	VII,	257
crank pin	VII,	21
crosshead	VII,	21
cylinder head	VII,	19
development of VII, 11,	19	
eccentric	VII,	21
economy of	VII,	260
effect of speed on	VII,	264
efficiency of	VII,	234
fly wheel	VII,	53
frame	VII,	21
governors	VII,	60
Steam engine		
heat action of	VII,	215
jacketing	VII,	242
losses of heat in	VII,	235
lubrication	VII,	70
mean effective pressure	VII,	105
Newcomen's	VII,	13
parts of	VII,	19
piston	VII,	21
piston rod	VII,	21
piston speed	VII,	253
ratio of expansion	VII,	254

Note.—For page numbers see foot of pages.

Digitized by Google

	Part	Page
Steam engine		
Savery	VII,	11
setting valves of	VII,	173
shaft	VII,	21
slide valve for	VII,	22
steam chest	VII,	21
Stephenson's	VII,	17
superheated steam in	VII,	244
testing	VII,	265
theoretical	VII,	232
theoretical efficiency of	VII,	233
thermal efficiency	VII,	117
valve setting	VII,	173
variation of load	VII,	263
Watt's	VII,	15
Steam-engine generators	II,	170
Steam-engine indicators	VII,	85-139
Steam fitting	XII,	194
Steam flow, table	XII,	76
Steam gauges	VI, 273; VIII,	63
Steam heating		
direct	XII,	60
exhaust	XII,	20
indirect	XII,	85
Steam jackets on engines	VII,	261
Steam loop	VI,	295
Steam pipes	III,	137
area of	VI,	293
arrangement of	III,	138
material for	III,	140
size of	VI,	295
table	VI,	294
Steam plant	III,	134
Steam port, width of	VII,	169
Steam pressure, effect of raising	VII,	260
Steam pumps	VI,	353-452
earliest example of	VI,	355
Steam separators	VI,	278
Steam space of boiler	VI,	153
Steam tables, calculation of	VII,	224
Steam traps	VI,	280
return	XII,	133
Steam turbine	VII,	76, 273-290
balance of	VII,	275
buckets, wear on	VII,	278
clearances	VII,	274
Curtis	VII,	273
DeLaval	VII,	78, 287
efficiency of	VII,	269
governing	VII,	276
Parsons	VII,	81
pressure and superheat used	VII,	278
step-bearing for	VII,	274
vertical type	VII,	274
Westinghouse-Parsons	VII,	282
Steam-turbine generators	II,	169
Steam valves	VI,	410
Steamboat "Clermont"	VIII,	96
Stearns duplex	I,	298
Steel		
aluminum	IX,	367
for boilers	VI,	116
chrome	IX,	367
effects of elements in	IX,	369
hardening	X,	217
manganese	IX,	367
manufacture of	IX,	351
Bessemer process	IX,	354
cementation process	IX,	351
crucible process	IX,	353
cupola process	IX,	356
direct process	IX,	356
open hearth process	IX,	362
melting of	IX,	500
nickel	IX,	366
special	IX,	366
tampering of	IX,	369
tool	X,	214
tungsten	IX,	368
Steel castings	IX,	495
Steel cores	IX,	499
Steel facing mixtures	IX,	496
Steel flasks	IX,	497
Steel molds	IX,	502
Steel rails	IX,	361
Steel square, carpenter's	XII,	334
Steeples, construction of	XII,	444
Step-bearing for steam turbine	VII,	274
Step-down transformation	IV,	16
Stephenson link motion	VII,	18, 180
Stephenson's steam engine	VII,	17
Steps	I,	185
Stillwell regulator	IV,	409
Stirling boiler	VI,	239
Stokers, mechanical	VI,	253
Stop valves	VIII,	58
Stopping generator	III,	63
Stopping motor	III,	63
Storage air brakes	III,	374
Storage batteries	II, 347, 409; III, 168; V,	26
application of	II,	283
electrical laboratories	II,	399
maintaining load	II,	388
preventing fluctuations	II,	386
propelling boats	II,	395
propelling vehicles	II,	395
stations	III,	431
sub-stations	II,	390
subdividing voltage	II,	389
telephone and telegraph	II,	396
train illumination	II,	397
transformers	II,	388
charging of	II,	370
chemical action of	II,	350
discharging of	II,	374

Note.—For page numbers see foot of pages.

Digitized by Google

	Part	Page
Storage batteries		
efficiency of	II,	375
management of	II,	365
methods of formation	II,	351
putting out of commission	II,	383
regulation of	II,	401
short circuiting of	II,	379
sulphating of	II,	377
troubles of	II,	377
types of		
chloride	II,	357
Crompton-Howell	II,	352
Edison	II,	363
exide	II,	354
Faure	II,	352
Gould	II,	352
Planté	II,	349
Planté and Faure	II,	357
portable	II,	385
Stoves, heating by	XII,	11
Straight edge	X,	14
Straight-line engine governor	VII,	69
Straight reamers	X,	235
Strain	VIII,	26
Stranded wires	I,	204
Strap winding	IV,	130
Street lighting	III,	279
Strength of boiler materials	VI,	119
Strength of magnetic pole	I,	108
Stress	VIII,	25
Stresses		
combined in shaft	IX,	257
working	IX,	172
Stretch limit	VIII,	26
Stringing wires	V,	114, 132
Stripper	X,	364
Stripper on punch	X,	378
Structural machinery	IX,	218
Stubs' wire gauge, table of	I,	74
Studding	XII,	363, 366
Student drawings	XI,	300
Studs	IX,	303, 312
Stuffing-box of compressor	VII,	316
Stuffing-box for pump	VI,	386
Sub-stations	III,	185
Submarine cables	V,	152
Substitution, resistance by	I,	128
Suction gas producer	VII,	458
Suction pump	XII,	267
Sulphating	II,	377
Sulphur, effect on iron	IX,	345
Sulphuric acid	VI,	111
Sulzer valve gear	VII,	209
Sunlight, distribution of	III,	303
Superheated steam	III, 143; VI, 34; VII,	230, 244
Superheated vapor	VII,	230
Supplementary return feeders	III,	410
Supply of electrical energy	I,	100
Supports for boilers	VI,	283
Surface gauge	X,	13
Surface condenser	VII,	45
Surface milling of cast iron, table	X,	172
Surface milling of soft steel, table	X,	172
Surface plate, generating of	X,	198
Surface unit, C. G. S.	I,	107
Surfaces	XI,	56
Swing bolster trucks	II,	363
Switchboard	I, 157; III, 428; V,	180
alternating-current	III,	428
appliances for	IV,	380
electric telegraph	I,	257
recent form of	I,	281
single-phase	IV,	383
Switches	III,	26
flush	I,	207
high-tension coil	III,	428
knife	I,	207
limit	III,	29
oil	III,	176
snap	I,	208
special	IV,	401
third-rail	III,	397
Swivel trucks	III,	362
Symbols, table of	I,	106
Synchronism	III, 43; IV,	29
Synchronizer	IV,	390
Lincoln	IV,	399
Synchronous impedance	IV,	170
Synchronous motor	IV,	196, 353
break-down test of	IV,	211
characteristic curves of	IV,	209
field excitation of	IV,	206
hunting action of	IV,	204
phase characteristic of	IV,	209
power factor of	IV,	206
pulsation test of	IV,	210
starting of	IV,	199, 211
torque of	IV,	206
Synchronous reactance of armature	IV,	96
Systems, electric		
alternating-current	I, 177; III, 431; IV,	437
balanced	IV,	117
brush-arc	III,	204
conduit	III,	399
Edison three-wire	II, 335; IV,	226
four-wire multiple-voltage	II,	336
motor-drive	II,	329
multiple series	IV,	433
multiple-wire	IV,	434
parallel	IV,	437
polyphase	IV,	438
selection of	III,	130
series	IV,	427

Note.—For page numbers see foot of pages.

Digitized by Google

	Part	Page
Systems, electric		
three-wire D. C.	I,	177
unbalanced	II, 336; IV,	120
Systems, warming	XII,	11
T-rail	III,	402
T-square	XI,	15
Tables		
acids	VI,	113
air, velocity of in flues	XII,	97
air pipes for heating	XII,	49
air supply per person	XII,	30
alkaline substances	VI,	113
alloys	IX,	385
aluminum wire	IV, 421; V,	115
American wire gauge	I,	74
ammonia properties	VII,	368
amperes per motor	I,	170
arc lamp	III,	278
arc lights per mile	III,	282
area of circles	IX,	526
average max. efficiency	III,	162
B. & S. wire gauge	I,	74
barometer heights	VI,	354
boiler corrosion	VI,	318
boiler tubes	VI,	152
boiler tubes, lap welded	VIII,	40
boilers, floor space for	III,	136
boiling point of water	VI,	25
boiling points	VI,	26
bolt heads	XI,	195
bolts, strength of	IX,	308
brilliancy in candle-power	III,	268
calcium brine solution	VII,	369
capacity of circuit	IV,	441
capacity of oval pipes	XII,	51
capacity ratio	III,	187
carbonic acid gas	VII,	373
cast iron, grades of	IX,	345
cedar pole	I,	185
change in voltage	III,	238
chimney, dimensions of	VI,	169
chloride battery	II,	359
chloride of sodium brine	VII,	370
cistern capacity	XII,	271
coefficients of linear expansion	VI,	16
coefficients of reflection	III,	269
coil test data	V,	49
compound pumps	VI,	426
condensing engine economy	III,	150
conductor	IV,	423
constant-current transformer	IV,	268
Cooper-Hewitt lamp	III,	279
copper wire	I, 194; II, 161; IV,	420
crucibles, sizes of	IX,	514
cutters for flutes	X,	268
cutters for reamers	X,	236
cutting edges for milling cutters	X,	310
Tables		
cutting edges for reamers	X,	235
diameter of fire pot	XII,	44
dimensions of heaters	XII,	155
E. P. S. accumulator	II,	354
efficiency of boiler	III,	137
efficiency of globe	III,	286
elements	VI,	59
end milling of cast iron	X,	173
engine constants	VII,	109
exhaust fans	XII,	173
exciter	III,	163
exide cell	II,	356
exposure factors	XII,	34
face milling soft steel	X,	173
face milling cutters	X,	340
factors of evaporation	VI,	304
fan capacity	XII,	163
flow of water in pipes	XII,	262
fire pump capacities	VI,	396
foundry ladles data	IX,	478
full load ratio	III,	187
fuse	I,	216
galvanized wire	V,	112
gas engine efficiency	VII,	427
gear design data	IX,	280
Hancock inspirator	VI,	293
hand	X,	265
heat loss	XII,	34
heaters	XII,	153
heating surface supplied by pipes	XII,	79
heating value of coal	VI,	328
hot water radiation	XII,	121
hydraulic	III,	146
hyperbolic logarithms	VII,	257
incandescent lamp	I,	209
inclosed arc lamp	III,	250
indirect hot-water radiation	XII,	126
indirect radiation	XII,	103
inductance	IV,	442
induction coil	V,	50
inductivity	IV,	41
injector	VI,	293
insulated wire	II,	162
key ways for cutters	X,	326
lap joints	VI,	163
lead cable	V,	127
lead pipe	XII,	264
light absorbed	III,	284
log of test	III,	456
mandrels, dimensions of	X,	256
melting points	VI,	23
mensuration	IX,	526
meridian lamp	III,	274
metals	IX,	383
milling drill flutes	X,	230
overload	III,	133
pipe covering	VI,	296

Note.—For page numbers see foot of pages.

Digitized by Google

Tables	Part	Page
pipe for gas burners	XII,	295
pipe risers for hot water	XII,	124
pipe sizes, single pipe system	XII,	80
pole dimension	V,	80
pole line	I,	186
pole setting	V,	98
pressure in molds	IX,	529
primary cell	I,	76
pump capacity	VI,	390
pump pipes	VI,	434
pump piston rod	VI,	383
pump slip	I,	391
register sizes	XII,	52
residence lighting	III,	276
resistance	I, 69; II,	127
resistance factor	V,	113
return pipe sizes	XII,	81
riveted hydraulic pipe	III,	156
riveted joints	VI,	128
rotary converter	IV,	284
roughing	X,	247
rubber-covered wire	I,	188
safe-carrying capacity of wire	I, 189; III,	25
sag in wire	V,	117
salts	VI,	113
saturated steam	VII, 226,	227
saturated steam properties	VI,	33
shafting	III,	22
size of copper wire	IV,	15
sizes of leather belting	IX,	238
slow burning wire	I,	188
sparking distance	IV,	167
specific gravities of metals	IX,	528
specific heats	VI,	30
specific resistances of metal	V,	106
speed of drills	X,	57
speed of grinding wheels	X,	187
spring-die proportions	X,	287
square and hexagon nuts	XI,	195
standard screw threads	X,	115
standard wire	III,	171
steam flow	XII,	76
steam pipe	VI,	294
Stubs' wire gauge	I,	74
surface milling of cast iron	X,	172
surface milling of soft steel	X,	172
switch data	III,	27
symbol	I,	106
valves, changing events of	VII,	160
voltage ratios of converter	IV,	296
volts lost	I,	171
taper-shank twist drill	X,	52
taps and corresponding drills	X,	63
taps and drills, table of	X,	63
temperatures	IX,	529
tensile strength of wire	V,	113
tested fuse wire	I,	212
thermometer scales	VII,	367
thermal conductivities	VI,	36
tin-lined lead pipe	XII,	265
torsional moments	IX,	183
transformers	IV,	380
transformer efficiency	IV,	242
tubular boiler	XII,	59
Tudor cell	II,	360
types of machine	III,	31
U. S. standard screw threads	XI,	189
useful factors	IX,	528
water flow	III,	146
water head	VI,	359
water pipes	VI,	435
water pressure and head	III, 155; VI, 359; XII,	261
weights of round and square iron	X,	457
weights of wire	V,	110
Whitworth standard screw threads	XI,	190
wiring circuit	I,	192
wrought iron pipe	XI,	197
wrought iron pipe dimensions	XII,	263
Tabor indicator	VII,	97
Tachometer	III,	82
Tangent galvanometer	I,	113
Tank		
blow-off	XII,	82
expansion	XII,	112
Tank overflow pipe	XII,	273
Tanks	XII, 214,	269
Tap bolts	IX,	312
Tap holders, releasing of	X,	277
Taper		
locomotive	X,	60
turning	X,	103
Taper key	IX,	316
Taper reamers	X,	61
Taper pin	X,	61
Taps	X,	61
adjustable	X,	272
cutter for flutes of	X,	268
flutes	X,	267
inserted blade	X,	273
machine	X,	270
square thread	X,	275
wrenches	X,	277
Tee, pattern for	IX,	119
Telautograph	I,	369-380
Telegraph	I,	233-329
battery for	I,	48
electric	I,	233
examples of messages	I,	247
messages by	I,	24

Note.—For page numbers see foot of pages.

Digitized by Google

	Part	Page
Telegraph		
switchboard	I,	257
Telegraphy		
abbreviated	I,	266
multiplex	I,	298
railway	I,	272
wireless	I,	331
Telephone trunks	V, 200-207, 218-228,	256-263
Telephony	V,	11-379
automatic	V, 301-305,	365-372
auxiliary apparatus	V,	228-236
batteries	I, 57; V,	232
power	V,	228
protection	V,	235
bridging	V,	57
cables	V,	125
exchanges	V,	170-275
automatic v. manual	V,	403-412
bridging switchboard	V,	213
cable and wire for	V,	191-199
long-distance switchboard	V,	270-275
intermediate distributing board	V,	217
multiple switchboard	V,	207
office trunks for	V,	200
subdivided multiple	V,	207
history of	V,	36
line protection	V,	387-394
lines	V, 71,	131
maintenance	V,	305-347
apparatus used	V,	313-318
cables	V,	336-347
inspectors	V,	308-312
organization	V,	307
reporting trouble	V,	306
tests for troubles	V,	313-336
wire chief	V,	312
Pupin system of loaded circuits	V,	349
operating	V,	275-305
long-distance	V,	288
poles	V,	78
receivers	V,	38-40
service, quality of	V,	395-402
transmitters	V,	42-48
wireless	V,	375-385
wires	V,	105
Telephony systems	V, 236,	290-305
automatic	V, 301-305,	365-372
B. W. C.	V,	292
central energy	V,	236-269
common battery	V,	236-269
automatic signals	V,	242-253
handling a connection	V,	253
Hayes system	V,	239
Stone system	V,	238
toll boards	V,	263-269
Telephony systems		
common battery trunking	V,	256-263
party line	V,	290
private branch exchanges	V,	355
Pupin	V,	349
Temperature	VI,	12
Temperature in armature	II,	146
Temperature coefficient	I, 72; IV,	422
Temperature regulators for heating	XII, 178,	288
air compressor	XII,	178
diaphragm valve	XII,	180
thermostat	XII,	173
Tempering steel	IX,	369
Templets	X,	68
filing	X,	68
jig	X,	68
marking	X,	68
Tender, locomotive	VIII,	343
Tenon and tuskjoint	XII,	346
Tensile strength of wire, table of	V,	113
Terminal points	V,	159
Testing		
bond	III,	437
break-down	IV,	166
core-loss	IV,	278
dielectric strength	IV,	164
dynamo	II,	117
exciting-current	IV,	278
induction motor	IV,	364
insulation resistance	IV,	164
motor-coil	III,	439
polarity	I, 162; IV,	281
pumps	VI,	440
rotary converter	IV,	319
steam boilers	VI,	332
steam engine	VI,	265
storage battery	II,	382
Testing machines	VIII,	23
Theaters, heating of	XII,	188
Thermal conductivities, table	VI,	36
Thermal efficiency of steam engine	VII,	117
Thermal unit, British	XII,	32
Thermit welding	III,	406
Thermo electric currents	I,	43
Thermodynamics	VI, 38; VII,	215
Thermodynamics of gas engine	VII,	417
Thermodynamics of perfect gases	VI,	39
Thermometer scales	VI, 14; VII,	367
Thermometers	VI, 12; VII,	266, 293
Thermostat	XII,	179
Third rail	III,	397
insulators for	III,	397
location of	III,	397
switches for	III,	397

Note.—For page numbers see foot of pages.

Digitized by Google

	Part	Page
Third-rail system		
advantages of	III,	398
cost of	III,	398
Thomson galvanometer	I,	115
Thomson inclined-coil meter	IV,	73
Thompson indicator	VII,	92
Thomson recording wattmeter	IV,	79
Thread cutting dies	X,	281
Threads, conventional representation of	XI,	233
Threads, screw	XI,	225
Threaded holes for milling cutters	X,	332
Three ammeter method	IV,	76
Three-phase alternator	IV,	110
Three-phase mains	IV,	114
Three-phase motors	III,	431
Three-phase windings	IV, 131; IV,	327
Three-ring converter	IV,	286
Three-voltmeter method	IV,	75
Three-wire D. C. system	III,	206
Thresher generator	II, 191; II,	205
Throttling calorimeter	VI,	300
Through bolts	IX,	312
Through-tube boilers	VI, 200; VIII,	19
Thrust bearing	VIII,	120
collars, number of	VIII,	123
Thumb tacks	XI,	13
Tidal chambers	XII,	252
Tides	VIII,	225
Tie wires	V,	114
Tile pipes	XII,	224
Timber		
checks	XII,	322
in commercial form	XII,	323
conversion of	XII,	323
defects of		
dry rot	XII,	321
heartshake	XII,	320
starshake	XII,	321
wet rot	XII,	321
windshake	XII,	320
general characteristics of	XII,	332
cleavage	XII,	333
flexibility	XII,	332
hardness	XII,	333
toughness	XII,	333
imported		
mahogany	XII,	332
satinwood	XII,	332
walnut	XII,	332
knots in	XII,	323
natural	XII,	317
warping in	XII,	321
Timber trusses	XII,	438
Time, definition of	VIII,	215
Time-tables	VIII,	379
Tin, properties and uses of	IX,	379
Tin-lined lead pipe, table	XII,	265
Titles of drawings	XI,	322
Tool holders	X,	308
Tool making	X,	207-410
Tool post	X,	94
Tool steel		
annealing tool steel	X,	214
case hardening	X,	221
centering	X,	214
citric acid bath	X,	218
cooling	X,	217
cutting from bar	X,	214
hardening	X,	213
heating	X,	217
pack hardening	X,	219
spring tempering	X,	222
straightening	X,	214
tempering	X,	220
Tools		
annealing	X,	214
approximate measurements for	X,	209
arbors	X,	252
bevel	IX,	37
boring	X,	98, 110
calipers	IX,	40
chasing	X,	121
chisels and gouges	IX,	31
circular forming	X,	305
cooling of	X,	101
counterbores	X,	290
cutting	X,	39
cutting speed of	X,	100
die, punching	X,	364
dies	X,	281
dividers and trammels	IX,	39
drill jigs	X,	342
drills	X,	222
feed of	X,	97
forge	X,	473
forming	X,	303
hand-operated, machine shop	X,	11
hand saws	IX,	17
hardening of	X,	217
hollow mills	X,	299
lathe	IX, 51; X,	91
machine	IX,	215
marking gauges	IX,	38
measuring	X,	18
milling cutters	X,	309
pattern making	IX,	17
planer	X,	137
planes, pattern makers	IX,	23
planing machine, wood	IX,	60
precise measurements for	X,	209
punch	X,	374
reamers	X,	234
rules	IX,	46
sawing machines	IX,	56
saws	IX,	59

Note.—For page numbers see foot of pages.

Digitized by Google

	Part	Page
Tools		
screw-cutting	X,	112
slotter	X,	144
special	X,	211
spoke-shave	IX,	30
squares	IX,	34
steel for	X,	213
taps	X,	263
tempering	X,	220
turning	X,	96, 102
Toothed-core armature	IV,	125
Toothed gearing	XI,	275
Torsional moments, table	IX,	183
Torque	II,	282
generator	III,	84
measurement of	II, 283; III,	83
shunt motor	II,	286
synchronous motor	IV,	206
Total characteristic curve	II,	63
Total output panels	III,	175
Towers, construction of	XII,	444
Tracing	XI,	203
Tracing and inking	XI,	323
Track brakes	III,	379
Track construction	III,	401
Track support	III,	403
Tractive power of locomotive	VIII,	336
Train inspection	VIII,	443
Train resistance	VIII,	338
Train rules	VIII,	376
Trammels and dividers	IX,	39
Transfer calipers	X,	22
Transformers	I, 346; III, 164; IV,	213
action of	IV,	219
automatic action of	IV,	216
banking of	IV,	228
connections of	IV, 224,	316
cooling of	IV,	259
efficiency of	IV,	242
fuse blocks for	IV,	272
heat test for	IV,	276
losses in	IV,	242
mounting	IV,	276
operation of	IV,	247
output of	IV,	246
physical action of	IV,	213
rating of	IV,	247
regulation of	IV, 222,	246
tests for	IV,	276
types of		
A. C.	IV,	16
air blast	IV,	264
constant-current	IV,	267
core	IV,	251
current	IV,	265
polyphase system	IV,	234
Scott	IV,	239
self-cooling	IV,	261
series	IV,	265
Transformers, types of		
shell	IV,	255
two-phase system	IV,	234
three-phase system	IV,	234
water-cooled	IV,	265
Transmission lines	III, 417; IV,	440
Transmitter apparatus	I,	344
Transmitter batteries	V,	66
Transmitters, telephone	I,	52
Berliner	V,	45
Blake	V,	44
I ghes	V,	44
Hunnings	V,	46
solid-back	V,	46
Transposition	V,	153
Traps	XII,	226
oil and water	VII,	386
plumbing	XII,	226
return	XII,	133
sanitary	XII,	212
steam	VI,	280
Trees		
broad-leaved		
ash	XII,	329
beech	XII,	329
birch	XII,	330
black walnut	XII,	332
butternut	XII,	330
cherry	XII,	330
chestnut	XII,	330
elm	XII,	330
gum	XII,	331
maple	XII,	331
oak	XII,	331
poplar	XII,	331
sycamore	XII,	332
classes of	XII,	318
conifers	XII,	326
evergreen	XII,	326
manner of growth	XII,	318
Triangles	XI,	56
to construct	XI,	78
mechanical drawing	XI,	17
Triangular prism intersecting cylinder	XI,	125
Triangular pyramid, development of	XI,	120
Trick valve	VII,	179
Trilby groove rail	III,	402
Trimmers and headers	XII,	383
Triple expansion engine	VII,	27
Triple expansion marine engines	VIII,	105
Triple screws	VIII,	154
Triple valve, air brake	VIII,	412
Triplex pump	VI,	399
Triumph electric motors	II,	245
multipolar generators	II,	183

Note.—For page numbers see foot of pages.

Digitized by Google

	Part	Page
Trolley	III,	358
Trolley wire	III,	391
Trucks	III,	360
locomotive	VIII, 299,	343
maximum traction	III,	365
single	III,	362
swing bolster	III,	363
swivel	III,	362
Truss details	XII,	44
Trussed beams	XII,	432
Trussed partitions	XII,	427
Trusses, timber	XII,	438
Try cocks	VI,	271
Try square	X,	15
Tube space	VI,	153
Tubes, boiler VI, 143, 151, 165;	VIII,	39
table of	VI,	152
Tube sheets	VIII,	246
Tubular boilers, table of	XII,	59
Tubular boilers for heating	XII,	57
Tudor cell	II,	360
Tungsten steel	IX,	368
Turbines		
steam	VII, 76, 269,	273
water	III,	154
Turning an eccentric	X,	108
Turning in lathe	X,	102
Turning a taper	X,	103
Turning tools	X,	96
Twin-screws	VIII,	153
Twist drill	X, 51,	130
"backing off"	X,	231
grinding of	X,	234
hardening of	X,	232
Two-cycle gas engine	VII,	452
Two-phase alternator	IV,	107
Two-phase windings	IV,	131
Two pipe system	XII,	66
Types of boilers	VI, 173-	245
U. S. standard thread	XI,	232
Unbalanced systems II, 336;	IV,	120
Underdrains	XII,	249
Underground cable lines	V,	137
Underwriters' wire	IV,	425
Uni-coil winding	IV,	85
Uninsulated metal conduits	I,	199
wire for	I,	199
Union by weight	VI,	65
Unit of illumination	III,	268
Units of machines	VII,	293
Unit of refrigerating plant	VII,	293
Unit of work	VII,	218
Universal milling machine	X,	164
Ultimate strength	VIII,	26
Upright boilers	VI,	189
Uptake of boiler	VI,	166
Urinal connection	XII,	235
Urinals	XII,	206
V thread X, 112;	XI,	227

	Part	Page
Vacuum		
amount of	VIII,	135
imperfect	VIII,	136
measurement of	VII,	251
Vacuum gauge	VI,	274
Vacuum heating system	XII,	143
Paul	XII,	146
Webster	XII,	143
Vacuum pump	VIII,	131
Valence	VI,	66
Valley rafters	XII, 407,	421
Valve diagrams	VII,	154
Valve gears	VII, 141-	212
Brown releasing	VII,	206
Corliss	VII,	203
double	VII,	196
drop cut-off	VII,	202
Greene	VII,	208
Hackworth	VII,	188
Joy	VII,	190
Marshall	VII,	190
problems on	VII,	160
radial	VII,	187
Reynolds-Corliss	VII,	203
Sulzer	VII,	209
Walschaert	VII,	191
Valve with lap	VII,	145
Valve without lap	VII,	143
Valve setting		
VI, 426; VII, 173, 210;	VIII,	282
Valves		
at admission	VII,	147
air	XII,	119
for ammonia system	VII,	343
angle	VI,	260
back pressure	XII,	130
balanced	VII,	179
blow-off	VIII,	61
by-pass	VIII,	155
changing events, table	VII,	160
check	VI,	261
at compression	VII,	147
at cut-off	VII,	147
cylinder relief	VIII,	154
delivery	VIII,	159
double-ported	VII,	177
feed	VIII,	61
gate	VI,	260
globe	VI,	259
for hot water heating	XII,	118
Kingston	VIII,	157
locomotive	VIII, 282,	292
main injection	VIII,	157
Meyer	VII,	197
piston	VII,	176
pump	VI,	376
for radiators	XII,	72
for radiators, air	XII,	73
receiver safety	VIII,	156

Note.—For page numbers see foot of pages.

Digitized by Google

	Part	Page
Valves		
reducing VI, 268; VIII, 157;	XII,	129
for regulators	XII,	180
at release	VII,	147
safety	VI,	261
slide, designing	VII,	160
stop	VIII,	58
trick	VII,	179
unbalanced pressure	VII,	385
Vanishing point	XI,	366
Vapor, saturated	VII,	222
Vapor, superheated	VII,	230
Vapor density	VI,	62
Vaporization	VI,	24
Variation of		
compass	VIII,	180
E. M. F. at the brushes	II,	288
field strength	II,	292
number of armature wires	II,	293
position of the brushes	II,	295
Vaults and groins, construction of	XII,	452
Velocity of air, measurement of	XII,	31
Velocity, C. G. S. unit of	I,	107
Vent flues	XII,	95
Ventilation		
air required for	XII,	29
boiler horse-power for	XII,	59
exhaust	XII,	171
heat loss by	XII,	37
principles of	XII,	25
of sewers	XII,	250
Ventilation and heating	XII,	11
Venting, back	XII,	229
Venting moulds	IX,	406
Vents and traps	XII,	226
Vents, local	XII,	230
Vents, soil pipe	XII,	231
Venturi meter	VI,	444
Vernier	X,	27
reading of	X,	30
Vernier micrometer	X,	31
Vertical engines	VII,	32
Vertical milling spindle	X,	167
Vertical steam turbine	VII,	274
Visual element	XI,	367
Visual rays	XI,	363
Voltage		
measurement of	III,	78
table of	III,	238
Voltage and candle-power	III,	236
Voltage of generator	III,	124
Voltage ratios of rotaries	IV,	296
Voltage regulation	IV,	436
Voltage regulators	IV,	414
Voltaic cell	I,	28
Voltmeter I, 118;	IV,	71
Cardew	I,	123
electrostatic	I,	123

	Part	Page
Voltmeter		
hot-wire	IV,	62
plunger type	IV,	73
Weston	I,	118
Voltmeter compensator	IV,	415
Voltmeter test for insulation	III,	76
Volts	I, 64,	109
Volts lost, table of	I,	171
Volume, C. G. S. unit of	I,	107
Waddell-Entz accumulator	II,	363
Wagon boiler	VI,	177
Walls		
cap and sole	XII,	370
framing of	XII,	354
masonry	XII,	369
shrinkage and settlement of	XII,	374
Walschaert valve gear	VII,	191
Warm-air flues	XII,	93
Warm-air pipes	XII,	48
Warming, systems of	XII,	11
Warping in timber	XII,	321
Warping of wood	IX,	14
Waste pipe	XII,	219
Water	VI,	78
distillation of	VI,	81
hard	VI,	80
measuring by tank	VI,	442
measuring by weir	VI,	442
properties of	VI,	79
quantity of, for condenser	VII,	249
Water-back, double	XII,	280
Water "butt" or cooler	VII,	387
Water closets	XII,	202
Water-cooled transformers	IV,	265
Water-driven generators	II,	169
Water end of pump, design of	VI,	383
Water gas VI, 92;	VII,	455
Water gauges VI, 270;	VIII,	62
Water head, table	VI,	359
Water jacket for gas engines	VII,	447
Water level in boiler	VI,	157
Water piping, hydraulic	XII,	263
Water pipes, table	VI,	435
Water powers, development of	III,	215
Water pressure, table	VI,	359
Water pressure and head, table	XII,	261
Water rheostats	I,	126
Water service on ships	VIII,	159
Water space of boilers	VI,	153
Water supply, domestic	XII,	259
Water tables	VIII,	249
Water-tube boilers VI,	174,	212
classification of	VI,	215
durability of	VI,	214
for heating	XII,	58
marine	VIII,	89
rapidity in raising steam	VI,	214
safety	VI,	213
settings for	VI,	310

Note.—For page numbers see foot of pages.

Digitized by Google

	Part	Page
Water turbines	III,	154
Waterproof covers for dynamo	I,	156
Watt	I, 97,	110
Wattless component of current	IV,	37
Wattmeter	I, 124; IV,	76
compensated	IV,	78
directions for reading	IV,	82
recording	IV,	79
Thomson recording	IV,	79
Watt's diagram of work	VII,	90
Watt's indicator	VII,	16
Watt's indicator diagram	VII,	91
Watt's steam engine	VII,	15
Wave detectors	I,	348
Weatherproof wire	IV,	425
Weber photometer	III,	294
Webster system of heating	XII,	143
Weight, law of definite	VI,	65
Weight of armature conductor	II,	141
Weight iron, table	X,	457
Weighted governor	VII,	65
Weights of wires		
B. & S. gauge	V,	110
B. W. G., table of	V,	111
Weiny-Phillips repeater	I,	295
Weir for measuring water	VI,	442
Welded joints	III,	404
for boilers	VI,	129
Welding	X,	422
Welders, electric	I,	400
Welsbach burner	III,	306
Western Electric		
dynamoter	II,	270
enclosed motor	II,	247
generator	II,	201
Westinghouse		
arc generator	II,	209
belt-driven generator	II,	193
electrolytic generator	II,	207
electromagnetic brake	III,	378
engine-type generator	II,	178
multipolar motor	II,	241
railway motor	II,	254
Westinghouse air pump	VIII,	396
Westinghouse-Parsons steam turbine	VII,	282
bearings	VII,	284
blades	VII,	284
casing element	VII,	284
construction	VII,	283
coupling	VII,	287
glands	VII,	284
governor	VII,	285
lubrication	VII,	285
rotating element	VII,	283
speed limit	VII,	287
Weston voltmeter	I,	118
Wheatstone bridge	I, 128; III,	71
Whitworth thread	X, 113; XI,	232
Wickes boiler	VI,	236
Wind, effect of	VIII,	227
Winding wire	IV,	129
Windings		
armature	II, 25; III, 315; IV, 12,	106, 123
bar	IV,	130
concentrated	IV,	85
open-coil	II,	176
single-phase	IV,	130
strap	IV,	130
three-phase	IV,	131
two-phase	IV,	131
uni-coil	IV,	85
Wing dividers	X,	20
Wipe joint	XII,	223
Wire rheostats	I,	126
Wireless telegraphy	I,	331-368
conductivity method	I,	332
electric wave method	I,	334
electrostatic method	I,	333
history of	I,	331
inductivity method	I,	333
principles of	I,	337
systems of	I,	353
American DeForest	I,	362
Branly-Popp	I,	363
Braun-Siemens and Halske	I,	358
Bull	I,	367
Fessenden	I,	360
Lodge	I,	354
Lodge-Muirhead	I,	365
Marconi	I,	353
Slaby-Arco	I,	356
Wireless Telephony	V,	376-385
Wires		
annunciator	IV,	425
approved "rubber-covered"	I,	187
bare	I,	172
carrying capacity of	I,	188
entrance	I,	175
installation of	I,	191
line	I,	172
outside	I,	182
poles for	I,	182
primary for	I,	187
service	I,	172
slow-burning weatherproof	I,	188
space between	I,	175
splicing of	I,	189
stranded	I,	190
telegraph and telephone	I,	175
tie	I,	172
underwriters'	IV,	425
weatherproof	I, 188; IV,	425
Wiring		
concealed	I,	197
conduit	I,	200
fixture	I,	201

Note.– For page numbers see foot of pages.

Digitized by Google

	Part	Page
Wiring		
inside	I,	187
primary	I,	182
roof structures	I,	175
special	I,	196
tree	I,	175
Wiring formula, general	IV,	446
Wiring methods	III,	24
Wiring table	I,	190
Wood		
details of structure	XII,	319
grain of	XII,	320
for pattern making	IX,	12
warping of	IX,	14
Woolf's compound engine	VII,	17
Wootten boiler	VI,	206
Wootten firebox	VIII,	237
Work, C. G. S., unit of	I,	107
Work, unit of	VII,	218
Working drawings	XI,	171
assembly	XI,	205
blue printing	XI,	204
bolts and nuts	XI,	190
conventional methods	XI,	184
cross-sections	XI,	175
detail	XI,	201
Working drawings		
dimensions	XI,	180
finished surfaces	XI,	183
invisible threads	XI,	186
lines	XI,	172
location of views	XI,	173
long pieces	XI,	199
material	XI,	184
pipes and pipe threads	XI,	196
plates	XI,	211-216
scale drawings	XI,	197
screw threads	XI,	185
shade lines	XI,	177
sketches	XI,	200
threaded holes	XI,	186
threads in sectional pieces	XI,	188
tracing	XI,	203
Working shop drawings	XI,	299
Working standards	III,	289
Working stresses and strains	IX,	172
Worm gears	IX, 216;	X, 184
Worthington boiler	VI,	221
Wrought iron	IX,	347
Wrought-iron pipe	XII,	263
Zeuner's diagram	VII,	154, 193
Zinc	IX,	380, 505

Note.—For page numbers see foot of pages.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

This book should be returned to the Library on or before the last date stamped below.

A fine of five cents a day is incurred by retaining it beyond the specified time.

Please return promptly.

Digitized by Google

3 2044 079 963 096

Digitized by Google